



unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

2 Kings

Version 27

Copyrights & Licensing

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Date: 2020-03-25

Version: 27

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Literal Text

Date: 2020-03-25

Version: 10

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text

Date: 2020-03-25

Version: 10

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy

Date: 2020-03-25

Version: 12

Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

Date: 2020-03-25

Version: 14

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament

Date: 2020-02-20

Version: 0.12

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible

Date: 2020-02-20

Version: 2.1.11

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Copyright © 2019 by unfoldingWord

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/> or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: "The original work by unfoldingWord is available from unfoldingword.org/utn". You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at unfoldingword.org/contact/.

Table of Contents

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes	11
2 Kings	11
Introduction to 2 Kings	12
2 Kings 1	14
2 Kings 2	33
2 Kings 3	59
2 Kings 4	87
2 Kings 5	132
2 Kings 6	160
2 Kings 7	195
2 Kings 8	216
2 Kings 9	247
2 Kings 10	285
2 Kings 11	323
2 Kings 12	346
2 Kings 13	369
2 Kings 14	395
2 Kings 15	425
2 Kings 16	464
2 Kings 17	486
2 Kings 18	528
2 Kings 19	566
2 Kings 20	604
2 Kings 21	626
2 Kings 22	653
2 Kings 23	674
2 Kings 24	713
2 Kings 25	734
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy	765
Abstract Nouns	766
Active or Passive	768
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	771
Background Information	774
Biblical Distance	777
Biblical Money	780
Biblical Volume	782
Biblical Weight	786
Copy or Borrow Words	788
Direct and Indirect Quotations	790
Double Negatives	792
Doublet	794
Ellipsis	796
End of Story	798

Euphemism	800
First, Second or Third Person	802
Fractions	804
Hebrew Months	807
How to Translate Names	810
Hyperbole	814
Idiom	818
Introduction of a New Event	820
Irony	823
Merism	826
Metaphor	828
Metonymy	834
Numbers	836
Ordinal Numbers	839
Parallelism	841
Personification	844
Possession	846
Rhetorical Question	849
Simile	852
Symbolic Action	855
Synecdoche	857
unfoldingWord® Translation Words	859
abomination, abominable	860
Abraham, Abram	861
adversary, enemy	862
advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels	863
afflict, affliction, distress	864
altar	865
Amorite	866
ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather	867
appoint, appointed	869
Arabah	870
Asaph	871
assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting	872
Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire	873
Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian	874
barley	875
believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief	876
bind, bond, bound	878
bless, blessed, blessing	879
blood	881
blot out, wipe out	882
bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee	883
bread	884
bridegroom	885
bronze	886

brother	887
burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances	888
burnt offering, offering by fire	889
bury, buried, burial	890
call, call out	891
camel	893
captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured	894
cedar, cedarwood	895
Chaldea, Chaldean	896
chariot, charioteers	897
chief	898
children, child, offspring	899
clean, wash	901
command, commandment	903
confirm, confirmation, legal	904
consecrate, consecrated, consecration	905
consume, devour	906
courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, ...	907
covenant	909
cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox	911
cry, cry out, outcry	912
curse, cursed, cursing	913
cut off	914
David	915
deceive, deceit, deceiver, deceitful, deception, illusions	916
declare, proclaim, announce	917
deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, ...	918
descend, descendant	919
destroy, destruction, annihilate	920
devour	921
die, dead, deadly, death,	922
donkey, mule	924
drink offering	925
earth, earthen, earthly	926
Egypt, Egyptian	927
elder, older, old	928
Ephraim, Ephraimite	929
Ethiopia, Ethiopian	930
Euphrates River, the River	931
evil, wicked, unpleasant	932
ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins	934
exalt, exalted, exaltation	935
exile, exiled	936
face, facial	937
faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy	938
famine	940

favor, favorable, favoritism	941
fear, afraid, dread	942
feast, feasting	943
fig	944
fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot	945
firstfruits	946
flesh	947
flock, herd	948
forsake, forsaken, leave	949
fruit, fruitful, unfruitful	950
fulfill, fulfilled, carried out	952
gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway	953
Gilead, Gileadite	954
gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt ...	955
glean, gleanings	956
God	957
god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry	959
gold, golden	961
good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best	962
govern, government, governor, proconsul	964
grain offering	965
grain, grainfields	966
grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place	967
hand	968
harvest, reap	970
head	971
heart	972
heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly	973
Hebrew	974
Hittite	975
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred	976
honey, honeycomb	978
horse, warhorse, horseback	979
horseman	980
house	981
inherit, inheritance, heir	982
iniquity	983
innocent	984
Israel, Israelite, Jacob	985
Israel, Israelites	986
Jehoshaphat	988
Jeremiah	989
Jericho	990
Jerusalem	991
Jew, Jewish	993
Jordan River, Jordan	994

Joshua	995
joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing	996
Judah	998
Judea	999
judge, judgment	1000
just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification	1002
king, kingdom, kingship	1004
kingdom	1006
know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish	1008
law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law	1009
life, live, living, alive	1011
lord, Lord, master, sir	1013
messenger	1015
might, mighty, mighty works	1016
miracle, wonder, sign	1017
Mizpah	1019
Moab, Moabite	1020
Moses	1021
name	1022
nation	1023
Nebuchadnezzar	1024
oath, swear, swearing, swear by	1025
oil	1026
olive	1027
ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs	1028
oversee, overseer	1029
Passover	1030
peace, peaceful, peacemakers	1031
people, people group,	1032
perish	1034
Philistines	1035
pray, prayer	1036
preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation	1037
priest, priesthood	1039
prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, ...	1041
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess	1042
prosper, prosperity, prosperous	1044
prostrate, worship	1045
proud, pride, prideful	1046
punish, punished, punishment, unpunished	1047
pure, purify, purification	1048
rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness	1049
reign, rule	1050
remnant	1051
rest, rested, restless	1052
restore, restoration	1053

return	1054
righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, ...	1055
robe, robed	1057
Sabbath	1058
sackcloth	1059
sacrifice, sacrifices, offering	1060
Samaria, Samaritan	1062
save, saved, safe, salvation	1063
scribe	1065
seed, semen	1066
seek, search, look for	1067
servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women	1068
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach	1070
sign, proof, reminder	1072
silver	1073
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning	1074
slaughter, slaughtered	1076
Solomon	1077
son	1078
spirit, spiritual	1080
statute	1082
storehouse	1083
strength, strengthen, strong	1084
sword, swordsmen	1086
temple	1087
testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness	1089
thresh	1091
threshold, doorway	1092
throne, enthroned	1093
tremble, stagger	1094
tribe, tribal, tribesmen	1095
trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, ...	1096
true, truth	1097
trumpet, trumpeters	1099
trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness	1100
unleavened bread	1101
vine	1102
vineyard	1103
virgin, virginity	1104
voice	1105
walk, walked	1106
watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out	1107
wise, wisdom	1108
wrath, fury	1109
Yahweh	1110
Zion, Mount Zion	1112

Contributors	1113
unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors	1113
unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors	1119
unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors	1120
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors	1120
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors	1121



unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

2 Kings

Introduction to 2 Kings

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of 2 Kings

1. The prophets Elijah and Elisha (1:1-8:15)
2. Elijah brings Yahweh's judgment onto King Ahaziah (1:1-18)
3. Elijah goes to heaven and Elisha replaces him (2:1-25)
4. Elisha defends the northern kingdom against Moab (3:1-27)
5. Elisha performs various miracles (4:1-44)
6. Elisha heals Naaman the Syrian (5:1-27)
7. Elisha acts in time of war against Syria (6:1-7:20)
8. Elisha's reputation and prophecy about Hazael (8:1-15)
9. The history of Judah and Israel from Kings Jehoram and Joram to the fall of Israel (8:16-17:41)
10. The history of Judah from King Hezekiah to the fall of Judah (18:1-25:30)

What are the Books of 1 and 2 Kings about?

These books are about what happened to the people of Israel, from the time of King Solomon to the time both the northern and southern kingdoms were destroyed. These books describe how Israel split into two kingdoms after Solomon died. It also tells about all the kings that ruled over each kingdom after Solomon died.

In the southern kingdom, some kings did what Yahweh judged to be right. For example, King Josiah repaired the temple and reformed the worship of Yahweh. He responded to the high priest finding a copy of the Law of Yahweh in Jerusalem (2 Kings 22-23). However, all of the kings of the northern kingdom were wicked.

The Assyrians destroyed the northern kingdom in 722 B.C. The Babylonians destroyed the southern kingdom in 586 B.C.

How should the title of this book be translated?

The Books of 1 and 2 Kings were originally one book in Hebrew. They were separated into two books when translated into Greek. Translators might choose more meaningful titles such as "The First Book about the Kings" and "The Second Book about the Kings."

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

What is the purpose of 1 and 2 Kings?

These books were probably finished during the exile, after the Babylonians had destroyed the temple. They show how being faithful to Yahweh results in his blessing and prospering his people. Worshipping idols and not being faithful result in their being punished and destroyed.

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

Why do the Books of 1 and 2 Kings refer to someone being addressed indirectly?

In the Bible, people often referred to themselves as "your servant" when speaking to anyone in a superior position to themselves. Indirectly addressing people in this way was intended to honor the one addressed. English sometimes uses the address "sir" in this way. But a translator should use whatever expressions that are natural in the project language in order to honor someone in a superior position.

What does the king “did what was right (or) evil in the eyes of Yahweh” mean?

The writer repeats this kind of expression throughout the Books of 1 and 2 Kings. Here “in the eyes of Yahweh” represents what Yahweh thinks about someone. If a king was faithful and obeyed the covenant, he did what was right according to Yahweh. If he was not faithful and disobeyed the covenant, he did what was evil according to Yahweh.

What is the meaning of the term “Israel”?

The name “Israel” is used in many different ways in the Bible. Jacob was the son of Isaac. God changed Jacob’s name to Israel. The descendants of Jacob became a nation also called Israel. Eventually, the nation of Israel split into two kingdoms. The northern kingdom was named Israel. The southern kingdom was named Judah. (See: [Israel, Israelites](#))

What does the phrase “to this day” mean?

This phrase was used by the narrator to refer to the time when he was writing. The translator should be aware that “to this day” refers to a time already passed. The translator might decide to say, “to this day, at the time when this is being written,” or, “to this day, at the time of writing.” This Hebrew phrase occurs in 2 Kings 2:22; 8:22; 10:27; 14:7; 16:6; 17:23, 34, 41.

Can I translate 2 Kings before 1 Kings?

The Book of 1 Kings should be translated before 2 Kings, since 2 Kings continues from where 1 Kings ends.

2 Kings 1

2 Kings 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting

2 Kings is a continuation of 1 Kings.

The story of Elijah continues in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

God's sovereignty

God is in control of the future. King Ahaziah sent messengers to ask the Philistine god if he would recover from his fall, but this god does not know the future. Because he asked another god instead of Yahweh, Elijah sent the messengers to tell Ahaziah that he would not recover. (See: [god](#), [false god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolater](#), [idolatrous](#), [idolatry](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Rhetorical question

Elijah rebuked the king with a rhetorical question: "Is it because there is no God in Israel that you are going to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron?" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

2 Kings 1:1

Moab rebelled

“The people who lived in Moab rebelled”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moab, Moabite](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel](#)
- [the country of Moab](#)

ULT

¹ Moab rebelled against Israel after the death of Ahab.

UST

¹ After King Ahab died, [the country of Moab](#) rebelled against [Israel](#).

2 Kings 1:2

the lattice in his upper chamber

The upper room was built on the roof of the palace. The lattice was made of thin boards decoratively crossed over one another to form a balcony or window covering. Alternate translation: "the wooden boards around the flat roof of his palace" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Baal-Zebub

(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- God
- messenger
- walk, walked
- seek, search, look for
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- I will recover
- the god of
- messengers
- Go
- and ask of
- fell

ULT

² Then Ahaziah fell down through the lattice in his upper chamber in Samaria, and was injured. So he sent for messengers and said to them, "Go, ask Baal-Zebub, the god of Ekron, whether I will recover from this injury."

UST

² One day, Ahaziah, the new king of Israel, [fell](#) through the wooden slats in his upstairs room, in his palace in Samaria, and was injured. So he sent for his [messengers](#) and commanded them, "[Go and ask of](#) Baal-Zebub, [the god of](#) Ekron, whether or not [I will recover](#) from this injury."

2 Kings 1:3

Yahweh

This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.

the Tishbite

This refers to someone from the city of Tishbe. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Is it because there is no God in Israel that you are going to consult with Baal-Zebub, the god of Ekron?

This rhetorical question is asked as a rebuke for consulting Baal-Zebub. This may be written as a statement. This is irony because they are definitely aware of the God of Israel. Alternate translation: “You fools! You know there is a God in Israel, but you were acting as though you did not know when you sent men to consult Baal-Zebub, the god of Ekron!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Irony](#))

consult with Baal-Zebub

The word “consult” means to get the opinion of someone about a question.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Samaria, Samaritan
- messenger
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked
- seek, search, look for

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Baal-Zebub whether you will recover
- But the angel from Yahweh
- Israel that you wish
- of Samaria
- is sending some messengers to
- The king
- Israel that you wish
- to ask

ULT

³ But the angel of Yahweh said to Elijah the Tishbite, “Arise, go up to meet the messengers of the king of Samaria, and ask them, ‘Is it because there is no God in Israel that you are going to consult with Baal-Zebub, the god of Ekron?’

UST

³ [But the angel from Yahweh](#) said to Elijah, the prophet from the city of Tishbe, “[The king of Samaria is sending some messengers to](#) Ekron. Go and meet them and say to them, ‘Is it because there is no [God](#) in [Israel that you wish to ask Baal-Zebub whether you will recover?](#)’

2 Kings 1:4

Therefore Yahweh says

This is Yahweh's message to King Ahaziah. Alternate translation: "Therefore Yahweh says to King Ahaziah" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

You will not come down from the bed to where you have gone up

When King Ahaziah was injured, he was placed in a bed. Yahweh said that he will never become well and be able to get out of the bed. Alternate translation: "You will not recover and you will not get up from the bed on which you are lying" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

⁴ Therefore Yahweh says, "You will not come down from the bed to where you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die." Then Elijah left.

UST

⁴ [Yahweh](#) says that you should tell King Ahaziah that he will not recover from his being injured; he will surely die." Then Elijah left.

2 Kings 1:5

When the messengers returned to Ahaziah

After meeting with Elijah, the messengers returned to the king instead of going to Ekron. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [restore](#), [restoration](#)
- [return](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [come back](#)
- [and they returned to the king instead of going to Ekron](#)

ULT

⁵ When the messengers returned to Ahaziah, he said to them, "Why have you returned?"

UST

⁵ So Elijah went to meet the messengers and told that to them, [and they returned to the king instead of going to Ekron](#). The king asked them, "Why have you [come back](#) so quickly?"

2 Kings 1:6

Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal-Zebub, the god of Ekron?

This rhetorical question is asked as a rebuke for consulting Baal-Zebub. This may be written as a statement. This is irony because they are definitely aware of the God of Israel. See how you translated a similar question in [2 Kings 3:3](#). Alternate translation: "You fools! You know there is a God in Israel, but you were acting as though you did not know when you sent men to consult Baal-Zebub, the god of Ekron!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up

When King Ahaziah was injured, he was placed in a bed. Yahweh said that he will never become well and be able to get out of the bed. See how you translated this statement in [2 Kings 3:4](#). Alternate translation: "you will not recover and you will not get up from the bed on which you are lying" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- Israel, Israelites
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked
- seek, search, look for

Translation Words - UST

- no God
- Baal-Zebub whether you will recover
- Yahweh
- back
- in Israel
- the king
- Go
- that you wish to ask

ULT

⁶ They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal-Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'""

UST

⁶ They replied, "A man came to meet us and said to us, '[Go back to the king](#) who sent you and tell him that [Yahweh](#) says, "'Is it because there is [no God in Israel](#) that you wish to ask [Baal-Zebub whether you will recover](#)'? Go tell the king that he will not recover from being injured; instead, he will surely die.'""

2 Kings 1:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [judge, judgment](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [what did he look like](#)

ULT

⁷ Ahaziah said to his messengers, "What sort of man was he, the one who came up to meet you and said these words to you?"

UST

⁷ The king said to them, "The man who came to meet you and told that to you, [what did he look like?](#)"

2 Kings 1:8

He wore a garment made of hair

Possible meanings are 1) this is a metaphor that speaks of him being very hairy as if his hair were a garment. Alternate translation: "He was very hairy" or 2) "His clothes were made from animal hair" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- bind, bond, bound

Translation Words - UST

- He was wearing a cloak made from camel

ULT

⁸ They answered him, "He wore a garment made of hair and had a leather belt wrapped around his waist." So the king replied, "That is Elijah the Tishbite."

UST

⁸ They replied, "[He was wearing a cloak made from camel](#) hair and had a wide leather belt around his waist." The king exclaimed, "That must be Elijah!"

2 Kings 1:9

Then the king sent a captain with fifty soldiers to Elijah

The king sent the leader of the army with fifty men to bring Elijah back to him. Alternate translation: "Then the king sent a captain with fifty soldiers to seize Elijah" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

fifty soldiers

"50 soldiers" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- head
- king, kingdom, kingship
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

- Prophet
- the top
- the king
- an officer

ULT

⁹ Then the king sent a captain with fifty soldiers to Elijah. The captain went up to Elijah where he was sitting on the top of a hill. The captain spoke to him, "You, man of God, the king has said, 'Come down.'"

UST

⁹ Then the king sent [an officer](#) with fifty soldiers to seize Elijah. They found Elijah sitting on [the top](#) of a hill. The officer called out to him, "[Prophet, the king](#) commands that you come down here!"

2 Kings 1:10

If I am a man of God, let fire come down from heaven

The captain had called Elijah a man of God, but the captain and the king did not show Elijah proper respect. Elijah said this so that fire would come down from heaven, and this would prove that Elijah really was a man of God and he deserved their respect. Alternate translation: "Since I am a man of God, let fire come down from heaven" or "If I am a man of God as you have said, let fire come down from heaven"

from heaven

"from the sky"

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly (2)
- God
- devour
- devour
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot (2)
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

- the sky
- the sky (2)
- a prophet
- and burn up you and your
- and completely burned up
- fire
- Immediately, fire (2)
- the officer

ULT

¹⁰ Elijah answered and said to the captain, "If I am a man of God, let fire come down from heaven and consume you and your fifty men." Then fire came down from heaven and consumed him and his fifty men.

UST

¹⁰ But Elijah replied to [the officer](#), "I am [a prophet](#), so I command that [fire](#) come down from [the sky and burn up you and your](#) fifty soldiers!" [Immediately, fire](#) came down from [the sky and completely burned up](#) the officer and his fifty soldiers.

2 Kings 1:11

fifty soldiers

"50 soldiers" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- king, kingdom, kingship
- return
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

- Prophet
- the king
- another officer
- and the officer

ULT

11 Again King Ahaziah sent to Elijah another captain with fifty soldiers. This captain also said to Elijah, "You, man of God, the king says, 'Come down quickly.'"

UST

11 When the king found out about that, he sent [another officer](#) with fifty more soldiers. They went to where Elijah was, [and the officer](#) called out to him, "[Prophet, the king](#) commands that you come down immediately!"

2 Kings 1:12

If I am a man of God, let fire come down from heaven

The captain had called Elijah a man of God, but the captain and the king did not show Elijah proper respect. Elijah said this so that fire would come down from heaven, and this would prove that Elijah really was a man of God and he deserved their respect. See how you translated this phrase in [2 Kings 1:10](#). Alternate translation: “Since I am a man of God, let fire come down from heaven” or “If I am a man of God as you have said, let fire come down from heaven”

fire of God

This means that the fire came from God. Alternate translation: “fire from God” (See: [Possession](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#) (2)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [devour](#)
- [devour](#)
- [fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot](#)
- [fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the sky](#)
- [the sky and killed](#) (2)
- [a prophet](#)
- [from God](#)
- [and kill you](#)
- [that officer](#)
- [fire](#)
- [Then a fire](#)

ULT

¹² Elijah answered and said to them, “If I am a man of God, let fire come down from heaven and consume you and your fifty men.” Again the fire of God came down from heaven and consumed him and his fifty men.

UST

¹² But Elijah replied, “I am [a prophet](#), so I command that [fire](#) come down from [the sky and kill you](#) and your soldiers!” [Then a fire from God](#) came down from [the sky and killed that officer](#) and his soldiers.

2 Kings 1:13

fifty warriors

"50 warriors" or "50 soldiers" (See: [Numbers](#))

implored him

"begged him"

these fifty servants of yours

The captain says that his servants are Elijah's servants to show him honor. AT "my fifty soldiers" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

let my life and the life of...be precious in your sight

Here Elijah's "sight" represents him judgement or evaluation. The captain is pleading with Elijah to let them live. Alternate translation: "please consider my life and the life of...as precious to you" or "consider my life and the life of...to be of worth to you and do not kill us" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- God
- return
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility (2)
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- fifty soldiers, and do not kill us
- Prophet
- another officer with
- still...more
- the officer (2)
- fifty soldiers, and do not kill us

ULT

13 Yet again the king sent a third group of fifty warriors. This captain went up, fell on his knees before Elijah, and implored him and said to him, "You, man of God, I ask you, let my life and the life of these fifty servants of yours be precious in your sight.

UST

13 When the king heard about that, he sent [still another officer with](#) fifty [more](#) soldiers. They went to where Elijah was; [the officer](#) prostrated himself in front of Elijah and said to him, "[Prophet](#), I plead with you, be kind to me and my [fifty soldiers, and do not kill us!](#)"

2 Kings 1:14

let my life be precious in your sight

Here Elijah's "sight" represents him judgement or evaluation. The captain is repeating his request for Elijah to show kindness to him and let him live. Alternate translation: "please be kind to me" or "please allow me to live" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- devour
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

- So now, please be kind to me
- the sky
- and killed
- We know that...fire
- officers and

ULT

14 Indeed, fire came down from heaven and consumed the first two captains with their men, but now let my life be precious in your sight."

UST

14 [We know that](#) two times [fire](#) came down from [the sky and killed officers and](#) the soldiers with them. [So now, please be kind to me!](#)"

2 Kings 1:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- Yahweh
- messenger
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Do...be afraid of him
- Then...from Yahweh
- the angel
- the king

ULT

¹⁵ The angel of Yahweh said to Elijah, "Go down with him. Do not be afraid of him." So Elijah arose and went down with him to the king.

UST

¹⁵ Then [the angel from Yahweh](#) said to Elijah, "Go down and go with him. Do not [be afraid of him](#)." So Elijah went with them to [the king](#).

2 Kings 1:16

Is it because there is no God in Israel from whom you can ask for information?

This rhetorical question is asked as a rebuke for consulting Baal-Zebub. This may be written as a statement. This is irony because the king is definitely aware of the God of Israel. Alternate translation: "You must think there is no God in Israel whom you may ask for information!" or "You fool! You know there is a God in Israel to consult, but you acted as if you did not know." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Irony](#))

you will not come down from the bed where you have gone up

When King Ahaziah was injured, he was placed in a bed. Yahweh said that he will never become well and be able to get out of the bed. See how you translated this statement in [2 Kings 3:4](#). Alternate translation: "you will not recover and you will not get up from the bed where you are lying" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- messenger
- seek, search, look for
- seek, search, look for

Translation Words - UST

- God
- god, whether you would recover
- Yahweh
- in Israel to consult
- You...messengers
- to ask
- in Israel to consult

ULT

¹⁶ Later Elijah said to Ahaziah, "This is what Yahweh says, 'You have sent messengers to consult with Baal-Zebub, the god of Ekron. Is it because there is no God in Israel from whom you can ask for information? So now, you will not come down from the bed where you have gone up; you will certainly die.'"

UST

¹⁶ When Elijah arrived, he said to the king, "This is what [Yahweh](#) says: 'You sent [messengers](#) to go to Ekron [to ask](#) Baal-Zebub, their [god, whether you would recover](#). You acted as though there is no [God in Israel to consult](#). So you will not recover from being injured; instead, you are going to die!'"

2 Kings 1:17

the word of Yahweh that Elijah had spoken

“what Yahweh had told Elijah that Elijah had spoken”

in the second year of Jehoram son of Jehoshaphat king of Judah

This describes the time that Joram began to reign over Israel by stating how long Jehoram had been reigning over Jerusalem.

Alternate translation: “in the second year that Jehoram son of Jehoshaphat was king of Judah” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Yahweh
- Judea
- Jehoshaphat
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- reign, rule
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Ahaziah's younger brother Joram
- son of Jehoshaphat, had been ruling Judah for almost
- So Ahaziah...which is what Yahweh
- Ahaziah
- Ahaziah's younger brother Joram
- died
- became the new king
- Ahaziah's brother became the king

ULT

17 So King Ahaziah died according to the word of Yahweh that Elijah had spoken. Joram began to reign in his place, in the second year of Jehoram son of Jehoshaphat king of Judah, because Ahaziah had no son.

UST

17 [So Ahaziah died, which is what Yahweh](#) told Elijah would happen. [Ahaziah's younger brother Joram became the new king](#), at the same time that Jehoram [son of Jehoshaphat, had been ruling Judah for almost](#) two years. [Ahaziah's brother became the king](#) because [Ahaziah](#) had no son to become the king.

2 Kings 1:18

are they not written...Israel?

This rhetorical question can be written as a statement. It can also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they are written...Israel." or "someone has written about them in...Israel." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Israel](#)
- [Events of the Kings](#)

ULT

18 As for the other matters concerning Ahaziah, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

UST

18 If you want to know about all the other things that Ahaziah did, they are written in the Book of the [Events of the Kings of Israel](#).

2 Kings 2

2 Kings 2 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter ends the story of Elijah and begins the story of Elisha.

Special concepts in this chapter

Elisha replaces Elijah as the chief prophet of God. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

2 Kings 2:1

So it came about

“So it happened.” This phrase is used to introduce the next event in the story line. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

a whirlwind

a strong wind that spins around and around

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#)
- [When Yahweh](#)

ULT

¹ So it came about, when Yahweh was going to take up Elijah by a whirlwind into heaven, that Elijah left with Elisha from Gilgal.

UST

¹ [When Yahweh](#) was about to take the prophet Elijah up to [heaven](#) in a whirlwind, Elijah and his fellow prophet Elisha were traveling south from Gilgal.

2 Kings 2:2

As Yahweh lives, and as you live

"As surely as Yahweh lives and as you live." Here Elisha compares the certainty that Yahweh and Elijah are alive to the certainty of what he is saying. This is a way of making a solemn promise. Alternate translation: "I solemnly promise you that" (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [forsake, forsaken, leave](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [lives](#)
- [Just as certainly as](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [I will not leave you](#)

ULT

² Elijah said to Elisha, "Stay here, please, because Yahweh has sent me to Bethel." Elisha replied, "As Yahweh lives, and as you live, I will not leave you." So they went down to Bethel.

UST

² Elijah said to Elisha, "Stay here, because [Yahweh](#) has told only me to go to the city of Bethel." But Elisha replied, "[Just as certainly as Yahweh lives](#) and you live, [I will not leave you!](#)" So they went down together to Bethel.

2 Kings 2:3

The sons of the prophets

This does not mean that they were the sons of prophets, but rather, that they were a group of prophets. Alternate translation: "A group of men who were prophets" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- command, commandment
- son
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh
- head
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- your
- came
- An association
- of prophets
- Yahweh is going
- about it
- I know that

ULT

³ The sons of the prophets who were at Bethel came to Elisha and said to him, "Do you know that Yahweh will take away your master from you today?" Elisha replied, "Yes, I know it, but do not talk about it."

UST

³ [An association of prophets](#) at Bethel [came](#) to Elisha and Elijah; they asked Elisha, "Do you know that [Yahweh is going](#) to take [your](#) master Elijah away from you today?" Elisha answered, "Certainly [I know that](#), but do not talk [about it](#)!"

2 Kings 2:4

As Yahweh lives, and as you live, I will not leave you

"As surely as Yahweh lives and as you live, I will not leave you." Here Elisha compares the certainty that Yahweh and Elijah are alive to the certainty of what he is saying. This is a way of making a solemn promise. See how you translated this phrase in [2 Kings 2:2](#). Alternate translation: "I solemnly promise you that I will not leave you" (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Jericho
- Jericho
- forsake, forsaken, leave

Translation Words - UST

- lives
- Just as certainly as
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- to Jericho
- to the city of Jericho
- I will not leave you

ULT

⁴ Elijah said to him, "Elisha, wait here, please, for Yahweh has sent me to Jericho." Then Elisha replied, "As Yahweh lives, and as you live, I will not leave you." So they went to Jericho.

UST

⁴ Then Elijah said to Elisha, "Stay here, because [Yahweh](#) has told only me to go [to Jericho](#)." But Elisha replied again, "[Just as certainly as Yahweh lives](#) and you live, [I will not leave you](#)!" So they went together [to the city of Jericho](#).

2 Kings 2:5

Then the sons of the prophets who were at Jericho came to Elisha and said to him

"When Elijah and Elisha came near Jericho, the sons of the prophets who were from there said to Elisha"

the sons of the prophets

This does not mean that they were the sons of prophets, but rather, that they were a group of prophets. See how you translated this phrase in [2 Kings 2:3](#). Alternate translation: "the group of men who were prophets" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh
- Jericho
- head
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- your
- another association
- As they neared...of prophets
- Yahweh is going to
- Jericho
- about it
- I know that

ULT

⁵ Then the sons of the prophets who were at Jericho came to Elisha and said to him, "Do you know that Yahweh will take away your master from you today?" Elisha answered, "Yes, I know it, but do not talk about it."

UST

⁵ [As they neared Jericho, another association of prophets](#) who were from there came to Elisha and said to him, "Do you know that [Yahweh is going to](#) take [your](#) master Elijah away from you today?" He answered again, "Certainly [I know that](#), but do not talk [about it!](#)"

2 Kings 2:6

As Yahweh lives, and as you live, I will not leave you

"As surely as Yahweh lives and as you live, I will not leave you." Here Elisha compares the certainty that Yahweh and Elijah are alive to the certainty of what he is saying. This is a way of making a solemn promise. See how you translated this phrase in [2 Kings 2:2](#). Alternate translation: "I solemnly promise you that I will not leave you" (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jordan River, Jordan](#)
- [forsake, forsaken, leave](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [lives](#)
- [and you live](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [As certainly as Yahweh](#)
- [to the Jordan River." But again Elisha replied](#)
- [I will not leave you](#)

ULT

⁶ Then Elijah said to him, "Stay here, please, for Yahweh has sent me to the Jordan." Elisha replied, "As Yahweh lives, and as you live, I will not leave you." So the two went on.

UST

⁶ Then Elijah said to Elisha, "Stay here, because [Yahweh](#) has told only me to go to the Jordan River." But again Elisha replied, "[As certainly as Yahweh lives and you live, I will not leave you!](#)" So they continued walking together.

2 Kings 2:7

fifty of the sons

"50 of the sons" (See: [Numbers](#))

the sons of the prophets

This does not mean that they were the sons of prophets, but rather, that they were a group of prophets. See how you translated this phrase in [2 Kings 2:3](#). Alternate translation: "the group of men who were prophets" (See: [Idiom](#))

stood opposite them

This means that they were standing, facing them. Alternate translation: "stood facing them" or "stood watching them" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- appoint, appointed
- Jordan River, Jordan
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- from the association
- of prophets who were from Jericho
- as Elijah and Elisha stopped
- of the Jordan River
- also went

ULT

⁷ Later, fifty of the sons of the prophets stood opposite them at a distance while the two stood by the Jordan.

UST

⁷ Fifty men [from the association of prophets who were from Jericho also went](#), but they watched from a distance [as Elijah and Elisha stopped](#) at the edge [of the Jordan River](#).

2 Kings 2:8

cloak

outer piece of clothing used as a covering

The river divided on both sides so that the two of them walked over on dry ground

“The water of the Jordan River opened up so there was a dry path for Elijah and Elisha to cross over to the other side”

on both sides

“to the right and the left.” This refers to the right and the left of where Elijah struck the water.

Translation Words - ULT

- [preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [walked across](#)

ULT

⁸ Elijah took his cloak, rolled it up, and struck the water with it. The river divided on both sides so that the two of them walked over on dry ground.

UST

⁸ Then Elijah rolled up his cloak and struck the water with it. A path opened up for them through the river, and they [walked across](#) as though they were on dry ground.

2 Kings 2:9

It came about

"it happened"

crossed over

This refers to crossing the Jordan River. Alternate translation: "crossed over the Jordan River" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

before I am taken from you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "before Yahweh takes me from you" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

a double portion of your spirit

Here Elijah's spirit refers to his spiritual power. Alternate translation: "twice as much of your spiritual power" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [spirit, spiritual](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [you to enable me to very powerfully continue your ministry](#)

ULT

⁹ It came about, after they had crossed over, that Elijah said to Elisha, "Ask me what I should do for you before I am taken from you." Elisha replied, "Please let a double portion of your spirit come on me."

UST

⁹ When they came to the other side, Elijah said to Elisha, "What do you want me to do for you before I am taken away?" Elisha replied, "I want [you to enable me to very powerfully continue your ministry.](#)"

2 Kings 2:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

¹⁰ Elijah answered, "You have asked for a difficult thing. Nevertheless, if you see me when I am taken from you, this will happen for you, but if not, it will not happen."

UST

¹⁰ Elijah replied, "You have asked for something which is difficult for me to make happen. But if you see me when I am taken from you, you will get what you are requesting. But if you do not see me, then you will not get it."

2 Kings 2:11

behold

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

a chariot of fire and horses of fire

Here the phrase “of fire” means that these were surround by fire.
Alternate translation: “a chariot surrounded by fire pulled by horses surrounded by fire” (See: [Possession](#))

went up by a whirlwind into heaven

“was carried into the sky by a whirlwind.” Translate the word “whirlwind” the same as you did in [2 Kings 2:1](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot](#)
- [fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [horse, warhorse, horseback](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [heaven](#)
- [surrounded by fire, appeared](#)
- [surrounded by fire](#)
- [walking](#)
- [walking](#)
- [pulled by horses](#)

ULT

11 As they still went on and talked, behold, a chariot of fire and horses of fire appeared, which separated the two men from each other, and Elijah went up by a whirlwind into heaven.

UST

11 As they were [walking](#) and talking, suddenly a chariot [surrounded by fire pulled by horses surrounded by fire, appeared](#). The chariot driver drove the chariot between Elijah and Elisha and separated them. Then Elijah was taken up to [heaven](#) in a whirlwind.

2 Kings 2:12

My father, my father

Elisha is calling Elijah his respected leader.

tore them into two pieces

People would often tear their clothes as a sign of great sadness or grief. Alternate translation: “ripped them in two pieces to show his great sadness” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- horseman
- cry, cry out, outcry

Translation Words - UST

- The Israelite
- My father
- My father
- and their drivers have taken my master away
- He cried out

ULT

¹² Elisha saw it and cried out, “My father, my father, the chariots of Israel and their horsemen!” He saw Elijah no more, and he took hold of his own clothes and tore them into two pieces.

UST

¹² Elisha saw it. [He cried out](#), “[My father! My father! The Israelite](#) chariots [and their drivers have taken my master away!](#)” They disappeared into the sky, and Elisha never saw Elijah again. Then Elisha tore his own robe into two pieces to show that he was deeply saddened.

2 Kings 2:13

cloak

The cloak was the outer clothing of a prophet. It was the sign of his job. When Elisha took Elijah's cloak he was saying he was taking Elijah's place as prophet.

Translation Words - ULT

- [exalt, exalted, exaltation](#)
- [Jordan River, Jordan](#)
- [return](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [was taken away](#)
- [of the Jordan River](#)
- [and returned](#)

ULT

13 He picked up Elijah's cloak that had fallen off him, and went back to stand by the bank of the Jordan.

UST

13 Elijah's cloak had fallen off when he [was taken away](#), so Elisha picked it up [and returned](#) to the bank [of the Jordan River](#).

2 Kings 2:14

Where is Yahweh, the God of Elijah?

Elisha is asking if Yahweh is with him as he was with Elijah. Alternate translation: "Yahweh, the God of Elijah, are you here with me?" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

they divided on both sides and Elisha crossed over

The river separated and Elisha walked to the other side on dry ground, the same way he did previously when he was with Elijah.

on both sides

"to the right and the left." This refers to the right and the left of where Elijah struck the water.

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the God of](#)
- [Is Yahweh](#)
- [went across](#)

ULT

14 He struck the water with Elijah's cloak that had fallen and said, "Where is Yahweh, the God of Elijah?" When he had struck the waters, they divided on both sides and Elisha crossed over.

UST

14 He rolled up the cloak and struck the water with it, and cried out, "[Is Yahweh, the God of](#) Elijah, here with me, too?" Then the water separated, and a path opened up for him, and Elisha [went across](#).

2 Kings 2:15

the sons of the prophets

This does not mean that they were the sons of prophets, but rather, that they were a group of prophets. See how you translated this phrase in [2 Kings 2:3](#). Alternate translation: “the group of prophets” (See: [Idiom](#))

bowed themselves to the ground before him

They are showing him deep respect and acknowledging him as their new leader.

The spirit of Elijah does rest on Elisha

Here Elijah’s “spirit” refers to his spiritual power. This speaks of Elisha having this spiritual power as if it were something that physically rested upon him. Alternate translation: “Elisha does have the same spiritual power that Elijah did” or “The spiritual power Elijah had is now with Elisha” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- spirit, spiritual
- prostrate, worship
- Jericho
- earth, earthen, earthly
- rest, rested, restless

Translation Words - UST

- When the association of prophets
- When the association of prophets
- The Spirit of God
- and bowed down
- from Jericho
- and bowed down
- has now given the same ability

ULT

15 When the sons of the prophets who were from Jericho saw him across from them, they said, “The spirit of Elijah does rest on Elisha!” So they came to meet him, and bowed themselves to the ground before him.

UST

15 [When the association of prophets from Jericho](#) saw what happened, they exclaimed, “[The Spirit of God has now given the same ability](#) to Elisha that Elijah had!” They walked over to Elisha [and bowed down](#) in front of him.

2 Kings 2:16

See now, among your servants there are fifty strong men. Let them go

These men are referring to themselves when they say “fifty strong men.” Alternate translation: “See now, we are fifty strong men and we are now your servants. Let us go” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

fifty strong men

“50 strong men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- spirit, spiritual
- Yahweh
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- walk, walked
- seek, search, look for
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- your master
- strongest men
- the Spirit of
- Yahweh
- strongest men
- will go
- and search for
- Sir...permit us...of our

ULT

¹⁶ They said to him, “See now, among your servants there are fifty strong men. Let them go, we ask, and look for your master, in case the Spirit of Yahweh has taken him up and thrown him onto some mountain or into some valley.” Elisha answered, “No, do not send them.”

UST

¹⁶ One of them said, “[Sir](#), if you [permit us](#), fifty [of our strongest men will go and search for your master](#) on the other side of the river. Perhaps [the Spirit of Yahweh](#) has left him on some mountain or in some valley.” Elisha replied, “No, do not send them.”

2 Kings 2:17

But when they urged Elisha until he was ashamed

The sons of the prophets kept asking Elisha until he felt bad about saying “no.” Alternate translation: “They kept asking Elisha until he felt bad for denying their request, so” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
- seek, search, look for

Translation Words - UST

- But they continued to urge him. Finally he was tired
- searched

ULT

17 But when they urged Elisha until he was ashamed, he said, “Send them.” Then they sent fifty men, and they looked for three days, but did not find him.

UST

17 [But they continued to urge him.](#) [Finally he was tired](#) of saying “No,” and he said, “Very well, send them.” So fifty men [searched](#) for three days, but they did not find Elijah.

2 Kings 2:18

Did I not say to you, 'Do not go'?

Elisha uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that he had told them previously what would happen. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "I told you that you should not go, because you would not find him!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jericho](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [return](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jericho](#)
- [go](#)
- [They returned to](#)

ULT

¹⁸ They came back to Elisha, while he stayed at Jericho, and he said to them, "Did I not say to you, 'Do not go?'"

UST

¹⁸ [They returned to Jericho](#), and Elisha was still there. He said to them, "I told you that you should not [go](#), because you would not find him!"

2 Kings 2:19

The men of the city

"The leaders of the city"

the situation of this city is pleasant

This means that the city is located in a good place. Alternate translation: "this city is in a good place" or "this city is in a good location" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

as my master can see

The men refer to Elisha here as "my master" to honor him.

fruitful

producing good crops

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- evil, wicked, unpleasant

Translation Words - UST

- One of them said, "Our master, we have a problem
- this is a very nice
- is bad, and as a result

ULT

¹⁹ The men of the city said to Elisha, "See, we beg of you, the situation of this city is pleasant, as my master can see, but the water is bad and the land is not fruitful."

UST

¹⁹ Then the leaders of Jericho came to talk with Elisha. [One of them said, "Our master, we have a problem.](#) You can see that [this is a very nice](#) place to live in. But the water [is bad, and as a result,](#) crops will not grow on the land."

2 Kings 2:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Put](#)

ULT

²⁰ Elisha replied, "Bring me a new bowl and put salt in it," so they brought it to him.

UST

²⁰ Elisha said to them, "[Put](#) some salt in a new bowl and bring the bowl to me." So they brought it to him.

2 Kings 2:21

healed these waters

This speaks of Yahweh making the bad water pure as if he healed it. Alternate translation: “made the waters pure” (See: [Metaphor](#))

there will be no more death or unfruitful land

This refers to things caused by the bad water. This also can be written in positive form. Alternate translation: “there will be no more death or problems with crops caused by this water” or “from now on this water will bring life and help the land become fruitful” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [out to](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

21 Elisha went out to the spring of water and threw salt in it; then he said, “Yahweh says this, ‘I have healed these waters. From this time on, there will be no more death or unfruitful land.’”

UST

21 Then Elisha went [out to](#) the spring from which the people in the town got water. He threw the salt into the spring. Then he said, “This is what [Yahweh](#) says: ‘I have made this water good. No one will die anymore because of bad water, and the land will grow fruitful crops.’”

2 Kings 2:22

the waters were healed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the waters have remained pure” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

to this day,...spoke

This means that something remains in a certain condition until the present time. Alternate translation: “by the word which Elisha spoke, and have always remained pure since” (See: [Idiom](#))

ULT

22 So the waters were healed to this day, by the word which Elisha spoke.

UST

22 And the water became pure, just as Elisha said it would. Since that time it has always remained pure.

2 Kings 2:23

went up from there to Bethel

The phrase “went up” is used here because Bethel is higher in elevation than Jericho.

Go up

The young boys wanted Elisha to go away from them and expressed this by saying “go up.” Alternate translation: “Go away” (See: [Idiom](#))

baldhead

A bald person does not have any hair on their head. The young boys were mocking Elisha for having a bald head.

Translation Words - ULT

- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [a group of...boys](#)
- [Go](#)

ULT

23 Then Elisha went up from there to Bethel. As he was going up the road, young boys came out of the city and mocked him; they said to him, “Go up, you baldhead! Go up, you baldhead!”

UST

23 Elisha left Jericho and went up to Bethel. As he was walking along the road, [a group of](#) young [boys](#) from Bethel saw him and started to make fun of him. They continued shouting, “[Go](#) away, you bald-headed man!”

2 Kings 2:24

forty-two of the boys

"42 of the boys" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [curse](#), [cursed](#), [cursing](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Immediately...came](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [in the name of](#)
- [and reprimanded them](#)

ULT

²⁴ Elisha looked behind him and saw them; he called on Yahweh to curse them. Then two female bears came out of the woods and injured forty-two of the boys.

UST

²⁴ Elisha turned around [and reprimanded them in the name of Yahweh](#). [Immediately](#) two female bears [came](#) out of the woods and mauled forty-two of them.

2 Kings 2:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [restore](#), [restoration](#)
- [Samaria](#), [Samaritan](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [returned](#)
- [of Samaria](#)

ULT

²⁵ Then Elisha went from there to Mount Carmel, and from there he returned to Samaria.

UST

²⁵ Elisha left Bethel and went to Mount Carmel, and after that he [returned](#) to the city [of Samaria](#).

2 Kings 3

2 Kings 3 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of Elisha continues in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Victory and defeat

God is in control of victory and defeat. The armies of Israel, Judah and Edom united to attack Moab from the desert for failure to pay tribute. When they ran out of water, they were in desperate condition. Therefore, they asked Elisha (the prophet of God) what to do and he said God would give them water and victory over Moab. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Idiom

They described Elisha with the idiom, “who poured water on the hands of Elijah,” meaning “who served Elijah.” (See: [Idiom](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Anger

It is said that, “Anger came on Israel.” It is not clear who was angry or why they were angry.

2 Kings 3:1

in the eighteenth year of Jehoshaphat king of Judah

This describes the time that Joram began to reign by stating how long the current king of Judah had reigned. The meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “in the eighteenth year that Jehoshaphat was king of Judah” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the eighteenth year

“year 18” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Joram son of Ahab

Sometimes this man is referred to as “Jehoram.” This is not the same person as the man mentioned in [2 Kings 1:17](#) named “Jehoram.”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- reign, rule
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- of Israel
- Judah
- He ruled
- the king

ULT

¹ Now in the eighteenth year of Jehoshaphat king of Judah, Joram son of Ahab began to reign over Israel in Samaria; he reigned twelve years.

UST

¹ After Jehoshaphat had been ruling [Judah](#) for almost eighteen years, Ahab's [son](#) Joram became [the king of Israel](#). [He ruled](#) in the city of Samaria for twelve years.

2 Kings 3:2

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

Here “sight” refers to Yahweh’s thoughts or opinion. Alternate translation: “what Yahweh considers to be evil” or “what is evil in Yahweh’s judgement” (See: [Metaphor](#))

but not like his father and his mother

This compares how much evil he did to being less than the amount that his parents did. Alternate translation: “but he did not do as much evil as his father and mother had done” (See: [Simile](#))

the sacred stone pillar of Baal

This pillar was used in the worship of Baal, though it is unknown what the pillar looked like. Alternate translation: “the sacred stone pillar for worshiping Baal” (See: [Possession](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [evil](#)
- [his father had made](#)

ULT

² He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh, but not like his father and his mother; for he removed the sacred stone pillar of Baal that his father had made.

UST

² He did things that [Yahweh](#) said were evil, but he did not do as much [evil](#) as his father and mother had done, and he got rid of the stone pillar for worshiping Baal that [his father had made](#).

2 Kings 3:3

he held on to the sins

This is an idiom. Here "holding on" to something means to continue doing it. Alternate translation: "he continued to commit the sins" (See: [Idiom](#))

Nebat

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

he did not turn away from them

"Turning away" from something is an idiom which means to stop doing it. Alternate translation: "he did not stop committing those sins" or "he continued committing those sins" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [had committed](#)
- [committed the sins](#)
- [King Jeroboam](#)
- [and which induced the Israelite people](#)

ULT

³ Nevertheless he held on to the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat, who caused Israel to sin; he did not turn away from them.

UST

³ But he [committed the sins](#) that [King Jeroboam had committed and which induced the Israelite people](#) to sin, and he did not stop committing the same sins.

2 Kings 3:4

He had to give to the king of Israel 100,000 lambs and the wool of 100,000 rams

Mesha had to give these things to the king of Israel because his kingdom was controlled by the king of Israel. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “Every year he was forced to give 100,000 lambs and the wool from 100,000 rams to the king of Israel, because his kingdom was controlled by the king of Israel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

100,000 lambs...100,000 rams

“one hundred thousand lambs...one hundred thousand rams” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moab, Moabite](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins](#)
- [return](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Israel, because his kingdom was controlled by the king of Israel](#)
- [of Moab](#)
- [the king](#)
- [to the king](#)
- [from 100,000](#)
- [Every year he was forced to give](#)

ULT

⁴ Now Mesha king of Moab bred sheep. He had to give to the king of Israel 100,000 lambs and the wool of 100,000 rams.

UST

⁴ Mesha, [the king of Moab](#), raised sheep. [Every year he was forced to give 100,000 lambs and the wool from 100,000 rams to the king of Israel, because his kingdom was controlled by the king of Israel.](#)

2 Kings 3:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Moab, Moabite](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Israel](#)
- [Mesha](#)
- [the](#)
- [king](#)

ULT

⁵ But after Ahab died, the king of Moab rebelled against the king of Israel.

UST

⁵ But after King Ahab died, [Mesha](#) rebelled against [the king of Israel](#).

2 Kings 3:6

to mobilize all Israel for war

“to prepare the people of Israel for war.” Here “all Israel” refers to all of the Israelite soldiers. Alternate translation: “to mobilize all of the Israelite soldiers for war” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- appoint, appointed
- Israel, Israelites
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- to go to war
- left...to call together
- Israel
- So King

ULT

⁶ So King Joram left Samaria at that time to mobilize all Israel for war.

UST

⁶ [So King](#) Joram [left](#) Samaria [to call together](#) soldiers from across all [Israel](#) [to go to war](#).

2 Kings 3:7

General Information:

King Joram continues speaking to King Jehoshaphat.

Will you go with me against Moab to battle?

The word “you” refers to Jehoshaphat, but refers to both him and his army. Here “Moab” stands for “the army of Moab.” Alternate translation: “Will you and your army go with me to fight against the army of Moab?” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

I will go

Jehoshaphat is saying that he and his entire army will fight with King Joram against Moab. Alternate translation: “We will go with you” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

I am as you are, my people as your people, my horses as your horses

Jehoshaphat is letting Joram use himself, his people, and his horses for his purposes. He speaks of this as if they belonged to Joram. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “We are ready to do whatever you want us to. My soldiers and my horses are ready to help you” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

⁷ He sent a message to Jehoshaphat king of Judah, saying, “The king of Moab has rebelled against me. Will you go with me against Moab to battle?” Jehoshaphat replied, “I will go. I am as you are, my people as your people, my horses as your horses.”

UST

⁷ Then he sent this message to [Jehoshaphat, the king of Judah](#): “[The king of Moab](#) has rebelled against me. So will your army join my army and fight against [the army of Moab](#)?” Jehoshaphat replied, “Yes, we will help you. We are ready to do whatever you want us to. [My soldiers](#) and my horses are ready to help you.”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)
- [Moab, Moabite](#)
- [Moab, Moabite](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Judah](#)
- [of Moab](#)
- [the army of Moab](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [My soldiers](#)
- [My soldiers](#)
- [The king](#)
- [the king](#)

2 Kings 3:8

By way of the wilderness of Edom

"By going through the wilderness of Edom"

ULT

⁸ Then he said, "By which way should we attack?" Jehoshaphat answered, "By way of the wilderness of Edom."

UST

⁸ He asked, "On which road should we march to attack them?" Joram replied, "We will go south to Jerusalem, where your army will join us. Then we will all go south of the Dead Sea and then turn north through the wilderness of Edom."

2 Kings 3:9

the king of Israel went with the king of Judah and the king of Edom

This refers to the kings accompanied by their armies. Alternate translation: “the king of Israel and his army went with the king of Judah and his army and the king of Edom and his army” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

They wandered around

Possible meanings are 1) the kings were not sure where they were going, and so they changed direction often or 2) the kings knew where they were going and they walked around Moab ([2 Kings 3:8](#)).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Israel and his army](#)
- [of Judah](#)
- [So the king](#)

ULT

⁹ So the king of Israel went with the king of Judah and the king of Edom. They wandered around for seven days, and then there was no water for the army or for the animals that followed them.

UST

⁹ [So the king of Israel and his army](#) went with the kings [of Judah](#) and Edom and their armies. They marched for seven days. Then there was no water left for their soldiers or for their animals that carried supplies.

2 Kings 3:10

What is this? Has Yahweh called three kings to give them into the hand of Moab?

The king uses a rhetorical question to emphasize how ridiculous and terrible their situation is. This can be written as a statement.

Alternate translation: "It looks like Yahweh will allow all three of us to be captured by Moab!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

to give them into the hand of Moab

Here "Moab" refers to its army. Also, "the hand of Moab" refers to the "control" of Moab's army. Alternate translation: "to give us over to Moab's control" or "so the army of Moab will defeat us" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Moab, Moabite
- hand
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- It seems that Yahweh will allow
- It seems that Yahweh will allow
- of Israel
- of Moab
- to be captured by the army
- The king
- the three of us

ULT

¹⁰ So the king of Israel said, "What is this? Has Yahweh called three kings to give them into the hand of Moab?"

UST

¹⁰ [The king of Israel](#) exclaimed, "This is a terrible situation! [It seems that Yahweh will allow the three of us to be captured by the army of Moab!](#)"

2 Kings 3:11

Is there not here a prophet of Yahweh, that we may consult Yahweh by him?

Jehoshaphat uses a rhetorical question here to state that he is certain that there is a prophet there and to find out where he is. This may be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "I am sure there is a prophet of Yahweh here! Tell me where one is, so we may consult Yahweh by him." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Shaphat

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

who poured water on the hands of Elijah

This idiom means that he was Elijah's helper. The phrase "poured water on the hands" is a description of one of the ways he served Elijah. Alternate translation: "who was a helper to Elijah" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Jehoshaphat
- hand
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Is there a prophet
- Is there a prophet
- Yahweh
- Joram's army
- Jehoshaphat
- was...assistant
- Joram's army

ULT

¹¹ But Jehoshaphat said, "Is there not here a prophet of Yahweh, that we may consult Yahweh by him?" One of the king of Israel's servants answered and said, "Elisha son of Shaphat is here, who poured water on the hands of Elijah."

UST

¹¹ [Jehoshaphat](#) said, "[Is there a prophet](#) here who can ask [Yahweh](#) for us what we should do?" One of [Joram's army](#) officers said, "Elisha [son](#) of Shaphat, is here. He was Elijah's [assistant](#)."

2 Kings 3:12

The word of Yahweh is with him

This means that he is a prophet and that Yahweh tells him what to say. Alternate translation: "He speaks what Yahweh tells him to say" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

went down to him

They went to see Elijah and to consult with him about what they should do. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "went to see Elisha to ask him what they should do" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [So those three kings](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [So those three kings](#)

ULT

¹² [Jehoshaphat](#) said, "The word of Yahweh is with him." So the king of Israel, Jehoshaphat, and the king of Edom went down to him.

UST

¹² [Jehoshaphat](#) said, "It will be good to ask him, because he speaks what [Yahweh](#) tells him to say." [So those three kings](#) went to Elisha.

2 Kings 3:13

What have I to do with you?

Elisha uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that he and the king have nothing in common. This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I have nothing to do with you." or "I have nothing in common with you." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

to give them into the hand of Moab

Here the "hand of Moab" refers the Moab's "control." Alternate translation: "to give them over to the control of Moab" or "to allow them to be captured by the Moabite army" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Moab, Moabite
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- ask Yahweh
- those prophets
- consulted
- Yahweh has brought us three kings together in order to allow
- of Israel
- But Joram
- army of Moab
- that your father
- to capture us
- the king
- the
- to capture us
- Go and ask

ULT

¹³ Elisha said to the king of Israel, "What have I to do with you? Go to the prophets of your father and mother." So the king of Israel said to him, "No, because Yahweh has called these three kings together to give them into the hand of Moab."

UST

¹³ Elisha said to [the king of Israel](#), "Why do you come to me? [Go and ask those prophets that your father and mother consulted!](#)" [But Joram](#) replied, "No, we want you to [ask Yahweh](#), because it seems that [Yahweh has brought us three kings together in order to allow the army of Moab to capture us.](#)"

2 Kings 3:14

As Yahweh of hosts lives, before whom I stand, surely

"As I know that Yahweh of hosts lives, before whom I stand, surely."
Here Elisha compares the certainty that Yahweh is alive to the certainty that, if it were not for Jehoshaphat being there, he would not pay attention to Joram. This is a way of making a solemn promise. Alternate translation: "As surely as Yahweh of hosts lives, before whom I stand, I promise you, if it" (See: [Simile](#))

before whom I stand

Here serving Yahweh is spoken of as standing in his presence.
Alternate translation: "whom I serve" (See: [Metaphor](#))

were it not for the fact that I honor the presence of Jehoshaphat king of Judah, I would not pay any attention to you

This can be written in positive form. Alternate translation: "I pay attention to you only because I honor the presence of Jehoshaphat king of Judah" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

I honor the presence of Jehoshaphat

Here Jehoshaphat is referred to by his presence. Alternate translation: "I honor Jehoshaphat" (See: [Metonymy](#))

I would not pay any attention to you, or even look at you

These two phrases have similar meaning and are used together to emphasize that he would not pay any attention to Joram. Alternate translation: "I would not have anything at all to do with you" (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh
- Judea
- Jehoshaphat
- face, facial
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- lives
- I serve...the commander
- Yahweh
- of Judah
- Jehoshaphat
- As surely as he
- the king

ULT

¹⁴ Elisha replied, "As Yahweh of hosts lives, before whom I stand, surely were it not for the fact that I honor the presence of Jehoshaphat king of Judah, I would not pay any attention to you, or even look at you.

UST

¹⁴ Elisha replied, "[I serve Yahweh, the commander](#) of the armies of angels in heaven. [As surely as he lives](#), if I did not respect [Jehoshaphat the king of Judah](#), I would not even think about doing anything to help you.

2 Kings 3:15

Then it came to pass

“And it happened that”

harpist

someone who plays the harp

the hand of Yahweh came upon Elisha

Here Yahweh’s “hand” refers to his “power.” Alternate translation: “the power of Yahweh came upon Elisha” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [gave this message to Elisha](#)

ULT

¹⁵ But now bring me a musician.” Then it came to pass when the harpist played, the hand of Yahweh came upon Elisha.

UST

¹⁵ But bring a musician to me.” So they did that. When the musician played on his harp, [Yahweh gave this message to Elisha](#).

2 Kings 3:16

trenches

A trench is a long ditch that workers dig in the ground to collect water.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

16 He said, "Yahweh says this, 'Make this dry river valley full of trenches.'

UST

16 He said, "[Yahweh](#) says that he will cause this dry streambed to be full of water.

2 Kings 3:17

this river valley will be filled with water

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will fill this river valley with water" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

you will drink

This refers to drinking the water that Yahweh provides. Alternate translation: "you will drink the water" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [spirit, spiritual](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The result will be](#)
- [The result will be](#)
- [and your animals that carry supplies and your](#)

ULT

17 For Yahweh says this, 'You will not see wind, neither will you see rain, but this river valley will be filled with water, and you will drink, you and your livestock and all your animals.'

UST

17 [The result will be](#) that your soldiers [and your animals that carry supplies and your](#) livestock will have plenty of water to drink.

2 Kings 3:18

This is an easy thing in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment or evaluation.
Alternate translation: "Yahweh considers this as an easy thing to do" or "This is an easy thing for Yahweh to do" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [curse, cursed, cursing](#)
- [Moab, Moabite](#)
- [hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [for Yahweh](#)
- [But He will do more than that](#)
- [the army of Moab](#)
- [will also...to defeat](#)

ULT

18 This is an easy thing in the sight of Yahweh. He will also give you victory over the Moabites.

UST

18 That is not difficult [for Yahweh](#) to do. [But He will do more than that](#). He [will also](#) enable you [to defeat the army of Moab](#).

2 Kings 3:19

fortified city

A fortified city is well protected from enemies by such things as high walls or a easily defensible location.

ruin every good piece of land with rocks

This means to put rocks on the fertile land so that it is difficult to use. The meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "ruin every good piece of land by covering them with rocks" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

Translation Words - UST

- fruit
- their fertile fields

ULT

19 You will attack every fortified city and every good city, cut down every good tree, stop up all springs of water, and ruin every good piece of land with rocks."

UST

19 You will conquer all their beautiful cities, cities that have high walls around them. You must cut down all their [fruit](#) trees, stop water from flowing from their springs, and ruin [their fertile fields](#) by covering them with rocks."

2 Kings 3:20

there came water

“water began flowing”

the country was filled with water

“and soon the country became filled with water”

country

land, ground

Translation Words - ULT

- earth, earthen, earthly
- grain offering

Translation Words - UST

- the ground
- the sacrifices of grain

ULT

²⁰ So in the morning about the time of offering the sacrifice, there came water from the direction of Edom; the country was filled with water.

UST

²⁰ The next morning, at the time when they offered [the sacrifices of grain](#), they were surprised to see water flowing from Edom and covering [the ground](#).

2 Kings 3:21

Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the author tells background information about the Moabite army preparing to meet the three kings and their armies in battle. (See: [Background Information](#))

all who were able to put on armor

Here “armor” represents ability to fight. Alternate translation: “all the men who could fight” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the kings had come

Here the word “kings” refers to both the kings and their armies. Alternate translation: “the kings had come with their armies” or “the kings and their armies had come” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Moab, Moabite
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- When the people of Moab
- who were able to fight in battles
- the three kings

ULT

21 Now when all the Moabites heard that the kings had come to fight against them, they gathered themselves together, all who were able to put on armor, and they stood at the border.

UST

21 [When the people of Moab](#) heard that [the three kings](#) had come with their armies to fight against them, all the men [who were able to fight in battles](#), from the youngest men to the oldest ones, were summoned, and they took their positions at the southern border of their land.

2 Kings 3:22

it looked as red as blood

This compares the red appearance of the water to the color of blood.
Alternate translation: "it was red like blood" (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moab](#), [Moabite](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [appeared...be as](#)

ULT

²² They awakened early in the morning and the sun reflected on the water. When the Moabites saw the water opposite them, it looked as red as blood.

UST

²² But when they rose early the next morning, they saw that the water across from them [appeared](#) to [be as](#) red as blood.

2 Kings 3:23

So now, Moab

The soldiers are referring to themselves here as “Moab.” Alternate translation: “soldiers of Moab” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

plunder them

“steal their belongings.” After an army defeated their enemies, they would often plunder their towns by stealing whatever was left of value.

Translation Words - ULT

- [blood](#)
- [Moab](#), [Moabite](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [It is blood](#)
- [us](#)
- [The three enemy armies](#)

ULT

²³ They exclaimed, “This is blood! The kings have certainly been destroyed, and they have killed each other! So now, Moab, let us go plunder them!”

UST

²³ They exclaimed, “[It is blood!](#) [The three enemy armies](#) must have fought and killed each other! So let [us](#) go and take everything that they have left!”

2 Kings 3:24

camp of Israel

Here "Israel" refers only to the Israelite soldiers and not to the whole nation of Israel. Alternate translation: "the area where the Israelite soldiers had set up their tents" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

the Israelites surprised

Here "Israelites" refers only to the Israelite soldiers and not to the whole nation of Israel. Alternate translation: "the Israelite soldiers surprised" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

fled before them

"ran away from them"

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Moab, Moabite
- Moab, Moabite

Translation Words - UST

- Israelite soldiers
- But when they...the area where the
- the soldiers from Moab
- from Moab

ULT

24 When they came to the camp of Israel, the Israelites surprised them and attacked the Moabites, who fled before them. The army of Israel drove the Moabites across the land, killing them.

UST

24 [But when they](#) reached [the area where the Israelite soldiers](#) had set up their tents, the Israelites attacked the soldiers [from Moab](#) and forced them to retreat. The Israelite soldiers pursued [the soldiers from Moab](#) and killed many of them.

2 Kings 3:25

Kir Hareseth

This is the capital of Moab. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

was left with its rocks in place

The walls and buildings of the city were made of stones. The meaning of this can be made clear. Alternate translation: “still had its stone walls and buildings in place” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

with slings

A “sling” is piece of animal skin with long cords at both ends in which a person can put a stone or other small, hard object and throw it a long distance.

Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

Translation Words - UST

- Whenever they passed fertile
- the fruit

ULT

²⁵ They destroyed the cities, and on every good piece of land every man threw a rock until it was covered up. They stopped up every spring of water and chopped down all the good trees. Only Kir Hareseth was left with its rocks in place. But the soldiers armed with slings surrounded and attacked it.

UST

²⁵ The Israelites also destroyed their cities. [Whenever they passed fertile](#) fields, they threw rocks on those fields until the fields were covered with rocks. They stopped water from flowing from the springs and cut down [the fruit](#) trees. Finally, only the capital city, Kir Hareseth, remained. The Israelite soldiers who threw stones with slings surrounded the city and attacked it.

2 Kings 3:26

King Mesha

Translate the name of this king the same as you did in [2 Kings 3:4](#).

that the battle was lost

“that his army was being defeated”

seven hundred swordsmen

“700 swordsmen” (See: [Numbers](#))

swordsmen

soldiers who fight with swords

break through

“force their way through.” There were many soldiers fighting on the battlefield which made it difficult to move through the crowd.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moab](#), [Moabite](#)
- [sword](#), [swordsmen](#)
- [strength](#), [strengthen](#), [strong](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Moab](#)
- [who fought with swords, and they tried to force a way through the Israelite lines of soldiers to escape](#)
- [that](#)
- [When the king](#)
- [the king](#)

ULT

²⁶ When King Mesha of Moab saw that the battle was lost, he took with him seven hundred swordsmen to break through to the king of Edom, but they failed.

UST

²⁶ [When the king of Moab](#) realized [that](#) his army was being defeated, he took with him seven hundred men [who fought with swords, and they tried to force a way through the Israelite lines of soldiers to escape](#) to get help from [the king](#) of Edom, whom they hoped would join them, but they were unable to escape.

2 Kings 3:27

offered him as a burnt offering

King Mesha burned his son with fire until he died. He did this as an offering to Chemosh, the false god of Moab. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

So there was great anger against Israel

Here the word “anger” can be expressed as a verb. There are two possibilities for who is angry here: 1) The Moabite soldiers. Alternate translation: “So the Moabite soldiers were very angry with Israel” or 2) God. Alternate translation: “So God was very angry with Israel” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [return](#)
- [burnt offering, offering by fire](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [the Israelite army](#)
- [and went back](#)
- [and...as a sacrifice](#)

ULT

27 Then he took his oldest son, who should have reigned after him, and offered him as a burnt offering upon the wall. So there was great anger against Israel, and the Israelite army left King Mesha and returned to their own land.

UST

27 Then the king of Moab took his oldest [son](#), who would have become the next king, and killed him and offered him [as a sacrifice](#) to their god Chemosh, burning him on top of the city wall. Then God became very angry at [the Israelite army](#), so the army left [and went back](#) to their own land.

2 Kings 4

2 Kings 4 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of Elisha continues with a group of stories about the miracles Elisha did. (See: [2 Kings 4-6](#) and [miracle, wonder, sign](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Widow

Elisha helps a widow financially, and he correctly prophesies that a barren woman would conceive and have a baby by the next year. Later, when that child dies, Elisha miraculously causes him to come back to life. Also, Elisha causes a poisonous food to no longer be harmful, and he miraculously feeds 100 people with only 20 loaves of bread.

2 Kings 4:1

the sons of the prophets

This does not mean that they were the sons of prophets, but rather, that they were a group of prophets. See how you translated this phrase in [2 Kings 2:3](#). Alternate translation: “the prophets” (See: [Idiom](#))

Your servant my husband

“My husband, who was your servant”

creditor

person who lends other people money

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- son
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh
- cry, cry out, outcry
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- out...him
- of Yahweh's prophets came
- of Yahweh's prophets came
- Yahweh very much. But now someone to whom he owed a lot of money has come to me
- and cried
- who worked with you
- out...him
- be his slaves
- know

ULT

¹ Now the wife of one of the sons of the prophets came crying to Elisha, saying, “Your servant my husband is dead, and you know that your servant feared Yahweh. Now the creditor has come to take my two children to be his slaves.”

UST

¹ One day the widow of one [of Yahweh's prophets came](#) to Elisha [and cried out](#) to [him](#), “My husband, [who worked with you](#), is dead. You [know](#) that he revered [Yahweh very much. But now someone to whom he owed a lot of money has come to me](#). I cannot pay him back, so he is threatening to take away my two sons to [be his slaves](#) as payment!”

2 Kings 4:2

Your servant has nothing

The woman refers to herself as Elisha's servant to show him honor.

nothing in the house, except a pot of oil

This is an exaggeration. The only valuable thing she had was a jar of oil. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [temple](#)
- [temple](#)
- [olive](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [do you have in your house](#)
- [We have](#)
- [olive oil](#)

ULT

² So Elisha said to her, "What can I do for you? Tell me what do you have in the house?" She said, "Your servant has nothing in the house, except a pot of oil."

UST

² Elisha replied, "What can I do to help you? Tell me, what [do you have in your house?](#)" She replied, "We have only a container of [olive oil](#). [We have](#) nothing else."

2 Kings 4:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- Go to

ULT

³ Then Elisha said, “Go out to borrow jars from your neighbors, empty jars. Borrow as many as possible.

UST

³ Elisha said, “[Go to](#) your neighbors and borrow from them as many empty jars as you can.

2 Kings 4:4

you must go inside

This means to go inside their house. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “you must go inside your house” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [with your sons](#)

ULT

⁴ Then you must go inside and shut the door behind you and your sons, and pour oil into all those jars; set aside the jars that are full.”

UST

⁴ Then take the jars into your house [with your sons](#). Shut the door. Then pour olive oil from your container into the other jars. When each jar is full, set it aside and fill another jar. Keep doing that until all the jars are full.”

2 Kings 4:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Her sons kept bringing jars](#)

ULT

⁵ So she left Elisha and shut the door behind her and her sons. They brought the jars to her, and she filled them with oil.

UST

⁵ So she did what Elisha told her to do. [Her sons kept bringing jars](#) to her, and she kept filling them.

2 Kings 4:6

the vessels

"the jars"

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [one of her sons](#)

ULT

⁶ When the vessels were full, she said to her son, "Bring me another jar." But he said to her, "There are no more jars." Then the oil stopped flowing.

UST

⁶ Soon all the jars were full. So she said to [one of her sons](#), "Bring me another jar!" But he replied, "There are no more jars!" Right then the olive oil stopped flowing.

2 Kings 4:7

the man of God

This refers to Elisha. Alternate translation: “Elisha, the man of God” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

live with your sons on the rest

This is an idiom. It means to use the money to buy the things that they need, such as food and clothing. Alternate translation: “use the rest of the money for you and your sons for what you need to live” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- God
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- and there will be enough extra money to keep buying food
- son
- Elisha
- Now sell

ULT

⁷ Then she came and told the man of God. He said, “Go, sell the oil; pay your debt, and live with your sons on the rest.”

UST

⁷ When she told [Elisha](#) what had happened, he said to her, “[Now sell](#) the oil. And with the money you get, pay what you owe, [and there will be enough extra money to keep buying food](#) for yourself and your sons.” So she did that.

2 Kings 4:8

Shunem

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

she urged him to eat food with her

This means that she asked him to stop and have a meal at her house. Alternate translation: “she asked him to come to her house to have a meal” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

passed by

“traveled through Shunem”

Translation Words - ULT

- bread
- bread
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

Translation Words - UST

- for a meal
- to eat a meal
- went

ULT

⁸ One day Elisha walked to Shunem where an important woman lived; she urged him to eat food with her. So as often as Elisha passed by, he would stop there to eat.

UST

⁸ One day Elisha [went](#) to the city of Shunem. There was a wealthy woman who lived there with her husband. One day she invited Elisha to her house [for a meal](#). Elisha went there, and from then on every time Elisha was in Shunem he went to their house [to eat a meal](#).

2 Kings 4:9

See, now I realize

"Now I understand"

who is always passing by

"who travels by regularly"

Translation Words - ULT

- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- God
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- is a prophet who brings messages
- from God
- I am sure

ULT

⁹ The woman said to her husband, "See, now I realize that this is a holy man of God who is always passing by.

UST

⁹ One day the woman said to her husband, "[I am sure](#) that this man who often comes here [is a prophet who brings messages from God](#).

2 Kings 4:10

General Information:

The important woman continues talking to her husband about Elisha.

Let us

Here "us" refers to the important woman and her husband.

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed

Translation Words - UST

- and put

ULT

10 Let us make a little room on the roof for Elisha, and let us put in it a bed, a table, a seat, and a lamp. Then when he comes to us, he will stay there."

UST

10 I think we should make a small room for him on our flat roof, [and put](#) a bed, a table, a chair, and a lamp in it. If we do that, whenever he comes here, he will have a place to stay." So they did that.

2 Kings 4:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

11 So when the day came again that Elisha stopped there, he stayed in the room and rested there.

UST

11 One day Elisha returned to Shunem, and he went up to that room to rest.

2 Kings 4:12

Gehazi

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Call this Shunammite

“Call the Shunammite woman.” This refers to the woman from Shunem that Elisha was staying with.

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- Tell
- his servant
- So the servant went and told her

ULT

¹² Elisha said to Gehazi his servant, “Call this Shunammite.” When he had called her, she stood before him.

UST

¹² He said to [his servant](#) Gehazi, “[Tell](#) the woman that I want to speak to her.” [So the servant went and told her](#). When she came to the doorway of Elisha’s room,

2 Kings 4:13

You have gone to all this trouble to care for us

The phrase “gone to all this trouble” is an idiom that means to make great effort to do something. Alternate translation: “You have made a great effort to care for us” or “You have worked very hard to take care of us” (See: [Idiom](#))

What can be done for you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “What can we do for you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Can we speak for you

Here Elisha is asking if she would like for him to speak to the king or army commander to make a request for her. The implicit meaning of this question can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “Can we make a request for you” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

I live among my own people

The woman is implying that she does not need anything because her family cares for her needs. Alternate translation: “I live surrounded by my family, and because they take care of me, I have no needs” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- pray, prayer
- king, kingdom, kingship
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

- I
- go to the king or the army commander
- your master

ULT

13 Elisha said to him, “Say to her, ‘You have gone to all this trouble to care for us. What can be done for you? Can we speak for you to the king or to the army commander?’” She answered, “I live among my own people.”

UST

13 Elisha said to Gehazi, “Tell her that we are both grateful for all the kind things that she has done for us. Then ask her what we can do for her. Ask, ‘Do you want me to [go to the king or the army commander](#) to request something for you?’” Gehazi gave her this message. She replied, “No, [your master](#) does not need to do that, because my family are able to give me what [I](#) need.”

2 Kings 4:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

¹⁴ So Elisha said, "What can we do for her, then?" Gehazi answered, "Indeed, she has no son, and her husband is old."

UST

¹⁴ Later, Elisha asked Gehazi, "What do you think that we can do for that woman?" He replied, "Well, she has no [son](#), and her husband is an old man."

2 Kings 4:15

Call her

"Ask her to come to see me"

When he had called her

"When Gehazi had called her"

the door

This refers to the doorway. Alternate translation: "the doorway" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- [And when the woman returned](#)
- [So Gehazi went and called her](#)

ULT

¹⁵ So Elisha answered, "Call her." When he had called her, she stood in the door.

UST

¹⁵ Elisha told Gehazi, "Call her back again." [So Gehazi went and called her.](#) [And when the woman returned](#), as she stood in the doorway,

2 Kings 4:16

a son

"your son"

my master and man of God

The woman uses both of these names to refer to Elisha.

your servant

The woman refers to herself as Elisha's servant to show him honor.

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- God
- feast, feasting

Translation Words - UST

- you
- in your arms
- your infant son
- God
- next year

ULT

¹⁶ Elisha said, "At this time of year, in one year's time, you will be holding a son." She said, "No, my master and man of God, do not lie to your servant."

UST

¹⁶ Elisha said to her, "About this time [next year you](#) will be holding [your infant son in your arms](#)." But she protested, "Oh, Sir, you are a prophet who brings messages from [God](#), so please do not deceive me by saying things like that!"

2 Kings 4:17

at the same time in the following year

“during the same season the next year”

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- feast, feasting

Translation Words - UST

- at that time the following year
- a son
- at that time the following year

ULT

17 But the woman conceived and gave birth to a son at the same time in the following year, as Elisha had said to her.

UST

17 But a few months later, the woman became pregnant, and she gave birth to a son at that time the following year, just like Elisha had predicted.

2 Kings 4:18

When the child had grown

"When the child was older"

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- children, child, offspring
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- harvest, reap

Translation Words - UST

- he went out
- the child was growing up
- see his father
- harvesting grain

ULT

18 When the child had grown, he went out one day to his father, who was with harvesters.

UST

18 When the child was growing up, one day he went out to the fields to see his father, who was working with the men who were harvesting grain.

2 Kings 4:19

My head, my head.

The child said this because his head hurt. The meaning of this can be made clear. Alternate translation: "My head hurts! My head hurts!" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- head
- head
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- His father
- My head hurts! My head hurts
- My head hurts! My head hurts
- one of the servants

ULT

19 He said to his father, "My head, my head." His father said to his servant, "Carry him to his mother."

UST

19 Suddenly the boy exclaimed, "[My head hurts! My head hurts!](#)" [His father](#) said to [one of the servants](#), "Carry him home to his mother!"

2 Kings 4:20

the child sat on her knees until noon and then died

Here the woman's knees refer to her lap. She held her son in her lap until he died. Alternate translation: "she held him on her lap until noon and then he died" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death,

Translation Words - UST

- the boy died

ULT

²⁰ When the servant had picked him up and brought the boy to his mother, the child sat on her knees until noon and then died.

UST

²⁰ So the servant carried him home, and his mother held him on her lap. But at noontime [the boy died](#).

2 Kings 4:21

on the bed of the man of God

This was the bed in the room she had prepared for Elisha when he traveled through Shunem. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the man of God

"Elisha, the man of God"

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [She left him there and went out and](#)
- [to the prophet's room](#)

ULT

²¹ So the woman got up and laid the boy on the bed of the man of God, shut the door, and went out.

UST

²¹ She carried him up the steps [to the prophet's room](#) and laid him on the bed. [She left him there and went out and](#) shut the door.

2 Kings 4:22

that I may hurry to the man of God and then come back

The woman told her husband she was going to see Elisha but she did not say that she was going because their son had died. This implicit information may be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “that I may hurry to the man of God and then come back.” But she did not tell her husband that their son had died” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- return
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- to the prophet, and then
- come back
- servants
- But she did not tell her husband that their son had died

ULT

²² She called to her husband, and said, “Please send me one of the servants and one of the donkeys so that I may hurry to the man of God and then come back.”

UST

²² She then called out to her husband, saying, “Send to me one of the [servants](#) and a donkey so that I can ride on it quickly [to the prophet, and then come back!](#)” [But she did not tell her husband that their son had died.](#)

2 Kings 4:23

It will be all right

The woman states this, knowing this will be the case if her husband does as she requests. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "Everything will be all right if you do as I ask" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Sabbath](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [peace, peaceful, peacemakers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [replied, "Just do what I requested and everything will be all right](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [the day when we celebrate the festival of the](#)

ULT

²³ Her husband said, "Why do you want to go to him today? It is not a new moon nor a Sabbath." She replied, "It will be all right."

UST

²³ Her husband called out to her and said, "Why do you want to go today? This is not [the day when we celebrate the festival of the](#) new moon, and it is not a Sabbath day!" But she only [replied, "Just do what I requested and everything will be all right."](#)

2 Kings 4:24

she saddled a donkey

The woman did not saddle the donkey, rather the servant would have saddled it for her. Alternate translation: “she had her servant saddle a donkey” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [her servant](#)

ULT

²⁴ Then she saddled a donkey and said to her servant, “Drive on quickly; do not slow down for me unless I say so.”

UST

²⁴ So she saddled the donkey and said to [her servant](#), “Lead the donkey! Do not slow down for me unless I tell you to do so!”

2 Kings 4:25

So she went and came to the man of God at Mount Carmel

"So she traveled toward Mount Carmel where Elisha, the man of God, was"

So when the man of God saw her in the distance

"While she was still far off, and Elisha saw her coming"

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- Elisha was
- in the distance
- Gehazi

ULT

²⁵ So she went and came to the man of God at Mount Carmel. So when the man of God saw her in the distance, he said to Gehazi his servant, "Look, here comes the Shunammite woman.

UST

²⁵ As they approached Mount Carmel, where [Elisha was](#), Elisha saw her [in the distance](#). He said to [Gehazi](#), "Look, the woman from Shunem is coming!

2 Kings 4:26

It is alright

"It is well" or "Yes, everything is fine"

Translation Words - ULT

- [peace, peaceful, peacemakers](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yes, everything is fine](#)

ULT

²⁶ Please run to meet her and say to her, 'Is everything alright with you and with your husband and child?'" She answered, "It is alright."

UST

²⁶ Run to her, and ask her if everything is all right with her and her husband and with her child!" So Gehazi ran to her and asked her, but she said nothing to Gehazi except, "[Yes, everything is fine.](#)"

2 Kings 4:27

the mountain

"Mount Carmel"

she caught hold of his feet

This implies that she knelt or laid on the ground in front of him and grabbed his feet. Alternate translation: "she dropped down on the ground in front of him and put her hands around his feet" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Yahweh has hidden the problem from me, and has told me nothing

Elisha can see that the woman is upset but Yahweh has not revealed to him the cause of her problem.

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- God
- God
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Do not push her away
- Elisha was
- but Elisha
- but Yahweh has

ULT

²⁷ When she came to the man of God at the mountain, she caught hold of his feet. Gehazi came near to thrust her away but the man of God said, "Leave her alone, for she is very upset, and Yahweh has hidden the problem from me, and has told me nothing."

UST

²⁷ But when she came to where [Elisha was](#), she prostrated herself on the ground in front of Elisha and took hold of his feet. Gehazi started to push her away, [but Elisha](#) said, "[Do not push her away!](#)" Something is troubling her very much, [but Yahweh has](#) not told me what it is."

2 Kings 4:28

Did I ask you for a son, my master? Did I not say, 'Do not deceive me'?

The woman uses these rhetorical questions to show that she is upset about what has happened. She is speaking about her conversation with Elisha when he told her that she was going to have a son. These questions may be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "I did not ask you to give me a son, but I did ask you not to lie to me!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son

Translation Words - UST

- O sir
- a son

ULT

28 Then she said, "Did I ask you for a son, my master? Did I not say, 'Do not deceive me?'"

UST

28 Then she said to Elisha, "[O sir](#), I did not request you to enable me to give birth to [a son](#), but I did say, 'Do not lie to me.'"

2 Kings 4:29

Dress for travel

"Get ready to travel"

If you meet any man, do not greet him, and if anyone greets you, do not answer him

Elisha wanted Gehazi to travel as quickly as possible, without even stopping to talk to anyone.

Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- bless, blessed, blessing
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- appoint, appointed
- hand
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around
- face, facial
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- Do not stop to talk to anyone on the way
- Do not stop to talk to anyone on the way
- Go quickly to where her son is
- Go quickly to where her son is
- my staff stick
- Get ready to leave immediately
- face. If you do that, perhaps Yahweh will cause him to live again
- the child's

ULT

29 Then Elisha said to Gehazi, "Dress for travel and take my staff in your hand. Go to her home. If you meet any man, do not greet him, and if anyone greets you, do not answer him. Lay my staff on the child's face."

UST

29 Then Elisha realized that something must have happened to her son. So he said to Gehazi, "[Get ready to leave immediately](#). Take [my staff stick](#) and go to her home. [Do not stop to talk to anyone on the way](#). [Go quickly to where her son is](#) and lay the staff on [the child's face](#). [If you do that, perhaps Yahweh will cause him to live again](#)."

2 Kings 4:30

As Yahweh lives, and as you live

"As surely as Yahweh lives and as you live." This shows that the mother is taking an oath. The mother compares the certainty that Yahweh and Elisha are alive to the certainty of what she is saying. This is a way of making a solemn promise. Alternate translation: "I solemnly promise that"

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh
- forsake, forsaken, leave
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- lives
- live
- Just as certain as Yahweh
- I will not go home if
- But the boy's

ULT

³⁰ But the mother of the child said, "As Yahweh lives, and as you live, I will not leave you." So Elisha arose and followed her.

UST

³⁰ But the boy's mother said, "Just as certain as Yahweh lives and you live, I will not go home if you do not go with me." So Elisha returned with her to her home.

2 Kings 4:31

but the child did not speak or hear

This means that the child was not alive. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “but the child did not show any signs of being alive” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

has not awakened

Here being dead is spoken of as being asleep. Alternate translation: “is still dead” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- face, facial
- return
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- When he got to the woman's home, he laid the staff
- the child's
- So Gehazi returned
- but the child
- The child is still dead

ULT

31 Gehazi hurried on ahead of them and laid the staff on the child's face, but the child did not speak or hear. So then Gehazi returned to meet Elisha and told him saying, “The child has not awakened.”

UST

31 But Gehazi hurried quickly ahead. [When he got to the woman's home, he laid the staff](#) on [the child's](#) face, [but the child](#) did not move or say anything. [So Gehazi returned](#) to meet Elisha along the road, and told him, “[The child is still dead.](#)”

2 Kings 4:32

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

Translation Words - UST

- he saw that the boy was
- the house

ULT

³² When Elisha arrived at the house, the child was dead and was still on the bed.

UST

³² When Elisha reached [the house](#), [he saw that the boy was](#) lying dead on his bed.

2 Kings 4:33

So Elisha went in and shut the door on the child and himself

“So Elisha went by himself into the room where the child lay, closed the door”

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- pray, prayer

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- prayed

ULT

³³ So Elisha went in and shut the door on the child and himself and prayed to Yahweh.

UST

³³ Elisha went into the room by himself and shut the door and prayed to Yahweh.

2 Kings 4:34

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- flesh
- appoint, appointed
- children, child, offspring
- children, child, offspring
- hand

Translation Words - UST

- body
- and put
- boy
- Then the boy's
- hand

ULT

³⁴ He went up and lay on the child; he put his mouth on his mouth, his eyes on his eyes, and his hands on his hands. He stretched himself out on the boy, and the boy's body grew warm.

UST

³⁴ Then he lay down on the [boy's](#) body, [and put](#) his mouth on the boy's mouth, and put his eyes on the boy's eyes, and put his hands on the boy's hands. [Then the boy's body](#) started to become warm!

2 Kings 4:35

stretched himself out on the boy

"laid on top of the boy again"

Translation Words - ULT

- temple
- return
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- in the room several times
- Elisha got up and...back
- the boy's body
- Then he

ULT

35 Then Elisha got up and walked around the room and again went up and stretched himself out on the boy. The child sneezed seven times and then opened his eyes!

UST

35 Elisha got up and walked back and forth in the room several times. Then he stretched his body on the boy's body again. The boy sneezed seven times and opened his eyes!

2 Kings 4:36

the Shunammite

"the Shunammite woman"

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- son
- declare, proclaim, announce
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- Call
- your son
- summoned
- and called her

ULT

³⁶ So Elisha called Gehazi and said, "Call the Shunammite!" So he called her, and when she came into the room, Elisha said, "Pick up your son."

UST

³⁶ Then Elisha [summoned](#) Gehazi. He said, "[Call](#) the boy's mother." So Gehazi went [and called her](#), and when she came in, Elisha said, "Here, take [your son](#)."

2 Kings 4:37

Then she lay facedown on the ground at his feet and bowed to the ground

The woman bowed down before Elisha as a sign of great respect and appreciation. Alternate translation: “Then she bowed in front of Elisha with her face to the ground to show him her gratitude” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- son
- prostrate, worship
- earth, earthen, earthly
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- Then she
- her son and...him downstairs
- She gratefully prostrated herself
- She gratefully prostrated herself
- at

ULT

³⁷ Then she lay facedown on the ground at his feet and bowed to the ground, and then picked up her son and went out.

UST

³⁷ [She gratefully prostrated herself at](#) Elisha's feet. [Then she](#) picked up [her son](#) [and](#) carried [him downstairs](#).

2 Kings 4:38

the sons of the prophets

This is an idiom. It does not mean that they were actually the sons of prophets, but rather, that they were a group of prophets. See how you translated this phrase in [2 Kings 2:3](#). Alternate translation: “the group of men who were prophets” (See: [Idiom](#))

stew

This is a dish that is usually made of meat and vegetables cooked in a pot with liquid.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- restore, restoration
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- But at that time...in that area
- men
- One day as the association of prophets
- men
- returned
- his servant

ULT

38 Then Elisha came again to Gilgal. There was famine in the land, and the sons of the prophets were sitting before him. He said to his servant, “Put the large pot on the fire and cook stew for the sons of the prophets.”

UST

38 Then Elisha [returned](#) to Gilgal. [But at that time](#) there was a famine [in that area](#). [One day as the association of prophets](#) was sitting in front of Elisha listening to what he was teaching, he said to [his servant](#), “Put a large pot on the fire and make some stew for these [men](#).”

2 Kings 4:39

wild gourds

These vegetables were growing wild, meaning someone had not planted them.

fill the fold of his robe

He lifted the bottom edge of his robe up to his waist to make a place to carry more gourds than he could carry with his hands only.

but did not know what kind they were

Since they did not know what kind of gourds they were they did not know whether or not they were safe to eat. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "but did not know if they were good or bad to eat" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [vine](#)
- [glean, gleanings](#)
- [glean, gleanings](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [But he gathered](#)
- [and put them](#)
- [gather](#)
- [and put them](#)
- [know](#)

ULT

³⁹ One of them went out into a field to gather vegetables. He found a wild vine and gathered enough wild gourds to fill the fold of his robe. They cut them up and put them into the stew, but did not know what kind they were.

UST

³⁹ One of the prophets went out to the fields to [gather](#) some vegetables. [But he gathered](#) only some wild gourds [and put them](#) in his cloak and brought them back. He shredded them and put them in the pot, but he did not [know](#) that the gourds were poisonous.

2 Kings 4:40

they poured out the stew

"they poured the stew into bowls"

there is death in the pot

This means that there was something in the pot that could kill them, not that there is something dead in the pot. Alternate translation: "there is something in the pot that will kill us" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [cry, cry out, outcry](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Our master](#)
- [cried out](#)

ULT

⁴⁰ So they poured out the stew for the men to eat. Later, as they were eating, they cried out and said, "Man of God, there is death in the pot!" So they could not eat it anymore.

UST

⁴⁰ He served the stew to the prophets, but after the men had eaten only a couple bites, they [cried out](#), "[Our master](#), there is something in the pot that will kill us!" So they would not eat it.

2 Kings 4:41

He threw it into the pot

"He added it to the stew in the pot"

Pour it out for the people

"Serve it to the people"

Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- people, people group,
- devour

Translation Words - UST

- It is all right now
- And they
- You can eat it

ULT

⁴¹ But Elisha said, "Bring some flour." He threw it into the pot and said, "Pour it out for the people, so that they may eat." Then there was no longer anything hurtful in the pot.

UST

⁴¹ Elisha said, "Bring me some flour." They brought him some, and he threw it in the pot and he said, "[It is all right now](#). [You can eat it](#)." [And they](#) ate it, and it did not harm them.

2 Kings 4:42

Baal Shalishah

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

twenty loaves

"20 loaves" (See: [Numbers](#))

from the new harvest

"made from the grain from the new harvest"

fresh ears of grain

"fresh heads of grain." This refers to grain from the new harvest.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- firstfruits
- bread
- bread
- people, people group,
- devour
- barley

Translation Words - UST

- to Elisha
- made from the first
- made from the first
- grain
- the group of prophets
- so that they can eat it
- barley

ULT

⁴² A man came from Baal Shalishah to the man of God and brought twenty loaves of barley bread in his sack from the new harvest, and fresh ears of grain. He said, "Give this to the people so they can eat."

UST

⁴² One day a man from the city of Baal Shalishah brought [to Elisha](#) a sack of freshly cut grain and twenty loaves of [barley](#) bread, [made from the first grain](#) that they had harvested that year. Elisha said to his servant, "Give it to [the group of prophets](#), [so that they can eat it](#)."

2 Kings 4:43

What, should I set this before a hundred men?

The man uses this rhetorical question to imply that this is not enough bread to feed 100 men. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "That is not enough to feed a hundred men!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

a hundred men

"100 men" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- devour
- devour
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- of us prophets with only
- eat it
- there will be plenty for all of them
- Do you think that we can feed

ULT

⁴³ His servant said, "What, should I set this before a hundred men?" But Elisha said, "Give this to the people, so they can eat, because Yahweh says, 'They will eat and will have some left.'"

UST

⁴³ But his servant exclaimed, "[Do you think that we can feed](#) a hundred [of us prophets with only](#) that much? How can I place this before them all?" But Elisha replied, "Give it to the prophets so that they can [eat it](#), because [Yahweh](#) says that [there will be plenty for all of them](#), and there will be some left over!"

2 Kings 4:44

the word of Yahweh

Here Yahweh is referred to by what he said. This phrase is a metonym for Yahweh himself. Alternate translation: “Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [devour](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [just as Yahweh had promised](#)
- [they ate all that they wanted](#)

ULT

⁴⁴ So his servant set it before them; they ate, and left some remaining, just as the word of Yahweh promised.

UST

⁴⁴ After his servant gave it to the prophets, [they ate all that they wanted](#), and there was food left over, [just as Yahweh had promised](#).

2 Kings 5

2 Kings 5 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The stories of Elisha's miracles continue in this chapter. (See: [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#))

2 Kings 5:1

in his master's view

"sight." The king's "view" represents what he thinks about something.
Alternate translation: "in the king's opinion" (See: [Metonymy](#))

because by him Yahweh had given victory to Aram

Here "Aram" refers to the Aramean army. Alternate translation: "because through Naaman, Yahweh had given victory to the Aramean army"

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh
- might, mighty, mighty works
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- face, facial
- king, kingdom, kingship
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

- commander
- Yahweh
- and brave soldier
- Naaman was also a strong
- admired and honored
- and the king of Aram
- was the

ULT

¹ Now Naaman, commander of the army of the king of Aram, was a great and honorable man in his master's view, because by him Yahweh had given victory to Aram. He was also a strong, courageous man, but he was a leper.

UST

¹ A man named Naaman [was the commander](#) of the army of Aram. [Yahweh](#) had enabled him to win many victories, [and the king of Aram admired and honored](#) him. [Naaman was also a strong and brave soldier](#), but he had leprosy.

2 Kings 5:2

The Arameans had gone out

Here the “Arameans” refer to the Aramean soldiers. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

raiding in bands

“in small groups attacking.” This means to go out attacking an enemy in small groups.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Israel](#)
- [a...girl](#)
- [and they had captured](#)

ULT

² The Arameans had gone out raiding in bands and had taken a little girl from the land of Israel. She served Naaman's wife.

UST

² Some time previously, groups of soldiers had invaded the land [of Israel](#), [and they had captured](#) a young [girl](#) and taken her to Aram. She became a servant for Naaman's wife.

2 Kings 5:3

The girl said to her mistress

The girl from Israel, who had been captured by the Aramean soldiers, spoke to Naaman's wife.

my master

Here "my master" refers to Naaman.

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting

Translation Words - UST

- your husband
- to see the prophet
- from his leprosy

ULT

³ The girl said to her mistress, "I wish that my master were with the prophet who is in Samaria! Then he would heal my master of his leprosy."

UST

³ One day, that girl said to her, "I wish that my master would go [to see the prophet](#) in the city of Samaria. That prophet would heal [your husband from his leprosy](#)."

2 Kings 5:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel](#)

ULT

⁴ So Naaman went in and told the king what the little girl from the land of Israel had said.

UST

⁴ Naaman's wife told her husband what the girl from [Israel](#) had said, and Naaman told that to the king.

2 Kings 5:5

I will send a letter

The king is going to give the letter to Naaman to take with him to the king of Israel. Alternate translation: "I will send a letter with you" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ten talents of silver, six thousand pieces of gold

"10 talents of silver, 6,000 pieces of gold." This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: "330 kilograms of silver, 6,000 pieces of gold" (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Weight](#))

took with him ten...clothes

This were gifts from the king of Aram for the king of Israel. Alternate translation: "took with him ten...clothes, which were gifts for the king of Israel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [hand](#)
- [silver](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [hand](#)
- [silver](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

ULT

⁵ So the king of Aram said, "Go now, and I will send a letter to the king of Israel." Naaman left and took with him ten talents of silver, six thousand pieces of gold, and ten changes of clothes.

UST

⁵⁻⁶ The king said to him, "Very well, go and see the prophet. I will write a letter for you to take to the king of Israel, saying that I sent you." The king wrote in the letter, "I am sending this letter with my army commander Naaman, who serves me faithfully. I want you to heal him of his disease." So Naaman, assuming that the king of Israel was the prophet, took the letter and 330 kilograms of silver, 66 kilograms of gold, and ten sets of clothing, to give to the king of Israel, and he went to Samaria, taking along several servants.

2 Kings 5:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

⁶ He also took the letter to the king of Israel that said, “Now when this letter is brought to you, you will see that I have sent Naaman my servant to you, so that you may cure him of his leprosy.”

UST

⁵⁻⁶ The king said to him, “Very well, go and see the prophet. I will write a letter for you to take to the king of Israel, saying that I sent you.” The king wrote in the letter, “I am sending this letter with my army commander Naaman, who serves me faithfully. I want you to heal him of his disease.” So Naaman, assuming that the king of Israel was the prophet, took the letter and 330 kilograms of silver, 66 kilograms of gold, and ten sets of clothing, to give to the king of Israel, and he went to Samaria, taking along several servants.

2 Kings 5:7

he tore his clothes

Often people would rip their clothes if they were in great distress.
Alternate translation: "he ripped his clothes to show his distress"
(See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Am I God, to kill and to make alive, that this man wants me to cure a man of his leprosy?

The king uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that the request of the king of Aram is outrageous and something he cannot do. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "The king of Aram must think I am some sort of God, with the power over death and life! He wants me to cure this man of his leprosy, but I cannot do that." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

It seems he is seeking to start an argument with me

The king of Israel did not believe the request to heal Naamam was the real reason for the letter. He thought the real reason was to start a fight. Alternate translation: "It seems he is looking for an excuse to start a fight with me" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- of Israel. The king read the letter
- or to die
- gave the letter to the king
- to attack

ULT

⁷ When the king of Israel had read the letter, he tore his clothes and said, "Am I God, to kill and to make alive, that this man wants me to cure a man of his leprosy? It seems he is seeking to start an argument with me."

UST

⁷ When he arrived in Samaria, he [gave the letter to the king of Israel. The king read the letter](#). Then, being very dismayed, the king tore his clothes and said, "I am not God! I am not able to cause people to live [or to die](#)! Why does the one who wrote this letter request me to cure this man of his leprosy? I do not have power to cure leprosy. The king of Aram is merely looking for an excuse [to attack](#) us!"

2 Kings 5:8

General Information:

Elisha talks to the King of Israel about Naaman.

Why have you torn your clothes?

Elisha uses this rhetorical question to emphasize to the king that he does not need to be distressed and tear his clothes. Alternate translation: "There is no need to be distressed and tear your clothes." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- God
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- I...a true prophet in
- The prophet
- of Israel
- Israel
- the king
- the king
- find out

ULT

⁸ So when Elisha the man of God heard that the king of Israel had torn his clothes, he sent word to the king saying, "Why have you torn your clothes? Let him come now to me, and he will know that there is a prophet in Israel."

UST

⁸ [The prophet](#) Elisha heard why [the king of Israel](#) had torn his robe, so he sent a message to [the king](#), saying, "Why are you upset? Send Naaman to me, and he will [find out](#) that I am [a true prophet in Israel](#)."

2 Kings 5:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- horse, warhorse, horseback
- house

Translation Words - UST

- horse, warhorse, horseback
- house

ULT

⁹ So Naaman came with his horses and with his chariots and stood at the door of Elisha's house.

UST

⁹ So Naaman went with his horses and chariots to Elisha's [house](#) and waited outside the door.

2 Kings 5:10

your flesh will be restored

This can be written in active form. Alternate translation: "your flesh will be well" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

you will be clean

this means that he will no longer be unclean. A person who God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. God considers a person who has leprosy as being defiled and unclean. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- flesh
- clean, wash
- pure, purify, purification
- Jordan River, Jordan
- messenger
- walk, walked
- return

Translation Words - UST

- Then...skin will be well
- into the water
- and you will...leprosy
- to the Jordan River
- a messenger to Naaman
- Go
- no longer have

ULT

10 Elisha sent a messenger to him, saying, "Go and dip yourself into the Jordan seven times, and your flesh will be restored; you will be clean."

UST

10 But Elisha did not come to the door. Instead, he sent [a messenger to Naaman](#) to tell him, "[Go to the Jordan River](#) and go down seven times [into the water](#). Then your [skin will be well](#), [and you will no longer have leprosy](#)."

2 Kings 5:11

Look

This word is used here to draw someone's attention to what is said next. Alternate translation: "Listen"

the name of Yahweh

Here Yahweh is referred to by his name. Alternate translation: "Yahweh" (See: [Metonymy](#))

over the place

"over the diseased area of my skin" or "over my leprosy"

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [hand](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [and pray to](#)
- [his hand](#)
- [and pray to](#)
- [and heal](#)
- [and heal](#)

ULT

11 But Naaman was angry and went away and said, "Look, I thought he would surely come out to me and stand and call on the name of Yahweh his God, and wave his hand over the place and heal my leprosy."

UST

11 But Naaman became very angry. He said, "I thought that surely he would wave [his hand](#) over the leprosy, [and pray to Yahweh, and heal](#) me!"

2 Kings 5:12

Are not Abanah and Pharpar, the rivers of Damascus, better than all the waters of Israel?

Naaman uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that the Abanah and the Pharpar are better rivers than the Jordan. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "The Abanah and the Pharpar Rivers, in my home country of Aram, are much better than any of the rivers of Israel! (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Abanah and Pharpar

These are the names of rivers. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Can I not bathe in them and be clean?

Naaman uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that he could have bathed in the other rivers easily. He believes that bathing in them could heal him just as bathing in the Jordan could. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "I should have just bathed in them and been healed!" or "I could just as easily have bathed in them and been healed!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Irony](#))

went away in a rage

"was very angry as he walked away"

Translation Words - ULT

- pure, purify, purification
- Israel, Israelites
- wrath, fury
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

Translation Words - UST

- and cleansed
- in Israel
- in great disgust
- have better

ULT

¹² Are not Abanah and Pharpar, the rivers of Damascus, better than all the waters of Israel? Can I not bathe in them and be clean?" So he turned and went away in a rage.

UST

¹² Surely the Abana River and the Pharpar River in Damascus in my own country of Aram [have better](#) water than any [in Israel!](#) Can I not go into my rivers at home and be healed [and cleansed?](#)" So he turned and walked away [in great disgust](#).

2 Kings 5:13

My father

The servants were showing respect to Naaman by addressing him as "my father" or "sir."

would you not have done it?

The servant uses this question to carefully rebuke Naaman. Alternate translation: "you surely would have done it!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

How much rather then

The servant is comparing how much more willing Naaman should be to obey a simple command since he is willing to obey a difficult one. Alternate translation: "How much more willing you should be to obey" or "Should you not be even more willing to obey" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

How much rather then, when he says to you to simply, 'Dip yourself and be clean?

The servant uses this rhetorical question to emphasize to Naaman that he should obey Elisha's command. This question can be written as statement. Alternate translation: "You should be even more willing to obey when he says to you simply, 'Dip yourself and be clean.'" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- pure, purify, purification
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- prophet
- and be clean
- Sir
- But his servants came to him

ULT

¹³ Then Naaman's servants came near and spoke to him, "My father, if the prophet had commanded you do some difficult thing, would you not have done it? How much rather then, when he says to you to simply, 'Dip yourself and be clean?'"

UST

¹³ [But his servants came to him](#), and one of them said, "[Sir](#), if that [prophet](#) had told you to do something difficult, you would certainly have done it. So why do you refuse to do such a simple thing he asks, when he says, "Go down seven times in the water [and be clean](#)?"

2 Kings 5:14

the man of God

"Elisha, the man of God"

His flesh was restored again like the flesh of a little child

This speaks how smooth Namaan's skin is after he is healed by comparing it to the skin of a young child. Alternate translation: "His flesh was restored again and was as soft as the flesh of a young child" or "His skin was well again and was smooth like a young child's skin" (See: [Simile](#))

His flesh

"His skin"

he was healed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "his leprosy was gone" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [pure, purify, purification](#)
- [Jordan River, Jordan](#)
- [return](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [as the prophet...and his...like the...of](#)
- [healthy](#)
- [skin](#)
- [smooth skin](#)
- [So Naaman...to the Jordan River](#)
- [became](#)
- [a young child](#)

ULT

14 Then he went down and dipped himself seven times in the Jordan, obeying the instructions of the man of God. His flesh was restored again like the flesh of a little child, and he was healed.

UST

14 [So Naaman](#) went down [to the Jordan River](#) and went into the water seven times, [as the prophet](#) had instructed, [and his skin became healthy, like the smooth skin of a young child.](#)

2 Kings 5:15

Look

This word is used here to draw someone's attention to what is said next. Alternate translation: "Listen"

there is no God in all the earth except in Israel

"the only God in all the earth is in Israel"

Translation Words - ULT

- [bless, blessed, blessing](#)
- [God](#)
- [God](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [return](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [gifts](#)
- [to Elisha](#)
- [God](#)
- [here in Israel](#)
- [anywhere else in the world](#)
- [back](#)
- [I](#)
- [Now I know](#)

ULT

15 Naaman returned to the man of God, he and all his company, and came and stood before him. He said, "Look, now I know that there is no God in all the earth except in Israel. So therefore, please take a gift from your servant."

UST

15 Then Naaman and those who were with him went [back](#) to talk [to Elisha](#). They stood in front of him, and Naaman said, "[Now I know](#) that there are no real gods [anywhere else in the world](#), but there is the true [God here in Israel](#)! So now please accept these [gifts](#) that [I](#) have brought to you!"

2 Kings 5:16

As Yahweh lives, before whom I stand, I

"As surely as I know that Yahweh lives, before whom I stand." Here Elisha compares the certainty that Yahweh is alive to the certainty that he will not receive any gifts from Naaman. This is a way of making a solemn promise. Alternate translation: "As surely as Yahweh lives, before whom I stand, I promise you that I" (See: [Simile](#))

before whom I stand

Here serving Yahweh is spoken of as standing in his presence. Alternate translation: "whom I serve" (See: [Metaphor](#))

I will receive nothing

This means that he will not accept any gifts. Alternate translation: "I will not take any gifts" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- lives
- serve
- Yahweh, the one...I

ULT

16 But Elisha replied, "As Yahweh lives, before whom I stand, I will receive nothing." Naaman urged Elisha to take a gift, but he refused.

UST

16 But Elisha replied, "Just as certainly as [Yahweh, the one](#) whom [I serve, lives](#), I will not accept any gifts." Naaman kept urging him to accept the gifts, but Elisha kept refusing.

2 Kings 5:17

If not

The understood information may be supplied. Alternate translation: "If you will not take the gifts I have brought for you" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

let there be given to your servant

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "let me have" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

two mule loads of earth

Naaman is asking to take soil from Israel and place it in sacks for two mules to carry home with him. He then plans to build an altar on the soil. Alternate translation: "as much soil from Israel as two mules can carry, so that I can build an altar to Yahweh" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

your servant

Naaman refers to himself as Elisha's servant to honor him.

will offer neither burnt offering nor sacrifice to any god but Yahweh

This can be written in positive form. Alternate translation: "will not offer burnt offering or sacrifice to any god but Yahweh" or "will only offer burnt offerings and sacrifices to Yahweh" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- god
- to Yahweh
- and put it in sacks
- will offer sacrifices
- but I have one request. This soil here in Israel is Yahweh's soil
- I

ULT

17 So Naaman said, "If not, then I ask you to let there be given to your servant two mule loads of earth, for from now on, your servant will offer neither burnt offering nor sacrifice to any god but Yahweh.

UST

17 Then Naaman said, "Very well, [but I have one request. This soil here in Israel is Yahweh's soil](#), so please allow me to take some soil from this place [and put it in sacks](#) on two mules. Then I will take it back home with me and make an altar on this soil. From now on, [I will offer sacrifices to Yahweh](#) on that altar. I will not offer sacrifices to any other [god](#).

2 Kings 5:18

when my king

This is referring to the king of Aram, the king that Namaan works for.

he leans on my hand

"he supports himself on my arm." This means that Naaman assists the king when he bows in the house of Rimmon because the king is either old or sick.

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- prostrate, worship
- hand
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house
- house
- house (2)

Translation Words - UST

- However, when my master
- will forgive
- Yahweh
- worship
- to...him, I ask
- me
- I
- the temple
- worship
- worship (2)

ULT

18 In this one thing may Yahweh pardon your servant, that is, when my king goes into the house of Rimmon to worship there, and he leans on my hand and I bow myself in the house of Rimmon, when I bow myself in the house of Rimmon, may Yahweh pardon your servant in this matter."

UST

18 However, when my master, the king, goes into the temple of the god Rimmon to worship him, I ask that Yahweh will forgive me because I will have to bow down, too."

2 Kings 5:19

Go in peace

“Go home and do not worry” or “Leave without fear”

Translation Words - ULT

- walk, walked
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- Go home
- home

ULT

¹⁹ Elisha said to him, “Go in peace.” So Naaman left.

UST

¹⁹ Elisha replied, “[Go home](#), and do not worry about that.” So Naaman and his servants started to travel [home](#).

2 Kings 5:20

He had traveled

"Naaman had traveled"

Gehazi

See how you translated this man's name in [2 Kings 4:12](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Look

This word is used here to draw someone's attention to what is said next. Alternate translation: "Listen"

has spared this Naaman the Aramean

"has let Naaman the Aramean leave too easily"

by not receiving

"by not accepting"

from his hands

Here Naaman is referred to by his hands to emphasize the act of giving. Alternate translation: "from him" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

As Yahweh lives

"As surely as Yahweh lives." Here Gehazi compares the certainty that Yahweh is alive to the certainty of what he has decided to do. This is a way of making a solemn promise. Alternate translation: "As Yahweh lives, I promise" (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- God
- Yahweh
- hand
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- punish, punished, punishment, unpunished

Translation Words - UST

- lives
- my master
- like this
- as Yahweh
- accepted
- servant
- has allowed...to leave

ULT

²⁰ He had traveled only a short distance, when Gehazi the servant of Elisha the man of God said to himself, "Look, my master has spared this Naaman the Aramean by not receiving from his hands gifts that he brought. As Yahweh lives, I will run after him and receive something from him."

UST

²⁰ But then Elisha's [servant](#) Gehazi said to himself, "It is not good that [my master has allowed](#) this Aramean man [to leave like this](#). He should have [accepted](#) his gifts. So just as certainly [as Yahweh lives](#), I will go and catch up with Naaman and get something from him."

2 Kings 5:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- jumped out

ULT

21 So Gehazi followed after Naaman. When Naaman saw someone running after him, he jumped down from his chariot to meet him and said, "Is everything alright?"

UST

21 So Gehazi hurried to catch up with Naaman. When Naaman saw Gehazi running toward him, he stopped the chariot in which he was riding, [jumped out](#), and went to see what Gehazi wanted. He asked him, "Is everything all right?"

2 Kings 5:22

of the sons of the prophets

This does not mean that they were the sons of prophets, but rather, that they were a group of prophets. See how you translated this phrase in [2 Kings 2:3](#). Alternate translation: “from among the prophets there” (See: [Idiom](#))

Please give them a talent of silver and two changes of clothes

Gehazi is asking Naaman to give these things to him so that he can take them and give them to the prophets. Alternate translation: “Please give me a talent of silver and two changes of clothes to give to them” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

See

This word is used here to draw someone’s attention to what is said next. Alternate translation: “Listen”

a talent of silver

This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “33 kilograms of silver” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- silver
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- Elisha
- prophets
- prophets
- of Ephraim
- of silver
- Yes
- the descendants

ULT

²² Gehazi said, “Everything is alright. My master has sent me, saying, ‘See, now there have come to me from the hill country of Ephraim two young men of the sons of the prophets. Please give them a talent of silver and two changes of clothes.’”

UST

²² Gehazi replied, “[Yes](#), but two young [prophets](#) from the hill country where [the descendants of Ephraim](#) live have just arrived. [Elisha](#) has sent me to tell you that he would like thirty-three kilograms [of silver](#) and two sets of clothing to give to them.”

2 Kings 5:23

two talents

This can be written in modern measurements. This talents are of silver. Alternate translation: "two talents of silver" or "66 kilograms of silver" (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

laid them on two

"gave them to"

Naaman urged Gehazi

Naaman urged him to take gifts. Alternate translation: "Naaman urged Gehazi to take the gifts" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [silver](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of silver](#)
- [two of his servants to carry back to Elisha](#)

ULT

²³ Naaman replied, "I am very happy to give you two talents." Naaman urged Gehazi and tied two talents of silver in two bags, with two changes of clothes, and laid them on two of his servants, who carried the bags of silver before Gehazi.

UST

²³ Naaman replied, "Certainly! You can have sixty-six kilograms [of silver](#)!" He urged Gehazi to take it. He also gave him two sets of clothing. He tied up the silver in two bags and gave them to [two of his servants to carry back to Elisha](#).

2 Kings 5:24

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [temple](#)
- [hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [hid them](#)
- [things into his house and](#)
- [the silver and the clothes from Naaman's servants](#)

ULT

²⁴ When Gehazi came to the hill, he took the bags of silver from their hands and hid them in the house; he sent the men away, and they left.

UST

²⁴ But when they arrived at the hill where Elisha lived, Gehazi took [the silver and the clothes from Naaman's servants](#) and sent the servants back to Naaman. Then he took those [things into his house and hid them](#).

2 Kings 5:25

Your servant

Gehazi refers to himself here as Elisha's servant.

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- walk, walked
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- Elisha
- go anywhere
- I

ULT

²⁵ When Gehazi went in and stood before his master, Elisha said to him, "Where have you come from, Gehazi?" He answered, "Your servant went nowhere."

UST

²⁵ When he went to [Elisha](#), Elisha asked him, "Where did you go, Gehazi?" Gehazi replied, "[I](#) did not [go anywhere](#)."

2 Kings 5:26

Was not my spirit with you when the man turned his chariot to meet you?

Elisha uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that Yahweh allowed him to see what Gehazi had done. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should have realized that my spirit could see you when Naaman stopped his chariot and talked to you." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Is this a time to accept money...female servants?

Elisha uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that this is not the time take gifts. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "This is not the time to accept money...female servants." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- silver
- chariot, charioteers
- flock, herd
- olive
- vineyard
- walk, walked
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- realize
- money
- chariot
- and sheep
- and olive groves
- and vineyards
- that my spirit was there when
- and servants

ULT

²⁶ Elisha said to Gehazi, "Was not my spirit with you when the man turned his chariot to meet you? Is this a time to accept money and clothes, olive orchards and vineyards, sheep and oxen, and male servants and female servants?"

UST

²⁶ Elisha asked him, "Do you not [realize that my spirit was there when](#) Naaman got out of his [chariot](#) to talk with you? This is certainly not the time to accept gifts of [money](#) and clothes [and olive groves and vineyards and sheep](#) and oxen [and servants](#)!"

2 Kings 5:27

the leprosy of Naaman will be on you and your descendants

This speaks of Gehazi and his descendant getting leprosy as if Naaman's leprosy was taken from him and given to Gehazi. Alternate translation: "you and your descendants will have leprosy, just as Naaman had leprosy"

So Gehazi went out from his presence

The phrase "his presence" refers to the area where Elisha could see him. This means that he left the room where Elisha was. Alternate translation: "When Gehazi left the room, he was" (See: [Idiom](#))

as white as snow

Leprosy makes skin white. Here Gehazi's leprous skin is compared to the color of snow. Alternate translation: "with skin that was white like snow" (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [When Gehazi left the room](#)

ULT

²⁷ So the leprosy of Naaman will be on you and your descendants forever." So Gehazi went out from his presence, a leper as white as snow.

UST

²⁷ Because you have done this, you and your children and all your descendants, forever, will have leprosy just like Naaman had!" [When Gehazi left the room](#), he was a leper. His skin was as white as snow.

2 Kings 6

2 Kings 6 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The stories of Elisha's miracles continue in this chapter. (See: [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

==Impossible actions == Elisha caused an iron ax head to float. He fooled the whole army of Aram that was sent to arrest him. When the king of Aram besieged the capital of Israel, the people became so hungry they started eating their children. Elisha told the king of Israel that there would be plenty of food the next day, but the king's counselor said it was impossible.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Rhetorical question

The king's counselor expressed his unbelief in Elisha's prophecy of plenty of food: "See, even if Yahweh should make windows in heaven, can this thing happen?" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [believe](#), [believer](#), [belief](#), [unbeliever](#), [unbelief](#) and [heaven](#), [sky](#), [heavens](#), [heavenly](#))

2 Kings 6:1

The sons of the prophets

This does not mean that they were the sons of prophets, but rather, that they were a group of prophets. See how you translated this phrase in [2 Kings 2:3](#). Alternate translation: “The group of prophets” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [One day the association of prophets](#)
- [One day the association of prophets](#)

ULT

¹ The sons of the prophets said to Elisha, “The place where we live with you is too small for us all.”

UST

¹ [One day the association of prophets](#) said to Elisha, “Look, this place where we meet together with you is very small.”

2 Kings 6:2

let us go to the Jordan

This refers to the area by the Jordan River. Alternate translation: “let us go beside the Jordan River” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jordan River, Jordan](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the Jordan River and...trees](#)
- [Allow us to go to](#)
- [go](#)

ULT

² Please let us go to the Jordan, and let every man cut down a tree there, and let us build us a place there where we may live.” Elisha answered, “You may go ahead.”

UST

² [Allow us to go to the Jordan River and](#) cut down some [trees](#) to make logs to build a new meeting place.” So Elisha said, “Very well, [go](#).”

2 Kings 6:3

your servants

Here one of the prophet refers to the of the sons of the prophets as Elisha's servants to show him honor.

Translation Words - ULT

- walk, walked
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- will go with you
- us

ULT

³ One of them said, "Please go with your servants." Elisha answered, "I will go."

UST

³ One of them said to Elisha, "Please come with us." So Elisha replied, "Very well, I will go with you."

2 Kings 6:4

General Information:

Elisha goes with the prophets to cut trees.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jordan River, Jordan](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the Jordan River](#)

ULT

⁴ So he went with them, and when they came to the Jordan, they began to cut down trees.

UST

⁴ So they went together. When they reached [the Jordan River](#) they cut down some trees.

2 Kings 6:5

the ax head fell into the water

The ax head refers to the blade of the ax. This means that the ax head came loose from its the handle and fell into the water.
Alternate translation: "the ax head separated from the handle and fell into the water"

Oh no

The man said this to show that he was upset and frustrated. If you have a way of expressing these emotions in your language, you can use it here.

it was borrowed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I borrowed it" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [lord](#), [Lord](#), [master](#), [sir](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Elisha](#)

ULT

⁵ But as one was chopping, the ax head fell into the water; he cried out and said, "Oh no, my master, it was borrowed!"

UST

⁵ But while one of them was cutting down a tree, suddenly the axe head separated from the handle and fell into the water. He cried out to [Elisha](#), "O, Master, what shall I do? The axe is not mine. I borrowed it!"

2 Kings 6:6

So the man of God said

"So Elisha, the man of God, asked"

He then cut off a stick, threw it in the water, and made the iron float

God uses Elisha to perform a miracle. The ax head rises to the surface of the water and it stays there so the prophet can pick it up.

made the iron float

"caused the iron to float"

the iron

"the ax head." The ax head was made of iron.

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Elisha](#)

ULT

⁶ So the man of God said, "Where did it fall?" The man showed Elisha the place. He then cut off a stick, threw it in the water, and made the iron float.

UST

⁶ [Elisha](#) replied, "Where did it fall into the water?" After the man showed him the place, Elisha cut off a stick, threw it into the water, and the axe head rose to the water surface.

2 Kings 6:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [his hand down and picked up the axe head](#)

ULT

⁷ Elisha said, "Pick it up." So the man reached out his hand and grabbed it.

UST

⁷ Elisha said, "Take it out of the water." So the man reached [his hand down and picked up the axe head](#).

2 Kings 6:8

Now the king of Aram was waging war against Israel

"When the king of Aram was at war with Israel,"

Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the author starts to tell a new part of the story.

saying, "My camp will be in such and such a place

The king of Aram was telling his counselors where to set up the camp. Here the phrase "such and such" is a way to refer to the information of the location of the camp without writing it out. If this phrase does not translate well into your language this may be written as indirect speech. Alternate translation: "and told them where his camp would be located" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [against Israel](#)
- [told them](#)
- [first consulted...and then](#)

ULT

⁸ Now the king of Aram was waging war against Israel. He consulted with his servants, saying, "My camp will be in such and such a place."

UST

⁸ Whenever the king of Aram prepared to send his army to fight [against Israel](#), he [first consulted](#) his officers, [and then told them](#) where they should set up their tents.

2 Kings 6:9

the man of God

"Elisha the man of God"

Be careful not to pass that place, for the Arameans are going down there

Elisha knew the specific place that the Arameans were going to set up their camp and advised the king of Israel for his soldiers to avoid that area.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- king, kingdom, kingship
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

Translation Words - UST

- But each time
- of Israel, telling him where the army of Aram was planning
- the king
- attack

ULT

⁹ So the man of God sent to the king of Israel, saying, "Be careful not to pass that place, for the Arameans are going down there."

UST

⁹ But each time Elisha would send a message to warn the king of Israel, telling him where the army of Aram was planning to attack them, saying, "Be sure that your army does not go near that place, because the army of Aram has set up their tents there."

2 Kings 6:10

to the place about which the man of God had spoken and warned him

This refers to the place that Elisha had warned the king about in [2 Kings 6:9](#).

More than once or twice, when the king went there, he was on his guard

Elisha would warn the king of where the Aramean army would attack so that he could alert the people before the attack happened.
Alternate translation: "Elisha warned the king of Israel in this way several times and the Israelites were able to stay safe" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Israel, Israelites
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- messengers
- of Israel
- So the king

ULT

¹⁰ The king of Israel sent a message to the place about which the man of God had spoken and warned him. More than once or twice, when the king went there, he was on his guard.

UST

¹⁰ [So the king of Israel](#) would send [messengers](#) to warn the people who lived in that place, and the people would remain on guard. That happened several times.

2 Kings 6:11

Will you not tell me who among us is for the king of Israel?

The king of Aram assumes there is a traitor among his soldiers who is giving information to the Israelite king. He uses this rhetorical question to try to find out who that traitor is. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Tell me which of you is for the king of Israel!" or "Tell me which of you is revealing our plans to the king of Israel!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

is for the king of Israel

"To be for someone" means to be loyal to that person. In this case, it means that they would give information to help the king of Israel. Alternate translation: "is helping the king of Israel" or "is loyal to the king of Israel" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- Israel, Israelites
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- very upset
- of Israel...is doing it
- The king of...was...about
- the king
- officers
- so he summoned his army

ULT

¹¹ The king of Aram was enraged about these warnings, and he called his servants and said to them, "Will you not tell me who among us is for the king of Israel?"

UST

¹¹ [The king of](#) Aram was [very upset about](#) this, [so he summoned his army officers](#) and said to them, "One of you is revealing our plans to [the king of Israel](#). Which one of you [is doing it](#)?"

2 Kings 6:12

No

The servant is saying that none of the king's soldiers are giving information to the king of Israel. Alternate translation: "It is none of us" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

my master, king

This refers to the king of Aram.

the words that you speak in your own bedroom

"what you say in the privacy of your own bedroom"

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Your
- prophet
- and he tells the king...Israel everything
- and he tells the king...Israel everything
- the
- and he tells the king...Israel everything

ULT

¹² So one of his servants said, "No, my master, king, for Elisha the prophet in Israel tells the king of Israel the words that you speak in your own bedroom!"

UST

¹² One of his officers answered, "[Your](#) Majesty, it is not one of us. Elisha [the prophet](#) knows what we plan to do, [and he tells the king](#) of [Israel everything](#). He even knows what you say in your own bedroom!"

2 Kings 6:13

I may send men and capture him

The king plans to send the men to capture Elisha for him. The king does not plan to capture him himself. Alternate translation: "I may send men to capture him" (See: [Metonymy](#))

See

This word is used here to draw the king's attention to what is said next. Alternate translation: "Listen"

he is in Dothan

"Elisha is in Dothan"

Dothan

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [walk, walked](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Go](#)

ULT

13 The king replied, "Go and see where Elisha is so I may send men and capture him." It was told him, "See, he is in Dothan."

UST

13 The king of Aram replied, "[Go](#) and find out where he is, and I will send some men there to capture him." Someone told him, "People say that he is in the city of Dothan, north of Samaria."

2 Kings 6:14

So the king

This refers to the king of Aram.

Translation Words - ULT

- [horse](#), [warhorse](#), [horseback](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [with horses](#)

ULT

14 So the king sent to Dothan horses, chariots, and a large army. They came by night and surrounded the city.

UST

14 So the king sent a large group of soldiers to Dothan [with horses](#) and chariots. They arrived at night and surrounded the city.

2 Kings 6:15

the man of God

"Elisha" or "Elisha the man of God"

behold

The word "behold" here shows that the servant was surprised by what he saw.

had risen early and gone outside, behold

"got up early in the morning and went outside, and he saw"

His servant said to him

The servant went back inside the house to tell Elisha what he had seen. Alternate translation: "The servant went back inside and said to Elisha" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- command, commandment
- God
- confirm, confirmation, legal
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- to Elisha
- went outside
- Elisha's
- got up
- the soldiers of Aram
- horses
- servant
- and...the house

ULT

¹⁵ When the servant of the man of God had risen early and gone outside, behold, a large army with horses and chariots surrounded the city. His servant said to him, "Oh, my master! What will we do?"

UST

¹⁵ Early the next morning, [Elisha's servant got up](#) and [went outside the house](#). He saw [the soldiers of Aram](#) with their [horses](#) and chariots surrounding the town. So he went inside the house and reported it [to Elisha](#) and exclaimed, "Oh, sir! What are we going to do?"

2 Kings 6:16

those who are with us are more than those who are with them

“To be with someone” in battle means to fight for their side.

Alternate translation: “those who are on our side in the battle are more than those who are on their side” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [fear](#), [afraid](#), [dread](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [be afraid](#)

ULT

¹⁶ Elisha answered, “Do not fear, for those who are with us are more than those who are with them.”

UST

¹⁶ Elisha replied, “Do not [be afraid](#)! Those who are helping us are many more than those who are helping them!”

2 Kings 6:17

open his eyes that he may see

Elisha is asking that his servant may be able to see things that other people cannot see, namely the horses and chariots of fire that are around them. Alternate translation: “make him able to see” (See: [Idiom](#))

he saw. Behold

“he could see. What he saw was that”

Behold

The word “Behold” here shows that the servant was surprised by what he saw.

the mountain was full of horses

“the mountainside was covered with horses”

around Elisha

This refers to the city where Elisha is. Alternate translation: “around the city where Elisha was” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- So Yahweh...the
- prayed
- they seemed to be made of fire
- was a huge number of horses
- servant

ULT

17 Elisha prayed and said, “Yahweh, I beg that you will open his eyes that he may see.” Then Yahweh opened the servant’s eyes, and he saw. Behold, the mountain was full of horses and chariots of fire around Elisha!

UST

17 Then he [prayed](#), “Yahweh, I request that you open my servant’s eyes in order that he can see what is out there!” [So Yahweh](#) enabled [the servant](#) to look out and see that surrounding the hill on which the town was built [was a huge number of horses](#) and chariots; [they seemed to be made of fire](#)!

2 Kings 6:18

these people

This refers to the Aramean soldiers.

Strike these people blind

"Cause these people to be blind!" This refers to Yahweh causing them to be unable to see clearly.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [pray, prayer](#)
- [nation](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [prayed again](#)
- [army of Aram](#)

ULT

18 When the Arameans came down to him, Elisha prayed to Yahweh and said, "Strike these people blind, I ask you." So Yahweh made them blind, just as Elisha had asked.

UST

18 When the [army of Aram](#) prepared to attack Elisha, he [prayed again](#), saying, "Yahweh, cause all these soldiers to become blind!" Yahweh answered his prayer and caused them to be unable to see clearly.

2 Kings 6:19

This is not the way, neither is this the city

Elisha confuses the Arameans by telling them that they are not at the city they are searching for. Alternate translation: "This is not the way, neither is this the city you are looking for" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [seek, search, look for](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [city Samaria, the capital of Israel](#)
- [I will take you](#)
- [are searching for](#)

ULT

19 Then Elisha told the Arameans, "This is not the way, neither is this the city. Follow me, and I will bring you to the man whom you are looking for." Then he led them to Samaria.

UST

19 Then Elisha went to them and said, "You are not on the right road. This is not the city that you are searching for. [I will take you](#) to the man whom you [are searching for](#)." But he led them to the [city Samaria, the capital of Israel](#).

2 Kings 6:20

It came about that

"It happened that" or "Then,"

open the eyes of these men that they may see

Elisha is asking Yahweh to cause the men to see clearly again.

Alternate translation: "allow these men to see" (See: [Idiom](#))

Yahweh opened their eyes and they saw

Yahweh allowed the men to see clearly again. Alternate translation:

"Yahweh took away their blindness" or "Yahweh allowed them to see clearly" (See: [Idiom](#))

behold

The word "behold" here shows that the Arameans were surprised by what they saw.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh, now...these soldiers](#)
- [see correctly again!" So Yahweh](#)
- [As soon as they...Samaria](#)
- [that they were...Samaria](#)

ULT

²⁰ It came about that when they had come into Samaria, Elisha said, "Yahweh, open the eyes of these men that they may see." Yahweh opened their eyes and they saw, and behold, they were in the middle of the city of Samaria.

UST

²⁰ [As soon as they](#) entered [Samaria](#), Elisha prayed again, saying, "[Yahweh, now](#) enable [these soldiers](#) to [see correctly again!"](#) So [Yahweh](#) enabled them to see correctly, and they were surprised to see [that they were](#) inside [Samaria](#).

2 Kings 6:21

when he saw them

“when he saw the Aramean soldiers”

My father

The king is speaking to Elisha the prophet and calling him “father” to show respect.

should I kill them? Should I kill them?

Here the king of Israel is referring to his army as himself. Alternate translation: “Should I order my army to kill these enemy soldiers?” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Israel](#)
- [Sir, shall I tell my soldiers](#)
- [When the king](#)

ULT

²¹ The king of Israel said to Elisha, when he saw them, “My father, should I kill them? Should I kill them?”

UST

²¹ [When the king of Israel](#) saw them, he said to Elisha, “[Sir, shall I tell my soldiers](#) to kill them? Shall we kill all of them?”

2 Kings 6:22

Elisha answered

Elisha was replying to the king of Israel's question.

Would you kill those whom you had taken captive with your sword and bow?

Elisha uses this rhetorical question to rebuke the king and tell him not to kill these men. The words "sword and bow" are a metonym for war in which soldiers use swords and bows and arrows. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You would not kill men whom you had captured in war, so you should not kill these men." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Put bread and water before them, that they may eat and drink

Here "bread" refers to food in general. Alternate translation: "Give them food to eat and water to drink" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

go to their master

This refers to the king of Aram.

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured
- bread
- devour
- sword, swordsmen

Translation Words - UST

- your enemies
- captured
- something to eat and drink
- something to eat and drink
- in a battle

ULT

²² Elisha answered, "You must not kill them. Would you kill those whom you had taken captive with your sword and bow? Put bread and water before them, that they may eat and drink, and go to their master."

UST

²² Elisha replied, "No, you must not kill them. If your army [captured](#) many of [your enemies in a battle](#), you would certainly not kill them. Give these men [something to eat and drink](#), and then allow them to return to their king."

2 Kings 6:23

So the king prepared much food for them

The king ordered his servants to prepare the food. He did not prepare the food himself. Alternate translation: "Then the king ordered his servants to prepare a lot of food for them" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Those bands

"Those groups"

did not return for a long time into the land of Israel

This means that they did not attack Israel for a long time. Alternate translation: "stopped attacking the land of Israel for a long time" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Israel, Israelites
- devour

Translation Words - UST

- the king of Aram and told him what had happened
- So the king of Israel did that
- He told his servants to

ULT

²³ So the king prepared much food for them, and when they had eaten and drunk, he sent them away, and they went back to their master. Those bands of Aramean soldiers did not return for a long time into the land of Israel.

UST

²³ [So the king of Israel did that. He told his servants to](#) provide a big feast for them. And when they had eaten and drunk plenty, he sent them away. They returned to [the king of Aram and told him what had happened](#). So for a while after that, soldiers from Aram stopped raiding towns in Israel.

2 Kings 6:24

Ben Hadad

The name of the king of Aram. His name means “son of Hadad.”
(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

attacked Samaria

The king and his army attacked Samaria. Alternate translation: “they attacked Samaria” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Samaria](#), Samaritan
- [king](#), kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- [Samaria and...the city for a long time](#)
- [the king](#)

ULT

24 Later after this Ben Hadad king of Aram gathered all his army and attacked Samaria and besieged it.

UST

24 But some time later, Ben Hadad [the king](#) of Aram, assembled his entire army, and they went to [Samaria and](#) surrounded [the city for a long time](#).

2 Kings 6:25

Behold

The word “behold” here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

a donkey’s head was sold for

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “a donkey’s head cost” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

eighty pieces of silver

“80 pieces of silver” (See: [Numbers](#))

the fourth part of a kab

This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “a fourth part of a liter” or “a quarter of a liter” (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

the fourth part

This is one part out of four equal parts. Alternate translation: “one fourth” or “a quarter” or “1/4” (See: [Fractions](#))

dove’s dung for

The words “was sold for” are understood from the previous phrase. They can be repeated here. Alternate translation: “dove’s dung was sold for” or “dove’s dung cost” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [donkey, mule](#)
- [head](#)
- [famine](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of silver, and...of...cost...pieces](#)
- [of silver](#)
- [a donkey's](#)
- [head, which was usually worthless](#)
- [hardly any food left](#)

ULT

²⁵ So there was a great famine in Samaria. Behold, they besieged it until a donkey’s head was sold for eighty pieces of silver, and the fourth part of a kab of dove’s dung for five pieces of silver.

UST

²⁵ Because of that, after a while there was [hardly any food left](#) inside the city, so that eventually [a donkey’s head, which was usually worthless](#), cost eighty pieces [of silver, and](#) one cup of dove’s dung [cost](#) five [pieces of silver](#).

2 Kings 6:26

was passing by on the wall

“walking on top of the city wall”

my master

The woman referred to the king by this name to show him respect.

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Israel, Israelites
- cry, cry out, outcry
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Your Majesty, help me
- of Israel
- cried out to him
- Your Majesty, help me
- One day when the king
- Your Majesty, help me

ULT

²⁶ As the king of Israel was passing by on the wall, a woman cried to him, saying, “Help, my master, king.”

UST

²⁶ [One day when the king of Israel](#) was walking on top of the city wall, a woman [cried out to him](#), “[Your Majesty, help me!](#)”

2 Kings 6:27

He said

"The king of Israel answered the woman,"

If Yahweh does not help you, how can I help you?

The king uses this rhetorical question to tell the woman that he cannot help her. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "If Yahweh is not helping you, then I cannot help you." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Is there anything coming from the threshing floor or winepress?

The king uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that there is no food available. Here the threshing floor refers to grain and the winepress refers to wine. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "There is nothing coming from the threshing floor or the winepress." or "There is no food to harvest or any grapes to make wine to drink." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

²⁷ He said, "If Yahweh does not help you, how can I help you? Is there anything coming from the threshing floor or winepress?"

UST

²⁷ He replied, "If [Yahweh will not help you, I certainly cannot. I](#) do not [have any wheat](#) or wine!

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [thresh](#)
- [deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue](#)
- [deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh will not...you](#)
- [cannot. I...have any wheat](#)
- [help](#)
- [I certainly](#)

2 Kings 6:28

The king continued

"The king said." This means that they continued talking.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- devour
- devour
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- your son
- flesh...we can kill my son
- eat
- eat
- What is...problem

ULT

²⁸ The king continued, "What is troubling you?" She answered, "This woman said to me, 'Give your son so that we may eat him today, and we will eat my son tomorrow.'"

UST

²⁸ What is your problem?" She replied, "Several days ago, that women over there said to me, 'Because we have nothing left to eat, let us kill your son today, in order that we can eat his flesh. Then tomorrow we can kill my son and eat his flesh.'

2 Kings 6:29

we boiled

"we cooked"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- son
- devour
- devour

Translation Words - UST

- So we killed my son and
- your son to me, in order that we can kill him
- But she has...her son
- ate
- eat it

ULT

²⁹ So we boiled my son and ate him, and I said to her on the next day, "Give your son that we may eat him, but she has hidden her son."

UST

²⁹ So we killed my son and cut his body up and boiled his flesh and ate it. The next day, I said to her, 'Now give your son to me, in order that we can kill him and cook his flesh and eat it.' But she has hidden her son."

2 Kings 6:30

heard the words of the woman

The words “the words” are a metonym for what the woman said. Alternate translation: “heard the woman tell what she and the other woman had done” (See: [Metonymy](#))

he tore his clothes

The king ripped his outer garment to show his distress. Alternate translation: “he tore his clothes in grief” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

now he was passing by on the wall

He had been walking on the city wall when the woman called out to him in [2 Kings 6:24](#). Now he continued walking along it.

he had sackcloth underneath, against his skin

By wearing sackcloth even for his undergarments, the king showed that he was very sad and upset. Alternate translation: “he had sackcloth underneath his outer garment, against his skin” or “he was wearing sackcloth underneath his robe because he was very upset” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

ULT

30 So when the king heard the words of the woman, he tore his clothes (now he was passing by on the wall), and the people looked and saw that he had sackcloth underneath, against his skin.

UST

30 [When the king](#) heard what the woman said, he tore his robe to show that he was very upset. The [people](#) who were standing close to the wall were able to see that the king was wearing rough cloth [underneath his robe](#) because he was very upset.

Translation Words - ULT

- [flesh](#)
- [people](#), [people group](#),
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [underneath his robe](#)
- [people](#)
- [When the king](#)
- [underneath his robe](#)

2 Kings 6:31

May God do so to me, and more also

The king is saying he hopes God will punish him and even kill him if Elisha the prophet does not die because of the things that have happened in the city of Samaria. Alternate translation: "May God punish me and kill me" (See: [Euphemism](#))

if the head of Elisha son of Shaphat remains on him today

This refers to Elisha dying, specifically be being beheaded. Alternate translation: "if Elisha son of Shaphat is not beheaded today" or "if my soldiers do not behead Elisha son of Shaphat today" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- appoint, appointed
- head

Translation Words - UST

- of Elisha
- that God will strike me dead
- if I...not
- head

ULT

³¹ Then he said, "May God do so to me, and more also, if the head of Elisha son of Shaphat remains on him today."

UST

³¹ The king exclaimed, "I wish [that God will strike me dead if I](#) do [not](#) cut off the [head of Elisha](#) today, because he is the one who has caused these terrible things to happen to us!"

2 Kings 6:32

The king sent a man from before him

"To be before the king" means to be one of his servants. Alternate translation: "The king of Israel sent one of his servants as a messenger" (See: [Idiom](#))

when the messenger came to Elisha, he said to the elders

Here Elisha is speaking to the elders right before the king's messenger arrived. Alternate translation: "when the messenger had almost arrived, Elisha said to the elders" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

See how this son of a murderer has sent to take away my head?

Elisha uses this rhetorical question to draw attention to the king's messenger and to insult the king. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "See, this son of a murderer has sent someone to remove my head!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

son of a murderer

This means that the king of Israel has the characteristics of a murderer. Alternate translation: "this man who is like a murderer" or "that murderer" (See: [Idiom](#))

has sent to

It is understood that he sent a person. Alternate translation: "has sent someone to" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

to take away my head

This means to behead him. Alternate translation: "to cut off my head" or "to behead me" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Look, when

Elisha uses this word here to draw the elder's attention to what he says next. Alternate translation: "Listen to what I want you to do: when"

hold the door shut against him

If a door is shut against someone it means that it is closed and that they may not enter through it. Alternate translation: "hold the door shut so that he cannot come in" (See: [Idiom](#))

Is not the sound of his master's feet behind him?

Elisha uses this question to assure the elders that the king is coming not far behind him. This rhetorical question may be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "The sound of his master's feet is right behind him." or "The king will be coming along soon after he arrives." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

32 But Elisha was sitting in his house, and the elders were sitting with him. The king sent a man from before him, but when the messenger came to Elisha, he said to the elders, "See how this son of a murderer has sent to take away my head? Look, when the messenger comes, shut the door, and hold the door shut against him. Is not the sound of his master's feet behind him?"

UST

32 So the king sent an officer to get Elisha. Before the officer arrived, Elisha was sitting in his [house with some Israelite elders who were talking](#) with him. Elisha said to them, "That murderer, the king of Israel, is sending someone here to kill me. [Listen](#). When [he](#) arrives, shut the door and do not allow [him](#) to come in, [because the king will be](#) coming [right behind that officer!](#)"

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- temple
- head
- elder, older, old
- elder, older, old

Translation Words - UST

- him
- because the king will be...right behind that officer
- house with some Israelite...who were talking
- he
- elders
- Listen

2 Kings 6:33

behold, the messenger

The word “behold” alerts us to the arrival of the messenger.

the messenger came down to him

The messenger arrived, and so did the king, as Elisha had said he would. The phrase “came down to him” means that they arrived at the place where he was. Alternate translation: “the messenger and the king arrived” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Idiom](#))

Behold

“Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important”

this trouble

“Indeed, this trouble.” The word “behold” here adds emphasis to what follows. The phrase “this trouble” refers to the famine in Samaria and the suffering it caused.

Why should I wait for Yahweh any longer?

This king use this rhetorical question to emphasize that he does not believe that Yahweh is going to help them. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: “Why should I continue to wait for Yahweh to help us?” or “I will not wait any longer for help from Yahweh!” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant

Translation Words - UST

- It is Yahweh who is allowing us
- him to help us
- have all this trouble

ULT

33 While he was still talking with them, behold, the messenger came down to him. The king had said, “Behold, this trouble comes from Yahweh. Why should I wait for Yahweh any longer?”

UST

33 And while he was still speaking, the king and the officer arrived. The king said, “[It is Yahweh who is allowing us to have all this trouble](#). I will no longer wait for [him to help us](#).”

2 Kings 7

2 Kings 7 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The stories of Elisha's miracles continue in this chapter. (See: [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Fear

God caused the army of Aram to hear the sound of an enormous army approaching so they all ran away leaving all their food behind.

2 Kings 7:1

a measure of fine flour will be sold for a shekel, and two measures of barley for a shekel

It is implied that the Israelites will be paying less money for these item than they had been. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people will sell a measure of fine flour for a shekel and two measures of barley for a shekel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

a measure of fine flour...two measures of barley

Here the word "measure" translates the word "seah," which is a unit of dry measurement equal to about 7 liters. Alternate translation: "7 liters of fine flour...14 liters of barley" (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

a shekel

A shekel is a unit of weight equal to about 11 grams. Alternate translation: "about 11 grams of silver" or "one silver coin" (See: [Biblical Money](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [barley](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [to what...He](#)
- [in Samaria, you will be able to buy](#)
- [at the marketplace](#)
- [and...of barley for](#)

ULT

¹ Elisha said, "Hear the word of Yahweh. This is what Yahweh says: 'Tomorrow about this time a measure of fine flour will be sold for a shekel, and two measures of barley for a shekel, in the gate of Samaria.'"

UST

¹ Elisha replied to the king, "Listen [to what Yahweh](#) says: '[He](#) says that by this time tomorrow, [at the marketplace](#) here [in Samaria, you will be able to buy](#) seven liters of the best flour for one piece of silver, and fourteen liters [of barley for](#) one piece of silver.'"

2 Kings 7:2

the captain on whose hand the king leaned

A high ranking captain who was the king's personal assistant is spoken of as if he was a person on whom the king leaned his hand. Alternate translation: "the captain who was close to the king" or "the captain who was the king's personal assistant" (See: [Metaphor](#))

even if Yahweh should make windows in heaven

Yahweh causing much rain to fall in order to make the crops grow is spoken of as if Yahweh were opening windows in heaven through which he pours down rain. Alternate translation: "even if Yahweh were to cause much rain to fall from heaven" (See: [Metaphor](#))

can this thing happen?

The captain asks this question to express his unbelief. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "this could never happen!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

you will watch it happen with your own eyes

The phrase "with your own eyes" emphasizes that the captain will certainly see the things that Elisha prophesied. Alternate translation: "you yourself will watch these things happen" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

but you will not eat any of it

"but you will not eat any of the flour or barely"

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)
- [devour](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of the sky and send grain down to us, that](#)
- [Elijah](#)
- [Even if Yahweh himself...the](#)
- [would open](#)
- [be able to eat any of the food](#)
- [The officer accompanying the king](#)

ULT

² Then the captain on whose hand the king leaned answered the man of God, and said, "See, even if Yahweh should make windows in heaven, can this thing happen?" Elisha replied, "See, you will watch it happen with your own eyes, but you will not eat any of it."

UST

² [The officer accompanying the king](#) said to [Elijah](#), "That cannot happen! [Even if Yahweh himself would open the windows of the sky and send grain down to us, that](#) certainly could not happen!" Elisha replied, "Because you said that, you will see it happen, but you will not [be able to eat any of the food!](#)"

2 Kings 7:3

Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the writer starts to tell a new part of the story.

Why should we sit here until we die?

Although there were four men, probably only one of them asks this question. The question is rhetorical and emphasizes that they should not do this. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Certainly we should not sit here until we die" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [gate](#), [gate bars](#), [gatekeeper](#), [gateposts](#), [gateway](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the gate](#)

ULT

³ Now there were four men with leprosy right outside the city gate. They said one to another, "Why should we sit here until we die?"

UST

³ That day there were four men who had leprosy who were sitting outside [the gate](#) of the city of Samaria. They said to each other, "Why should we wait here until we die?"

2 Kings 7:4

If they keep us alive, we will live, and if they kill us, we will only die

The four men with leprosy are saying that the Arameans might feed them so that they can live, or they might kill them, which would be no worse since they would die anyway.

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- walk, walked
- bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Translation Words - UST

- remain alive
- remain alive
- we will die...because there is no
- will die
- we will not die
- So let us go
- So let us go

ULT

⁴ If we say that we should go into the city, then the famine is in the city, and we will die there. But if we still sit here, we will still die. Now then, come, let us go to the army of the Arameans. If they keep us alive, we will live, and if they kill us, we will only die."

UST

⁴ If we go into the city, we will die there, because there is no food there. If we remain sitting here, we will die here. So let us go to where the army of Aram has set up their tents. If they kill us, we will die. But if they allow us to remain alive, we will not die."

2 Kings 7:5

at twilight

This refers to the early evening after the sun has set, but before it is dark.

the outermost part

“the edge”

ULT

⁵ So they rose up at twilight to go into the Aramean camp; when they arrived at the outermost part of the camp, there was no one there.

UST

⁵ So when it was getting dark, those four men went to the camp where the army of Aram had set up their tents. But when they reached the camp, they saw that there was no one there.

2 Kings 7:6

the Aramean army hear a noise of chariots, and a noise of horses—the noise of another large army

The soldiers of the Aramean army heard noises that sounded like a large army approaching to battle them. This was not an actual army, but the Lord had made them hear these sounds.

they said to each other

“the Aramean soldiers said to each other”

the kings of the Hittites and Egyptians

Here the word “kings” represents the kings and their armies.
Alternate translation: “the armies of the Hittites and the Egyptians”
(See: [Synecdoche](#))

to come against us

“to fight us” or “to attack us”

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- Israel, Israelites
- Hittite
- Egypt, Egyptian
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- horse, warhorse, horseback

Translation Words - UST

- to each other
- of Israel has hired the
- the Hittites
- Egypt and
- army marching
- The king
- kings of
- the Hittites
- and horses. So the soldiers

ULT

⁶ For the Lord had made the Aramean army hear a noise of chariots, and a noise of horses—the noise of another large army, and they said to each other, “The king of Israel has hired the kings of the Hittites and Egyptians to come against us.”

UST

⁶ What had happened was that Yahweh had caused the army of Aram to hear something that sounded like a large [army marching](#) with chariots [and horses](#). [So the soldiers](#) said [to each other](#), “Listen! [The king of Israel has hired the kings of Egypt and the Hittites](#) and their armies, and they have come to attack us!”

2 Kings 7:7

General Information:

This is what happened after the Lord caused the Aramean soldiers to think they heard a large enemy army approaching their camp.

in the twilight

This refers to the early evening after the sun has set, but before it is dark.

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- donkey, mule
- horse, warhorse, horseback

Translation Words - UST

- ran away...because they were afraid that they would die if they stayed there
- and donkeys there
- and their horses

ULT

⁷ So the soldiers arose and fled in the twilight; they left their tents, their horses, their donkeys, and the camp as it was, and fled for their lives.

UST

⁷ So they all [ran away](#) that evening at sundown and left their tents [and their horses and donkeys there](#), [because they were afraid that they would die if they stayed there](#).

2 Kings 7:8

plunder

This refers to items that a conquering army takes from another army that they have defeated. Here it refers to “silver and gold and clothes.”

Translation Words - ULT

- [silver](#)
- [devour](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [return](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the silver](#)
- [So they ate](#)
- [the gold](#)
- [Then they entered](#)

ULT

⁸ When the men with leprosy came to the outermost part of the camp, they went into one tent and ate and drank, and carried away silver and gold and clothes, and went and hid them. They came back and entered into another tent and carried plunder away from there also, and went and hid it.

UST

⁸ When those four men with leprosy came to the edge of the area where the soldiers of Aram had set up their tents, they went into one tent and saw all the things that had been left there. [So they ate](#) and drank what was there, and they took [the silver](#) and [the gold](#) and clothes. Then they went outside the tent and hid those things. [Then they entered](#) another tent and took things from there, and then went outside and hid them, also.

2 Kings 7:9

until daybreak

“until morning”

punishment will overtake us

Someone punishing the four men is spoken of as if punishment were a person who captures them. Alternate translation: “the people will punish us” or “someone will punish us” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Personification](#))

tell the king’s household

Here the word “household” represents the people who live in the king’s palace. Alternate translation: “tell the king and his people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [iniquity](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [walk, walked](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [punish us](#)
- [the king’s officials](#)
- [and tell it to](#)
- [to the palace](#)

ULT

⁹ Then they said each other, “We are not doing right. This day is a day of good news, but we are keeping quiet about it. If we wait until daybreak, punishment will overtake us. Now then, come, let us go and tell the king’s household.”

UST

⁹ But then they said to each other, “We are not doing what is right. We have good news to tell others today. If we do not tell it to anyone now, and if we wait until morning to tell it, the people will certainly [punish us](#). So let us go right now [to the palace and tell it to the king’s officials!](#)”

2 Kings 7:10

as they were

The implicit information may be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "as they were when the soldiers were still there" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- donkeys...tied up
- donkeys...tied up
- Their horses and...were still...but
- to the guards

ULT

¹⁰ So they went and called the gatekeepers of the city. They told them, saying, "We went to the camp of the Arameans, but there was no one there, not the sound of anyone, but there were the horses tied, and the donkeys tied, and the tents as they were."

UST

¹⁰ So they went [to the guards](#) at the city gates and called out to them, "We went to where the army of Aram had set up their tents, but we did not see or hear anyone there. [Their horses and donkeys were still tied up, but](#) their tents were all deserted!"

2 Kings 7:11

then it was told inside the king's household

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “then people told it inside the king’s household” or “then people told it to the king and those in his palace” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- king, kingdom, kingship
- declare, proclaim, announce
- house

Translation Words - UST

- The guards
- and some people who heard it
- palace
- to the

ULT

11 Then the gatekeepers shouted out the news, and then it was told inside the king's household.

UST

11 [The guards](#) shouted the news, [and some people who heard it](#) went [to the palace](#) and reported it there.

2 Kings 7:12

have done to us

“are planning to do to us” or “have done to deceive us”

take them alive

This means that they would capture the people and not kill them.

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- command, commandment
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- capture
- leave
- the king heard this news
- to his officials
- They know
- the city

ULT

¹² Then the king arose at night and said to his servants, “I will tell you now what the Arameans have done to us. They know that we are hungry, so they have gone out of the camp to hide themselves in the fields. They are saying, ‘When they come out of the city, we will take them alive, and get into the city.’”

UST

¹² It was in the night that [the king heard this news](#). He got up out of his bed and said [to his officials](#), “I will tell you what the army of Aram is planning to do. [They know](#) that we have no food here, so they have left their tents and are hiding in the fields. They think that we will [leave the city](#) to find some food, and then they will [capture](#) us and capture the city.”

2 Kings 7:13

the horses that remain, which are left in the city

Many of the horses belonging to the Israelites had died because of the famine. The meaning of this can be made clear. Alternate translation: “the horses in the city that are still alive” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

see

The implicit information about what he wanted to see may be expressed clearly. Alternate translation: “see if what these lepers have said is true” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- horse, warhorse, horseback

Translation Words - UST

- stay here, we also will die anyway
- are still alive
- our horses that are...to go and

ULT

13 One of the king's servants answered and said, “I beg you, let some men take five of the horses that remain, which are left in the city. They are like all the rest of the population of Israel who are left—most are now dead; let us send them and see.”

UST

13 But one of his officials said, “Many of our people have already died from hunger. If those of us who [are still alive](#) all [stay here, we also will die anyway](#). So let us send some men with five of [our horses that are](#) still alive [to go and](#) see what has really happened.”

2 Kings 7:14

Go and see

The implicit information about what the king wanted them to see may be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "Go and see if what these lepers have said is true" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked
- horse, warhorse, horseback

Translation Words - UST

- the
- go...and find out what had happened
- chariots

ULT

14 So they took two chariots with horses, and the king sent them after the army of the Arameans, saying, "Go and see."

UST

14 So they chose some men and told them to [go](#) in two [chariots and find out what had happened](#) to [the](#) army of Aram.

2 Kings 7:15

They went after them to the Jordan

"They followed the path the Aramean army took all the way to the Jordan River"

all the road was full of clothes and equipment

This is an exaggeration that means the men saw these items scattered along the road as they traveled. Alternate translation: "there were clothes and equipment all along the road" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jordan River, Jordan](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [return](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [as the Jordan River](#)
- [to the king...what they had seen](#)
- [So the men returned](#)

ULT

15 They went after them to the Jordan, and all the road was full of clothes and equipment that the Arameans had cast away in their hurry. So the messengers returned and told the king.

UST

15 They went as far [as the Jordan River](#). All along the road they saw clothes and equipment that the soldiers from Aram had thrown away while they were running away. [So the men returned to the king](#) and reported [what they had seen](#).

2 Kings 7:16

plundered the camp

This refers to taking items from a defeated army.

So a measure of fine flour was sold for a shekel, and two measures of barley for a shekel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "So people sold a measure of fine flour for a shekel and two measures of barley for a shekel" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

a measure of fine flour...two measures of barley

Here the word "measure" translates the word "seah," which is a unit of dry measurement equal to about 7 liters. Alternate translation: "7 liters of fine flour...14 liters of barley" (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

a shekel

A shekel is a unit of weight equal to about 11 grams. Alternate translation: "about 11 grams of silver" or "one silver coin"(See: [Biblical Money](#))

just as the word of Yahweh had said

Here "word" represents Yahweh. Alternate translation: "just as Yahweh had said" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [barley](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [went out](#)
- [which was what Yahweh had said](#)
- [Then many of the people](#)
- [of barley](#)

ULT

16 The people went out and plundered the camp of the Arameans. So a measure of fine flour was sold for a shekel, and two measures of barley for a shekel, just as the word of Yahweh had said.

UST

16 [Then many of the people](#) of Samaria also [went out](#) of the city and went to where the army of Aram had set up their tents. They entered all the tents and took everything. So there was now plenty of everything! As a result people could buy seven liters of the best flour for one piece of silver, and fourteen liters [of barley](#) for one piece of silver, [which was what Yahweh had said](#) would happen!

2 Kings 7:17

the captain on whose hand he had leaned

A high ranking captain who was the king's personal assistant is spoken of as if he were a person on whom the king leaned his hand. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 7:2](#). Alternate translation: "the captain who was close to the king" or "the captain who was the king's personal assistant" (See: [Metaphor](#))

trampled him down

The crowd of people were in such a rush to get to the food in the camp that they knocked over the man and trampled him to death.

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [God](#)
- [hand](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to supervise](#)
- [Elisha](#)
- [on him, and he](#)
- [But as he was standing...all the people](#)
- [at the city gate](#)
- [at the gate](#)
- [died, which was what](#)
- [The king](#)
- [the city trampled](#)

ULT

17 The king had ordered the captain on whose hand he had leaned to be in charge of the gate, and the people trampled him down in the gateway. He died as the man of God had said, who spoke when the king had come down to him.

UST

17 [The king](#) of Israel had ordered his assistant, the one who had spoken with [Elisha, to supervise](#) what was happening [at the city gate](#). [But as he was standing at the gate, all the people](#) who were rushing outside [the city](#) [trampled on him, and he died, which was what](#) Elisha had said would happen to him.

2 Kings 7:18

General Information:

In this verse, the writer summarizes what happened by repeating the events that he described in [2 Kings 7:1](#). (See: [End of Story](#))

About this time

"About this time tomorrow"

two measures of barley...a measure of fine flour

Here the word "measure" translates the word "seah," which is a unit of dry measurement equal to about 7 liters. Alternate translation: "14 liters of barley...7 liters of fine flour" (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

a shekel

A shekel is a unit of weight equal to about 11 grams. Alternate translation: "about 11 grams of silver" or "one silver coin" (See: [Biblical Money](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Samaria, Samaritan
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- king, kingdom, kingship
- barley

Translation Words - UST

- Elisha had
- plenty of food, with
- plenty of food, with
- to the king...the
- of barley for

ULT

¹⁸ So it happened as the man of God had said to the king, saying, "About this time in the gate of Samaria, two measures of barley will be available for a shekel, and a measure of fine flour for a shekel."

UST

¹⁸ [Elisha had](#) told [to the king](#) that by the next day there would be [plenty of food](#), [with the](#) result that anyone could buy fourteen liters [of barley for](#) one piece of silver, and seven liters of the best flour for one piece of silver.

2 Kings 7:19

General Information:

In this verse, the writer summarizes what happened by repeating the events that he described in [2 Kings 7:2](#). (See: [End of Story](#))

See

“Look” or “Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

even if Yahweh should make windows in heaven

Yahweh causing much rain to fall in order to make the crops grow is spoken of as if Yahweh were opening windows in heaven through which he pours down rain. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 7:2](#). Alternate translation: “even if Yahweh were to cause much rain to fall from heaven” (See: [Metaphor](#))

can this thing happen?

The captain asks this question to express his unbelief. This question can be translated as a statement. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 7:2](#). Alternate translation: “this could never happen!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

you will watch it happen with your own eyes

The phrase “with your own eyes” emphasizes that the captain will certainly see the things that Elisha prophesied. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 7:2](#). Alternate translation: “you yourself will watch these things happen” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

but you will not eat any of it

“but you will not eat any of the flour or barley”

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [devour](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [would...the sky and send down some grain](#)
- [And Elisha had](#)
- [had answered, “That...Even if Yahweh himself](#)
- [eat any of the food](#)

ULT

¹⁹ That captain had answered the man of God and said, “See, even if Yahweh should make windows in heaven, can this thing happen?” Elisha had said, “See, you will watch it happen with your own eyes, but you will not eat any of it.”

UST

¹⁹ That officer [had answered, “That](#) certainly cannot happen! [Even if Yahweh himself](#) would open [the sky and send down some grain](#), that could not happen.” [And Elisha had](#) replied, “Because you said that, you will see it happen, but you will not be able to [eat any of the food!](#)”

2 Kings 7:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- die, dead, deadly, death,

Translation Words - UST

- The people who
- of the city gate
- died

ULT

²⁰ That is what exactly what happened to him, for the people trampled him in the gate, and he died.

UST

²⁰ And that is what happened to him. The people who were rushing out of the city gate trampled on him, and he died.

2 Kings 8

2 Kings 8 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The stories of Elisha's miracles continue in this chapter. (See: [miracle](#), [wonder](#), [sign](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Kings

Elisha told Hazael that he would be king of Aram. Jehoram became king of Judah. He was evil so Edom and Libna revolted and chose their own kings. (See: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [unpleasant](#))

2 Kings 8:1

Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the author starts to tell a new part of the story.

the woman whose son he had restored to life

The story of this woman and her son is found at [2 Kings 4:8](#).

he had restored to life

"he had caused to become alive again"

Arise, and go

To arise here is for a person to stop what he is doing and begin to do what he needs to do. Alternate translation: "Do as I say, and go"

Translation Words - ULT

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [call, call out](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and live](#)
- [was going to send](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [land](#)
- [with her family](#)

ULT

¹ Now Elisha had spoken to the woman whose son he had restored to life. He said to her, "Arise, and go with your household, and stay wherever you can in another land, because Yahweh has called for a famine which will come on this land for seven years."

UST

¹ After Elisha had caused [the son of](#) the woman from the city of Shunem to become alive again, he had told her that she should leave [with her family and live](#) somewhere else for a while, because [Yahweh was going to send](#) a famine in the [land](#). He said that the famine would last for seven years.

2 Kings 8:2

the woman arose and she obeyed the word of the man of God

To arise here is for a person to stop what he is doing and begin to do what he needs to do. She may have been standing when she heard Elisha speak and decided to go.

the man of God

“Elisha, the man of God”

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [had done what Elisha...her](#)
- [in the...of Philistia](#)
- [her family](#)

ULT

² So the woman arose and she obeyed the word of the man of God. She went with her household and lived in the land of the Philistines seven years.

UST

² So the woman [had done what Elisha](#) told [her](#) to do. She and [her family](#) had gone to live [in the](#) region [of Philistia](#) for seven years.

2 Kings 8:3

to the king

This refers to the king of Israel.

for her house and for her land

While the woman was gone, her home and property were sieged. She is begging for them to be returned to her. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "for her home and her property to be returned to her" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Philistines](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [return](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [returned](#)
- [returned](#)
- [the king](#)
- [they...to their](#)
- [that her house and her](#)

ULT

³ It came about at the end of seven years that the woman returned from the land of the Philistines, and she went to the king to beg him for her house and for her land.

UST

³ After the seven years were ended, [they returned to their](#) home. The woman went to [the king](#) to request [that her house and her](#) land be given back to her.

2 Kings 8:4

Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the author tells us background information about what the king was doing when the woman arrived. (See: [Background Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- Elisha's
- When she arrived, the king was talking
- servant. The king was

ULT

⁴ Now the king was talking with Gehazi the servant of the man of God, saying, "Please tell me all the great things that Elisha has done."

UST

⁴ [When she arrived, the king was talking](#) with Gehazi, [Elisha's servant](#). The king [was](#) saying to him, "Tell me all the great things that Elisha has done."

2 Kings 8:5

had restored to life the child who was dead

“had caused the child who was dead to become alive again”

for her house and land

While the woman was gone, her home and property were sieged. She is begging for them to be returned to her. The meaning of this can be made clear. Alternate translation: “for her home and her property to be returned to her” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- son
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- cry, cry out, outcry
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship (2)
- house

Translation Words - UST

- alive
- the son of
- alive
- Your
- the son of
- son
- alive
- requested
- telling
- the king
- the king (2)
- get her house and

ULT

⁵ Then as he was telling the king how Elisha had restored to life the child who was dead, the very woman whose son he had restored to life came to beg the king for her house and land. Gehazi said, “My master, king, this is the woman, and this is her son, whom Elisha restored to life.”

UST

⁵ While Gehazi was [telling the king](#) that Elisha had caused [the son of](#) a woman from Shunem to become [alive](#) again, that woman came in and [requested the king](#) to enable her to [get her house and land back again](#). Gehazi exclaimed, “[Your Majesty](#), this is the woman whose [son](#) Elisha caused to become [alive](#) again!”

2 Kings 8:6

about her son

This refers to the story of her son dying and Elisha bringing him back to life. The meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “about what had happened to her son” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

all the harvests of her fields

This metonymy refers to the amount of money that the harvests of her fields were worth while she was away. Alternate translation: “all the profit from the harvests of her fields” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- restore, restoration
- forsake, forsaken, leave
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- everything
- gets back
- When the king
- that what...had said was true. The king
- while she was away from her...So the official did that

ULT

⁶ When the king asked the woman about her son, she explained it to him. So the king ordered a certain officer for her, saying, “Give back to her all that was hers and all the harvests of her fields since the day that she left the land until now.”

UST

⁶ [When the king](#) asked her about it, she told him [that what](#) Gehazi [had said was true](#). [The king](#) summoned one of his officials and said to him, “Make sure that this woman [gets back everything](#) that she owned in the past, including the value of all the crops that have been harvested during these last seven years [while she was away from her](#) land.” [So the official did that](#).

2 Kings 8:7

Ben Hadad

This is the name of the king of Aram. His name means “son of Hadad.” See how you translated this man’s name in [2 Kings 6:24](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [that Elisha was](#)
- [the king](#)

ULT

⁷ Elisha came to Damascus where Ben Hadad the king of Aram was sick. The king was told, “The man of God has come here.”

UST

⁷ Elisha went to Damascus, the capital of Aram, at the time when Ben Hadad, [the king](#) of Aram, was very sick. When someone told the king [that Elisha was](#) in Damascus,

2 Kings 8:8

Hazael

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Take a gift

Hazael was to take many gifts, not just one. Alternate translation: "take many gifts" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

in your hand

The phrase "in your hand" is an idiom meaning for him to take the gifts with him. Alternate translation: "with you" (See: [Idiom](#))

the man of God

"Elisha, the man of God"

consult with Yahweh through him, saying

"ask Elisha to ask Yahweh"

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [grain offering](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [that prophet and](#)
- [Yahweh if](#)
- [with you](#)
- [the king](#)
- [a present](#)

ULT

⁸ The king said to Hazael, "Take a gift in your hand and go meet the man of God, and consult with Yahweh through him, saying, 'Will I recover from this sickness?'"

UST

⁸ [the king](#) told one of his officials named Hazael, "Go and talk to [that prophet and](#) take [a present with you](#) to give to him. Request him to ask [Yahweh if](#) I will recover from my illness."

2 Kings 8:9

carried by forty camels

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “which forty camels carried”

forty camels

“40 camels” (See: [Numbers](#))

Your son Ben Hadad king of Aram

Ben Hadad was not actually Elisha’s son, but Hazael called him that to show a close relationship between them. Alternate translation: “Ben Hadad, the king of Aram, who is like a son to you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances
- hand
- king, kingdom, kingship
- camel
- grain offering

Translation Words - UST

- Elisha
- kinds of goods
- that were produced
- He took with him...that were carrying
- the king
- camels
- He took with him...that were carrying

ULT

⁹ So Hazael went to meet him and took a gift with him of every kind of good thing of Damascus, carried by forty camels. So Hazael came and stood before Elisha and said, “Your son Ben Hadad king of Aram has sent me to you, saying, ‘Will I recover from this sickness?’”

UST

⁹ So Hazael went to talk with [Elisha](#). [He took with him](#) forty [camels that were carrying](#) many [kinds of goods that were produced](#) in Damascus. When Hazael met him, he said to him, “Your friend Ben Hadad, [the king](#) of Aram, sent me to ask you whether you think he will recover from his illness.”

2 Kings 8:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- recovers
- recovers
- but Yahweh
- Go and

ULT

¹⁰ Elisha said to him, "Go, say to Ben Hadad, 'You will surely recover,' but Yahweh has shown me that he will surely die."

UST

¹⁰ Elisha said to Hazael, "[Go and](#) say to him, 'Yes, you will certainly not die from this illness,' [but Yahweh](#) has shown me that he will certainly die before he [recovers](#)."

2 Kings 8:11

until he was ashamed

“until Hazael felt uncomfortable”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- appoint, appointed
- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- Then Elisha
- That caused Hazael to feel uneasy
- suddenly...started
- That caused Hazael to feel uneasy

ULT

11 Then Elisha stared at Hazael until he was ashamed, and the man of God wept.

UST

11 [Then Elisha](#) stared at him and had a terrified look on his face. [That caused Hazael to feel uneasy](#). Then [suddenly](#) Elisha [started](#) to cry.

2 Kings 8:12

my master

Hazael refers to Elisha this way to honor him.

Because I know

God has shown Elisha what will take place in the future.

you will do

The word “you” represents Hazael and refers to himself and the soldiers under his control when he is king. Alternate translation: “you will cause to happen” or “you will order your soldiers” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

You will set...you will kill

The word “you” represents Hazael but here refers to his soldiers and not to Hazael personally. Alternate translation: “Your soldiers will set... your soldiers will kill” (See: [Metonymy](#))

dash in pieces their little ones

“crush their little children.” This is a brutal description of the soldiers killing children.

kill their young men with the sword

This means that the men will be killed in battle. The sword was the main weapon used in battle. Alternate translation: “kill their young men in battle” (See: [Metonymy](#))

rip open their pregnant women

Specifically this refers to tear open their stomachs. Alternate translation: “rip open the stomachs of their pregnant women with swords” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- sword, swordsmen
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- Your soldiers will
- Elisha
- of Israel

ULT

¹² Hazael asked, “Why do you weep, my master?” He answered, “Because I know the evil that you will do to the people of Israel. You will set their strongholds on fire, and you will kill their young men with the sword, dash in pieces their little ones, and rip open their pregnant women.”

UST

¹² Hazael said, “Sir, why are you crying?” [Elisha](#) replied, “Because Yahweh has enabled me [to know the terrible things](#) that you will do to the people [of Israel](#). [Your soldiers will burn their cities](#) that now have walls around them, [kill](#) their fine young men in battle, crush the heads of their children, and rip open the bellies of their pregnant women [with swords](#).”

- terrible things
- kill
- with swords
- burn their cities
- to know the

2 Kings 8:13

Who is your servant, that he should do this great thing?

Hazel refers to himself here as Elisha's servant. Hazel uses this rhetorical question to emphasize that he does not think he could do the terrible things that Elisha has said. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "I could never do such great things!" or "Who am I, that I would have the power to do such things?" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

this great thing

"this terrible thing." Here the word "great" refers to something that has a large effect and is terrible.

He is only a dog

Hazael is talking about himself. He speaks of his low status and lack of influence by comparing himself to a dog. Here a dog represents a lowly animal. Alternate translation: "I am as powerless as a dog" or "I am as powerless as a lowly animal" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh has also](#)
- [the king](#)
- [could I](#)

ULT

¹³ Hazael replied, "Who is your servant, that he should do this great thing? He is only a dog." Elisha answered, "Yahweh has shown me that you will be king over Aram."

UST

¹³ Hazael replied, "I am as powerless as a dog. How [could I](#) do such terrible things?" Elisha replied, "[Yahweh has also](#) revealed to me that you will become [the king](#) of Aram."

2 Kings 8:14

came to his master

The phrase “his master” refers to Ben Hadad.

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir

Translation Words - UST

- recover
- recover
- him

ULT

14 Then Hazael left Elisha and came to his master, who said to him, “What did Elisha say to you?” He answered, “He told me that you would certainly recover.”

UST

14 Then Hazael left and returned to his master the king, who asked [him](#), “What did Elisha say?” He replied, “He told me that you would certainly [recover](#).”

2 Kings 8:15

face so that he died

This means that Ben Hadad suffocated under the wet blanket. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “face. Ben Hadad was unable to breathe through it, and so he died” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- die, dead, deadly, death,
- reign, rule
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- in order that he could not breathe, and he died
- became the king of Aram...Ben Hadad
- the king's face

ULT

15 Then the next day Hazael took the blanket and dipped it in water, and spread it on Ben Hadad's face so that he died. Then Hazael became king in his place.

UST

15 But the next day, while the king was sleeping, Hazael took a blanket and soaked it in water. Then he spread it on [the king's face in order that he could not breathe, and he died](#). Then Hazael [became the king of Aram](#) instead of [Ben Hadad](#).

2 Kings 8:16

General Information:

Jehoram becomes king of Judah.

In the fifth year of Joram son of Ahab, king of Israel

This describes the time that Jehoram began to reign over Judah by stating how long Joram, the current king of Israel, had been reigning. Alternate translation: “In the fifth year that Jorman son of Ahab was king of Israel” or “In year five of the reign of Joram son of Ahab, king of Israel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

fifth year

“year 5” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Jehoram began to reign

Jehoram, son of Jehoshaphat, became the king of Judah.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son (2)
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- Judea
- Jehoshaphat
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship (2)
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- had been ruling
- son Jehoram (2)
- in Israel
- of Judah
- the king
- son Jehoram
- After King
- of Judah (2)
- the king

ULT

¹⁶ In the fifth year of Joram son of Ahab, king of Israel, Jehoram began to reign. He was the son of Jehoshaphat king of Judah. He began to reign when Jehoshaphat was king of Judah.

UST

¹⁶ [After King](#) Joram son of Ahab, [had been ruling in Israel](#) for almost five years, Jehoshaphat's [son Jehoram](#) became [the king of Judah](#).

2 Kings 8:17

thirty-two years old

“32 years old” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [thirty](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

ULT

¹⁷ Jehoram was thirty-two years old when he began to reign, and he reigned for eight years in Jerusalem.

UST

¹⁷ He was [thirty](#)-two years old when he became the king, and he ruled [in Jerusalem](#) for eight years.

2 Kings 8:18

Jehoram walked in the ways of the kings of Israel

Here “walking” is an idiom that refers to how he lived and reigned as king. At this time in history, the recent kings of Israel had been evil kings. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear.

Alternate translation: “Jehoram was an evil king, just as other kings of Israel who ruled before him had been” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

as the house of Ahab was doing

Here the “house” of Ahab refers to the members of Ahab’s family and his recent descendants. Ahab is Jehoram father-in-law. Alternate translation: “the same as the rest of the family of Ahab was doing” (See: [Metonymy](#))

for he had Ahab’s daughter as his wife

Jehoram had married king Ahab’s daughter.

what was evil in Yahweh’s sight

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh’s judgment or evaluation. Alternate translation: “what was evil in Yahweh’s judgment” or “what Yahweh considers to be evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [the evil things](#)
- [kings](#)
- [family](#)

ULT

18 Jehoram walked in the ways of the kings of Israel, as the house of Ahab was doing; for he had Ahab’s daughter as his wife, and he did what was evil in Yahweh’s sight.

UST

18 His wife was the daughter of King Ahab. Like everyone in Ahab’s [family](#), he continually did [the evil things](#) that the previous [kings of Israel](#) had done. He did many things that [Yahweh](#) said were evil.

2 Kings 8:19

destroy Judah

Here “Judah” is a metonym for the people who live there. Alternate translation: “destroy the people of Judah” (See: [Metonymy](#))

since he had told him that he would always give him descendants

“since Yahweh had told David that he would always give David descendants.” This refers to Yahweh’s promise to David that his descendants would always rule Judah. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “since he had told David that his descendants would always rule Judah” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [David](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [descendants](#)
- [But Yahweh...want to get rid of](#)
- [the people of Judah](#)
- [David](#)
- [served him very well](#)

ULT

¹⁹ However, because of his servant David, Yahweh did not want to destroy Judah, since he had told him that he would always give him descendants.

UST

¹⁹ [But Yahweh](#) did not [want to get rid of the people of Judah](#), because of what he had promised [David](#), who [served him very well](#). He had promised David that his [descendants](#) would always rule Judah.

2 Kings 8:20

Edom revolted from under

“Edom rebelled against”

the hand of Judah

Here the word “hand” refers to the control of Judah, and “Judah” refers specifically to the king of Judah. Alternate translation: “the control of the king of Judah” (See: [Metonymy](#))

they set a king over themselves

“they appointed a king to rule over themselves”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)
- [hand](#)
- [reign, rule](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Judah, and they...their own king](#)
- [ruled](#)
- [appointed](#)
- [that Jehoram...the king](#)

ULT

²⁰ In Jehoram’s days, Edom revolted from under the hand of Judah, and they set a king over themselves.

UST

²⁰ During the time [that Jehoram ruled](#), [the king](#) of Edom rebelled against [Judah, and they appointed their own king](#).

2 Kings 8:21

Then Jehoram crossed over

What was “crossed over” can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “Then Jehoram crossed the enemy lines” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

- get through the enemy lines
- So...went
- and the commanders

ULT

²¹ Then Jehoram crossed over to Zair with all his chariots. When the Edomites surrounded Jehoram, his chariot commanders rose up and attacked them during the night; but Jehoram's army ran away and went back to their homes.

UST

²¹ So Jehoram [went](#) with his army and all their chariots to the city of Zair near the border of Edom. There the army of Edom surrounded them. But during the night, Jehoram [and the commanders](#) in their chariots were able to [get through the enemy lines](#) and escaped. And all his soldiers also fled to their homes.

2 Kings 8:22

General Information:

King Jehoram of Judah dies and his son Ahaziah becomes king.

So Edom has been in rebellion against the rule of Judah to this present day

“So after that, Edom was no longer controlled by Judah, and it is still like that”

the rule of Judah

Here “Judah” refers to the king of Judah. Alternate translation: “the rule of the king of Judah” or “the authority of the king of Judah” (See: [Metonymy](#))

to this present day

to the time that this book was written

Libnah also revolted at the same time

Libnah rebelled against the king of Judah just as Edom had. Alternate translation: “During that same time, Libnah also rebelled against the king of Judah” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Libnah

This is another city that was originally part of Judah. Here “Libnah” refers to the people who live there. Alternate translation: “the people of Libnah” (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)
- [hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [So after that...was...Judah](#)
- [controlled by](#)

ULT

²² So Edom has been in rebellion against the rule of Judah to this present day. Libnah also revolted at the same time.

UST

²² [So after that](#), Edom was no longer controlled by [Judah](#), and it is still like that. During that same time, the people of the city of Libnah also freed themselves from being [controlled by](#) Judah.

2 Kings 8:23

As for the other matters concerning Jehoram, all that he did

“To read more about the history of Jehoram and what he did,”

are they not written...Judah?

This question is used to either inform or remind the readers that the information about Jehoram is in this other book. Alternate translation: “these things are written...Judah.” or “someone has written about them...Judah.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Judah](#)
- [Events of the Kings](#)

ULT

²³ As for the other matters concerning Jehoram, all that he did, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

UST

²³ If you want to read about the other things that Jehoram did, they are written in Book of the [Events of the Kings of Judah](#).

2 Kings 8:24

Jehoram rested with his fathers and was buried with them

Here “rested” is a polite way of referring to someone dying. After he died, his body was buried in the same place as the bodies of his forefathers. The phrase “was buried” can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Jehoram died as his ancestors had died, and they buried him with his ancestors” (See: [Euphemism](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Then Ahaziah his son became king in his place

“Then Ahaziah, Jehoram’s son, became king after he died”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- reign, rule

Translation Words - UST

- son
- of David. Then Jehoram’s
- the other kings
- and was buried
- became the king

ULT

²⁴ Jehoram rested with his fathers and was buried with them in the city of David. Then Ahaziah his son became king in his place.

UST

²⁴ Jehoram died [and was buried](#) where [the other kings](#) of Judah had been buried in the part of Jerusalem called the city [of David](#). Then [Jehoram’s son](#) Ahaziah [became the king](#).

2 Kings 8:25

General Information:

Ahaziah becomes king of Judah.

In the twelfth year of Joram son of Ahab, king of Israel

This describes the time that Ahaziah began to reign as king of Judah by stating how long Joram, the current king of Israel, had reigned.

Alternate translation: "in the twelfth year that Joram son of Ahab was king of Israel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

twelfth year

"12th year" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- son
- Israel
- of Judah
- After Ahab's
- the king

ULT

²⁵ In the twelfth year of Joram son of Ahab, king of Israel, Ahaziah son of Jehoram, king of Judah, began to reign.

UST

²⁵ [After Ahab's son](#) Joram has been ruling in [Israel](#) for almost twelve years, Jehoram's [son](#) Ahaziah became [the king of Judah](#).

2 Kings 8:26

twenty-two years

"22 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

Athaliah...Omri

Athaliah is the name of a woman. Omri is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Jerusalem
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- was twenty-two
- of Israel
- in Jerusalem for only
- King

ULT

²⁶ Ahaziah was twenty-two years old when he began to reign; he reigned for one year in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Athaliah; she was the daughter of Omri, king of Israel.

UST

²⁶ Ahaziah [was twenty-two](#) years old when he started to rule. He ruled [in Jerusalem for only](#) one year. His mother's name was Athaliah, the daughter of King Ahab and the granddaughter of [King Omri of Israel](#).

2 Kings 8:27

Ahaziah walked in the ways of

Here “walking” refers his behavior or the way in which he lived.
Alternate translation: “Ahaziah lived the same way as the others in”
(See: [Idiom](#))

the house of Ahab

Here the “house” of Ahab refers to his family. Alternate translation: “the family of Ahab” (See: [Metonymy](#))

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh’s judgment or evaluation.
Alternate translation: “what was evil in Yahweh’s judgment” or “what Yahweh considers to be evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

a son-in-law to the house of Ahab

This explains Ahaziah’s family relationship to Ahab. Ahaziah’s father was married to Ahab’s daughter. The meaning of this can be made clear. Alternate translation: “the son of Ahab’s son-in-law” or “a grandson of King Ahab” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- bridegroom
- house
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- evil
- members
- family had done
- that
- members

ULT

²⁷ Ahaziah walked in the ways of the house of Ahab; he did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh, as the house of Ahab was doing, for Ahaziah was a son-in-law to the house of Ahab.

UST

²⁷ King Ahaziah conducted his life just like the [members](#) of Ahab’s [family had done](#). He did many things [that Yahweh](#) said were [evil](#).

2 Kings 8:28

Ahaziah went with Joram son of Ahab, to fight against Hazael, king of Aram

The names of the three kings listed here are synecdoches and refer also to their armies that accompany them. Alternate translation: "Ahaziah's army joined the army of King Joram of Israel to fight against the army of King Hazael of Aram" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Ahaziah's army...the army of King Joram
- King

ULT

²⁸ Ahaziah went with Joram son of Ahab, to fight against Hazael, king of Aram, at Ramoth Gilead. The Arameans wounded Joram.

UST

²⁸ [Ahaziah's army](#) joined [the army of King Joram](#) of Israel to fight against the army of [King](#) Hazael of Aram. Their armies started fighting at the city of Ramoth in the region of Gilead, and the soldiers of Aram wounded Joram.

2 Kings 8:29

to be healed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “to heal” or “to recover” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

against Hazael king of Aram

Here “Hazael” refers to himself and his army. Alternate translation: “the army of Hazael king of Aram” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Joram had been wounded

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the Arameans had wounded Joram” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Judea
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship (2)
- return

Translation Words - UST

- King Ahaziah went to visit him there
- his wounds
- King Ahaziah went to visit him there
- to the city
- King Ahaziah went to visit him there
- King Ahaziah went to visit him there (2)
- returned

ULT

²⁹ King Joram returned to be healed in Jezreel of the wounds that the Arameans had given him at Ramah, when he fought against Hazael king of Aram. So Ahaziah son of Jehoram, king of Judah, went down to Jezreel to see Joram son of Ahab, because Joram had been wounded.

UST

²⁹ King Joram [returned to the city](#) of Jezreel in order to recover from [his wounds](#). [King Ahaziah went to visit him there](#).

2 Kings 9

2 Kings 9 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The life of Elisha continues in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

King Jehu

Elisha told a young prophet to go and tell Jehu that God had made him the new king. Jehu killed the kings of both Israel and Judah and Jezebel, the mother of the king. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

2 Kings 9:1

the sons of the prophets

This does not mean that they were the sons of prophets, but rather, that they were a group of prophets. See how you translated this phrase in [2 Kings 2:3](#). Alternate translation: “the group of the prophets” (See: [Idiom](#))

in your hand

The phrase “in your hand” refers to him taking the bottle with him. Alternate translation: “with you” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Ramoth Gilead

Translate the name of this city the same as you did in [2 Kings 8:28](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [call, call out](#)
- [son](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#)
- [hand](#)
- [gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [summoned](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [Meanwhile, the prophet](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [with you](#)
- [Get ready](#)

ULT

¹ Elisha the prophet called one of the sons of the prophets and said to him, “Dress for travel, then take this little bottle of oil in your hand and go to Ramoth Gilead.

UST

¹ [Meanwhile, the prophet](#) Elisha [summoned](#) one of the other [prophets](#). He said to him, “[Get ready](#) and go to the city of Ramoth in the region of Gilead. Take this jar of olive oil [with you](#).”

2 Kings 9:2

Jehu son of Jehoshaphat son of Nimshi

This means that Jehoshaphat is Jehu's father and that Nimshi is Jehoshaphat's father. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

companions

These are the people with whom Jehu was sitting.

conduct him to

"go along with him to" or "take him along to"

an inner chamber

"a private room"

Translation Words - ULT

- [brother](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [with him into](#)
- [of Jehoshaphat](#)
- [for a man named...son](#)
- [of Jehoshaphat](#)

ULT

² When you arrive, look for Jehu son of Jehoshaphat son of Nimshi, and go in and make him arise up from among his companions, and conduct him to an inner chamber.

UST

² When you arrive there, search [for a man named](#) Jehu [son of Jehoshaphat](#) and grandson of Nimshi. Go [with him into](#) a room away from his companions,

2 Kings 9:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- head
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh declares that he is appointing you
- of Israel
- head. Then say
- be the king

ULT

³ Then take the bottle of oil and pour it on his head and say, 'Yahweh says this: "I have anointed you king over Israel."' Then open the door, and run off; do not delay."

UST

³ and pour some of this oil on his [head](#). [Then say](#) to him, 'Yahweh declares that [he is appointing you](#) to [be the king of Israel](#).' Then open the door and run away as quickly as you can."

2 Kings 9:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- So the...prophet
- young
- young

ULT

⁴ So the young man, the young prophet, went to Ramoth Gilead.

UST

⁴ So the young prophet went to Ramoth.

2 Kings 9:5

behold

The writer uses the word “behold” to direct attention to what follows. If you have a way of doing this in your language, you can use it here.

the captains of the army were sitting

Jehu was sitting among the captains. You may introduce Jehu to the story line here if this is necessary in your language. Alternate translation: “Jehu and some other army officers were sitting together” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

To which of us

The word “us” refers to Jehu and the other army captains.

Translation Words - ULT

- [chief](#)
- [chief](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [replied...is the...for](#)
- [commander](#)
- [the commanders](#)

ULT

⁵ When he arrived, behold, the captains of the army were sitting. So the young prophet said, “I have come on an errand to you, captain.” Jehu replied, “To which of us?” The young prophet answered, “To you, captain.”

UST

⁵ When he arrived, he saw that [the commanders](#) of the army were having a conference. He looked at Jehu and said, “Sir, I have a message for one of you.” Jehu [replied](#), “Which one of us [is the](#) message [for](#)?” The young prophet replied, “It is for you, [commander](#).”

2 Kings 9:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,
- head
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

Translation Words - UST

- God
- him, "Yahweh, the
- I
- am appointing you
- Israelite
- people
- on Jehu's head and
- be the king of my
- into a house. There the young prophet

ULT

⁶ So Jehu arose and went into the house, and the prophet poured the oil on his head and said to Jehu, "Yahweh, the God of Israel, says this: 'I have anointed you king over the people of Yahweh, over Israel.

UST

⁶ So Jehu got up and went with the young prophet into a house. There the young prophet poured some olive oil on Jehu's head and said to him, "Yahweh, the God whom we Israelites worship, declares this: 'I am appointing you to be the king of my Israelite people.

2 Kings 9:7

General Information:

The young prophet continues to speak to Jehu, whom he had just anointed as king over Israel.

I may avenge the blood of my servants the prophets, and the blood of all the servants of Yahweh

Here the “blood” of the prophets and the servants refers to their deaths. Alternate translation: “I may avenge the deaths of my servants the prophets and all the servants of Yahweh” or “so that I may punish them for murdering my servants the prophets and all the servants of Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the blood

The understood verb may be supplied. Alternate translation: “avenge the blood” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

who were murdered by the hand of Jezebel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “whom Jezebel commanded her servants to murder” or “whose deaths were commanded by Jezebel” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

by the hand of Jezebel

This means that Jezebel commanded the people to be killed. Alternate translation: “by an order from Jezebel” or “by Jezebel’s command” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- blood
- Yahweh
- hand
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

Translation Words - UST

- your master King Joram
- my prophets
- kill
- and other people who served me
- and other people who served me
- I will...Ahab’s wife
- and other people who served me
- son of Ahab, because

ULT

⁷ You must kill the family of Ahab your master, so that I may avenge the blood of my servants the prophets, and the blood of all the servants of Yahweh, who were murdered by the hand of Jezebel.

UST

⁷ You must [kill your master King Joram son of Ahab, because I will](#) punish [Ahab’s wife](#) Jezebel for murdering many of [my prophets and other people who served me](#).

2 Kings 9:8

For the whole family of Ahab will perish, and I will cut off from Ahab every male child

Here to be “cut off” means to be killed. Alternate translation: “For the whole family of Ahab will perish, and I will cause every male child in his family to be killed” or “Every member of Ahab’s family will die, including every male child” (See: [Euphemism](#))

every male child

This phrase is used to refer to every male, but it specifies “child” to emphasize that it includes children. Alternate translation: “every male” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [cut off](#)
- [destroy, destruction, annihilate](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [including young ones and old ones](#)
- [I want to get rid of](#)
- [kill](#)
- [family](#)

ULT

⁸ For the whole family of Ahab will perish, and I will cut off from Ahab every male child, whether he is a slave or a free person.

UST

⁸ You must [kill](#) not only Joram but all of Ahab’s [family](#). [I want to get rid of](#) every male in the family, [including young ones and old ones](#).

2 Kings 9:9

General Information:

The young prophet continues to speak the words of Yahweh to Jehu, whom he had just anointed as king over Israel.

I will make the house of Ahab like

This means that God will destroy Ahab and his family just as he destroyed Jeroboam and Baasha and their families. Alternate translation: "I will get rid of the house of Ahab like I got rid of" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the house of

This phrase is used in this verse three times. Each time, the word "house" refers to the "family" of the man specified. Alternate translation: "the family of" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Nebat...Ahijah

These are the names of men. Translate the name "Nebat" the same as you did in [2 Kings 3:3](#). (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jeroboam](#)
- [and Baasha](#)
- [family, like I got rid of the...of two other kings of Israel](#)
- [I will get rid of Ahab's](#)

ULT

⁹ I will make the house of Ahab like the house of Jeroboam son of Nebat and like the house of Baasha son of Ahijah.

UST

⁹ [I will get rid of Ahab's family, like I got rid of the families of two other kings of Israel, Jeroboam and Baasha.](#)

2 Kings 9:10

The dogs will eat Jezebel

This means that the dogs will eat her dead body. Alternate translation: "Dogs will eat the dead body of Jezebel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- devour
- bury, buried, burial

Translation Words - UST

- will eat
- will not be buried

ULT

¹⁰ The dogs will eat Jezebel in Jezreel, and there will be no one to bury her." Then the prophet opened the door and ran off.

UST

¹⁰ And when Jezebel dies, her corpse will not be buried. Dogs will eat her corpse there in the city of Jezreel." After the young prophet said this, he left the room and ran.

2 Kings 9:11

the servants of his master

This refers to the other officers who were serving King Ahab.

mad fellow

"crazy man"

You know the man and the kinds of things he says

Jehu says that he is a young prophet and they all are familiar with the kinds of things young prophets generally say. Alternate translation: "You know what kinds of things young prophets like him say"

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- to him, "Is everything
- other commanders
- came
- know...young prophets like him say

ULT

11 Then Jehu came out to the servants of his master, and one said to him, "Is everything alright? Why did this mad fellow come to you?" Jehu answered them, "You know the man and the kinds of things he says."

UST

11 When Jehu came out of the room to where his other commanders were, they said to him, "Is everything all right? Why did that mad fellow come to you?" He replied, "You know what kinds of things young prophets like him say."

2 Kings 9:12

Tell us

"Tell us what he said"

He said this and that to me

"He talked about some things"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [be the king](#)

ULT

¹² They said, "That is a lie. Tell us." Jehu answered, "He said this and that to me, and he also said, 'This is what Yahweh says: I have anointed you as king over Israel.'"

UST

¹² They said, "You are lying. Tell us what he said!" He replied, "He told me several things, and then he told me that [Yahweh](#) said, 'I am appointing you to [be the king of Israel](#).'"

2 Kings 9:13

took off his outer garment and put it under Jehu

In this culture, putting clothing on the ground was a way of honoring the king, so that his feet would not touch the dirty ground. Alternate translation: “took off their outer clothes and put them in front of Jehu for him to walk on” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

They blew the trumpet and said

Not every man blew a trumpet. It is likely only one man blew a trumpet. Alternate translation: “One of them blew the trumpet and they all said” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [trumpet](#), [trumpeters](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [cloaks](#)
- [they blew trumpets](#)

ULT

13 Then each of them quickly took off his outer garment and put it under Jehu at the top of the steps. They blew the trumpet and said, “Jehu is king.”

UST

13 Then they all spread their [cloaks](#) on the steps of the building for Jehu to walk out on, and [they blew trumpets](#) and shouted, “Jehu is now the king!”

2 Kings 9:14

Nimshi

Translate the name of this man the same as you did in [2 Kings 9:2](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Now Joram

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the author tells background information about how Joram was wounded and went to recover in Jezreel. (See: [Background Information](#))

all Israel

These refers only to the Israelite army and not to everyone who lives in Israel. Alternate translation: “he and his army” or “he and the Israelite army” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Hazael

Translate the name of this man the same as you did in [2 Kings 8:8](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Jehoshaphat](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out](#)

ULT

14 In this way Jehu son of Jehoshaphat son of Nimshi conspired against Joram. Now Joram had been defending Ramoth Gilead, he and all Israel, because of Hazael king of Aram,

UST

14-15 King Joram and his army had been defending Ramoth against the attacks by the army of the king of Aram. King Joram had returned to the city of Jezreel, to recover from being wounded in the battle against the army of Hazael, the king of Aram. And Jehu made plans to kill Joram. He said to his other commanders, “If you really want to help me, then make sure that no one leaves this city to go to warn the people of Jezreel about what I am planning to do.”

2 Kings 9:15

to be healed of

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “to recover from” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the wounds that the Arameans had given him

This means that he was wounded in battle with the Arameans. Alternate translation: “wounds that Joram got during the battle with the Aramean army” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

against Hazael king of Aram

This refers to Hazael and his army. Alternate translation: “against Hazael king of Aram and his army” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Jehu said to the servants of Joram

This refers to the officers who were with Joram at Ramoth Gilead.

If this is your opinion

“If you are in agreement with me” Jehu uses this phrase to refer to if people are supportive of him being king and of his decisions. Alternate translation: “If you truly want me to be your king” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

in order to go tell this news in Jezreel

This refers to telling Joram and his army of Jehu’s plans. Alternate translation: “to warn king Joram and his army in Jezreel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- return
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- return
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

15 but King Joram had gone back to Jezreel to be healed of the wounds that the Arameans had given him, when he had fought against Hazael king of Aram. Jehu said to the servants of Joram, “If this is your opinion, then let no one escape and go out of the city, in order to go tell this news in Jezreel.”

UST

14-15 King Joram and his army had been defending Ramoth against the attacks by the army of the king of Aram. King Joram had returned to the city of Jezreel, to recover from being wounded in the battle against the army of Hazael, the king of Aram. And Jehu made plans to kill Joram. He said to his other commanders, “If you really want to help me, then make sure that no one leaves this city to go to warn the people of Jezreel about what I am planning to do.”

2 Kings 9:16

Now Ahaziah

The word “now” is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the author tells background information about Ahaziah visiting Joram. (See: [Background Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [horse, warhorse, horseback](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Judah](#)
- [And King](#)
- [rode to](#)

ULT

16 So Jehu rode in a chariot to Jezreel; for Joram was resting there. Now Ahaziah king of Judah had come down to see Joram.

UST

16 Then Jehu and his officers got into their chariots and [rode to](#) Jezreel, where Joram was still recovering. [And King](#) Ahaziah [of Judah](#) was there, visiting Joram.

2 Kings 9:17

watchman

guard

the company of Jehu as he came at a distance

"Jehu and his men as they were still far away"

Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [was standing...in](#)

ULT

17 The watchman was standing on the tower in Jezreel, and he saw the company of Jehu as he came at a distance; he said, "I see a group of men coming." Joram said, "Take a horseman, and send him out to meet them; tell him to say, 'Are you coming in peace?'"

UST

17 A guard [was standing](#) in the watchtower [in](#) Jezreel. He saw Jehu and his men approaching. He called out, "I see a lot of men who are approaching!" King Joram heard what the watchman said, so he said to his soldiers, "Send someone on a horse to go and find out if they are coming peacefully or in order to attack us."

2 Kings 9:18

What have you to do with peace?

Jehu uses this rhetorical question to tell the messenger that it is none of his concern if he comes in peace or not. This may be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "It is not your concern if I have come in peace!" or "It is not for you to know if I have come in peace!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

The messenger has met them, but he is not coming back

The watchman told King Joram that the man he sent out is not coming back with a reply to the king's question.

Translation Words - ULT

- [restore](#), [restoration](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)
- [horse](#), [warhorse](#), [horseback](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [but he was not returning alone](#)
- [The king wants to know if you are](#)
- [a man riding a horse](#)

ULT

18 So a man was sent on horseback to meet him; he said, "The king says this: 'Are coming in peace?'" So Jehu said, "What have you to do with peace? Turn and ride behind me." Then the watchman told the king, "The messenger has met them, but he is not coming back."

UST

18 So [a man riding a horse](#) rode out to meet Jehu and said to him, "[The king wants to know if you are](#) coming peacefully." Jehu replied, "This is not the time for you to be concerned about peace! Turn around and come behind me!" So the guard in the watchtower reported that the messenger had reached the group that was approaching, [but he was not returning alone](#).

2 Kings 9:19

Then he sent out a second man on horseback, who came to them

"Then king Joram sent a second messenger riding a horse, who went out to meet Jehu and his army"

a second man

Joram had already sent one man. This was the next. Alternate translation: "another man" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

What have you to do with peace?

Jehu uses this rhetorical question to tell the messenger that it is none of his concern if he comes in peace or not. This may be written as a statement. See how you translated this question in [2 Kings 9:18](#). Alternate translation: "It is not your concern if I have come in peace!" or "It is not for you to know if I have come in peace!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- king, kingdom, kingship
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers
- horse, warhorse, horseback

Translation Words - UST

- So King Joram
- concerned
- another messenger...Jehu the same question

ULT

¹⁹ Then he sent out a second man on horseback, who came to them and said, "The king says this: 'Are you coming in peace?'" Jehu answered, "What have you to do with peace? Turn and ride behind me."

UST

¹⁹ [So King Joram](#) sent [another messenger](#) who asked [Jehu the same question](#). Again Jehu replied, "This is not the time for you to be [concerned](#) about peace! Turn around and follow me!"

2 Kings 9:20

For the way that the chariot is being driven is the way that Jehu son of Nimshi drives

This may be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Because the driver of the chariot drives the same way that Jehu son of Nimshi drives" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)

Translation Words - UST

- Jehu son of Nimshi, because...driving his chariot
- back alone. And the leader of the group must be

ULT

²⁰ Again the watchman reported, "He has met them, but he is not coming back. For the way that the chariot is being driven is the way that Jehu son of Nimshi drives; he is driving wildly."

UST

²⁰ Then the watchman reported again, "That messenger also reached them, but he is not coming [back alone](#). [And the leader of the group must be Jehu son of Nimshi, because](#) he is [driving his chariot](#) furiously, as Jehu does!"

2 Kings 9:21

each in his chariot

“each in his own chariot”

They found him at

“When they reached Jehu, he was at”

Naboth

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Jezreelite

This refers to a person from Jezreel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [gird](#), [girded](#), [wrapped around](#), [tied up](#), [belt](#), [tuck in belt](#), [put belt around](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#) (2)

Translation Words - UST

- [Get](#)
- [did that](#)
- [King](#)
- [Then King](#)
- [ready](#)
- [King](#)
- [Then King](#) (2)

ULT

²¹ So Joram said, “Get my chariot ready.” They prepared his chariot, and Joram king of Israel and Ahaziah king of Judah rode out, each in his chariot, to meet Jehu. They found him at the property of Naboth the Jezreelite.

UST

²¹ Joram said to his soldiers, “[Get](#) my chariot [ready](#).” So they [did that](#). [Then King](#) Joram and [King](#) Ahaziah both rode toward Jehu, each one in his own chariot. And it happened that they met Jehu at the field that had previously belonged to Naboth!

2 Kings 9:22

What peace is there, when the idolatrous acts of prostitution and witchcraft of your mother Jezebel are so many?

Jehu uses this rhetorical question to state why he is not coming in peace. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "There can be no peace as long as your mother Jezebel practices and promotes so much idolatry in the form of prostitution and witchcraft." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

²² When Joram saw Jehu, he said, "Are you coming in peace, Jehu?" He answered, "What peace is there, when the idolatrous acts of prostitution and witchcraft of your mother Jezebel are so many?"

UST

²² When Joram met Jehu, he said to him, "Are you coming to act peacefully toward me?" Jehu replied, "How can there be peace while you and your people are bowing down to idols and practicing very much witchcraft like your mother Jezebel did?"

2 Kings 9:23

turned his chariot and fled

“turned his chariot around to try to flee”

treachery

trickery or deception

Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and tried...flee](#)

ULT

²³ So Joram turned his chariot and fled and said to Ahaziah, “There is treachery, Ahaziah.”

UST

²³ Joram cried out, “Ahaziah, they have deceived us! They want to kill us!” So Joram turned his chariot around [and tried](#) to [flee](#).

2 Kings 9:24

with his full strength

“with all of his strength” or “with all of his power”

he sank down in his chariot

Joram died from being shot with arrow. Alternate translation: “Joram fell down dead in his chariot” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- heart
- hand

Translation Words - UST

- went through
- and pierced Joram's heart
- But Jehu...with strength and

ULT

²⁴ Then Jehu drew his bow with his full strength and shot Joram between his shoulders; the arrow went through his heart, and he sank down in his chariot.

UST

²⁴ [But Jehu](#) drew his bow [with strength](#) [and](#) shot an arrow that pierced Joram between his shoulder blades. The arrow [went through](#) Joram's body [and pierced Joram's heart](#), and he slumped down dead in his chariot.

2 Kings 9:25

Bidkar

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Pick him up and throw him

“Pick up his dead body and throw it” or “Take his corpse and throw it”

Think about how

“Remember”

after Ahab his father

This means that they rode in the chariot behind Ahab’s chariot.

Alternate translation: “behind his father Ahab’s chariot” (See:

[Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Yahweh placed this prophecy against him

“Yahweh spoke this prophecy against Ahab”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh said this about Ahab](#)
- [father](#)

ULT

²⁵ Then Jehu said to Bidkar his captain, “Pick him up and throw him in the field of Naboth the Jezreelite. Think about how when you and I rode together after Ahab his father, Yahweh placed this prophecy against him:

UST

²⁵ Then Jehu said to his assistant Bidkar, “Take his corpse and throw it here into the field that belonged to Naboth. I am sure that you remember that when you and I were riding together in chariots behind King Joram’s [father](#) Ahab that [Yahweh said this about Ahab](#),

2 Kings 9:26

I will surely make you pay for it

This means that he will punish Ahab as he deserves for the evil he has done. Alternate translation: "I will give you what you deserve for the evil you have done" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

pick him up and throw him on this field

"take Joram's dead body and throw it into the field of Naboth"

according to the word of Yahweh

"to fulfill the prophecy spoken to us"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- blood
- blood
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- murder Naboth and his sons here
- murder Naboth and his sons here
- murder Naboth and his sons here
- that I will...him
- And I solemnly
- That will fulfill what Yahweh said

ULT

²⁶ Yesterday I saw the blood of Naboth and the blood of his sons—declares Yahweh—and I will surely make you pay for it on this field—declares Yahweh. Now then, pick him up and throw him on this field, according to the word of Yahweh."

UST

²⁶ Yesterday I saw Ahab [murder Naboth and his sons here](#). And I solemnly promise [that I will](#) punish [him](#) right here in this same field! So take Joram's corpse and throw it into that field! [That will fulfill what Yahweh said](#) would happen."

2 Kings 9:27

General Information:

This is the account of what happened to Ahaziah, the king of Judah, after Jehu killed Joram.

saw this

"saw what happened to Joram"

Beth Haggan...Gur...Ibleam...Megiddo

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

at the ascent of Gur

The word "ascent" means that they were going up hill while travelling on the road to Gur. Alternate translation: "on the road leading up to Gur" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [When King](#)
- [chariot...where he died](#)
- [When King](#)
- [Beth](#)

ULT

²⁷ When Ahaziah the king of Judah saw this, he fled up the road to Beth Haggan. But Jehu followed him, and said, "Kill him also in the chariot," and they shot him at the ascent of Gur, which is by Ibleam. Ahaziah fled to Megiddo and died there.

UST

²⁷ [When King](#) Ahaziah saw what happened, he fled in his chariot toward the city of [Beth](#) Haggan. But Jehu pursued him and said to his other commanders, "Shoot him, also!" So they shot him with arrows while he was riding in his chariot on the road up to Gur, near the city of Ibleam. He continued going in his [chariot](#) until he reached the city of Megiddo, [where he died](#).

2 Kings 9:28

his fathers

"his ancestors"

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- Jerusalem
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- of David
- back to Jerusalem
- ancestors
- took
- His officials

ULT

²⁸ His servants carried his body in a chariot to Jerusalem and buried him in his tomb with his fathers in the city of David.

UST

²⁸ His officials took his corpse back to Jerusalem and buried it in the tombs in the part of Jerusalem called the city of David, where his ancestors had been buried.

2 Kings 9:29

in the eleventh year of Joram son of Ahab

This describes the time that Ahaziah began to reign by stating how long the current king of Israel had reigned. Alternate translation: “in the eleventh year that Joram son of Ahab was king of Israel” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

eleventh year

“11th year” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Judea](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Joram had been...Israel](#)
- [had become the king of Judah when](#)

ULT

²⁹ Now it was in the eleventh year of Joram son of Ahab that Ahaziah had begun to reign over Judah.

UST

²⁹ Ahaziah [had become the king of Judah when Joram had been](#) ruling [Israel](#) for almost eleven years.

2 Kings 9:30

Painted her eyes, arranged her hair

“put on makeup, made her hair look nice”

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- head

Translation Words - UST

- she put
- toward the street below

ULT

³⁰ When Jehu came to Jezreel, Jezebel heard of it, and she painted her eyes, arranged her hair, and looked out the window.

UST

³⁰ Then Jehu went to Jezreel. When Ahab's widow Jezebel heard what had happened, she put paint on her eyelids, and combed her hair to make it beautiful, and looked out the window of the palace toward the street below.

2 Kings 9:31

Are you coming in peace, you Zimri, your master's murderer?

Jezebel uses this rhetorical question to accuse Jehu of not coming peacefully. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You are certainly not coming in peace, you Zimri, your master's murderer!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

you Zimri, your master's murderer

Here Jezebel calls Jehu "Zimri" to say that he is a murderer. Zimri was a commander of the army of Israel who murdered the king of Israel because he wanted to be king. Alternate translation: "you murdered your master, just like Zimri murdered his master" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Zimri

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- die, dead, deadly, death,

Translation Words - UST

- I think you are certainly not
- the city gate
- You are a murderer just like him

ULT

³¹ As Jehu was entering the gate, she said to him, "Are you coming in peace, you Zimri, your master's murderer?"

UST

³¹ While Jehu was entering [the city gate](#), she called out to him, "You are like Zimri! [You are a murderer just like him!](#) [I think you are certainly not](#) coming to act peacefully toward me!"

2 Kings 9:32

Who is on my side

To “be on someone’s side” means to be loyal to them and supportive of them. Alternate translation: “Who is loyal to me” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [face](#), [facial](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [looked up](#)

ULT

³² Jehu looked up at the window and said, “Who is on my side? Who?” Then two or three eunuchs looked out.

UST

³² Jehu [looked up](#) toward the window, and then he said, “Who is on my side? Anyone?” Two or three palace officials looked down at him from a window.

2 Kings 9:33

Throw her down

Jehu was telling the eunuchs to throw Jezebel out of the window.

So they threw Jezebel down

The eunuchs threw Jezebel out of the high window and she died when she hit the ground. (See: [Euphemism](#))

Jehu trampled her underfoot

This means that he drove his horses over her body. Alternate translation: "Jehu's horses that were pulling his chariot trampled her body under their feet" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [horse](#), [warhorse](#), [horseback](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [horses that were pulling the chariots](#)

ULT

³³ So Jehu said, "Throw her down." So they threw Jezebel down, and some of her blood splattered on the wall and the horses, and Jehu trampled her underfoot.

UST

³³ Jehu said to them, "Throw her down here!" So they threw her down and Jehu ordered that his men drive their chariots and horses over her body, and that is how she was killed. Some of her blood splattered on the city wall and on the [horses that were pulling the chariots](#).

2 Kings 9:34

See now to

The phrase “see now to” means to give your attention to whatever is specified. Alternate translation: “Now go to” (See: [Idiom](#))

for she is a king’s daughter

Since Jezebel was the daughter of a king, it was necessary to bury her properly. Alternate translation: “because she is a king’s daughter and therefore should be buried properly” (See: [Assumed Knowledge](#) and [Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [devour](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [some of his men](#)
- [and ate and](#)
- [she is a king’s](#)

ULT

34 When Jehu entered the palace, he ate and drank. Then he said, “See now to this cursed woman and bury her, for she is a king’s daughter.”

UST

34 Then Jehu went into the palace [and ate and](#) drank. Then he said to [some of his men](#), “Take the corpse of that women whom Yahweh has cursed and bury it, because [she is a king’s](#) daughter and therefore should be buried properly.”

2 Kings 9:35

they found no more of her than

“they found no more of her body than” This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “all they found that was left of her body were”

the palms of her hands

The palm is the inner part of the hand.

ULT

³⁵ They went to bury her, but they found no more of her than the skull, the feet, and the palms of her hands.

UST

³⁵ But when they went to get her corpse to bury it, all that was left was only her skull and the bones of her feet and her hands. Everything else was gone.

2 Kings 9:36

the Tishbite

This refers to someone from the city of Tishbe. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 1:3](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [flesh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)
- [devour](#)
- [return](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [flesh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [servant](#)
- [will eat the](#)
- [When they reported this to Jehu...said](#)
- [servant](#)

ULT

³⁶ So they came back and told Jehu. He said, "This is the word of Yahweh which he spoke by his servant Elijah the Tishbite, saying, 'In the land at Jezreel the dogs will eat the flesh of Jezebel,

UST

³⁶ [When they reported this to Jehu](#), he [said](#), "That is what [Yahweh](#) said would happen! He told his [servant](#) Elijah, 'In the city of Jezreel, dogs [will eat the flesh](#) of Jezebel's corpse.

2 Kings 9:37

the body of Jezebel will be like dung on the surface of the fields...so that no one will be able to say

This speaks of the pieces of Jezebel's body being scattered in the field as if they were dung spread in the field. Since the pieces of her body were so small and spread out there was nothing that could be collected and buried. Alternate translation: "the pieces of Jezebel's body will be scattered like dung in the fields...so that no one will be able to recognize them and say" (See: [Simile](#))

dung

manure, specifically dung used as a fertilizer

so that no one will be able to say, "This is Jezebel."

"so that no one will be able to recognize her body." or "so no one will be able to tell this was Jezebel."

Translation Words - ULT

- [face, facial](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [will be able to recognize them and](#)

ULT

³⁷ and the body of Jezebel will be like dung on the surface of the fields in the land at Jezreel, so that no one will be able to say, "This is Jezebel.""

UST

³⁷ Her bones will be scattered there in Jezreel like dung, with the result that no one [will be able to recognize them and](#) say, "These are Jezebel's bones.""

2 Kings 10

2 Kings 10 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

God's prophecy against the family of Ahab was fulfilled. Jehu killed all of Ahab's descendants and all the worshipers of Baal. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [fulfill](#), [fulfilled](#), [carried out](#))

2 Kings 10:1

seventy descendants

"70 descendants" (See: [Numbers](#))

Jehu wrote letters and sent them to Samaria

This means that Jehu sent a messenger to deliver the letters.
Alternate translation: "Jehu wrote letters and sent a messenger to deliver them in Samaria" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Samaria, Samaritan
- elder, older, old
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

- There were...descendants
- of the city
- the elders, and
- of the city

ULT

¹ Now Ahab had seventy descendants in Samaria. Jehu wrote letters and sent them to Samaria, to the rulers of Jezreel, including the elders and the guardians of Ahab's descendants, saying,

UST

¹ [There were](#) seventy [descendants](#) of King Ahab who were living in Samaria. Jehu wrote a letter and made copies of it and sent them to the rulers [of the city](#), to [the elders, and](#) to those who raised and tutored Ahab's children.

2 Kings 10:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- horse, warhorse, horseback

Translation Words - UST

- ones who are taking care of the king's
- descendants
- horses

ULT

² “Your master’s descendants are with you, and you also have chariots and horses and a fortified city and armor. So then, as soon as this letter comes to you,

UST

² This is what he wrote: “You are the [ones who are taking care of the king's descendants](#). You have chariots, [horses](#), and weapons, and you live in cities that have walls around them. So as soon as you receive this letter,

2 Kings 10:3

set him on his father's throne

Here, sitting on the king's throne means to be appointed as king. Alternate translation: "make him king in his father's place" (See: [Metonymy](#))

for your master's royal line

"your master's descendants." Here the man that they selected to be king is referred to as Ahab's royal line of descendants. Alternate translation: "to defend your master's descendant" or "to defend him" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- appoint, appointed
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- throne, enthroned
- house

Translation Words - UST

- choose one of the king's descendants
- be your king. Then
- choose one of the king's descendants
- and appoint him
- best qualified
- the one who is the
- the one who is the
- prepare to fight to defend him

ULT

³ select the best and most deserving of your master's descendants and set him on his father's throne, and fight for your master's royal line."

UST

³ [choose one of the king's descendants, the one who is the best qualified, and appoint him to be your king. Then prepare to fight to defend him.](#)"

2 Kings 10:4

But they were terrified

"Then they were very afraid"

the two kings

"two kings, Joram and Ahaziah"

could not stand before Jehu

Here "stand" means to be able to endure under trouble. Alternate translation: "could not endure against Jehu" or "could not resist Jehu"

So how can we stand?

The descendants use the rhetorical question to imply that they cannot stand against Jehu. Alternate translation: "We cannot stand against him either!" or "We cannot resist him either!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- appoint, appointed
- appoint, appointed
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- afraid
- resist
- resist
- King Joram and King Ahaziah could

ULT

⁴ But they were terrified and said among themselves, "See, the two kings could not stand before Jehu. So how can we stand?"

UST

⁴ But when they got those letters and read them, they became very [afraid](#). They said, "[King Joram and King Ahaziah](#) [could](#) not [resist](#) him; how can we [resist](#) him?"

2 Kings 10:5

the man who was over the city

“the mayor of the city.” Here to be “over” something means to have authority and responsibility over it. Alternate translation: “the man who was in charge of the city”

they who raised the children

This refers to the people who raised the king’s children. Alternate translation: “they who raised the king’s children” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Do what is good in your eyes

Here Jehu’s “eyes” refer to his “sight.” His “sight” refers to what he thinks. Alternate translation: “Do what you judge to be right” or “Do whatever you think is the best” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- elder, older, old
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

Translation Words - UST

- best
- the officer
- you...us
- palace

ULT

⁵ Then the man who was in charge of the palace, and the man who was over the city, and the elders also, and they who raised the children, sent word back to Jehu, saying, “We are your servants. We will do everything that you command us. We will not make any man king. Do what is good in your eyes.”

UST

⁵ So [the officer](#) who was in charge of the [palace](#) and the mayor of the city sent a message to Jehu saying, “We want to serve you, and we are ready to do whatever you tell [us](#) to do. We will not appoint anyone to become our king. You do whatever you think is the [best](#).”

2 Kings 10:6

wrote a letter the second time to them

Joram had written one letter. This was the next. Alternate translation: “again wrote a letter to them” or “wrote another letter to them” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

on my side

To “be on someone’s side” means to be loyal to them and supportive of them. Alternate translation: “loyal to me” (See: [Idiom](#))

listen

to hear and obey

to my voice

Here Jehu’s “voice” refer to what he says. Alternate translation: “to what I say” (See: [Metonymy](#))

you must take the heads...and come to me

It is implied that they are to bring the heads of the Ahab’s descendant and present them to Jehu. Alternate translation: “you must take the heads...and bring them to me” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

you must take the heads of the men of your master’s descendants

This refers to killing them and removing their heads. Alternate translation: “kill your master’s descendants and cut off their heads” (See: [Euphemism](#))

seventy in number

“70 in number” (See: [Numbers](#))

who were bringing them up

This means that they were supervising them and teaching them. Alternate translation: “who were raising them” or “who were supervising them” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- son
- son
- head
- king, kingdom, kingship
- proud, pride, prideful

ULT

⁶ Then Jehu wrote a letter the second time to them, saying, “If you are on my side, and if you will listen to my voice, you must take the heads of the men of your master’s descendants, and come to me to Jezreel by tomorrow this time.” Now the king’s descendants, seventy in number, were with the important men of the city, who were bringing them up.

UST

⁶ So Jehu sent a second letter to them, writing this: “If you are [on my side, and if](#) you are ready to obey me, kill King Ahab’s [descendants](#) and cut off their [heads](#) and bring their heads to me here in Jezreel at this time tomorrow.” Now the seventy [descendants of King Ahab](#) [were being](#) brought up and [supervised](#) by the leaders of the city of Samaria.

Translation Words - UST

- supervised
- descendants
- descendants
- heads
- of King Ahab were being
- on my side, and if

2 Kings 10:7

seventy persons

"70 persons" (See: [Numbers](#))

sent them to Jehu

This means that they sent people to deliver the baskets to Jehu.
Alternate translation: "sent people to take them to Jehu" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- appoint, appointed
- head
- slaughter, slaughtered
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- of...s descendants...their
- put
- their heads in
- and cut off
- the...Ahab

ULT

⁷ So when the letter came to them, they took the king's sons and killed them, seventy persons, put their heads in baskets, and sent them to Jehu in Jezreel.

UST

⁷ When they received the letter from Jehu, they killed all seventy of [Ahab's descendants and cut off their](#) heads. They [put their heads in](#) baskets and sent them to Jehu at Jezreel.

2 Kings 10:8

of the king's sons

"of Ahab's descendants"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- head
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- descendants
- and that the heads should stay there
- the heads of Ahab's
- So Jehu commanded that the

ULT

⁸ A messenger came to Jehu, saying, "They have brought the heads of the king's sons." So he said, "Put them in two heaps at the entrance of the gate until the morning."

UST

⁸ A messenger came to Jehu and told him, "They have brought [the heads of Ahab's descendants](#)." [So Jehu commanded that the](#) heads should be put in two piles at the city gate [and that the heads should stay there](#) until the next morning.

2 Kings 10:9

Jehu went out and stood

"Jehu went to the city gate and stood before the people"

You are innocent

It can be stated clearly what they were innocent of. Possible meanings are 1) Alternate translation: "You are innocent of what happened to Joram" or 2) this means that they are not held responsible for the deaths of Joram's family. Alternate translation: "You are innocent of what happened to Joram and his family" or "You are innocent of this matter" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

See

Jehu uses this word here to draw the peoples' attention to what he says next. Alternate translation: "Listen" or "Hear my words"

but who killed all these?

Jehu uses a rhetorical question to cause the people to think deeply about the situation. This can be written as a statement. Possible meanings are 1) Alternate translation: "but the men of Samaria are responsible for killing Ahab's 70 descendants" or 2) Alternate translation: "but it was Yahweh's will for these men to die" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- command, commandment
- people, people group,

Translation Words - UST

- not guilty
- and...him
- he went out
- the people, "I am the one who...King Joram

ULT

⁹ In the morning Jehu went out and stood, and said to all the people, "You are innocent. See, I plotted against my master and killed him, but who killed all these?"

UST

⁹ The next morning [he went out](#) to the city gate and said to all [the people](#), "[I am the one who](#) plotted against [King Joram](#) and killed [him](#). You are [not guilty](#) of doing that. But it was Yahweh, not I, who commanded that all these descendants of Ahab should be killed.

2 Kings 10:10

certainly realize

“understand” or “be aware of the fact that”

no part of Yahweh’s word...will fall to the ground

This speaks of everything happening that Yahweh has said will happen as if it were something that did not die and fall to the ground. Alternate translation: “No part of Yahweh’s word...will fail” or “every part of Yahweh’s word...will happen” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Yahweh has done

This speaks of Yahweh causing Ahab’s descendants to be killed as if he killed them himself. Alternate translation: “Yahweh has caused to happen” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [house](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [has happened. He has caused to happen what](#)
- [has happened. He has caused to happen what](#)
- [that Yahweh said](#)
- [told the prophet Elijah](#)
- [has happened. He has caused to happen what](#)
- [told the prophet Elijah](#)
- [has happened. He has caused to happen what](#)
- [I want you to know](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Now you should certainly realize that no part of Yahweh’s word, the word that he spoke concerning the family of Ahab, will fall to the ground, for Yahweh has done what he spoke about through his servant Elijah.”

UST

¹⁰ [I want you to know](#) that everything [that Yahweh said](#) would happen [has happened. He has caused to happen what](#) he [told the prophet Elijah](#) would happen.”

2 Kings 10:11

So Jehu killed all...and his priests

Jehu did not kill all of these people personally, rather he commanded for them to be killed. Alternate translation: “So Jehu commanded for all...to be killed” or “So Jehu commanded for all...to die” (See: [Metonymy](#))

all who remained

“all who were alive” or “all who were left”

until none of them remained

This means that they had all been killed. Alternate translation: “until all of them had been killed” or “until all of them were dead” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [all](#)
- [officers](#)

ULT

11 So Jehu killed all who remained in the family of Ahab in Jezreel, and all his important men, his close friends, and his priests, until none of them remained.

UST

11 Then Jehu executed [all](#) the other relatives of Ahab in Jezreel, all Ahab's [officers](#), close friends, and his priests. He did not allow any of them to remain alive.

2 Kings 10:12

Beth Eked of the shepherd

This was the name of a place where sheep were sheared. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Samaria](#)

ULT

¹² Then Jehu arose and left; he went to Samaria. As he was arriving at Beth Eked of the shepherd,

UST

¹² Then Jehu left Jezreel and went toward [Samaria](#). While he was going there, at a place called Beth Eked,

2 Kings 10:13

going down to greet

“going to visit”

the children of the king

“the children of King Joram”

Translation Words - ULT

- brother
- brother
- son
- son
- Judea
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- relatives
- other members
- and the...of King Joram's
- family
- of Judah
- some relatives of King
- and the...of King Joram's

ULT

13 he met brothers of Ahaziah king of Judah. Jehu said to them, “Who are you?” They answered, “We are brothers of Ahaziah, and we are going down to greet the children of the king and the children of Queen Jezebel.”

UST

13 he met [some relatives of King Ahaziah of Judah](#). He asked them, “Who are you?” They replied, “We are [relatives of King Ahaziah](#). We are going to Jezreel to visit the children of Queen Jezebel [and the other members of King Joram's family](#).”

2 Kings 10:14

Take them alive

This means to capture them, but not to kill them. Alternate translation: "Seize them" or "Capture them" (See: [Idiom](#))

So they took them alive

"So they captured them"

forty-two men

"42 men" (See: [Numbers](#))

He did not leave any of them alive

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "He killed all of them"

Translation Words - ULT

- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)
- [life](#), [live](#), [living](#), [alive](#)
- [slaughter](#), [slaughtered](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Seize them](#)
- [Seize them](#)
- [killed](#)

ULT

¹⁴ Jehu said to his own men, "Take them alive." So they took them alive and killed them at the well of Beth Eked, all forty-two men. He did not leave any of them alive.

UST

¹⁴ Jehu said to his men, "[Seize them](#)!" So they seized them and killed all of them at the well of Beth Eked. There were forty-two people whom they [killed](#). They did not allow any of them to remain alive.

2 Kings 10:15

Jehonadab son of Recab

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Is your heart with me, as my heart is with yours?...“It is.”

Here a person’s “heart” refers to their loyalty. If a person’s loyalty is “with someone,” it means that they are loyal to that person. Alternate translation: “Will you be loyal to me, as I will be loyal to you?...‘I will.’” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

If it is, give me your hand

“If so, put your hand in mine” or “If so, let us shake hands” In many cultures, when two people shake hands, it confirms their agreement. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- son
- heart
- heart
- heart
- just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification
- hand
- hand

Translation Words - UST

- greeted him
- by...a son...Jehu
- Are you thinking
- I...thinking
- I...thinking
- in the same way
- So Jonadab...hands with
- hand to mine...and Jehu helped him to get into

ULT

15 When Jehu had left there, he met Jehonadab son of Recab coming to meet him. Jehu greeted him and said to him, “Is your heart with me, as my heart is with yours?” Jehonadab answered, “It is.” Jehu said, “If it is, give me your hand.” So he gave Jehu his hand, and Jehu took Jehonadab up with him into the chariot.

UST

15 Then Jehu continued to travel toward Samaria. Along the road he was met by Jonadab, [a son](#) of Rechab. [Jehu greeted him](#) and said to him, “[Are you thinking in the same way](#) that I am [thinking](#)?” Jonadab replied, “Yes, I am.” Jehu said, “If you are, join your [hand to mine](#).” [So Jonadab](#) joined [hands with](#) him, [and Jehu helped him to get into](#) his chariot.

2 Kings 10:16

see my zeal

The word "zeal" may be expressed as an adjective. Alternate translation: "see how zealous I am" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- walk, walked
- horse, warhorse, horseback

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh." So they...to Samaria
- to obey
- rode

ULT

¹⁶ Jehu said, "Come with me and see my zeal for Yahweh." So he had Jonadab ride along with him in his chariot.

UST

¹⁶ Jehu said to him, "Come with me, and you will see how eager I am [to obey Yahweh.](#)" [So they rode](#) together [to Samaria.](#)

2 Kings 10:17

royal line

“entire royal family”

**just as was told them before by the word of Yahweh,
which he had spoken to Elijah**

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “to fulfill the prophecy that Elijah had spoken, which Yahweh gave to him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Samaria, Samaritan](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [was what Yahweh told](#)
- [Samaria](#)

ULT

17 When he came to Samaria, Jehu killed all who remained from Ahab's descendants in Samaria, until he had destroyed Ahab's royal line, just as was told them before by the word of Yahweh, which he had spoken to Elijah.

UST

17 When they arrived in [Samaria](#), Jehu killed all of Ahab's relatives who were still alive. He did not spare any of them. That [was what Yahweh told](#) Elijah would happen.

2 Kings 10:18

gathered all the people together

"called all the people and had them come to where he was"

all the people together

"all the people of Samaria"

serve him much

"serve him much more than Ahab"

Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- people of Samaria
- devoted to
- will serve him

ULT

18 Then Jehu gathered all the people together and said to them, "Ahab served Baal a little, but Jehu will serve him much.

UST

18 Then Jehu summoned all the [people of Samaria](#), and said to them, "King Ahab was [devoted to](#) your god Baal a little bit, but I [will serve him](#) much more.

2 Kings 10:19

Let no one be left out

"Do not leave anyone out"

Whoever does not come will not live

This means that if they do not come they will be executed. Alternate translation: "We will execute anyone who does not come" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- call, call out
- perish
- command, commandment
- command, commandment
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- priest, priesthood
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- there will be executed." But Jehu
- summon
- kill all those who worshiped
- them, because
- there. Any of them who is
- prophets
- priests
- sacrifice
- of Baal's...and all the others who worship Baal
- he was planning to

ULT

19 Now therefore call to me all the prophets of Baal, all his worshipers, and all his priests. Let no one be left out, for I have a great sacrifice to offer to Baal. Whoever does not come will not live." But Jehu did this deceitfully, with the intent to kill the worshipers of Baal.

UST

19 So now [summon](#) all the [prophets](#) of Baal, all [of Baal's priests](#), [and all the others who worship Baal](#). I am going to make a great [sacrifice](#) to Baal. I want all of them to be [there. Any of them who is not there will be executed.](#)" But Jehu was planning to trick [them, because he was planning to kill all those who worshiped](#) Baal.

2 Kings 10:20

Set a time

This means to designate and prepare a period of time for something. In this case they were to prepare for an assembly for Baal. Alternate translation: "Prepare" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [consecrate, consecrated, consecration](#)
- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [So they sent out a proclamation about that day](#)
- [So they sent out a proclamation about that day](#)
- [set aside a day to honor Baal](#)

ULT

²⁰ Jehu said, "Set a time to have an assembly for Baal." So they announced it.

UST

²⁰ Then Jehu commanded, "Announce that we are going to [set aside a day to honor Baal](#)." [So they sent out a proclamation about that day](#).

2 Kings 10:21

Then Jehu sent

This means that he sent messengers to take this message throughout the land. Alternate translation: “Then Jehu sent messengers” or “Then Jehu sent the message” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

so that there was not a man left who did not come

This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “so that every worshiper of Baal was there” or “so that every man came” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

it was filled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they filled it” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [messages throughout Israel telling everyone](#)
- [Baal...all](#)
- [stayed at home](#)
- [temple](#)

ULT

²¹ Then Jehu sent throughout all Israel and all the worshipers of Baal came, so that there was not a man left who did not come. They came into the temple of Baal, and it was filled from one end to another.

UST

²¹ Jehu decided what day they would gather and sent [messages throughout Israel telling everyone](#) what day to gather, and on that day, everyone who worshiped [Baal](#) came. No one [stayed at home](#). They [all](#) went into the huge [temple](#) of Baal and filled it from one end to the other.

2 Kings 10:22

who kept the priest's wardrobe

Here "to keep" something means to care for it and oversee it.
Alternate translation: "who was in charge of the priest's wardrobe" or "who cared for the priest's wardrobe" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [robe](#), [robed](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)
- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [did that](#)
- [to bring](#)
- [who worshiped Baal](#). [So the priest](#)
- [to bring](#)

ULT

²² Jehu said to the man who kept the priest's wardrobe, "Bring out robes for all the worshipers of Baal." So the man brought out robes to them.

UST

²² Jehu told the priest who took care of the sacred robes [to bring](#) them out and give them to the people [who worshiped Baal](#). [So the priest did that](#).

2 Kings 10:23

he said to the worshipers of Baal

"Jehu said to the people who were in the temple to worship Baal"

but the worshipers of Baal alone

"but that only worshipers of Baal are here"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

Translation Words - UST

- with Jonadab, and
- Yahweh has come in
- into the temple of Baal
- to the people who were there

ULT

²³ So Jehu went with Jehonadab son of Recab into the house of Baal, and he said to the worshipers of Baal, "Search and make sure that there is no one here with you from the servants of Yahweh, but the worshipers of Baal alone."

UST

²³ Then Jehu went [into the temple of Baal with Jonadab, and](#) he said [to the people who were there](#) to worship Baal, "Be sure that only those who worship Baal are here. Be sure that no one who worships [Yahweh has come in.](#)"

2 Kings 10:24

If any of the men whom I bring into your hands escapes

Here the “hands” of the men refer to their “control.” By being stationed around the temple they were in control of the situation and it was up to them whether people were able to escape or not. Alternate translation: “If any of these men that I brought into your control escapes” or “If any of the men that are inside gets away” (See: [Metonymy](#))

whoever lets that man escape, his life will be taken for the life of the one who escaped

“we will kill the man who let him escape”

his life will be taken

This can be stated in active form. This is a polite way to refer to a person being killed. Alternate translation: “we will take his life” or “we will kill him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

for the life of the one

“in exchange for the life of the man.” Here this man is referred to by his “life” to emphasize that he did not die. Alternate translation: “for the man” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- save, saved, safe, salvation
- life, live, living, alive
- life, live, living, alive
- hand
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- burnt offering, offering by fire

Translation Words - UST

- to escape
- allows...will be executed
- allows...will be executed
- allows...will be executed
- to offer sacrifices and other offerings to Baal
- that would be burned whole on the altar

ULT

²⁴ Then they went in to offer sacrifices and burnt offerings. Now Jehu had chosen eighty men who were standing outside, and he told them, “If any of the men whom I bring into your hands escapes, whoever lets that man escape, his life will be taken for the life of the one who escaped.”

UST

²⁴ Then he and Jonadab prepared [to offer sacrifices and other offerings to Baal that would be burned whole on the altar](#) that was there in Samaria. But Jehu had stationed eighty of his men outside the temple, and had said to them, “I want you to kill all the people who are in the temple. Anyone who [allows](#) one of them [to escape will be executed!](#)”

2 Kings 10:25

he said to the guard and to the captains

You may need to state that Jehu came out of the temple before he spoke to the guard. Alternate translation: “he went back outside of the temple of Baal and said to the guards and captains” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

with the edge of the sword

The men used swords to kill the worshipers of Baal. This phrase refers to their swords. Alternate translation: “with their swords” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

threw them out

This means that threw the dead bodies of the people out of the temple. Alternate translation: “threw their dead bodies out of the temple” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- sword, swordsmen
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- with their swords
- into the inner room of the temple
- went outside

ULT

²⁵ So then as soon as Jehu finished offering the burnt offering, he said to the guard and to the captains, “Go in and kill them. Let no one come out.” So they killed them with the edge of the sword, and the guard and the captains threw them out and went into the inner room of the house of Baal.

UST

²⁵ As soon as Jehu and Jonadab had finished killing the animals that would be completely burned to be an offering to Baal, they [went outside](#) and said to the guards and officers, “Go in and kill all of them! Do not allow any of them to escape!” So the guards and officers went in and killed them all [with their swords](#). Then they dragged their corpses outside the temple. Then they went [into the inner room of the temple](#),

2 Kings 10:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and they carried out](#)
- [that was there](#)

ULT

²⁶ They dragged out the stone pillars that were in the house of Baal, and they burned them.

UST

²⁶ [and they carried out](#) the sacred pillar of Baal [that was there](#), and they burned it.

2 Kings 10:27

made it a latrine

“made it a public toilet” A latrine is a bathroom, or a toilet area, usually for a camp or buildings used to house soldiers.

which it is to this day

This means that something has remained in a certain condition until the present time. Alternate translation: “and since then it has always been that way” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and made it a latrine](#)
- [and then they burned down the temple](#)

ULT

27 Then they broke down the pillar of Baal, and destroyed the house of Baal and made it a latrine, which it is to this day.

UST

27 So they destroyed that pillar that honored Baal, [and then they burned down the temple, and made it a latrine](#). And that is what it is up to the present time.

2 Kings 10:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [in Israel](#)

ULT

²⁸ That is how Jehu destroyed Baal worship from Israel.

UST

²⁸ That is how Jehu got rid of the worship of Baal [in Israel](#).

2 Kings 10:29

did not leave the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat

This speaks of Jehu committing the same sins that Jeroboam committed, as if Jeroboam's sins were a place that Jehu did not leave. Alternate translation: "did not stop committing the kinds of sins that Jeroboam son of Nebat had committed" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Nebat

See how you translated this man's name in [2 Kings 3:3](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sins](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [to sin...the gold statues...in the cities](#)

ULT

²⁹ But Jehu did not leave the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat, by which he made Israel sin—that is, the worship of the golden calves in Bethel and Dan.

UST

²⁹ But Jehu did not stop committing the kinds of [sins](#) that [Jeroboam](#) had committed, sins that led the people [of Israel to sin](#) by worshiping [the gold statues](#) of calves [in the cities](#) of Bethel and Dan.

2 Kings 10:30

in executing

"in carrying out" or "in accomplishing"

what was right in my eyes

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: "what I judge to be right" or "what I consider to be right" (See: [Metaphor](#))

the house of Ahab

Here Ahab's "house" refers to his "family." Alternate translation: "the family of Ahab" (See: [Metonymy](#))

all that was in my heart

Here the "heart" represents "desire." Alternate translation: "all that I desired for you to do" or "all that I wanted you to do" (See: [Metonymy](#))

sit on the throne

Sitting on the throne represents ruling as king. Alternate translation: "be the kings" (See: [Metonymy](#))

to the fourth generation

This refers to his son, grandson, great-grandson, and great-great-grandson. Alternate translation: "to the 4th generation" or "for four more generations" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [throne, enthroned](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Ahab's](#)
- [Then Yahweh](#)
- [will all...of Israel](#)
- [be kings](#)
- [descendants](#)

ULT

³⁰ So Yahweh said to Jehu, "Because you have done well in executing what was right in my eyes, and have done to the house of Ahab according to all that was in my heart, your descendants will sit on the throne of Israel to the fourth generation."

UST

³⁰ [Then Yahweh](#) said to Jehu, "You have done what pleased me by getting rid of all [of Ahab's descendants](#). So I promise you that your son and grandson and great-grandson and great-great-grandson [will all be kings of Israel](#)."

2 Kings 10:31

Jehu took no care to walk in the law of Yahweh

Here “walking” refers to “living.” Alternate translation: “Jehu was not careful to live according to the law of Yahweh” (See: [Idiom](#))

with all his heart

Here the “heart” refers to a person’s will and desire. Alternate translation: “in everything that he did” or “with all of his will” (See: [Metonymy](#))

He did not turn away from the sins of Jeroboam

To “turn away” from something means to stop doing it. Alternate translation: “Jehu did not stop from sinning in the same ways as Jeroboam” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- God
- heart
- law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh, the law
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

Translation Words - UST

- had committed
- sins
- God of
- obey all
- the laws
- of Yahweh, the
- the Israelite
- the Israelite people
- people. He did

ULT

31 But Jehu took no care to walk in the law of Yahweh, the God of Israel, with all his heart. He did not turn away from the sins of Jeroboam, by which he made Israel sin.

UST

31 But Jehu did not [obey all the laws of Yahweh, the God of the Israelite people](#). [He did](#) not stop committing the sins that Jeroboam [had committed](#), [sins](#) that induced [the Israelite people](#) to sin.

2 Kings 10:32

began to cut off regions from Israel

“began to cause the territory controlled by Israel to become smaller”

regions

areas of land

Hazael defeated

Here “Hazael” refers to himself and his army. Alternate translation: “Hazael and his army” or “King Hazael’s Aramean army” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Hazael

See how you translated this king’s name in [2 Kings 8:8](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh...become smaller](#)
- [began to cause the territory controlled by Israel](#)
- [of Aram conquered much of the Israelite](#)

ULT

³² In those days Yahweh began to cut off regions from Israel, and Hazael defeated the Israelites at the borders of Israel,

UST

³² At that time, [Yahweh began to cause the territory controlled by Israel to become smaller](#). The army of King Hazael [of Aram conquered much of the Israelite](#) territory.

2 Kings 10:33

from the Jordan eastward

“from the land east of the Jordan”

Aroer...Bashan

These are all names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the Arnon

“the Arnon River” This is the name of a river. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jordan River](#), [Jordan](#)
- [Gilead](#), [Gileadite](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of the Jordan River](#)
- [Gilead](#)
- [the regions of](#)

ULT

³³ from the Jordan eastward, all the land of Gilead, the Gadites, and the Reubenites, and the Manassites, from Aroer, which is by the Valley of the Arnon, through Gilead to Bashan.

UST

³³ He conquered the parts east [of the Jordan River](#), as far south as the city of Aroer on the Arnon River. That included [the regions of Gilead](#) and Bashan, where the tribes of Gad, Reuben, and half of the tribe of Manasseh lived.

2 Kings 10:34

are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

This rhetorical question can be written as a statement. See how this phrase is translated in [2 Kings 1:18](#). Alternate translation: “they are written in the book of the history of the kings of Israel.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Israel](#)
- [of the Kings](#)

ULT

³⁴ As for the other matters concerning Jehu, and all that he did, and all his power, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

UST

³⁴ If you want to read more about all the other things that Jehu did, they are written in Book of the Events [of the Kings of Israel](#).

2 Kings 10:35

Jehu slept with his ancestors, and they buried him in Samaria

This means that Jehu died. This speaks of him being buried where his ancestors were buried as if he were sleeping with them. Alternate translation: "Jehu died and they buried him in Samaria, where they had also buried his ancestors" (See: [Euphemism](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Jehoahaz

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- reign, rule

Translation Words - UST

- His son
- father
- became the king

ULT

³⁵ Jehu slept with his ancestors, and they buried him in Samaria. Then Jehoahaz his son became king in his place.

UST

³⁵ Jehu died, and was buried in Samaria. [His son](#) Jehoahaz [became the king](#) in place of his [father](#).

2 Kings 10:36

The time that Jehu reigned over Israel in Samaria was twenty-eight years

“Jehu reigned over Israel in Samaria for twenty-eight years”

twenty-eight years

“28 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Israel](#)

ULT

³⁶ The time that Jehu reigned over Israel in Samaria was twenty-eight years.

UST

³⁶ Jehu had ruled in Samaria as the king [of Israel](#) for twenty-eight years.

2 Kings 11

2 Kings 11 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter is the beginning of the story of the spiritual revival in Judah under Joash. The people returned to properly worshiping Yahweh. (See: [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

Athaliah's evil actions

The mother of the king of Judah, Athaliah, killed all the royal children so that she could rule. She was not able to kill the baby Joash because his aunt hid him in the temple. When Joash was seven years old, the chief priest conspired with the army and made Joash king. They killed Athaliah and destroyed the temple of Baal. (See: [temple](#))

2 Kings 11:1

Athaliah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

saw that her son was dead

“became aware that her son was dead”

she arose and killed all the royal children

Athaliah did not personally kill the children. Alternate translation: “she commanded her servants to kill all the members of Ahaziah’s family who might become king” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- destroy, destruction, annihilate
- seed, semen

Translation Words - UST

- her son
- had been
- the members of Ahaziah’s family

ULT

¹ Now when Athaliah, the mother of Ahaziah, saw that her son was dead, she arose and killed all the royal children.

UST

¹ When King Ahaziah’s mother Athaliah saw that [her son had been](#) killed, she commanded that all [the members of Ahaziah’s family](#) who might become king must be executed.

2 Kings 11:2

took Joash son of Ahaziah, and hid him away from among the king's sons who were killed, along with his nurse; she put them into a bedroom. They hid him from Athaliah so that he was not killed.

“took Ahaziah’s very young son Joash and hid him and his nursemaid in a bedroom in the temple. So he was not killed”

Jehosheba

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Joash

This is the name of a man.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Ahaziah’s very young son
- sons
- King
- in the temple

ULT

² But Jehosheba, a daughter of King Jehoram and sister of Ahaziah, took Joash son of Ahaziah, and hid him away from among the king’s sons who were killed, along with his nurse; she put them into a bedroom. They hid him from Athaliah so that he was not killed.

UST

² So Ahaziah’s [sons](#) were all about to be murdered. But Jehosheba, who was [King](#) Jehoram’s daughter and Ahaziah’s half-sister, took [Ahaziah’s very young son](#) Joash and hid him and his nursemaid in a bedroom [in the temple](#). So he was not killed.

2 Kings 11:3

He remained with her six years, hidden in the house of Yahweh, while Athaliah reigned over the land

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Joash and Jehosheba hid him in the house of Yahweh for six years while Athaliah ruled the land" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

land

This is a metonym for the people who live in the land. Alternate translation: "people of Judah" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- earth, earthen, earthly
- house

Translation Words - UST

- in the temple
- Judah
- in the temple

ULT

³ He remained with her six years, hidden in the house of Yahweh, while Athaliah reigned over the land.

UST

³ He stayed with Jehosheba for six years. All during that time, he remained hidden [in the temple](#), while Athaliah ruled [Judah](#).

2 Kings 11:4

Connecting Statement:

This continues the story of what happens after Joash, the son of King Azariah, was hidden in the temple after all King Azariah's other descendants were killed.

In the seventh year

"In the seventh year of Athaliah's reign" or "In year 7 of Athaliah's reign" (See: [Numbers](#))

Jehoiada

the high priest (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the commanders of hundreds

The phrases "commander of hundreds" is probably an official title for a military officer. Possible meanings are 1) the word "hundreds" represents the exact amount of soldiers that each of these commanders led. Alternate translation: "the commanders of 100 soldiers" or 2) the word translated as "hundreds" does not represent an exact number, but is the name of a military division. Alternate translation: "the commanders of military divisions" (See: [Numbers](#))

Carites

This is the name of a particular group of the royal guards.

brought them to himself

"had them come to meet with him." Jehoiada, the high priest, had these military men report to him at the temple.

Then he showed them the king's son

Jehoiada revealed to them that Joash, King Azariah's son, was still alive.

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [temple](#)
- [cut off](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [house](#)
- [oath, swear, swearing, swear by](#)

ULT

⁴ In the seventh year, Jehoiada sent messages and brought the commanders of hundreds of the Carites and of the guard, and brought them to himself, into the temple of Yahweh. He made a covenant with them, and he made them swear an oath in the house of Yahweh. Then he showed them the king's son.

UST

⁴ Six years later, Jehoiada the high priest summoned the [officers who supervised](#) the royal bodyguards [and the palace](#) guards. He told them to come to [the temple](#). There he required them to [solemnly promise](#) that they would do what he told them to do. And he showed [King Ahaziah's son Joash to them](#).

Translation Words - UST

- Ahaziah's son Joash to them
- solemnly promise
- the temple
- and the palace
- the...who supervised
- the temple
- King
- officers
- the temple
- solemnly promise

2 Kings 11:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [He gave them these](#)
- [on the Sabbath day](#)
- [the](#)
- [palace](#)

ULT

⁵ He commanded them, saying, "This is what you must do. A third of you who come on the Sabbath will keep watch over the king's house,

UST

⁵ [He gave them these](#) instructions: "There are three groups of you guards. When one group finishes their work [on the Sabbath day](#), divide yourselves into three smaller groups. One group must guard [the palace](#).

2 Kings 11:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Gate
- at the gate
- other

ULT

⁶ and a third will be at the Sur Gate, and a third at the gate behind the guardhouse.”

UST

⁶ Another group must guard at the Sur Gate. The other group must guard at the gate behind the other groups.

2 Kings 11:7

General Information:

Jehoiada continues giving directions to the soldiers who will protect King Joash.

for the king

They were to keep watch for the purpose of protecting the king from harm. Alternate translation: “in order to protect King Joash” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Sabbath
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- temple
- the Sabbath day
- protect little King Joash
- temple
- working on

ULT

⁷ The two other groups who are not serving on the Sabbath, you must keep the watch over the house of Yahweh for the king.

UST

⁷ The two groups that are not [working on the Sabbath day](#) must guard the [temple](#) to [protect little King Joash](#).

2 Kings 11:8

Whoever enters within your ranks

"Anyone who tries to go past you while you are protecting King Joash." A rank refers to a line of soldiers.

let him be killed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you must kill him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

You must stay with the king when he goes out, and when he comes in

These two opposite things are a merism that refers to everything the king does. Alternate translation: "You must stay near the king at all times" (See: [Merism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [hands](#)
- [You must stand...the king](#)
- [he](#)

ULT

⁸ You must surround the king, every man with his weapons in his hand. Whoever enters within your ranks, let him be killed. You must stay with the king when he goes out, and when he comes in.

UST

⁸ [You must stand](#) around [the king](#) wherever [he](#) goes, with your weapons in your [hands](#). You must kill anyone who comes near you."

2 Kings 11:9

the commanders of hundreds

The phrase “commander of hundreds” is probably an official title for a military officer. Possible meanings are 1) the word “hundreds” represents the exact amount of soldiers that each of these commanders led. Alternate translation: “the commanders of 100 soldiers” or 2) the word translated as “hundreds” does not represent an exact number, but is the name of a military division. Alternate translation: “the commanders of military divisions” See how you translated this in [2 Kings 11:4](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

Each one

“Each commander”

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [Sabbath](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [supervised](#)
- [on the Sabbath day](#)
- [on the Sabbath day](#)
- [supervised](#)
- [those who were about to start their work](#)
- [The officers](#)
- [on the Sabbath day](#)

ULT

⁹ So the commanders of hundreds obeyed everything Jehoiada the priest commanded. Each one took his men, those who were to come in to serve on the Sabbath, and those who were to stop serving on that Sabbath; and they came to Jehoiada the priest.

UST

⁹ [The officers](#) who [supervised](#) the guards did what Jehoiada told them to do. Each one brought to Jehoiada the guards that he [supervised](#)—the guards who were just finishing their work and [those who were about to start their work on the Sabbath day](#).

2 Kings 11:10

were in the house of Yahweh

“were stored in the temple”

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- temple
- priest, priesthood
- David
- chief
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- were kept in the temple
- were kept in the temple
- priest
- David
- The...to the commanders
- had belonged to King

ULT

¹⁰ Then Jehoiada the priest gave the commanders of hundreds the spears and shields that belonged to King David and that were in the house of Yahweh.

UST

¹⁰ The [priest](#) distributed [to the commanders](#) of the guards the spears and shields that [had belonged to King David](#), that [were kept in the temple](#).

2 Kings 11:11

from the right side of the temple to the left side, near the altar and the temple

Some versions translate the first two occurrences of “temple” as “palace.” These versions say, “from the right side of the palace to the left side of the palace, near the altar and the temple.”

Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [the king](#)
- [in his](#)
- [Then he commanded all the...to](#)

ULT

11 So the guards stood, each man with his weapon in his hand, from the right side of the temple to the left side, near the altar and the temple, surrounding the king.

UST

11 [Then he commanded all the](#) guards [to](#) stand in their positions, each one with his sword [in his hand](#), all around [the king](#).

2 Kings 11:12

brought out the king's son Joash

Jehoiada, the high priest, brought king Ahaziah's son, Joash, out from the temple apartment where he had been raised in hiding.

gave him the covenant decrees

"presented him with the book of the law"

anointed him

The priest poured olive oil on the head of Joash as a symbol that he was now the king. Alternate translation: "poured some olive oil on Joash's head" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

clapped their hands

Clapping their hands was a sign of the happiness of the people at the anointing of the new king.

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- command, commandment
- son
- hand
- reign, rule
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- will live
- were written the rules that the kings needed
- were written the rules that the kings needed
- clapped their hands
- put the crown
- were written the rules that the kings needed
- king...for many years

ULT

12 Then Jehoiada brought out the king's son Joash, put the crown on him, and gave him the covenant decrees. Then they made him king and anointed him. They clapped their hands and said, "Long live the king!"

UST

12 Then he brought Joash out. He [put the crown](#) on his head and gave him a scroll on which [were written the rules that the kings needed](#) to obey. Then he poured some olive oil on Joash's head and proclaimed that he was now the king. The people all [clapped their hands](#) and shouted, "We desire that the [king will live for many years!](#)"

2 Kings 11:13

the noise of the guard

This refers to the noise made by all the soldiers.

she came to the people in the house of Yahweh

“she came to where the people had gathered at the temple”

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- house

Translation Words - UST

- the temple
- by the guards and the other people
- the people were gathered
- the temple

ULT

13 When Athaliah heard the noise of the guard and of the people, she came to the people in the house of Yahweh.

UST

13 When Athaliah heard the noise that was being made by the guards and the other people, she ran to the temple where the people were gathered.

2 Kings 11:14

She looked, and, behold, the king was standing

"When she arrived, she was surprised to see King Joash standing"

by the pillar

"by one of the pillars of the temple"

as the custom was

"which was the usual place for the king to stand"

the trumpeters

"the people who played the trumpets"

Athaliah tore her clothes

She tore her clothes to express that she was very upset and angry.
(See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Treason! Treason!

"You are traitors! You have betrayed me!"

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- people, people group,
- joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing
- trumpet, trumpeters
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs
- earth, earthen, earthly
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- stood
- and that the people were shouting
- joyfully
- and some of them were also blowing trumpets
- king
- place at the temple where the kings usually
- standing there...one of the...which was the
- and that the people were shouting
- standing there...one of the...which was the
- and shouted

ULT

14 She looked, and, behold, the king was standing by the pillar, as the custom was, and the captains and the trumpeters were by the king. All the people of the land were rejoicing and blowing trumpets. Then Athaliah tore her clothes and shouted, "Treason! Treason!"

UST

14 She saw the new [king standing there](#) alongside [one of the](#) big pillars, [which was the place at the temple where the kings usually stood](#). She saw that he was surrounded by the temple officers and men blowing trumpets, [and that the people were shouting joyfully, and some of them were also blowing trumpets](#). She tore her clothes to show her distress [and shouted](#), "You are traitors! You have betrayed me!"

2 Kings 11:15

the commanders of hundreds

The phrase “commander of hundreds” is probably an official title for a military officer. Possible meanings are 1) the word “hundreds” represents the exact amount of soldiers that each of these commanders led. Alternate translation: “the commanders of 100 soldiers” or 2) the word translated as “hundreds” does not represent an exact number, but is the name of a military division. Alternate translation: “the commanders of military divisions” See how you translated this in [2 Kings 11:4](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

Bring her out between the ranks

“Take her away between two rows of guards” or “Lead her away with a row of soldiers on each side of her.” Ranks are lines or rows of soldiers.

Anyone who follows her

It is implied that a person who followed her would be trying to help her. Alternate translation: “Anyone who follows to try to rescue her” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [priest](#), [priesthood](#)
- [priest](#), [priesthood](#)
- [sword](#), [swordsman](#)
- [prince](#), [princess](#), [governors](#), [provincial governors](#), [officials](#), [noblemen](#), [nobility](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#)
- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [said](#)
- [guards](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jehoiada](#)
- [her...anyone who tries to rescue her](#)
- [her...anyone who tries to rescue her](#)
- [guards](#)
- [temple of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [her away](#)

ULT

15 Then Jehoiada the priest ordered the commanders of hundreds who were over the army, saying, “Bring her out between the ranks. Anyone who follows her, kill him with the sword.” For the priest had said, “Do not let her be killed in the house of Yahweh.”

UST

15 [Jehoiada](#) immediately [said](#), “Kill [her](#), but do not do it here at the [temple of Yahweh](#)! Take [her away](#) between two rows of [guards](#). And kill [anyone who tries to rescue her](#)!”

2 Kings 11:16

they seized her as she reached the place where the horses enter the palace grounds

Some versions translate this as “the guards seized her and took her to the palace, to the place where horses enter the courtyard.”

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- hand
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- house

Translation Words - UST

- took
- seized her
- They killed her
- the courtyard
- horses
- to the palace

ULT

¹⁶ So they seized her as she reached the place where the horses enter the palace grounds, and there she was killed.

UST

¹⁶ She tried to flee, but the guards [seized her](#) and [took](#) her [to the palace](#), to the place where [horses](#) enter [the courtyard](#). [They killed her](#) there.

2 Kings 11:17

also between the king and the people

“also made a covenant between the king and the people”

Translation Words - ULT

- covenant
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- cut off
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- covenant
- always obey Yahweh
- the people, that they would
- people...loyal to Joash their king
- the people, that they would
- the king and
- Then Jehoiada made a covenant
- always obey Yahweh
- the king and

ULT

17 Then Jehoiada made a covenant between Yahweh and the king and people, that they should be Yahweh's people, and also between the king and the people.

UST

17 Then Jehoiada made a covenant between the king and the people, that they would always obey Yahweh. He also made an covenant requiring the people to be loyal to Joash their king.

2 Kings 11:18

all the people of the land

This is a generalization to show that a large group of people tore down the temple of Baal. Alternate translation: a large number of the people of the land” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

the house of Baal

“the temple of Baal”

Mattan

This is the name of a male priest. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- altar
- favor, favorable, favoritism
- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- priest, priesthood
- people, people group,
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- earth, earthen, earthly
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- They smashed the altars
- the altars
- statues
- stationed
- at the temple of Yahweh
- priest of
- stationed
- people
- killed
- people
- temple of
- to the

ULT

18 So all the people of the land went to the house of Baal and tore it down. They smashed Baal's altars and his idol figures to pieces, and they killed Mattan, the priest of Baal, in front of those altars. Then Jehoida the priest appointed guards over the temple of Yahweh.

UST

18 Then all the [people](#) of Israel who were there went [to the temple of](#) Baal and tore it down. [They smashed the altars](#) and the [statues](#) of Baal. They also [killed](#) Mattan the [priest of](#) Baal, in front of [the altars](#). Jehoiada [stationed](#) guards [at the temple of Yahweh](#).

2 Kings 11:19

General Information:

They take the new king, Joash, from the temple to the palace.

the commanders of hundreds

The phrase “commander of hundreds” is probably an official title for a military officer. Possible meanings are 1) the word “hundreds” represents the exact amount of soldiers that each of these commanders led. Alternate translation: “the commanders of 100 soldiers” or 2) the word translated as “hundreds” does not represent an exact number, but is the name of a military division. Alternate translation: “the commanders of military divisions” See how you translated this in [2 Kings 11:4](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

Carites

This is the name of a particular group of the royal guards.

brought down the king from the house of Yahweh and they went into the king’s house

“brought the king from the temple to the palace”

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- throne, enthroned
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- palace
- the people followed them
- at the Guard Gate
- throne
- brought the king
- the
- where the kings had always sat
- the people followed them
- of the temple, the officers who supervised
- palace
- from the temple to the palace

ULT

¹⁹ Jehoida took with him the commanders of hundreds, the Carites, the guard, and all the people of the land, and together they brought down the king from the house of Yahweh and they went into the king’s house, entering by way of the gate of the guards. Joash took his place on the royal throne.

UST

¹⁹ Then he and the officers [of the temple, the officers who supervised](#) the royal bodyguards, and the king’s bodyguards [brought the king from the temple to the palace](#). All [the people followed them](#). Joash entered the [palace at the Guard Gate](#) and sat down on [the throne, where the kings had always sat](#).

2 Kings 11:20

all the people of the land rejoiced

This is a generalization. It is possible that some did not rejoice.
Alternate translation: “many people in the land rejoiced” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

the city was quiet

“the city was calm” or “the city was peaceful”

Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing
- sword, swordsmen
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly
- house

Translation Words - UST

- the people of
- rejoiced
- killed
- king, kingdom, kingship
- Judah
- was

ULT

²⁰ So all the people of the land rejoiced, and the city was quiet after Athaliah had been killed with the sword at the king's house.

UST

²⁰ All [the people of Judah rejoiced](#). And because Athaliah had been [killed](#), the city [was](#) quiet.

2 Kings 11:21

Joash was seven years old

“Joash was 7 years old” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)

ULT

²¹ Joash was seven years old when he began to reign.

UST

²¹ Joash was seven years old when he became the king of Judah.

2 Kings 12

2 Kings 12 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter is the end of the story of the revival in Judah under Joash.

Special concepts in this chapter

Temple

Joash repaired the temple. In many ways, the temple represents the relationship between the people and Yahweh.
(See: [temple](#))

2 Kings 12:1

In the seventh year of Jehu

"During year 7 of the reign of Jehu over Israel" (See: [Numbers](#))

the reign of Joash began

"Joash began to reign over Judah"

Zibiah

This was the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Zibiah, of Beersheba

"Zibiah, from the city of Beersheba"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jerusalem](#)

ULT

¹ In the seventh year of Jehu, the reign of Joash began; he reigned for forty years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Zibiah, of Beersheba.

UST

¹ When Jehu had been ruling Israel for almost seven years, Joash became the king of Judah. He ruled in Jerusalem for forty years. His mother was Zibiah, from the city of Beersheba.

2 Kings 12:2

what was right in the eyes of Yahweh

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: “what Yahweh judges to be right” or “what Yahweh considers to be right” (See: [Metaphor](#))

instructing him

“teaching him”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)

ULT

² Joash did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh all the time, because Jehoiada the priest was instructing him.

UST

² All during the time that Joash was alive, he did what pleased Yahweh, because Jehoiada the priest instructed him.

2 Kings 12:3

But the high places were not taken away

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "But the people did not destroy the high places" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

The people still sacrificed and burned incense on the high places

Yahweh forbid the people to worship at these place. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "The people continued to go to places that were unacceptable to Yahweh, to make sacrifices and burn incense" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

Translation Words - UST

- people, people group,
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

ULT

³ But the high places were not taken away. The people still sacrificed and burned incense on the high places.

UST

³ But the places where the people worshiped Yahweh elsewhere in the land were not destroyed. They continued to offer sacrifices and burn incense at those places, instead of at the place that God had chosen for them in Jerusalem.

2 Kings 12:4

the money that is brought in as sacred offerings into the house of Yahweh

This refers to money that people gave to support the temple. This money came in three forms that are described in the rest of the sentence.

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- heart
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- silver
- silver
- silver
- silver
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- heart
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- silver
- silver
- silver
- silver
- house
- house

ULT

⁴ Joash said to the priests, “All the money that is brought in as sacred offerings into the house of Yahweh, that money for which each person is assessed—whether it is the money collected in the census, or the money received from personal vows, or the money brought in by people motivated by Yahweh in their hearts to give—

UST

⁴ Joash said to the priests, “You must take all the money which the people give, both the money they are required to pay and the money that they themselves decide to give, as sacred offerings to buy things for the temple.

2 Kings 12:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- priest, priesthood
- strength, strengthen, strong
- house

Translation Words - UST

- priest, priesthood
- strength, strengthen, strong
- house

ULT

⁵ the priests should receive the money from one of their treasurers and repair whatever damage is found in the temple."

UST

⁵ Each priest must take the money from the people who come to him, and he must use that money to repair the temple whenever he sees that there is something that needs to be repaired."

2 Kings 12:6

by the twenty-third year of King Joash

“when Joash had been king for twenty three years”

Translation Words - ULT

- priest, priesthood
- strength, strengthen, strong
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

Translation Words - UST

- priest, priesthood
- strength, strengthen, strong
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

ULT

⁶ But by the twenty-third year of King Joash, the priests had not repaired anything in the temple.

UST

⁶ But after Joash had been ruling for almost twenty-three years, the priests still had not repaired anything in the temple.

2 Kings 12:7

Why have you not repaired anything in the temple?

Joash asks this question to rebuke the priests. Alternate translation: "You should have been repairing the temple!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

give it to those who can make the repairs

"pay workers who will do the repairs"

Translation Words - ULT

- [priest](#), [priesthood](#)
- [priest](#), [priesthood](#)
- [silver](#)
- [strength](#), [strengthen](#), [strong](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)
- [declare](#), [proclaim](#), [announce](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [priest](#), [priesthood](#)
- [priest](#), [priesthood](#)
- [silver](#)
- [strength](#), [strengthen](#), [strong](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)
- [declare](#), [proclaim](#), [announce](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

⁷ Then King Joash called for Jehoiada the priest and for the other priests; he said to them, "Why have you not repaired anything in the temple? Now take no more money from your taxpayers, but take what has been collected for repairs of the temple and give it to those who can make the repairs."

UST

⁷ So Joash summoned Jehoiada and the other priests and said to them, "Why are you not repairing things in the temple? Do not take any more money from those who are paying taxes. Take the money that was collected for the purpose of repairing the temple and pay that money to the workers who will do the repairs."

2 Kings 12:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- priest, priesthood
- silver
- people, people group,
- strength, strengthen, strong
- house

Translation Words - UST

- priest, priesthood
- silver
- people, people group,
- strength, strengthen, strong
- house

ULT

⁸ So the priests consented to take no more money from the people and not repair the temple themselves.

UST

⁸ The priests agreed to do that, and they also agreed that they themselves would not do the repair work.

2 Kings 12:9

Instead, Jehoiada

“Instead of the priests collecting the money, Jehoiada”

on the right side as one comes into the house of Yahweh

“on the right side of the entrance to the temple”

put into it

“put into the chest” or “put in the box”

the money that was brought

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the money that people brought” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- priest, priesthood
- silver
- threshold, doorway
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- priest, priesthood
- silver
- threshold, doorway
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out
- house
- house

ULT

⁹ Instead, Jehoiada the priest took a chest, bored a hole in its lid, and set it beside the altar, on the right side as one comes into the house of Yahweh. The priests who were guarding the temple entrance put into it all the money that was brought to the house of Yahweh.

UST

⁹ Then Jehoiada took a chest and bored a hole in the lid. He placed it alongside the altar for burning incense that was on the right as anyone enters the temple. The priests who guarded the entrance to the temple put in the box the money that was brought to the temple.

2 Kings 12:10

put the money in bags and then count it

Many versions put this in a more logical order such as “count the money and put it in bags.”

put the money in bags

Possible meanings are 1) “put the money in bags” or 2) “tied up the money in bags” .

the money found

“the money that they found in the chest”

Translation Words - ULT

- scribe
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- silver
- silver (2)
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

Translation Words - UST

- scribe
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- silver
- silver (2)
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

ULT

10 Whenever they saw that there was much money in the chest, the king's scribe and the high priest would come and put the money in bags and then count it, the money found in the temple of Yahweh.

UST

10 Whenever they saw that there was a lot of money in the chest, the king's secretary and the high priest would come and count the money. Then they would put it in bags and tie the bags shut.

2 Kings 12:11

weighed out

“counted”

into the hands of men

Here “hands” refers to the men. Alternate translation: “to men” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

who took care of the temple

“who repaired the temple”

carpenters

people who build and repair things made of wood

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)
- [silver](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [hand](#)
- [silver](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#)

ULT

11 They gave the money that was weighed out into the hands of men who took care of the temple of Yahweh. They paid it out to the carpenters and the builders who worked on the temple of Yahweh,

UST

11 Then they would distribute the money to the men who supervised the work in the temple. The supervisors would use that money to pay the carpenters and builders who did the repair work in the temple,

2 Kings 12:12

masons

people who build with stone

stonecutters

people who cut stones into the correct size and shape

for buying timber and cutting stone

“to buy wood and to cut stone”

for all that was needed to be paid to repair it

“to pay for all of the needed repairs”

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- house
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- house
- house
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

¹² and to the masons and the stonecutters, for buying timber and cutting stone to repair the temple of Yahweh, and for all that was needed to be paid to repair it.

UST

¹² and the masons and the stone cutters. Also with some of that money they bought timber and stones that had been cut to be used in the repair work, and to pay all the other expenses for the repair work.

2 Kings 12:13

did not pay to make for it any

“was not spent to pay for any of the temple’s”

silver cups, lamp trimmers, basins, trumpets, or any gold or silver furnishing

These are items that would have been used by the priests for various temple tasks, such as sacrifices or festivals.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- silver
- silver
- silver
- gold, golden
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- silver
- silver
- silver
- gold, golden
- house
- house

ULT

13 But the money that was brought into the house of Yahweh did not pay to make for it any silver cups, lamp trimmers, basins, trumpets, or any gold or silver furnishing.

UST

13 But they did not use any of that money to pay men to make silver cups or wick trimmers for the lamps or bowls or trumpets or any other items made of silver or gold to be used in the temple.

2 Kings 12:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- house

ULT

¹⁴ They gave this money to those who did the work of repairing the house of Yahweh.

UST

¹⁴ All that money was given to the men who were doing the work of repairing the temple.

2 Kings 12:15

they did not require the money paid for repairs to be accounted for by the men who received it and paid it to the workmen

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they did not require the men who received the money and paid the workmen for the repairs to account for the money" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

to be accounted for

to keep a record of how much money was received and spent

Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [silver](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [hand](#)
- [silver](#)

ULT

¹⁵ In addition, they did not require the money paid for repairs to be accounted for by the men who received it and paid it to the workmen, because these men were honest.

UST

¹⁵ The men who supervised the work always did things honestly, so the king's secretary and the high priest never required that the supervisors report what they had spent the money for.

2 Kings 12:16

the money for the guilt offerings and the money for the sin offerings was not brought into the temple of Yahweh

It is implied that this money was not used for the repairs. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they did not use the money from the guilt offerings and the sin offerings to pay for the repairs to the temple of Yahweh" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- silver
- silver
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- silver
- silver
- house

ULT

16 But the money for the guilt offerings and the money for the sin offerings was not brought into the temple of Yahweh, because it belonged to the priests.

UST

16 But the money that people gave to pay for sacrifices for their sins was not put in the chest. That money belonged to the priests.

2 Kings 12:17

Hazael king of Aram attacked...Hazael then turned to attack

This refers to Hazael's army as well as to Hazael. Alternate translation: "Hazael king of Aram and his army attacked...Then they turned to attack" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Hazael

This is the name of the king of the country of Syria. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

took it

"defeated and took control of it"

Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

ULT

17 Then Hazael king of Aram attacked and fought against Gath, and took it. Hazael then turned to attack Jerusalem.

UST

17 At that time, Hazael, the king of Aram, went with his army and attacked the city of Gath and conquered it. Then he decided that they would attack Jerusalem.

2 Kings 12:18

Jehoshaphat and Jehoram and Ahaziah, his fathers

These men were previous kings of Judah. (See: [Metaphor](#))

set apart

“dedicated”

the gold that was found in the storerooms

“the gold that was stored in the storerooms”

Then Hazael went away from Jerusalem

The gifts Joash gave Hazael convinced him not to attack Jerusalem. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “So Hazael stopped attacking Jerusalem and left”

Translation Words - ULT

- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Yahweh
- Judea
- Judea
- Jehoshaphat
- Jerusalem
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- gold, golden
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- holy, holiness, unholy, sacred
- Yahweh
- Judea
- Judea
- Jehoshaphat
- Jerusalem
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

ULT

¹⁸ Joash king of Judah took all the things that Jehoshaphat and Jehoram and Ahaziah, his fathers, kings of Judah, had set apart, and what he had set apart, and all the gold that was found in the storerooms of the houses of Yahweh and of the king and he sent them to Hazael king of Aram. Then Hazael went away from Jerusalem.

UST

¹⁸ So Joash, the king of Judah, took all the money that the previous kings, Jehoshaphat and Jehoram and Ahaziah, had dedicated to Yahweh. He added some of his own money, and all the gold that was in the rooms in the temple where valuable things were kept, and he sent it all to King Hazael to persuade him not to attack Jerusalem. So King Hazael took his army away from Jerusalem.

- gold, golden
- house
- house

2 Kings 12:19

are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

This question is used to remind the reader that these things are recorded. See how this phrase is translated in [2 Kings 8:23](#). Alternate translation: “they are written in the book of the history of the kings of Judah.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Judea](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

ULT

¹⁹ As for the other matters concerning Joash, all that he did, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

UST

¹⁹ If you want to read more of what Joash did, it is all written in Book of the Events of the Kings of Judah.

2 Kings 12:20

Silla

The location of this place is unknown. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

Translation Words - UST

- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

ULT

20 His servants arose and plotted together; they attacked Joash in Beth Millo, on the way that goes down to Silla.

UST

20-21 Joash's officials plotted against him, and two of them killed Joash on the road that goes down to the district of Silla. The two men who did that were Jozabad son of Shimeath, and Jehozabad son of Shomer. Joash was buried in the place where his ancestors were buried, in the part of Jerusalem called the city of David. Then Joash's son Amaziah became the king of Judah.

2 Kings 12:21

Jozabad...Shimeath...Jehozabad...Shomer...Amaziah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

with his ancestors

"in the place where his ancestors were buried"

became king in his place

"became the next king of Judah"

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [son](#)
- [David](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [die](#), [dead](#), [deadly](#), [death](#),
- [reign](#), [rule](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [son](#)
- [David](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [die](#), [dead](#), [deadly](#), [death](#),
- [reign](#), [rule](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

ULT

²¹ Jozabad ^[1] son of Shimeath, and Jehozabad son of Shomer, his servants, attacked him, and he died. They buried Joash with his ancestors in the city of David, and Amaziah, his son, became king in his place.

12:21 ^[1] Some ancient manuscripts have *Jozacar* .

UST

²⁰⁻²¹ Joash's officials plotted against him, and two of them killed Joash on the road that goes down to the district of Silla. The two men who did that were Jozabad son of Shimeath, and Jehozabad son of Shomer. Joash was buried in the place where his ancestors were buried, in the part of Jerusalem called the city of David. Then Joash's son Amaziah became the king of Judah.

2 Kings 13

2 Kings 13 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This is the last chapter about Elisha.

Special concepts in this chapter

Elisha's death

The king of Israel is upset when Elisha is dying. Elisha assures him that he will have three victories over Aram.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

The king compares the protection that Elisha had given Israel to "The chariot of Israel and the horsemen." (See: [Metaphor](#))

2 Kings 13:1

In the twenty-third year of Joash son of Ahaziah king of Judah

"After Joash had been ruling Judah for almost 23 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

reign over Israel in Samaria

"rule over the kingdom of Israel located in Samaria"

he reigned seventeen years

"Jehoahaz was king for 17 years"

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [After Joash had been ruling](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [of Israel](#)
- [Judah for almost](#)
- [the king](#)

ULT

¹ In the twenty-third year of Joash son of Ahaziah king of Judah, Jehoahaz son of Jehu began to reign over Israel in Samaria; he reigned seventeen years.

UST

¹ [After Joash had been ruling Judah for almost](#) twenty-three years, Jehu's [son](#) Jehoahaz became [the king of Israel](#). He ruled in the city of Samaria for seventeen years.

2 Kings 13:2

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment or evaluation.
Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

followed the sins of Jeroboam

"did the same sins as Jeroboam"

Jehoahaz did not turn away from them

Here stopping his sin is spoken of as if he turned away from them.
This can also be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "Jehoahaz did not stop doing the sins of Jeroboam" or "Jehoahaz continued to do the same sins as Jeroboam" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [evil](#), [wicked](#), [unpleasant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [had committed](#)
- [sins](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [of Israel to sin](#)
- [evil](#)

ULT

² He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh and followed the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat, who caused Israel to sin; and Jehoahaz did not turn away from them.

UST

² He did many things that [Yahweh](#) said were [evil](#) and committed the same kind of sins that [Jeroboam had committed](#), [sins](#) that had induced the people [of Israel to sin](#). He did not stop committing those sins.

2 Kings 13:3

The anger of Yahweh burned against Israel

Yahweh becoming angry with Israel is spoken of as if his anger was a fire that burned. Alternate translation: "Then Yahweh became very angry with Israel" (See: [Metaphor](#))

gave them continually into the hand of Hazael king of Aram and into the hand of Ben Hadad son of Hazael

Here "them" refers to Israel and "hand" refers to the power to control them. Alternate translation: "allowed Hazael the king of Aram, and Ben Hadad, his son, to repeatedly defeat the Israelites in battle" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#) (2)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#) (2)
- [So Yahweh](#)
- [with the Israelite people](#)
- [and he allowed...to defeat](#)
- [of Aram and his](#)
- [the army of King](#)

ULT

³ The anger of Yahweh burned against Israel, and he gave them continually into the hand of Hazael king of Aram and into the hand of Ben Hadad son of Hazael.

UST

³ [So Yahweh](#) became very angry [with the Israelite people, and he allowed the army of King](#) Hazael [of Aram and his son](#) Ben Hadad [to defeat](#) the Israelites many times.

2 Kings 13:4

implored Yahweh

“prayed to Yahweh”

he saw the oppression of Israel, how the king of Aram was oppressing them

These two phrases mean the same thing and are repeated for emphasis. The abstract noun “oppression” means the same as “the king of Aram was oppressing them.” Alternate translation: “he saw how severely the king of Aram was oppressing Israel” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and Yahweh listened](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the Israelites](#)
- [for help](#)
- [the army of the king](#)

ULT

⁴ So Jehoahaz implored Yahweh, and Yahweh listened to him because he saw the oppression of Israel, how the king of Aram was oppressing them.

UST

⁴ Then Jehoahaz prayed to [Yahweh for help](#), and [Yahweh listened](#) to him, because he saw that [the army of the king](#) of Aram was oppressing [the Israelites](#).

2 Kings 13:5

a rescuer

"someone to rescue them"

they escaped from the hand of the Arameans

Here "hand" refers to the power to control them. Alternate translation: "he enabled them to be free from Aram's power" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [hand](#)
- [deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [enabled them](#)
- [the Israelites](#)
- [Yahweh sent a leader to Israel, who](#)
- [Yahweh sent a leader to Israel, who](#)
- [the Israelites](#)
- [enabled them](#)
- [free](#)

ULT

⁵ So Yahweh gave Israel a rescuer, and they escaped from the hand of the Arameans, and the people of Israel began to live in their homes as they had before.

UST

⁵ [Yahweh sent a leader to Israel, who enabled them](#) to be [free](#) from Aram's power. After that, [the Israelites](#) lived peacefully as they had done previously.

2 Kings 13:6

they did not depart from the sins of the house of Jeroboam

To stop sinning is spoken of as if they departed from the sins. This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "Israel did not stop doing the same sins as Jeroboam had done" or "Israel continued to commit the same sins as Jeroboam had committed" (See: [Metaphor](#))

house of Jeroboam

"the family of Jeroboam"

Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- appoint, appointed
- Israel, Israelites
- walk, walked
- house

Translation Words - UST

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- remained
- the Israelites
- they still continued to commit
- family

ULT

⁶ Nevertheless, they did not depart from the sins of the house of Jeroboam, who caused Israel to sin, and they continued in them; and the Asherah pole remained in Samaria.

UST

⁶ But [they still continued to commit](#) the same kind of sins that Jeroboam and his [family](#) had committed and that had led [the Israelites](#) to sin. Also, the statue of the goddess Asherah [remained](#) in Samaria.

2 Kings 13:7

had destroyed them

"had defeated the army of Jehoahaz"

made them like the chaff at threshing time

The Aramean army had so severely defeated the army of Israel that what remained was so worthless that it is compared to wheat chaff that the laborers walk on at harvest time. Alternate translation: "had crushed them as workers crush chaff under their feet at harvest time" (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [perish](#)
- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [people](#), [people group](#),
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [rest](#), [walking over them](#)
- [had killed all](#)
- [people](#)
- [the](#)

ULT

⁷ The Arameans left Jehoahaz with only fifty horsemen, ten chariots, and ten thousand footmen, for the king of Aram had destroyed them and made them like the chaff at threshing time.

UST

⁷ Jehoahaz had only fifty men who rode on horses and ten chariots and ten thousand other soldiers, because the army of Aram [had killed all the rest](#), [walking over them](#) as [people](#) walk over the ground.

2 Kings 13:8

are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

This question is used to remind the reader that the acts of Jehoahaz are recorded in another book. See how this phrase is translated in [2 Kings 1:18](#). Alternate translation: “they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Israel](#)
- [in the book called The History of the Kings](#)

ULT

⁸ As for the other matters concerning Jehoahaz, and all that he did and his power, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

UST

⁸ If you want to read about everything else that Jehoahaz did, you can read about it [in the book called The History of the Kings of Israel](#).

2 Kings 13:9

slept with his ancestors

This is a polite way of saying that he died. (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- reign, rule

Translation Words - UST

- Then his son Jehoash became the king
- and was buried in
- Then his son Jehoash became the king

ULT

⁹ So Jehoahaz slept with his ancestors, and they buried him in Samaria. Jehoash his son became king in his place.

UST

⁹ Jehoahaz died [and was buried in](#) Samaria. [Then his son Jehoash became the king.](#)

2 Kings 13:10

In the thirty-seventh year of Joash king of Judah

“After Joash had ruled Judah for almost 37 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

the reign of Jehoash son of Jehoahaz began over Israel in Samaria

“Jehoash son of Jehoahaz began to rule over Israel in Samaria”

Jehoash

This was a king of Israel who was the son of Jehoahaz. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [had been ruling](#)
- [in Israel](#)
- [in Judah for](#)
- [after King](#)

ULT

¹⁰ In the thirty-seventh year of Joash king of Judah, the reign of Jehoash son of Jehoahaz began over Israel in Samaria; he reigned sixteen years.

UST

¹⁰ Jehoash son of Jehoahaz, started to rule [in Israel after King](#) Joash [had been ruling in Judah for](#) thirty-seven years. Jehoash ruled in Samaria for sixteen years.

2 Kings 13:11

He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

Here “sight” represents God’s thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: “He did things that Yahweh considers to be evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

He did not leave behind any of the sins of Jeroboam

To stop sinning is spoken of as if he left behind the sins. This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “Jehoash did not stop committing the same sins as Jeroboam” or “Jehoash kept committing the same sins as Jeroboam” (See: [Metaphor](#))

by which he had made Israel to sin

“by which Jeroboam had caused Israel to sin”

but he walked in them

To sin is spoken of as if he was walking along a sinful path. Alternate translation: “but Jehoash continued to do these same sins” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- the sin that many
- in committing
- years earlier King Jeroboam
- that Yahweh
- the Israelite people
- evil
- had led

ULT

11 He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh. He did not leave behind any of the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat, by which he had made Israel to sin, but he walked in them.

UST

11 He did many things [that Yahweh](#) said were [evil](#). He refused to stop worshiping idols, which was [the sin that many years earlier King Jeroboam had led the Israelite people in committing](#).

2 Kings 13:12

his might by which he fought against Amaziah king of Judah

Here the strength of Jehoash's army is spoken of as Jehoash's "might." Alternate translation: "the power that his army showed when they fought against the army of Amaziah king of Judah" (See: [Metonymy](#))

are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

This question is used to remind the reader that the acts of Jehoahaz are recorded in another book. See how this phrase is translated in [2 Kings 1:18](#). Alternate translation: "they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- of Israel
- Amaziah of Judah
- the army of King
- Events of the Kings

ULT

¹² As for the other matters concerning Jehoash, and all that he did, and his might by which he fought against Amaziah king of Judah, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

UST

¹² The other things that happened while Jehoash was king and all the things that he did are written in Book of the [Events of the Kings of Israel](#). In that account they wrote about his army's victories, and their war with [the army of King Amaziah of Judah](#).

2 Kings 13:13

Jehoash slept with his ancestors

This a polite way to say that Jehoash died. (See: [Euphemism](#))

Jeroboam sat on his throne

Here "sat on his throne" refers to ruling as king. Alternate translation: "Jeroboam became king after him" or "Jeroboam began to rule after him" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [throne, enthroned](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Israel](#)
- [the other kings](#)
- [Then his son...became](#)
- [king](#)

ULT

¹³ Jehoash slept with his ancestors, and Jeroboam sat on his throne. Jehoash was buried in Samaria with the kings of Israel.

UST

¹³ When Jehoash died, he was buried in Samaria where [the other kings of Israel](#) were buried. [Then his son](#) Jeroboam [became king](#).

2 Kings 13:14

wept over him

"wept because Elisha was sick"

My father, my father

Elisha was not the king's literal father. King Joash used this term as a sign of respect.

the chariots of Israel and the horsemen are taking you away

This is a reference to Elijah going to heaven in [2 Kings 2:11](#) and [2 Kings 2:12](#). Joash uses this phrase to say that Elisha was going to die. Alternate translation: "the chariots of Israel and the horsemen are taking you to heaven" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the horsemen

This refers to the men who drove the chariots. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "the drivers of the chariots" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

14 Now Elisha became sick with an illness by which he later died, so Jehoash the king of Israel came down to him and wept over him. He said, "My father, my father, the chariots of Israel and the horsemen are taking you away!"

UST

14 Then Elisha became very ill. Just before he died, [King](#) Joash went to Elisha and cried [in front of him](#). Saying the same words that Elisha had said when Elijah was taken to heaven, he said, "[My father!](#) The chariots [of us Israelite people and their drivers are taking my master away!](#)"

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- horseman
- face, facial
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- King
- of us Israelite people
- My father
- My father
- and their drivers are taking my master away
- in front of him
- King

2 Kings 13:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

¹⁵ Elisha said to him, "Pick up a bow and some arrows," so Joash picked up a bow and some arrows.

UST

¹⁵ Elisha said to him, "Bring to me a bow and some arrows!" So the king did that.

2 Kings 13:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- appoint, appointed
- Israel, Israelites
- hand
- hand
- hand
- hand
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- horse, warhorse, horseback

Translation Words - UST

- put his own
- the king
- to put his
- hands
- hands
- hands
- the king
- the king's
- to shoot

ULT

¹⁶ Elisha said to the king of Israel, "Put your hand on the bow," so he put his hand on it. Then Elisha laid his hands on the king's hands.

UST

¹⁶ Then Elisha told [the king to put his hands](#) on the bow and prepare [to shoot](#) some arrows. And then Elisha [put his own hands](#) on [the king's hands](#).

2 Kings 13:17

General Information:

Elisha continues to talk to Joash, king of Israel.

Open the window eastward

“open the window that faces east” or “open that window towards the east”

so he opened it

Since this happens after Joash takes the bow and arrows, he may have had a servant open the window. Alternate translation: “So a servant opened it” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

he shot

“Joash shot the arrow”

This is Yahweh’s arrow of victory, the arrow of victory over Aram

The relationship between the arrow and victory can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: “This arrow is a sign from Yahweh that he will give you victory over Aram” or “This arrow symbolizes the victory Yahweh will give you over Aram” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Aphek

This was a city in the land of Israel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- consume, devour

Translation Words - UST

- That is the arrow that indicates that
- completely

ULT

17 Elisha said, “Open the window eastward,” so he opened it. Then Elisha said, “Shoot!”, and he shot. Elisha said, “This is Yahweh’s arrow of victory, the arrow of victory over Aram, for you will attack the Arameans in Aphek until you have consumed them.”

UST

17 Then Elisha told him, “Have someone open that window toward the east.” So a servant opened it. Then Elisha said, “Shoot!” So the king did. Then Elisha said, “[That is the arrow that indicates that](#) your army will defeat the Aramean army. Your army will [completely](#) defeat their army at the city of Aphek.”

2 Kings 13:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- king
- and...the ground with them!" So the
- the arrows...the ground

ULT

¹⁸ Then Elisha said, "Take the arrows," so Joash took them. He said to the king of Israel, "Strike the ground with them," and he struck the ground three times, then stopped.

UST

¹⁸ Then Elisha said, "Pick up the other arrows and strike the ground with them!" So the king picked up the arrows and struck the ground three times.

2 Kings 13:19

But the man of God was angry with him

"But Elisha was angry with King Joash"

until you annihilated it

"until you completely destroyed it" or "until they were completely wiped out"

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- consume, devour

Translation Words - UST

- But Elisha was angry
- they were completely wiped out

ULT

19 But the man of God was angry with him and said, "You should have hit the ground five or six times. Then you would have attacked Aram until you annihilated it, but now you will attack Aram only three times."

UST

19 But Elisha was angry with him. He exclaimed, "You should have struck the ground five or six times! If you had done that, your army would have defeated the Aramean army until they were completely wiped out! But now, because you struck the ground only three times, your army will defeat them only three times!"

2 Kings 13:20

Now

This word marks a break in the main story line. This new section gives background information for the part of the story that follows. (See: [Background Information](#))

at the beginning of the year

“each year during spring”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moab](#), Moabite
- [die](#), [dead](#), [deadly](#), [death](#),

Translation Words - UST

- [Moab](#)
- [died](#)

ULT

²⁰ Then Elisha died, and they buried him. Now groups of Moabites invaded the land at the beginning of the year.

UST

²⁰ Then Elisha [died](#) and was buried. Groups of raiders from [Moab](#) came to Israel each year during spring.

2 Kings 13:21

As they were burying a certain man

"As some Israelites were burying a man's body"

they saw a group of Moabites

It can be made explicit that they were afraid of the Moabites.
Alternate translation: "they saw a group of Moabite raiders coming toward them and they were afraid" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Elisha's grave

"the grave where Elisha was buried"

As soon as the man touched Elisha's bones

Here "the man" refers to his dead body. This can be made explicit.
Alternate translation: "As soon as the dead man's body touched the bones of Elisha" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

he revived and stood up on his feet

"the dead man came back to life and stood up"

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- bury, buried, burial

Translation Words - UST

- alive
- buried

ULT

²¹ As they were burying a certain man, they saw a group of Moabites, so they threw the body into Elisha's grave. As soon as the man touched Elisha's bones, he revived and stood up on his feet.

UST

²¹ One year, when some Israelite people were burying a man's body, they saw a group of those raiders. They were afraid, so quickly they threw that man's body into the grave where Elisha had been [buried](#), and they ran away. But as soon as the man's body touched Elisha's bones, the dead man became [alive](#) again and jumped up!

2 Kings 13:22

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sent soldiers...the Israelite](#)
- [King](#)

ULT

²² Hazael king of Aram oppressed Israel all the days of Jehoahaz.

UST

²² [King](#) Hazael of Aram [sent soldiers](#) to oppress [the Israelite](#) people during all the years that Jehoahaz ruled Judah.

2 Kings 13:23

But Yahweh was gracious to Israel, and had compassion on them and concern for them

It may be helpful to divide this sentence into shorter parts. Alternate translation: "But Yahweh was very kind to the Israelite people. He helped them"

So Yahweh did not destroy them

Yahweh's covenant is the reason he did not destroy Israel. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "This is the reason that Yahweh did not destroy them" or "Because of his covenant, Yahweh did not destroy them" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

has not driven them away from his presence

Yahweh's rejection is spoken of as if he had physically driven Israel away from where he was. Alternate translation: "has not rejected them" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [covenant](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Abraham, Abram](#)
- [face, facial](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the Israelite people...the covenant](#)
- [But Yahweh](#)
- [Abraham](#)
- [their ancestors...not...rejected](#)

ULT

²³ But Yahweh was gracious to Israel, and had compassion on them and concern for them, because of his covenant with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. So Yahweh did not destroy them, and he still has not driven them away from his presence.

UST

²³ [But Yahweh](#) was very kind to [the Israelite people](#). He helped them because of [the covenant](#) that he had made with [their ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob](#). He would not get rid of the Israelites, and he still has not [rejected](#) them.

2 Kings 13:24

Hazael...Ben Hadad

These are names of kings. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

became king in his place

“became king after him”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- reign, rule
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- his son
- died
- the king
- the king

ULT

²⁴ Hazael king of Aram died, and Ben Hadad his son became king in his place.

UST

²⁴ When Hazael [the king](#) of Aram [died](#), [his son](#) Ben Hadad became [the king](#).

2 Kings 13:25

Jehoash...Jehoahaz

These are names of kings. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Jehoash attacked him three times

Here "Jehoash" and "him" refer to the kings and their armies.
Alternate translation: "Jehoash's army attacked Ben Hadad's army three times" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

he recovered those cities of Israel

"Jehoash took back control of the Israelite cities that Ben Hadad had captured"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son (3)
- Israel, Israelites
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand
- hand
- return
- return

Translation Words - UST

- King Jehoash
- Ben Hadad's army...during the (3)
- The army of...of Israel
- father
- the cities
- had seized
- King Jehoash
- time that Jehoash's

ULT

²⁵ Jehoash son of Jehoahaz took back from Ben Hadad son of Hazael the cities that had been taken from Jehoahaz his father by war. Jehoash attacked him three times, and he recovered those cities of Israel.

UST

²⁵ [The army of King Jehoash of Israel](#) defeated the army of King Ben Hadad three times; they also recaptured [the cities](#) that [Ben Hadad's army had seized during the time that Jehoash's father](#) Jehoahaz was ruling Israel.

2 Kings 14

2 Kings 14 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The text begins to alternate between the kingdoms of Israel and Judah again.

Special concepts in this chapter

Pride

Pride in one's success can make a person attempt and fail at something else. Amaziah defeated Edom so he wanted to fight Israel. But Israel defeated him and thoroughly humiliated him.

2 Kings 14:1

In the second year of Jehoash son of Jehoahaz, king of Israel

“When Jehoash son of Jehoahaz had been king of Israel for almost two years”

Amaziah son of Joash, king of Judah, began to reign

“Amaziah son of Joash, became the king of Judah”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- had been ruling
- son Amaziah
- Israel for almost
- of Judah
- Israel for almost
- the king

ULT

¹ In the second year of Jehoash son of Jehoahaz, king of Israel, Amaziah son of Joash, king of Judah, began to reign.

UST

¹ After Jehoash [had been ruling Israel for almost](#) two years, Joash's [son Amaziah](#) became [the king of Judah](#).

2 Kings 14:2

He was twenty-five years old when he began to reign

“He was 25 years old when he became king” (See: [Numbers](#))

he reigned twenty-nine years in Jerusalem

“he was the king in Jerusalem for 29 years” (See: [Numbers](#))

Jehoaddan

(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Jerusalem
- Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- twenty
- in Jerusalem
- Jerusalem

ULT

² He was twenty-five years old when he began to reign; he reigned twenty-nine years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Jehoaddan, of Jerusalem.

UST

² He was [twenty](#)-five years old when he started to rule, and he ruled [in Jerusalem](#) for twenty-nine years. His mother was Jehoaddin. She was from [Jerusalem](#).

2 Kings 14:3

He did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh, yet not like David his father

Here “the eyes of Yahweh” refers to his sight, and his sight refers to his judgment. Alternate translation: “Amaziah did many things that pleased Yahweh, but he did not do as many things that pleased Yahweh as King David had done” (See: [Metaphor](#))

He did everything that Joash, his father, had done

Joash obeyed Yahweh and did good things. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “He did the same good things that his father Joash had done” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh as King David had done](#)
- [his father](#)

ULT

³ He did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh, yet not like David his father. He did everything that Joash, his father, had done.

UST

³ Amaziah did many things that pleased [Yahweh](#), but he did not do as many things that pleased [Yahweh as King David had done](#). He did some of the good things that [his father](#) Joash had done.

2 Kings 14:4

General Information:

The story of Amaziah's rule as king of Judah continues.

But the high places were not taken away

This can be stated in active form. The high places were used for pagan worship. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "But he did not remove the high places" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

sacrificed and burned incense at the high places

The high places were used for pagan worship. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "sacrificed and burned incense to pagan gods at the high places"(See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- people, people group,
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

Translation Words - UST

- The people
- the other places for worshiping Yahweh

ULT

⁴ But the high places were not taken away. The people still sacrificed and burned incense at the high places.

UST

⁴ But, like his father, he did not tear down [the other places for worshiping Yahweh](#). [The people](#) continued to burn incense to honor Yahweh in those places instead of in Jerusalem, the place that Yahweh had appointed.

2 Kings 14:5

It came about

This is used to introduce a new event. (See: [Introduction of a New Event](#))

as soon as his rule was well established

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “as soon as Amaziah securely established his royal rule and kingly authority” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

he killed the servants

Amaziah probably ordered other people to kill the officials. Alternate translation: “he made his servants execute the officials” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand
- strength, strengthen, strong
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- his father
- in control
- completely
- the
- servants

ULT

⁵ It came about that as soon as his rule was well established, he killed the servants who had murdered his father, the king.

UST

⁵ As soon as he was [completely in control](#) of his kingdom, he made his [servants](#) execute [the](#) officials who had murdered [his father](#).

2 Kings 14:6

General Information:

The narrator tells about what king Amaziah did after his father King Joash was murdered.

Yet he did not put the sons of the murderers to death

King Amaziah did not order his servants to kill the children of the men who killed his father. If he was going to have them executed though, he would have commanded his servants do it, he would not have done it himself. Alternate translation: "But he did not tell his servants to execute those officials' children" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

The fathers must not be put to death for their children, neither must the children be put to death for their parents

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People must not kill the fathers for the sins of their children, and they must not kill the children for the sins of their parents" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

every person must be put to death for his own sin

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "every person must die for his own sin" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- son
- son
- son
- law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law
- Yahweh
- Moses
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- obeyed
- children
- gave to
- gave to
- the laws
- God
- Moses
- Parents
- servants to

ULT

⁶ Yet he did not put the sons of the murderers to death; instead, he acted according to what was written in the book of the law Moses, as Yahweh had commanded, saying, "The fathers must not be put to death for their children, neither must the children be put to death for their parents. Instead, every person must be put to death for his own sin."

UST

⁶ But he did not tell his [servants to](#) execute those officials' [children](#). He [obeyed](#) what was written in [the laws](#) that [God gave to Moses](#), "[Parents](#) must not be executed for the crimes committed by their parents. People must be executed only for the sins that they themselves have committed."

2 Kings 14:7

He killed

Here “He” refers to his army. Alternate translation: “Amaziah’s army killed” or “Amaziah’s soldiers killed” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

ten thousand soldiers

“10,000 soldiers” (See: [Numbers](#))

Valley of Salt

This is the name of a place that is located south of the Dead Sea.

he also took Sela in war

Here the word “he” refers to King amaziah and represents himself and his army. Alternate translation: “King Amaziah’s army captured the city of Sela” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Sela...Joktheel

They renamed the city of Sela. The new name was Joktheel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [name](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [its name](#)
- [and gave it a new name](#)

ULT

⁷ He killed ten thousand soldiers of Edom in the Valley of Salt; he also took Sela in war and called it Joktheel, which is what it is called to this day.

UST

⁷ Amaziah’s soldiers killed ten thousand soldiers of the Edom people group in the Valley of Salt south of the Dead Sea, and they captured the city of Sela [and gave it a new name](#), Joktheel. That is still [its name](#).

2 Kings 14:8

Then Amaziah sent messengers to Jehoash son of Jehoahaz son of Jehu king of Israel, saying, "Come, let us meet each other face to face in battle."

Here "each other" also included their armies. Alternate translation: "Then Amaziah sent messengers to King Jehoash of Israel, saying, 'Come here and let us and our armies fight each other in battle.'" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son (2)
- Israel, Israelites
- messenger
- face, facial
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- King Jehoash
- King Jehoash (2)
- of Israel
- messengers
- fight each other in battle
- King Jehoash
- saying...Come here and let us and our armies

ULT

⁸ Then Amaziah sent messengers to Jehoash son of Jehoahaz son of Jehu king of Israel, saying, "Come, let us meet each other face to face in battle."

UST

⁸ Then Amaziah sent [messengers](#) to [King Jehoash of Israel](#), [saying](#), "[Come here and let us and our armies fight each other in battle](#)."

2 Kings 14:9

A thistle that was in Lebanon...trampled down the thistle

This is a word picture and a riddle. A cedar tree is great and a thistle is small and worthless. Jehoash compares himself to the cedar and Amaziah to the thistle and warns Amaziah not to attack. If you have a similar comparison in your own language, you can use it. (See: [Metaphor](#))

thistle

type of bush with thorns

saying, 'Give your daughter to my son for a wife,'

This direct quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "asking the cedar to give his daughter to the thistle's son for a wife" (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#) (2)

Translation Words - UST

- [son in order](#)
- [But King Jehoash](#)
- [King](#)
- [passed by](#)
- [But King Jehoash](#)
- [King](#) (2)

ULT

⁹ But Jehoash the king of Israel sent messengers back to Amaziah king of Judah, saying, "A thistle that was in Lebanon sent a message to a cedar in Lebanon, saying, 'Give your daughter to my son for a wife,' but a wild beast in Lebanon walked by and trampled down the thistle.

UST

⁹ [But King Jehoash](#) replied with this parable to [King](#) Amaziah: "Once a thornbush growing in the mountains in Lebanon sent a message to a cedar tree, saying, 'Give your daughter to my [son in order](#) that he may marry her.' But a wild animal in Lebanon [passed by](#) the thornbush and trampled it."

2 Kings 14:10

You have indeed attacked Edom

This is the warning part of Jehoash's message to Amaziah. "Amaziah, you have definitely defeated Edom"

your heart has lifted you up

This is an idiom that refers to being proud. Alternate translation: "you are very proud of what you have done" (See: [Idiom](#))

Take pride in your victory

"Be content with your victory"

for why should you cause yourself trouble and fall

Jehoash uses this question to warn Amaziah not to attack him. Alternate translation: "for you should not cause trouble for yourself and suffer defeat" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heart](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [temple](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances](#)
- [bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [you have become very proud](#)
- [you will surely cause a disaster](#)
- [you should allow your soldiers to stay at home](#)
- [you and to your people](#)
- [If you cause trouble](#)
- [you will surely cause a disaster](#)

ULT

10 You have indeed attacked Edom, and your heart has lifted you up. Take pride in your victory, but stay at home, for why should you cause yourself trouble and fall, both you and Judah with you?"

UST

10 The meaning of what I am saying is that your army has defeated the army of Edom, so now [you have become very proud](#). But you should be content with defeating the people of Edom; [you should allow your soldiers to stay at home](#). [If you cause trouble](#) by fighting against us, [you will surely cause a disaster](#) to happen to [you and to your people](#)."

2 Kings 14:11

But Amaziah would not listen

Here “listen” refers to obeying the warning. Alternate translation: “However, Amaziah would not obey Jehoash’s warning” (See: [Metonymy](#))

So Jehoash king of Israel attacked...Amaziah king of Judah met each other

The armies of these kings went to battle with them. Alternate translation: “So Jehoash and his army went to fight Amaziah and his army and they met each other” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Beth Shemesh

This is a town in Judah near the border of Israel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [face, facial](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#) (2)

Translation Words - UST

- [to Jehoash’s](#)
- [in Judah](#)
- [and it was there that their armies came together to fight each other](#)
- [So Jehoash and Amaziah led their armies to](#)
- [to Jehoash’s](#)
- [So Jehoash and Amaziah led their armies to](#) (2)

ULT

11 But Amaziah would not listen. So Jehoash king of Israel attacked and he and Amaziah king of Judah met each other face to face at Beth Shemesh, which belongs to Judah.

UST

11 But Amaziah refused to pay attention [to Jehoash’s](#) message. [So Jehoash and Amaziah led their armies to](#) Beth Shemesh [in Judah, and it was there that their armies came together to fight each other](#).

2 Kings 14:12

Judah was defeated by Israel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Israel defeated Judah" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

every man fled home

"all the men in the army of Judah ran home"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Judea](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The Israelite army](#)
- [of Judah...fled](#)

ULT

¹² Judah was defeated by Israel, and every man fled home.

UST

¹² [The Israelite army](#) defeated the army [of Judah](#), and all the soldiers of Judah [fled](#) and ran back home.

2 Kings 14:13

General Information:

This is what happened after the army of Israel defeated the army of Judah at Beth Shemesh.

He came

Here “He” refers to Jehoash and his army. Alternate translation: “Jehoash and his army came...Jehoash’s soldiers took” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Ephraim Gate...Corner Gate

There are the names of gates in the wall of Jerusalem. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

four hundred cubits

“about 180 meters” (See: [Numbers](#))

cubits

A cubit was about 46 centimeters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son (2)
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- Jerusalem
- Jerusalem
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship (2)

Translation Words - UST

- Jehoash’s army also captured King Amaziah
- Jehoash’s army also captured King Amaziah (2)
- Jehoash’s army also captured King Amaziah
- Jehoash’s army also captured King Amaziah
- Ephraim
- and they also marched
- to Jerusalem
- Gate. That was a section of wall about...meters
- the...Gate to the Corner
- Jehoash’s army also captured King Amaziah
- Jehoash’s army also captured King Amaziah (2)

ULT

¹³ Jehoash king of Israel, captured Amaziah, king of Judah son of Jehoash son of Ahaziah, at Beth Shemesh. He came to Jerusalem and tore down the wall of Jerusalem from the Ephraim Gate to the Corner Gate, four hundred cubits in distance.

UST

¹³ Jehoash’s army also captured King Amaziah there, and they also marched to Jerusalem and tore down the wall that was around the city, from the Ephraim Gate to the Corner Gate. That was a section of wall about 180 meters long.

2 Kings 14:14

He took

Here “He” refers to Jehoash and his army. Alternate translation: “Jehoash and his army came...Jehoash’s soldiers took” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

with hostages also, and returned to Samaria

This implies that Jehoash needed to take these hostages to prevent Amaziah from attacking again. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “and they also took to Samaria some prisoners to make sure that Amaziah would cause them no more trouble” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Samaria, Samaritan
- silver
- king, kingdom, kingship
- gold, golden
- return
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- some prisoners to make sure that Amaziah would cause them no more trouble
- palace; they
- to Samaria
- and silver
- in the
- the gold
- They also took
- palace; they
- the temple, and

ULT

14 He took all the gold and silver, all the objects that were found in the house of Yahweh, and the valuable things in the king’s palace, with hostages also, and returned to Samaria.

UST

14 Jehoash’s soldiers seized all [the gold and silver](#) that they found, all the objects that were in [the temple, and](#) all the valuable things that were [in the palace; they](#) took them to Samaria. [They also took to Samaria some prisoners to make sure that Amaziah would cause them no more trouble.](#)

2 Kings 14:15

are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

This question is used to remind the reader that the acts of Jehoahaz are recorded in another book. See how this phrase is translated in [2 Kings 1:18](#). Alternate translation: “they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Israel](#)
- [Amaziah of Judah](#)
- [the army of King](#)
- [Events of the Kings](#)

ULT

¹⁵ As for the other matters concerning Jehoash, all that he did, his power, and how he fought with Amaziah king of Judah, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

UST

¹⁵ If you want to know about all the other things that Jehoash did when he was king, including when he and his army fought against [the army of King Amaziah of Judah](#), they are written in Book of the [Events of the Kings of Israel](#).

2 Kings 14:16

Then Jehoash slept with his ancestors

This is a polite way to say that he died. Alternate translation: "Then Jehoash died" (See: [Euphemism](#))

became king in his place

"became king after him"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- reign, rule
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- his son
- of Israel
- the other kings
- the king
- he

ULT

16 Then Jehoash slept with his ancestors and was buried in Samaria with the kings of Israel, and Jeroboam, his son, became king in his place.

UST

16 Jehoash died, and [he](#) was buried in Samaria, where [the other kings of Israel](#) had been buried. Then [his son](#) Jeroboam became [the king](#).

2 Kings 14:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- son
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship (2)

Translation Words - UST

- lived
- Amaziah
- the king of Israel
- the king of Israel
- of Judah
- the king
- the king of Israel (2)

ULT

¹⁷ Amaziah son of Joash, king of Judah, lived fifteen years after the death of Jehoash son of Jehoahaz, king of Israel.

UST

¹⁷ Amaziah, the king of Judah, lived for fifteen more years after Jehoash, the king of Israel, died.

2 Kings 14:18

are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

This question is used to remind the reader that these things are recorded. See how this phrase is translated in [2 Kings 8:23](#). Alternate translation: “they are written in the book of the history of the kings of Judah.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Judah](#)
- [Events of the Kings](#)

ULT

¹⁸ As for the other matters concerning Amaziah, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

UST

¹⁸ If you want to know more about everything else that Amaziah did, it is written in Book of the [Events of the Kings of Judah](#).

2 Kings 14:19

They made a conspiracy against Amaziah in Jerusalem

A conspiracy is a secret plan to do harm to someone or something.
Alternate translation: "Some people in Jerusalem plotted against Amaziah"

Lachish

This is a city in southwestern Judah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

but they sent men after him to Lachish

The men who made the conspiracy sent other men to follow Amaziah to Lachish.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Some people in Jerusalem](#)
- [and killed him](#)

ULT

¹⁹ They made a conspiracy against Amaziah in Jerusalem, and he fled to Lachish. He fled to Lachish, but they sent men after him to Lachish and killed him there.

UST

¹⁹ [Some people in Jerusalem](#) plotted against him, so he fled to the city of Lachish. But they followed him there [and killed him](#).

2 Kings 14:20

General Information:

This is what happened after the death of King Amaziah.

They brought him back on horses

“They brought Amaziah’s body back on horses”

Translation Words - ULT

- David
- Jerusalem
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- horse, warhorse, horseback

Translation Words - UST

- of David
- back to Jerusalem and
- his ancestors had been buried
- They took his corpse

ULT

²⁰ They brought him back on horses, and he was buried with his ancestors in the city of David.

UST

²⁰ [They took his corpse back to Jerusalem and](#) buried it where [his ancestors had been buried](#), in the part of Jerusalem called the city [of David](#).

2 Kings 14:21

All the people of Judah took Azariah, who was sixteen years old, and made him king in place of his father Amaziah

This is a generalization. Some people may not have wanted him to be king. Alternate translation: “The people of Judah took the 16 year-old Azariah and made him king after his father, Amaziah” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Azariah

This king is better known today by the name “Uzziah.”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Judea
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- people, people group,
- reign, rule

Translation Words - UST

- Azariah...He
- of Judah
- whose father was
- the people
- became

ULT

²¹ All the people of Judah took Azariah, who was sixteen years old, and made him king in place of his father Amaziah.

UST

²¹ Then all [the people of Judah](#) appointed [Azariah, whose father was](#) Amaziah, to be their king. [He became](#) king when he was sixteen years.

2 Kings 14:22

It was Azariah who rebuilt Elath

Azariah did not do this alone. Alternate translation: “It was Azariah who ordered Elath to be rebuilt” or “It was Azariah who supervised the rebuilding of Elath” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Elath

a city in Judah (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

restored it to Judah

“returned it to Judah”

slept with his ancestors

This is a poetic way to say he died. (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judah](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)
- [return](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Judah](#)
- [Amaziah's father Amaziah](#)
- [the](#)
- [again](#)

ULT

²² It was Azariah who rebuilt Elath and restored it to Judah, after King Amaziah slept with his ancestors.

UST

²² After [Amaziah's father Amaziah](#) died, Azariah's army captured the city of Elath, and it came under [the](#) control of [Judah again](#).

2 Kings 14:23

General Information:

This describes what King Uzziah did after he became king.

In the fifteenth year of Amaziah

"In year 15 of Amaziah" (See: [Numbers](#))

forty-one years

"41 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- When Amaziah
- had been ruling
- of Israel
- Judah
- in the city of
- the king

ULT

²³ In the fifteenth year of Amaziah son of Joash king of Judah, Jeroboam son of Jehoash king of Israel began to reign in Samaria; he reigned forty-one years.

UST

²³ [When Amaziah had been ruling Judah](#) for almost fifteen years, Jeroboam became [the king of Israel](#). He ruled [in the city of](#) Samaria for forty-one years.

2 Kings 14:24

evil in the sight of Yahweh

Here “sight” is a metaphor for judging or considering. Alternate translation: “evil according to Yahweh” or “what Yahweh considered to be evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

He did not depart from any of the sins of Jeroboam

To stop sinning is spoken of as leaving a path. This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “He did not stop committing the same sins as Jeroboam” or “He continued to commit the same sins as Jeroboam” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- evil, wicked, unpleasant

Translation Words - UST

- had committed
- sins
- son of
- that Yahweh
- the Israelite people to sin also
- evil

ULT

24 He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh. He did not depart from any of the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat, who had caused Israel to sin.

UST

24 He did many things [that Yahweh](#) said were [evil](#). He did not stop committing the same kind of sins that Jeroboam [son of](#) Nebat, [had committed](#), [sins](#) that had induced [the Israelite people to sin also](#).

2 Kings 14:25

He restored the border

This means his army restored the land up to the border. Alternate translation: "His soldiers conquered again some of the territory that had previously belonged to Israel" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Lebo Hamath

This city was also called Hamath. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the Sea of the Arabah

"the Dead Sea"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- God
- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites (2)
- Arabah
- hand
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- son of Amittai
- promised the prophet Jonah
- the God
- Yahweh
- again
- that had previously belonged to Israel
- the God (2)
- to the Dead
- in the south
- in the south

ULT

²⁵ He restored the border of Israel from Lebo Hamath to the Sea of the Arabah, following the commands of the word of Yahweh, the God of Israel, which he had spoken through his servant Jonah son of Amittai, the prophet, who was from Gath Hopher.

UST

²⁵ Jeroboam's soldiers conquered [again](#) some of the territory [that had previously belonged to Israel](#), from the city of Hamath in the north [to the Dead Sea in the south](#). That is what [Yahweh, the God](#) whom the Israelites worshiped, [promised the prophet Jonah son of Amittai](#), from the city of Gath Hopher, would happen.

2 Kings 14:26

it was very bitter

Suffering that was difficult is spoken of as if it had a bitter taste.
Alternate translation: "it was very difficult" (See: [Metaphor](#))

there was no rescuer for Israel

"there was no one who could rescue Israel"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [forsake, forsaken, leave](#)
- [afflict, affliction, distress](#)
- [rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [the Israelites](#)
- [the Israelites](#)
- [And there was absolutely no one who would](#)
- [suffer](#)
- [to...very much](#)

ULT

²⁶ For Yahweh saw the suffering of Israel, that it was very bitter for everyone, both slave and free, and that there was no rescuer for Israel.

UST

²⁶ That happened because [Yahweh](#) saw that [the Israelites](#)' enemies were causing [the Israelites](#) to [suffer very much](#). [And there was absolutely no one who would](#) help them.

2 Kings 14:27

blot out

To completely destroy Israel is spoken of as if Yahweh wiped them away with a cloth. Alternate translation: “completely destroy” (See: [Metaphor](#))

the name of Israel

Here “the name of Israel” represents all of Israel and its inhabitants. Alternate translation: “the Israelite people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

under heaven

“on earth”

he saved them by the hand of Jeroboam son of Jehoash

Here “hand” is a metonym for power. Also, “Jehoash” is a synecdoche representing Jehoash and his army. Alternate translation: “he enabled King Jeroboam and his army to rescue them” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [name](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [hand](#)
- [deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to rescue them](#)
- [Jeroboam](#)
- [But Yahweh](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [to rescue them](#)
- [to rescue them](#)

ULT

²⁷ So Yahweh said that he would not blot out the name of Israel under heaven; instead, he saved them by the hand of Jeroboam son of Jehoash.

UST

²⁷ [But Yahweh](#) said that he would not destroy [Israel](#) completely, so he enabled King [Jeroboam to rescue them](#).

2 Kings 14:28

are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

This question is used to remind the reader that the acts of Jehoahaz are recorded in another book. See how this phrase is translated in [2 Kings 1:18](#). Alternate translation: “they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- restore, restoration
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Judah
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- to capture again the cities
- the Israelites
- of Israel
- about how he...Damascus and Hamath
- events of the Kings

ULT

²⁸ As for the other matters concerning Jeroboam, all that he did, his power, how he waged war and recovered Damascus and Hamath, which had belonged to Judah, for Israel, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

UST

²⁸ If you want to know more about everything else that Jeroboam did, [about how he](#) courageously fought in battle, and about how he enabled [the Israelites to capture again the cities](#) of [Damascus and Hamath](#), they are written in the book of the [events of the Kings of Israel](#).

2 Kings 14:29

Jeroboam slept with his ancestors, with the kings of Israel

This is a polite way to say that he died and was buried. Alternate translation: "Jeroboam died, and was buried where the other kings of Israel were buried" (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- reign, rule
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- were buried, and his son
- of Israel
- the other kings
- of Israel
- became the king

ULT

²⁹ Jeroboam slept with his ancestors, with the kings of Israel, and Zechariah his son became king in his place.

UST

²⁹ Jeroboam died, and was buried where [the other kings of Israel were buried, and his son](#) Zechariah [became the king](#).

2 Kings 15

2 Kings 15 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Israel's evil

Israel assassinated one king after another. The Assyrians began attacking Israel. (See: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [unpleasant](#))

2 Kings 15:1

In the twenty-seventh year of Jeroboam

It can be stated clearly that this is the twenty-seventh year of his reign. Alternate translation: "In year 27 of the reign of Jeroboam" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Numbers](#))

Azariah

This king is better known today by the name "Uzziah."

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel
- of Judah
- Israel
- king

ULT

¹ In the twenty-seventh year of Jeroboam king of Israel, Azariah son of Amaziah king of Judah began to reign.

UST

¹ After Jeroboam had been ruling [Israel](#) for almost twenty-seven years, Azariah, [son](#) of Amaziah [king of Judah](#), began to rule.

2 Kings 15:2

Jekoliah

This is the name of Azariah's mother. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Jerusalem
- Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- sixteen
- in Jerusalem
- She was from Jerusalem

ULT

² Azariah was sixteen years old when he began to reign, and he reigned for fifty-two years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Jekoliah, and she was from Jerusalem.

UST

² He was [sixteen](#) years old when he started to rule, and he ruled [in Jerusalem](#) for fifty-two years. His mother was Jecoliah. [She was from Jerusalem.](#)

2 Kings 15:3

He did what was right

"Azariah did what was right"

what was right in the eyes of Yahweh

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: "what was right in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be right" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh was pleased with](#)
- [as his father](#)

ULT

³ He did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh, just as his father Amaziah had done.

UST

³ He did things that [Yahweh was pleased with](#), [as his father](#) Amaziah had done.

2 Kings 15:4

the high places were not taken away

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “no one took away the high places” or “Azariah did not have anyone take the high places away” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

were not taken away

Being taken away represents being destroyed. Alternate translation: “were not destroyed” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [people](#), [people group](#),
- [sacrifice](#), [sacrifices](#), [offering](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [But...where the people](#)
- [as they worshiped their idols](#)

ULT

⁴ However, the high places were not taken away. The people still sacrificed and burned incense at the high places.

UST

⁴ [But](#) the high places [where the people](#) continued to practice idolatry were not destroyed. They continued to burn incense [as they worshiped their idols](#).

2 Kings 15:5

to the day of his death

The abstract noun “death” can be expressed with the verb “die.”
Alternate translation: “until the day he died” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Jotham, the king's son, was over the household

The word “household” refers to the people living in the king's palace. Because Azariah was a leper, he had to live in a separate house. So his son, Jotham, took charge over the palace.

was over the household

Being over the household represents having authority over those in it. Alternate translation: “was in charge of the household” or “had authority over those in Azariah's palace” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- temple
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly
- house

Translation Words - UST

- son...the
- Yahweh caused Azariah to become a leper
- palace. He...alone in a
- land
- that he lived
- in the
- land
- house, and

ULT

⁵ Yahweh afflicted the king so that he was a leper to the day of his death and lived in a separate house. Jotham, the king's son, was over the household and ruled the people of the land.

UST

⁵ [Yahweh caused Azariah to become a leper](#). Azariah was a leper all the remaining years [that he lived](#). He was not allowed to live [in the palace](#). [He lived alone in a house, and](#) his [son](#) Jotham ruled [the land](#).

2 Kings 15:6

are they not written...Judah?

This question is used to either inform or remind the readers that the information about Azariah is in this other book. This can also be stated in active form. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 8:23](#). Alternate translation: "they are written...Judah." or "you can read about them...Judah." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Judah](#)
- [events of the Kings](#)

ULT

⁶ As for the other matters concerning Azariah, all that he did, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

UST

⁶ If you want to know about everything else that Azariah did, it is written in the book of the [events of the Kings of Judah](#).

2 Kings 15:7

Azariah slept with his ancestors

Sleeping represents dying. Alternate translation: "Azariah died as his ancestors had" or "like his ancestors, Azariah died" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

they buried him with his ancestors

"his family buried him where his ancestors had been buried"

became king in his place

The phrase "in his place" is a metaphor meaning "instead of him." Alternate translation: "became king instead of Azariah" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [David](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then his son](#)
- [David](#)
- [Azariah died and](#)
- [ancestors had been buried](#)
- [the king](#)

ULT

⁷ So Azariah slept with his ancestors; they buried him with his ancestors in the city of David. Jotham, his son, became king in his place.

UST

⁷ [Azariah died and](#) they buried him in the part of Jerusalem called the city of [David](#), where his [ancestors had been buried](#). [Then his son](#) Jotham became [the king](#).

2 Kings 15:8

In the thirty-eighth year of Azariah king of Judah

It can be stated clearly that this is the thirty-eighth year of his reign.
Alternate translation: "In year 38 of the reign of Azariah king of Judah" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Numbers](#))

Zechariah son of Jeroboam

This Jeroboam was the second king of Israel that had that name. He was the son of King Jehoash.

reigned over Israel in Samaria for six months

Samaria is the city that Zechariah lived in when he was king of Israel.
Alternate translation: "lived in Samaria and reigned over Israel for six months"

ULT

⁸ In the thirty-eighth year of Azariah king of Judah, Zechariah son of Jeroboam reigned over Israel in Samaria for six months.

UST

⁸ After Azariah had been ruling [Judah](#) [for almost](#) thirty-eight years, Zechariah [son](#) of Jeroboam, became [the king of Israel](#). He ruled in the city of Samaria for only six months.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- of Israel
- Judah for almost
- the king

2 Kings 15:9

He did what was evil

"Zechariah did what was evil"

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

He did not depart from the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat

Departing from sins represents refusing to do those sins. Alternate translation: "Zechariah did not refuse to commit the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat" or "He sinned as Jeroboam son of Nebat had sinned" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Jeroboam son of Nebat

This Jeroboam was the first king of the ten northern tribes that made up the kingdom of Israel.

who had caused Israel to sin

Here the word "Israel" represents the people of the kingdom of Israel. Alternate translation: "who had caused the people of Israel to sin" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [evil](#), [wicked](#), [unpleasant](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sins](#)
- [the first Jeroboam](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the Israelite people to sin](#)
- [evil](#)
- [like his ancestors](#)

ULT

⁹ He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh, as his fathers had done. He did not depart from the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat, who had caused Israel to sin.

UST

⁹ He did many things that [Yahweh](#) said were [evil](#), [like his ancestors](#) had done. He committed the same kind of sins that [the first Jeroboam](#) had committed, [sins](#) that had induced [the Israelite people to sin](#).

2 Kings 15:10

Shallum...Jabesh

These are the names of two men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

against Zechariah

“against King Zechariah”

Ibleam

This was the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Then he became king in his place

“Then Shallum became king in Zechariah’s place”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- people, people group,
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- reign, rule

Translation Words - UST

- Then...son of
- in the city of Ibleam
- He killed
- the king

ULT

10 Shallum son of Jabesh conspired against Zechariah, attacked him in Ibleam, and killed him. Then he became king in his place.

UST

10 Then Shallum [son of](#) Jabesh, made plans to assassinate Zechariah. [He killed](#) him [in the city of Ibleam](#), and then he became [the king](#).

2 Kings 15:11

they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you can read about them in the book of the events of the kings of Israel” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- of Israel
- the events of the Kings

ULT

¹¹ As for the other matters concerning Zechariah, they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel.

UST

¹¹ Everything else that Zechariah did is written in the book of [the events of the Kings of Israel](#).

2 Kings 15:12

This was the word of Yahweh

It can be stated clearly that the events described in verse 10 fulfilled the word of Yahweh. Alternate translation: “What happened to Zechariah was according to the word of Yahweh” or “What happened to Zechariah fulfilled the word of Yahweh” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Your descendants will sit on the throne of Israel to the fourth generation

Sitting on the throne represents being the king. Alternate translation: “Your descendants will be the kings of Israel for four generations” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- throne, enthroned

Translation Words - UST

- son and grandson and great-grandson and great-great-grandson
- This fulfilled what Yahweh
- of Israel
- be kings

ULT

¹² This was the word of Yahweh that he spoke to Jehu, saying, “Your descendants will sit on the throne of Israel to the fourth generation.” That is what happened.

UST

¹² When Zechariah died, the dynasty of King Jehu was finished. [This fulfilled what Yahweh](#) said to King Jehu would happen, “Your [son and grandson and great-grandson and great-great-grandson](#) will all [be kings of Israel](#).”

2 Kings 15:13

in the thirty-ninth year of Azariah king of Judah

It can be stated clearly that this is the thirty-ninth year of his reign. Alternate translation: “in year 39 of the reign of Azariah king of Judah” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Numbers](#))

Shallum...Jabesh

These are the names of two men. See how you translated these names in [2 Kings 15:10](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

he reigned only one month in Samaria

Samaria is the city that he lived in when was king of Israel. Alternate translation: “Shallum lived in Samaria and reigned over Israel for only one month” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Judea
- reign, rule
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son of
- Judah for almost
- ruled
- after King Amaziah had been

ULT

13 Shallum son of Jabesh began to reign in the thirty-ninth year of Azariah king of Judah, and he reigned only one month in Samaria.

UST

13 Shallum [son of](#) Jabesh, became the king of Israel [after King Amaziah had been](#) ruling [Judah for almost](#) thirty-nine years. But Shallum [ruled](#) in Samaria for only one month.

2 Kings 15:14

Menahem...Gadi

These are the names of two men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

became king in his place

The phrase “in his place” is a metaphor meaning “instead of him.”
Alternate translation: “became king instead of Shallum” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son (2)
- Samaria, Samaritan
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- reign, rule

Translation Words - UST

- Then Menahem son of
- Shallum (2)
- Shallum
- and assassinated
- the king of Israel

ULT

14 Menahem son of Gadi went up from Tirzah to Samaria. There he attacked Shallum son of Jabesh, in Samaria. He killed him and became king in his place.

UST

14 [Then Menahem son of](#) Gadi, went up from the city of Tirzah to Samaria [and assassinated Shallum](#). Then Menahem became [the king of Israel](#).

2 Kings 15:15

the conspiracy that he formed

The abstract noun “conspiracy” can be translated with the verb “plan.” It can be stated clearly what this conspiracy was. Alternate translation: “how he planned to murder King Zechariah” or “and how he murdered King Zechariah” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you can read about them in the book of the events of the kings of Israel” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Israel](#)
- [the events of the Kings](#)

ULT

¹⁵ As for the other matters concerning Shallum and the conspiracy that he formed, they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel.

UST

¹⁵ Everything else that Shallum did, including his killing King Zechariah, is written in the book of [the events of the Kings of Israel](#).

2 Kings 15:16

Tiphsah

This is the name of a city. Some versions have "Tappuah," which is the name of another city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

16 Then Menahem attacked Tiphsah and all who were there, and the borders around Tirzah, because they did not open up the city to him. So he attacked it, and he ripped open all the pregnant women in that village. ^[1]

UST

16 At that time Menahem completely destroyed the city of Tiphsah and killed all the people who lived there and in the surrounding territory from Tirzah on. He did that because the people in the city refused to surrender to him. With his sword he even ripped open the bellies of pregnant women who lived there.

2 Kings 15:17

In the thirty-ninth year of Azariah king of Judah

It can be stated clearly that this is the thirty-ninth year of his reign. Alternate translation: "In year 39 of the reign of Azariah king of Judah" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son of
- of Israel
- Judah for almost
- became the king

ULT

17 In the thirty-ninth year of Azariah king of Judah, Menahem son of Gadi began to reign over Israel; he reigned ten years in Samaria.

UST

17 When King Azariah had been ruling [Judah for almost](#) thirty-nine years, Menahem [son of](#) Gadi, [became the king of Israel](#). He ruled in Samaria for ten years.

2 Kings 15:18

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

For his whole life

The abstract noun "life" can be translated with the verb "live."
Alternate translation: "The whole time that he lived" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

he did not depart from the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat

Departing from sins represents refusing to do those sins. Alternate translation: "Zechariah did not refuse to commit the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat" or "He sinned as Jeroboam son of Nebat had sinned" (See: [Metaphor](#))

who had caused Israel to sin

Here the word "Israel" represents the people of the kingdom of Israel. Alternate translation: "who had caused the people of Israel to sin" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [had committed](#)
- [He continued to commit those sins](#)
- [He committed the same kind of sins that King Jeroboam](#)
- [that Yahweh](#)
- [the people of Israel](#)
- [evil](#)

ULT

18 He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh. For his whole life, he did not depart from the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat, who had caused Israel to sin.

UST

18 He did many things [that Yahweh](#) said were [evil](#). [He committed the same kind of sins that King Jeroboam had committed](#), sins that induced [the people of Israel](#) to sin. [He continued to commit those sins](#) all during the years that he lived.

2 Kings 15:19

Pul the king of Assyria came against the land

The phrase “Pul the king of Assyria” represents Pul and his army. Alternate translation: “Pul the king of Assyria came with his army against the land” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Pul the king of Assyria

Pul is the name of a man who was king of Assyria. He was also named Tiglath-Pileser. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

came against the land

The phrase “came against” is an idiom meaning to attack. “The land” refers to the land of Israel and represents the people who live there. Alternate translation: “came with his army to attack the people of Israel” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#))

one thousand talents of silver

“1000 talents of silver.” You may convert this to a modern measure. Alternate translation: “thirty-three thousand kilograms of silver” or “thirty-three metric tons of silver” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Money](#))

so that Pul’s support might be with him

The abstract noun “support” can be translated with the verb “support.” Alternate translation: “so that Pul might support him” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

to strengthen the kingdom of Israel in his hand

Having the kingdom in his hand represents ruling the kingdom. Alternate translation: “to strengthen his rule over the kingdom of Israel” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [silver](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)
- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Assyria](#)
- [to be king and rule](#)
- [more strongly](#)
- [thirty-three metric tons of silver](#)
- [order that the king](#)
- [his country](#)

ULT

19 Then Pul the king of Assyria came against the land, and Menahem gave Pul one thousand talents of silver, so that Pul’s support might be with him to strengthen the kingdom of Israel in his hand.

UST

19 Then Pul (also known as Tiglath-Pileser) king of Assyria came with his army to attack Israel. So Menahem gave him about [thirty-three metric tons of silver](#) in [order that the king of Assyria](#) would help Menahem to continue [to be king and rule his country more strongly](#).

2 Kings 15:20

exacted this money from Israel

"took this money from Israel"

fifty shekels of silver

You may convert this to a modern measure. Alternate translation: "six hundred grams of silver" or "three-fifths of a kilogram of silver" (See: [Biblical Money](#))

did not stay there in the land

"did not stay there in Israel"

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- appoint, appointed
- Israel, Israelites
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire (2)
- might, mighty, mighty works
- silver
- silver
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- return

Translation Words - UST

- obtained
- took that money and went
- Israel
- the rich...compelled...contribute
- So Tiglath-Pileser (2)
- the rich...compelled...contribute
- that money from
- three-fifths of a kilogram of silver
- the rich...compelled...contribute
- So Tiglath-Pileser
- back

ULT

²⁰ Menahem exacted this money from Israel by requiring each of the wealthy men to pay fifty shekels of silver to him to give to the king of Assyria. So the king of Assyria turned back and did not stay there in the land.

UST

²⁰ Menahem [obtained that money from the rich](#) men in [Israel](#). He [compelled](#) each of them to [contribute three-fifths of a kilogram of silver](#). [So Tiglath-Pileser took that money and went back](#) home.

2 Kings 15:21

are they not written...Israel?

This question is used to either inform or remind the readers that the information about Menahem is in this other book. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 1:18](#). Alternate translation: “they are written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Israel.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Israel](#)
- [of the Kings](#)

ULT

²¹ As for the other matters concerning Menahem, and all that he did, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel?

UST

²¹ If you want to know more about everything that Menahem did, it is written in the book of the events [of the Kings of Israel](#).

2 Kings 15:22

Menahem slept with his ancestors

Sleeping represents dying. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 10:35](#). Alternate translation: “Menahem died as his ancestors had” or “like his ancestors, Menahem died” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

Pekahiah

This a man’s name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

became king in his place

The phrase “in his place” is a metaphor meaning “instead of him.” Alternate translation: “became king instead of Menahem” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and his son](#)
- [Menahem died and was buried](#)
- [the king of Israel](#)

ULT

²² So Menahem slept with his ancestors, and Pekahiah his son became king in his place.

UST

²² [Menahem died and was buried, and his son](#) Pekahiah became [the king of Israel](#).

2 Kings 15:23

In the fiftieth year of Azariah king of Judah

It can be stated clearly that this is the fiftieth year of his reign.
Alternate translation: "In year 50 of the reign of Azariah king of Judah" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Numbers](#))

Pekahiah

This is a man's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son
- of Israel
- Judah for almost
- the king

ULT

²³ In the fiftieth year of Azariah king of Judah, Pekahiah son of Menahem began to reign over Israel in Samaria; he reigned two years.

UST

²³ When King Azariah had been ruling [Judah for almost](#) fifty years, Menahem's [son](#) Pekahiah became [the king of Israel](#). He ruled in Samaria for only two years.

2 Kings 15:24

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

He did not leave behind the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat

Leaving behind sins represents refusing to do those sins. Alternate translation: "Pekahiah did not refuse to commit the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat" or "He sinned as Jeroboam son of Nebat had sinned" (See: [Metaphor](#))

he had caused Israel to sin

Here the word "Israel" represents the people of the kingdom of Israel. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [evil](#), [wicked](#), [unpleasant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [sins](#)
- [He committed the same kind of sins that King Jeroboam](#)
- [that Yahweh](#)
- [of Israel to sin](#)
- [evil](#)

ULT

²⁴ He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh. He did not leave behind the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat, by which he had caused Israel to sin.

UST

²⁴ He did many things [that Yahweh](#) said were [evil](#). [He committed the same kind of sins that King Jeroboam](#) had committed, [sins](#) that induced the people [of Israel to sin](#).

2 Kings 15:25

Pekah...Remaliah

These are men's names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

conspired against him

"secretly planned to kill Pekahiah"

fifty men

"50 men" (See: [Numbers](#))

Argob...Arieh

These are men's names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the citadel of the king's palace

"the fortified part of the king's palace" or "the safe place in the king's palace"

became king in his place

The phrase "in his place" is a metaphor meaning "instead of him." Alternate translation: "became king instead of Pekahiah" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
- [reign, rule](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son of](#)
- [Then Pekah](#)
- [the king](#)
- [the king](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [palace](#)

ULT

²⁵ Pekahiah had an officer named Pekah son of Remaliah, who conspired against him. Along with fifty men of Gilead, Pekah killed Pekahiah as well as Argob and Arieh in Samaria, in the citadel of the king's palace. Pekah killed Pekahiah and became king in his place.

UST

²⁵ Then one of Pekahiah's army commanders whose name was Pekah [son of](#) Remaliah, planned with fifty men, from the region of Gilead to kill Pekahiah and two of his assistants, Argob and Arieh. They assassinated the king in a fortified place in the king's [palace](#) in Samaria. [Then Pekah](#) became [the king](#).

2 Kings 15:26

they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you can read about them in the book of the events of the kings of Israel” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Israel](#)
- [of the events of the Kings](#)

ULT

²⁶ As for the other matters concerning Pekahiah, all that he did, they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel.

UST

²⁶ Everything else that Pekahiah did is written in the book [of the events of the Kings of Israel](#).

2 Kings 15:27

In the fifty-second year of Azariah king of Judah

It can be stated clearly that this is the fifty-second year of his reign. Alternate translation: "In year 52 of the reign of Azariah king of Judah" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son of Remaliah, became
- of Israel
- Judah for almost
- the king

ULT

²⁷ In the fifty-second year of Azariah king of Judah, Pekah son of Remaliah began to reign over Israel in Samaria; he reigned twenty years.

UST

²⁷ When King Azariah had been ruling [Judah for almost](#) fifty-two years, Pekah [son of Remaliah, became the king of Israel](#). He ruled in Samaria for twenty years.

2 Kings 15:28

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

He did not depart from the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat

Departing from sins represents refusing to do those sins. Alternate translation: "Zechariah did not refuse to commit the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat" or "He sinned as Jeroboam son of Nebat had sinned" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [had committed](#)
- [sins](#)
- [He committed the same kind of sins that King Jeroboam](#)
- [that Yahweh](#)
- [of Israel to sin](#)
- [evil](#)

ULT

²⁸ He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh. He did not depart from the sins of Jeroboam son of Nebat, who had caused Israel to sin.

UST

²⁸ He also did many things [that Yahweh](#) said were [evil](#). [He committed the same kind of sins that King Jeroboam had committed, sins](#) that induced the people [of Israel to sin](#).

2 Kings 15:29

In the days of Pekah king of Israel

It can be stated clearly that this refers to the time of Pekah's reign. Alternate translation: "In the days of the reign of Pekah king of Israel" or "During the time that Pekah was king of Israel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Tiglath-Pileser

In [2 Kings 15:19](#) this man was called "Pul." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Ijon...Abel Beth Maacah...Janoah...Kedesh...Hazor... Gilead...Galilee...Naphtali

These are the names of cities or regions. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

He carried away the people to Assyria

Here "He" refers to Tiglath-Pileser and represents him and his army. Carrying the people to Assyria represents forcing them to go to Assyria. Alternate translation: "He and his army forced the people to go to Assyria (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metaphor](#))

the people

It can be stated clearly which people these are. Alternate translation: "the people of those places" or "the people of Israel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Gilead, Gileadite
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- the Israelite people
- Gilead
- of Assyria
- and go to live in Assyria
- the king
- the king
- and the regions of

ULT

29 In the days of Pekah king of Israel, Tiglath-Pileser king of Assyria came and took Ijon, Abel Beth Maacah, Janoah, Kedesh, Hazor, Gilead, Galilee, and all the land of Naphtali. He carried away the people to Assyria.

UST

29 While Pekah was [the king](#), Tiglath-Pileser, [the king of Assyria](#), came with his army and captured the cities of Ijon, Abel of Beth Maacah, Janoah, Kedesh, Hazor, [and the regions of Gilead](#), Galilee, and Naphtali. His army forced [the Israelite people](#) to leave their country [and go to live in Assyria](#).

2 Kings 15:30

Hoshea...Elah

These are men's names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

a conspiracy

A conspiracy is a secret plan by a group to do harm to someone or something.

He attacked him and killed him

"Hoshea attacked Pekah and killed him"

became king in his place

The phrase "in his place" is a metaphor meaning "instead of him."

Alternate translation: "became king instead of Pekah" (See:

[Metaphor](#))

in the twentieth year of Jotham son of Uzziah

It can be stated clearly that this is the twentieth year of his reign. Alternate translation: "In year 20 of the reign of Jotham son of Uzziah" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [son](#) (3)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then...son of](#)
- [Pekah](#) (2)
- [son](#) (3)
- [kill](#)
- [the king of Israel](#)

ULT

³⁰ So Hoshea son of Elah formed a conspiracy against Pekah son of Remaliah. He attacked him and killed him. Then he became king in his place, in the twentieth year of Jotham son of Uzziah.

UST

³⁰ Then Hoshea [son of](#) Elah, planned to [kill Pekah](#). He assassinated him when Amaziah's [son](#) Jotham had been ruling Judah for almost twenty years. Then Hoshea became [the king of Israel](#).

2 Kings 15:31

they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you can read about them in the book of the events of the kings of Israel” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Israel](#)
- [of the events of the Kings](#)

ULT

³¹ As for the other matters concerning Pekah, all that he did, they are written in the book of the events of the kings of Israel.

UST

³¹ Everything else that Pekah did is written in the book [of the events of the Kings of Israel](#).

2 Kings 15:32

In the second year of Pekah son of Remaliah, king of Israel

It can be stated clearly that this is the second year of his reign.
Alternate translation: "In year 2 of the reign of Pekah son of Remaliah, king of Israel" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Numbers](#))

Jotham son of Azariah, king of Judah began to reign

"Jotham son of Azariah, king of Judah became king of Judah"

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son (2)
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- When Pekah had been ruling
- Azariah's son (2)
- Israel for almost
- Judah
- Israel for almost
- Azariah's son

ULT

³² In the second year of Pekah son of Remaliah, king of Israel, Jotham son of Azariah, king of Judah began to reign.

UST

³² [When Pekah had been ruling Israel for almost](#) two years, [Azariah's son](#) Jotham began to rule [Judah](#).

2 Kings 15:33

He was twenty-five years old...sixteen years

"He was 25 years old...16 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

Jerushah

This is a woman's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [twenty](#)
- [from Jerusalem](#)

ULT

³³ He was twenty-five years old when he began to reign; he reigned sixteen years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Jerushah; she was the daughter of Zadok.

UST

³³ He was [twenty](#)-five years old when he started to rule, and he ruled [from Jerusalem](#) for sixteen years. His mother was Jerusha, the daughter of Zadok.

2 Kings 15:34

what was right in the eyes of Yahweh

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: “what was right in Yahweh’s judgment” or “what Yahweh considers to be right” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh, as](#)
- [his father](#)

ULT

³⁴ Jotham did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh. He followed the example of all his father Azariah had done.

UST

³⁴ He did many things that pleased [Yahweh, as his father](#) Azariah had done.

2 Kings 15:35

the high places were not taken away

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “no one took away the high places” or “Jotham did not have anyone take the high places away” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

were not taken away

Being taken away represents being destroyed. Alternate translation: “were not destroyed” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Jotham built the upper gate

“Jotham built” represents Jotham making his workers build it. Alternate translation: “Jotham had his workers build the upper gate” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of the temple](#)
- [Yahweh, and the people](#)
- [there to honor Yahweh. Jotham's...the](#)
- [the people worshiped](#)
- [of the temple](#)

ULT

³⁵ However, the high places were not taken away. The people still sacrificed and burned incense at the high places. Jotham built the upper gate of the house of Yahweh.

UST

³⁵ But he did not destroy the places where [the people worshiped Yahweh,](#) [and the people](#) continued to burn incense [there to honor Yahweh.](#) [Jotham's](#) workers built [the](#) Upper Gate [of the temple.](#)

2 Kings 15:36

are they not written...Judah?

This question is used to either inform or remind the readers that the information about Jotham is in this other book. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 8:23](#). Alternate translation: “they are written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Judah.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Judah](#)
- [of the...of the Kings](#)

ULT

³⁶ As for the other matters concerning Jotham, and all that he did, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

UST

³⁶ If you want to know more about everything else that Jotham did, it is written in the book [of the](#) events [of the Kings of Judah](#).

2 Kings 15:37

In those days

This refers to a time period. What time period this refers to can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "During that time" or "While Jotham was king of Judah" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Rezin

This is a man's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Pekah...Remaliah

These are men's names. Pekah was the king of Israel. See how you translated them in [2 Kings 15:37](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- Judah
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Pekah
- that Jotham was the king that Yahweh
- Judah
- and King

ULT

³⁷ In those days Yahweh began to send against Judah Rezin the king of Aram, and Pekah son of Remaliah.

UST

³⁷ It was during the time [that Jotham was the king that Yahweh](#) sent King Rezin of Aram [and King Pekah](#) of Israel with their armies to attack [Judah](#).

2 Kings 15:38

Jotham slept with his ancestors

Sleeping represents dying. Alternate translation: "Jotham died as his ancestors had" or "Like his ancestors, Jotham died" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

became king in his place

The phrase "in his place" is a metaphor meaning "instead of him." Alternate translation: "became king instead of Jotham" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather (2)
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- reign, rule

Translation Words - UST

- his son
- of David. Then
- his ancestors had been
- buried (2)
- of David. Then
- the king of Judah

ULT

38 Jotham slept with his ancestors and was buried with his ancestors in the city of David, his ancestor. Then Ahaz, his son, became king in his place.

15:16 ^[1] Instead of *Tiphseh*, one ancient version and some modern versions read, *Tappuah*.

UST

38 Jotham died and was buried where [his ancestors had been buried](#) in the part of Jerusalem called the city [of David](#). [Then his son](#) Ahaz became [the king of Judah](#).

2 Kings 16

2 Kings 16 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Ahaz

Ahaz was a wicked king. Israel and Aram united to fight against him, so he paid the Assyrian king to attack Aram. Assyria defeated the people of Aram and took them into captivity. The people were to trust in Yahweh and not rely on military alliances with other Gentile nations. This showed a lack of trust in the power of Yahweh. (See: [evil](#), [wicked](#), [unpleasant](#) and [trust](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

2 Kings 16:1

In the seventeenth year of Pekah son of Remaliah

It can be stated clearly that this is the seventeenth year of his reign. Alternate translation: “In year 17 of the reign of Pekah son of Remaliah” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Numbers](#))

Pekah...Remaliah

These are men’s names. Pekah was the king of Israel. See how you translated them in [2 Kings 15:25](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son (2)
- Judea
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- When Pekah had been ruling Israel for almost
- son of (2)
- of Judah
- the king

ULT

¹ In the seventeenth year of Pekah son of Remaliah, Ahaz son of Jotham king of Judah, began to reign.

UST

¹ [When Pekah had been ruling Israel for almost](#) seventeen years, Ahaz [son of](#) Jotham, became [the king of Judah](#).

2 Kings 16:2

what was right in the eyes of Yahweh his God

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: “what was right in Yahweh’s judgment” or “what Yahweh his God considers to be right” (See: [Metaphor](#))

as David his ancestor had done

David had done what is right.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- Yahweh
- Jerusalem
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- was twenty
- his God, good things like his
- Yahweh
- from Jerusalem
- ancestor

ULT

² Ahaz was twenty years old when he began to reign, and he reigned sixteen years in Jerusalem. He did not do what was right in the eyes of Yahweh his God, as David his ancestor had done.

UST

² He [was twenty](#) years old when he became the king of Judah. He ruled [from Jerusalem](#) for sixteen years. He did not do things that pleased [Yahweh his God, good things like his ancestor](#) King David had done.

2 Kings 16:3

he walked in the way of the kings of Israel

Walking represents behavior and actions. Alternate translation: "King Ahaz acted the same way that the kings of Israel had acted" or "he did the things that the kings of Israel had done" (See: [Metaphor](#))

following the detestable practices of the nations

Here "following" represents doing what others do. Alternate translation: "copying the disgusting things that the other nations did, the nations" (See: [Metaphor](#))

the nations

The word "nations" represents the people of other nations. Here it refers to the people of the nations who had lived in that land. Alternate translation: "the people of other nations" (See: [Metonymy](#))

which Yahweh had driven out

"Drive out" means "force out." Alternate translation: "which Yahweh had forced to leave"

before the people of Israel

The people of those nations fled as the people of Israel moved into the land. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "before the people of Israel who moved into the land" or "as the people of Israel moved into the land" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [abomination, abominable](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [nation](#)
- [fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [That imitated the disgusting things](#)
- [son to be an](#)
- [as the Israelites were advancing through the land](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [of Israel had been](#)
- [as the Israelites were advancing through the land](#)
- [that the people who previously lived there had done](#)
- [offering to idols](#)
- [the kings](#)

ULT

³ Instead, he walked in the way of the kings of Israel; indeed, he made his son pass through the fire, following the detestable practices of the nations, which Yahweh had driven out before the people of Israel.

UST

³ Instead, he was as sinful as [the kings of Israel had been](#). He even sacrificed his [son to be an offering to idols](#). [That imitated the disgusting things that the people who previously lived there had done](#), people whom [Yahweh](#) had driven out [as the Israelites were advancing through the land](#).

2 Kings 16:4

the high places, on the hilltops, and under every green tree

These are places where the people of the other nations worshiped their false gods.

under every green tree

God wanted his people to offer sacrifices to him in Jerusalem. The word “every” here is an exaggeration to show how determined King Ahaz was to disobey God by offering sacrifices in many other places instead. Alternate translation: “under many green trees” or “under many green trees around the country” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

ULT

⁴ He offered sacrifices and burned incense at the high places, on the hilltops, and under every green tree.

UST

⁴ He offered sacrifices and burned incense to honor Yahweh at many different places, including on the tops of many hills and under many big trees, instead of in Jerusalem as Yahweh had commanded.

2 Kings 16:5

Rezin...Pekah...Remaliah

These are men's names. See how you translated them in [2 Kings 15:37](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

besieged Ahaz

Ahaz was in Jerusalem. Here "Ahaz" represents himself and the people who were in Jerusalem with him. Alternate translation: "surrounded the city with Ahaz in it" or "surrounded Ahaz and the others in the city with him" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#) (2)

Translation Words - UST

- [who was the son of](#)
- [of Israel\) also came along with his army, and together their armies came](#)
- [attack Jerusalem, but](#)
- [King Remaliah](#)
- [King](#) (2)

ULT

⁵ Then Rezin, king of Aram and Pekah son of Remaliah, king of Israel, came up to Jerusalem to attack. They besieged Ahaz, but they could not conquer him.

UST

⁵ Then King Rezin of Aram, came along with his army, and at that time Pekah ([who was the son of King Remaliah of Israel](#)) [also came along with his army, and together their armies came](#) up to [attack Jerusalem, but King](#) Ahaz led a fight to defend the city. The armies surrounded the city, but they could not conquer it.

2 Kings 16:6

recovered Elath for Aram

Here "Aram" represents the people who live there. Alternate translation: "took back control of the city of Elath for the people of Aram" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Elath

This is the name of a city. See how you translated it in [2 Kings 14:22](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

drove the men of Judah out of Elath

"forced the men of Judah to leave Elath"

to this day

This means to the time of the writing of this book.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jew, Jewish](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [drove out...Judah](#)
- [It was at that time](#)
- [the...who were](#)

ULT

⁶ At that time, Rezin king of Aram recovered Elath for Aram and drove the men of Judah out of Elath. Then the Arameans came to Elath where they have lived to this day.

UST

⁶ [It was at that time](#) that the army that was commanded by King Rezin of Aram [drove out](#) the people of [Judah who were](#) living in the city of Elath, and the city came under the control of the Arameans. This was the time when some people from Aram began to live in Elath, and they are still living there.

2 Kings 16:7

Tiglath-Pileser

In [2 Kings 15:19](#) this man was called “Pul.” See how you translated his name in [2 Kings 15:29](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

I am your servant and your son

Being a servant and a son represents submitting to someone’s authority. Alternate translation: “I will obey you as if I were your servant or your son” (See: [Metaphor](#))

from the hand of the king of Aram and from the hand of the king of Israel

The hand is a metonym that represents power. Alternate translation: “from the power of the king of Aram and from the power of the king of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

who have attacked me

The kings attacking Ahaz represent the armies of those kings attacking Ahaz and his people. Alternate translation: “who have attacked me with their armies” or “whose armies have attacked me” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- hand
- messenger
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship (2)
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- your son
- and Israel who...my country
- of Assyria
- King...of Aram
- messengers to
- rescue us from the armies
- King
- King...of Aram (2)
- Please come and
- I promise that I will completely do what you tell me

ULT

⁷ So Ahaz sent messengers to Tiglath-Pileser king of Assyria, saying, “I am your servant and your son. Come up and save me from the hand of the king of Aram and from the hand of the king of Israel, who have attacked me.”

UST

⁷ [King](#) Ahaz sent [messengers to King Tiglath-Pileser of Assyria](#), to tell this message to him: “[I promise that I will completely do what you tell me](#) to do, as though I were [your son](#). [Please come and rescue us from the armies of Aram and Israel who](#) are attacking [my country](#).”

2 Kings 16:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- silver
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- gold, golden
- house
- house (2)

Translation Words - UST

- and in the temple
- of Assyria
- the silver
- the
- for the king
- and gold
- and in the temple
- palace (2)

ULT

⁸ So Ahaz took the silver and gold that was found in the house of Yahweh and among the treasures of the king's palace and he sent it as a gift to the king of Assyria.

UST

⁸ Ahaz took [the silver and gold](#) that was in [the palace and in the temple](#) and sent it to Assyria to be a present [for the king of Assyria](#).

2 Kings 16:9

the king of Assyria went up against Damascus

The word “king” represents the king and his army. Also, Damascus represents the people who live there. Alternate translation: “the king of Assyria and his army attacked the people of Damascus” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Metonymy](#))

carried off its people as prisoners to Kir

Carrying off the people represents forcing them to go away. Alternate translation: “made the people his prisoners and forced them to go to Kir” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Kir

Possible meanings are 1) this is the name of a city or 2) this word means “city” and refers to the capital city of Assyria. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- So Tiglath-Pileser
- of Assyria
- So Tiglath-Pileser
- they...the people of Damascus

ULT

⁹ Then the king of Assyria listened to him, and the king of Assyria went up against Damascus, conquered it and carried off its people as prisoners to Kir. He also killed Rezin the king of Aram.

UST

⁹ [So Tiglath-Pileser](#) did what Ahaz requested. His army marched to Damascus and captured it, and [they](#) took [the people of Damascus](#) as prisoners to live in the capital city [of Assyria](#).

2 Kings 16:10

the design for all the workmanship needed

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “all the instructions that the workers needed in order to build it” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- altar
- priest, priesthood
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- the altar
- the altar
- high priest in Jerusalem...of the altar
- King
- When King
- King
- the

ULT

10 King Ahaz went to Damascus to meet Tiglath-Pileser king of Assyria. At Damascus he saw an altar. He sent to Uriah the priest a model of the altar and its pattern and the design for all the workmanship needed.

UST

10 [When King](#) Ahaz went to Damascus to meet [King](#) Tiglath-Pileser, he saw [the altar](#) that was there. So he sent to Uriah, [the high priest in Jerusalem](#), a drawing [of the altar](#) and a model that represented exactly [the altar](#) in Damascus.

2 Kings 16:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- priest, priesthood
- priest, priesthood
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- the altar
- So Uriah...an altar in Jerusalem
- Uriah finished
- following the drawing
- King Ahaz...before Ahaz returned to Jerusalem

ULT

11 So Uriah the priest built an altar to be just like the plans that King Ahaz had sent from Damascus. He finished it before King Ahaz arrived back from Damascus.

UST

11 So Uriah built an altar in Jerusalem following the drawing that King Ahaz had sent. Uriah finished the altar before Ahaz returned to Jerusalem from Damascus.

2 Kings 16:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- altar
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- king returned...he saw the altar
- king returned...he saw the altar
- When the
- king returned...he saw the altar
- king returned...he saw the altar

ULT

¹² When the king came from Damascus he saw the altar; the king approached the altar and made offerings on it.

UST

¹² When the king returned from Damascus, he saw the altar.

2 Kings 16:13

General Information:

This is what King Ahaz did after he returned from Damascus and visited the new altar which Uriah the priest had built for him.

He made his burnt offering

"King Ahaz made his burnt offering"

on the altar

This refers to the altar that King Ahaz told Uriah to build.

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- blood
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- grain offering

Translation Words - UST

- it
- promise friendship with God
- and burned animal
- offering on

ULT

13 He made his burnt offering and his grain offering, poured out his drink offering, and sprinkled the blood of his fellowship offerings on the altar.

UST

13 He went up to [it and burned animal](#) sacrifices and a flour offering on it. He also poured a wine [offering on](#) it and threw on it the blood of the offerings to [promise friendship with God](#).

2 Kings 16:14

from the front of the temple...from between his altar and the temple of Yahweh

Both of these phrases tell where the bronze altar was. They refer to the same place.

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- altar
- altar
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- face, facial
- bronze
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- The old bronze altar that had been
- it
- altar
- dedicated
- Yahweh
- dedicated
- The old bronze altar that had been
- the temple, so Ahaz moved
- to the

ULT

¹⁴ The bronze altar that was before Yahweh—he brought it from the front of the temple, from between his altar and the temple of Yahweh and put it on the north side of his altar.

UST

¹⁴ The old bronze altar that had been dedicated long ago to Yahweh was between the new altar and the temple, so Ahaz moved it to the north side of his new altar.

2 Kings 16:15

the large altar

This refers to the new altar that Ahaz told Uriah to build.

the king's burnt offering and his grain offering

When Ahaz said "the king" and "his," he was referring to himself. The king treated his offerings as special. Alternate translation: "my burnt offering and my grain offering" or "the royal burnt offering and royal grain offering" (See: [First](#), [Second](#) or [Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- command, commandment
- blood
- blood
- priest, priesthood
- drink offering
- people, people group,
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- bronze
- earth, earthen, earthly
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- burnt offering, offering by fire
- grain offering
- grain offering
- grain offering

Translation Words - UST

- it the flour offering, along with my offering
- command, commandment
- wine
- the blood of
- priests
- wine
- and the people's
- grain and...offerings
- Then King
- ones that they will burn completely, and my flour offering
- But the old bronze altar will
- and the people's
- Each morning
- ones that they will burn completely, and my flour offering
- the animals that are sacrificed
- will burn

ULT

¹⁵ Then King Ahaz commanded Uriah the priest, saying, "On the large altar burn the morning burnt offering and the evening grain offering, and the king's burnt offering and his grain offering, with the burnt offering of all the people of the land, and their grain offering and their drink offerings. Sprinkle on it all the blood of the burnt offering, and all the blood of the sacrifice. But the bronze altar will be for me to consult for guidance."

UST

¹⁵ [Then King](#) Ahaz ordered Uriah: "[Each morning](#) put on this new altar the sacrifices that the [priests will burn](#) completely, and in the evening put on [it the flour offering, along with my offering and the offerings that the people bring, ones that they will burn completely, and my flour offering and the people's grain and wine offerings](#). Pour against the sides of the altar [the blood of](#) all [the animals that are sacrificed](#). [But the old bronze altar will](#) be only for me to use for divination."

- and the offerings that the people bring
- ones that they will burn completely, and my flour offering
- and the people's

2 Kings 16:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [priest](#), [priesthood](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [commanded](#)
- [him to do](#)
- [the king](#)

ULT

16 Uriah the priest did just what King Ahaz commanded.

UST

16 So Uriah did what [the king](#) [commanded him to do](#).

2 Kings 16:17

the portable stands

“the movable stands” or “the carts.” These stands had wheels on them so they could be moved around.

he also took down the sea

“he also removed the large bowl.” The “sea” was a huge basin or water bowl that was made of bronze.

Translation Words - ULT

- king, kingdom, kingship
- bronze

Translation Words - UST

- King...told...that were outside the temple
- and removed it from the backs of the bronze statues

ULT

17 Then King Ahaz removed the panels and the basins from the portable stands; he also took down the sea from off the bronze oxen that were under it and put it on a stone pavement.

UST

17 [King](#) Ahaz [told](#) his workers to take off the frames of the carts [that were outside the temple](#) and to take down the basins that were on them. They also took down the large bronze tank called “The Sea” [and removed it from the backs of the bronze statues](#) of the oxen and put it on a stone foundation.

2 Kings 16:18

because of the king of Assyria

Why they did this can be stated explicitly. Alternate translation: "to please the king of Assyria" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Sabbath
- temple
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

Translation Words - UST

- and closed up the private entrance into the temple
- the Sabbath day
- the temple
- the kings
- Then to please the king...of Judah
- the kings
- and closed up the private entrance into the temple

ULT

18 He removed the covered walkway for the Sabbath that they had built at the temple, along with the king's entry outside the temple of Yahweh, because of the king of Assyria.

UST

18 [Then to please the king](#) of Assyria, Ahaz had them remove from [the temple](#) the roof under which the people walked into the temple on [the Sabbath day](#), and [closed up the private entrance into the temple](#) for [the kings of Judah](#).

2 Kings 16:19

are they not written...Judah?

This question is used to either inform or remind the readers that the information about Ahaz is in this other book. This can also be stated in active form. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 8:23](#). Alternate translation: “they are written in The Book of the Events of the Kings of Judah.” or “someone has written about them in The Book...Judah.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Judah](#)
- [of the...of the Kings](#)

ULT

¹⁹ As for the other matters concerning Ahaz and what he did, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

UST

¹⁹ If you want to know about the other things that Ahaz did, they are written in the book [of the](#) events [of the Kings of Judah](#).

2 Kings 16:20

Ahaz slept with his ancestors

Sleeping represents dying. Alternate translation: "Ahaz died as his ancestors had" or "like his ancestors, Ahaz died" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Euphemism](#))

was buried with his ancestors

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people buried him with his ancestors" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

became king in his place

The phrase "in his place" is a metaphor meaning "instead of him." Alternate translation: "became king instead of Ahaz" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [David](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then his son](#)
- [David](#)
- [ancestors](#)
- [he was buried...his...had been buried](#)
- [the king](#)

ULT

²⁰ Ahaz slept with his ancestors and was buried with his ancestors in the city of David. Hezekiah his son became king in his place.

UST

²⁰ Ahaz died, and [he was buried](#) in the part of Jerusalem called the city of [David](#), where [his ancestors had been buried](#). [Then his son](#) Hezekiah became [the king](#).

2 Kings 17

2 Kings 17 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter ends the story about the kingdom of Israel and continues with Judah alone.

Special concepts in this chapter

Idol worship

Israel continued to worship idols, so God punished them by allowing Assyria to conquer them and take them away. Assyria brought people from other lands and settled them in what used to be Israel's territory and the new people worshiped their own gods in addition to Yahweh. (See: [god](#), [false god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolater](#), [idolatrous](#), [idolatry](#))

2 Kings 17:1

Hoshea son of Elah

Hoshea became the king of the northern kingdom of Israel.

Elah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

He ruled in Samaria

Samaria was the capital city of Israel. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- son Hoshea began
- Israel
- Judah
- after King

ULT

¹ In the twelfth year of Ahaz king of Judah, the reign of Hoshea son of Elah began. He ruled in Samaria over Israel for nine years.

UST

¹ Elah's [son Hoshea began](#) to rule [Israel](#) [after King](#) Ahaz had ruled [Judah](#) for twelve years. Hoshea ruled in Samaria for nine years.

2 Kings 17:2

evil in the sight of Yahweh

He did not obey Yahweh's laws as given to Moses. "In the sight of" is metaphor for judgment or opinion. Alternate translation: "evil to Yahweh" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [that Yahweh](#)
- [of Israel had done](#)
- [evil](#)

ULT

² He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh, yet not as the kings of Israel who were before him.

UST

² He did many things [that Yahweh](#) said were [evil](#), but he did not do as many evil things as the previous kings [of Israel had done](#)—the ones who had ruled Israel previously.

2 Kings 17:3

Shalmaneser

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Hoshea became his servant and brought him tribute

Hoshea did as the King of Assyria commanded and brought money to him so that the King would not destroy Israel.

Translation Words - ULT

- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- king, kingdom, kingship
- return
- grain offering
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- The army of King...of Assyria
- the army of
- pay much
- tribute
- were forced

ULT

³ Shalmaneser king of Assyria attacked him, and Hoshea became his servant and brought him tribute.

UST

³ [The army of King](#) Shalmaneser [of Assyria](#) attacked and defeated [the army of](#) King Hoshea. As a result, the Israelites [were forced](#) to [pay much tribute](#) to Assyria each year.

2 Kings 17:4

So

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

year by year

"every year"

shut him up and bound him in prison

"put Hoshea in prison"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Egypt](#), [Egyptian](#)
- [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#)
- [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#)
- [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#) (2)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)
- [grain offering](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Egypt](#)
- [of Assyria](#)
- [of Assyria found out about those things](#)
- [Assyria](#)
- [messengers](#)
- [against the rulers](#)
- [king of](#) (2)
- [the Israelites...Assyria. Hoshea also...the](#)
- [he had been paying...every year. But the king](#)
- [tribute](#)
- [so he told his officers...Hoshea in prison](#)

ULT

⁴ Then the king of Assyria realized that Hoshea had been plotting against him, for Hoshea had sent messengers to So king of Egypt; also, he offered no tribute to the king of Assyria, as he had done year by year. So the king of Assyria shut him up and bound him in prison.

UST

⁴ But several years later, Hoshea secretly planned to rebel [against the rulers of Assyria](#). He sent [messengers](#) to So, [king of Egypt](#), asking if his army could help [the Israelites](#) fight against [Assyria](#). [Hoshea also](#) stopped paying [the tribute](#) that [he had been paying Assyria every year](#). But the king of [Assyria found out about those things](#), so he told his officers to put [Hoshea in prison](#).

2 Kings 17:5

besieged it

put troops around the city in order to force it to surrender

Translation Words - ULT

- Samaria, Samaritan
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- His army...the city of Samaria
- of Assyria
- Then he...the army
- land

ULT

⁵ Then the king of Assyria attacked throughout all the land, and attacked Samaria and besieged it for three years.

UST

⁵ [Then he](#) brought [the army of Assyria](#) to Israel, and they attacked everywhere in that [land](#). [His army](#) besieged [the city of Samaria](#) for three years.

2 Kings 17:6

carried Israel away to Assyria

The name "Israel" is metonymy for the people living there. Alternate translation: "took the Israelite people to Assyria" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Halah...Habor River...Gozan

These are the names of locations. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Medes

This is the name of a people group. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Samaria, Samaritan
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- They took the Israelite people
- the city and...the people
- the army of Assyria forcefully entered
- to Assyria
- Finally, after King

ULT

⁶ In the ninth year of Hoshea, the king of Assyria took Samaria and carried Israel away to Assyria. He put them in Halah, at the Habor River of Gozan, and in the cities of the Medes.

UST

⁶ [Finally, after King](#) Hoshea had been ruling Israel for nine years, [the army of Assyria forcefully entered the city and](#) captured [the people](#). [They took the Israelite people to Assyria](#) and forced some of them to live in the city of Halah. They forced others to live near the Habor River in the district of Gozan. They forced others to live in the towns where the Mede people group lived.

2 Kings 17:7

General Information:

The narrative pauses to summarize Yahweh's judgment on Israel.

This captivity

This refers to the capture of the Israelites by the Assyrians.

the hand of

"Hand" is metonymy for control, authority or power. Alternate translation: "the control of" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- son
- God
- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- hand
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- worship
- sinned
- the Israelite people had
- their God
- other gods
- Yahweh
- the Israelite people had
- Egypt
- of...but later they
- power of the
- king of...Egypt

ULT

⁷ This captivity happened because the people of Israel had sinned against Yahweh their God, who had brought them up from the land of Egypt, from under the hand of Pharaoh king of Egypt. The people had been worshiping other gods

UST

⁷ Those things happened because [the Israelite people had sinned](#) against [Yahweh their God](#). He had rescued their ancestors from the [power of the king of Egypt](#) and brought them safely out of [Egypt](#), [but later they](#) began to [worship other gods](#).

2 Kings 17:8

walking in the practices

“Walking” is metaphor for the ways or patterns of behavior people use in their lives. Alternate translation: “doing the activities” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [nation](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The people of Israel also](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [The people of Israel also](#)
- [of Israel...them](#)
- [the pagan peoples around them practiced](#)

ULT

⁸ and walking in the practices of the nations whom Yahweh had driven out before the people of Israel, and in the practices of the kings of Israel that they had done.

UST

⁸ They imitated the things that [the pagan peoples around them practiced](#). Those were the very peoples that [Yahweh](#) had driven out as the Israelites occupied their land. [The people of Israel also](#) did the evil things that most of the kings [of Israel](#) showed [them](#).

2 Kings 17:9

General Information:

The narrative continues to summarize Yahweh's judgment on Israel.

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites

Translation Words - UST

- The Israelite people also...many things
- their God
- Yahweh
- The Israelite people also...many things

ULT

⁹ The people of Israel did secretly—against Yahweh their God—things that were not right. They built for themselves high places in all their cities, from the watchtower to the fortress.

UST

⁹ The Israelite people also secretly did many things that were not pleasing to Yahweh their God. They built places to worship their idols on the hills around all their cities, including small towns and big cities with walls around them.

2 Kings 17:10

on every high hill and under every green tree

These are exaggerations to show that worship of false gods was widespread. Alternate translation: “on high hills and under green trees everywhere” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

ULT

¹⁰ They also set up stone pillars and Asherah poles on every high hill and under every green tree.

UST

¹⁰ They set up stone pillars to honor gods, and poles to worship the goddess Asherah at the top of every high hill and under every big tree.

2 Kings 17:11

General Information:

The narrative continues to summarize Yahweh's judgment on Israel.

performed wicked things to provoke Yahweh to anger

Possible ways to render this: 1) "did many wicked things that caused Yahweh to become angry" or 2) "did many sinful things that made Yahweh angry"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [exile, exiled](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the groups that Yahweh had...from the land](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [wicked](#)
- [driven out](#)

ULT

11 There they burned incense in all the high places, as the nations had done, those whom Yahweh had carried away before them. The Israelites performed wicked things to provoke Yahweh to anger;

UST

11 The Israelites burned incense in every place where they worshiped those gods, just like the peoples who lived there previously had done—[the groups that Yahweh had driven out from the land](#). The Israelites did many [wicked](#) things that caused [Yahweh](#) to become angry.

2 Kings 17:12

about which Yahweh had said to them

“about which Yahweh had warned them”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

¹² they worshiped idols, about which Yahweh had said to them, “You will not do this thing.”

UST

¹² [Yahweh](#) warned them many times that they should not worship idols, but they did it anyway.

2 Kings 17:13

General Information:

The narrative continues to summarize Yahweh's judgment on Israel.

Yahweh had testified...by every prophet

Yahweh spoke through the prophets.

Turn from your evil ways

"Stop doing the evil things you have been doing"

I sent to you by my servants the prophets

The prophets were sent by Yahweh to remind the people of God's Laws and to obey them.

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- command, commandment
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- Israel, Israelites
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- hand
- hand
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- my commands
- obey...to
- prophets...to warn the people
- prophets
- the laws
- again
- Yahweh
- to you
- of Israel and the people
- evil things
- that I told your ancestors
- Stop doing all the
- served me
- served me

ULT

¹³ Yet Yahweh had testified to Israel and to Judah by every prophet and every seer, saying, "Turn from your evil ways and keep my commandments and my statutes, and be careful to keep all the law I commanded your fathers, and that I sent to you by my servants the prophets."

UST

¹³ Yahweh frequently sent his [prophets](#) and seers [to warn the people of Israel and the people](#) of Judah. The message that Yahweh gave them was, "[Stop doing all the evil things](#) you have been doing. Obey [my commands](#) and my laws, [the laws that I told your ancestors](#) to [obey](#) and that I told the [prophets](#) who [served me to](#) tell [to you again](#)."

2 Kings 17:14

General Information:

The summary of Yahweh's judgment on Israel continues.

they were very stubborn

They were unwilling to follow God's laws and rely on Yahweh as their God.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- their God
- Yahweh
- pay attention
- just as their ancestors

ULT

14 But they would not listen; instead they were very stubborn like their fathers who did not trust in Yahweh their God.

UST

14 But the Israelite people would not [pay attention](#). They were stubborn, [just as their ancestors](#) were. Just as their ancestors did, they refused to trust in [Yahweh their God](#).

2 Kings 17:15

rejected his statutes

They refused to obey God's Laws.

They followed useless practices

They followed the practices of the people around them.

not to imitate

"not to copy"

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- covenant
- Yahweh
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- cut off
- nation
- statute

Translation Words - UST

- commanded them
- not to imitate...they disobeyed
- They...Yahweh's
- They worshiped worthless idols and as a result...Although Yahweh
- ancestors. They ignored Yahweh's warnings
- and the covenant
- the peoples that lived near them
- laws

ULT

¹⁵ They rejected his statutes and the covenant that he had made with their ancestors, and the covenant decrees that he had given to them. They followed useless practices and they themselves became useless. They followed the pagan nations who were around them, those that Yahweh had commanded them not to imitate.

UST

¹⁵ They rejected Yahweh's laws and the covenant that he had made with their ancestors. They ignored Yahweh's warnings. They worshiped worthless idols and as a result they themselves became worthless. Although Yahweh had commanded them not to imitate the behavior of the peoples that lived near them, they disobeyed that command.

2 Kings 17:16

General Information:

The summary of Yahweh's judgment on Israel continues.

cast metal figures

Cast metal figures are objects made by pouring melted metal into a form (or mold) to make a shape.

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [command, commandment](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [prostrate, worship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and the sun, the moon, and the stars](#)
- [commands](#)
- [god](#)
- [of Yahweh's](#)
- [and they worshiped](#)

ULT

16 They ignored all the commandments of Yahweh their God. They made cast metal figures of two calves to worship. They made an Asherah pole, and they worshiped all the stars of the heavens and Baal.

UST

16 The Israelite people disobeyed all [of Yahweh's commands](#). They made two metal calves to worship. They set up two poles to worship the goddess Asherah, [and they worshiped](#) the [god Baal](#), [and the sun, the moon, and the stars](#).

2 Kings 17:17

used...enchancements

used magic to say what would happen in the future

sold themselves to do that which was evil in the sight of Yahweh

To “sell themselves” is a metaphor for committing completely to do that which was evil. Alternate translation: “committed themselves to do things that Yahweh said were evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Translation Words - UST

- their own sons
- Yahweh to become angry
- all kinds of evil things that caused
- They went to
- They also burned

ULT

17 They made their sons and daughters pass through the fire, they used divination and enchantments, they sold themselves to do that which was evil in the sight of Yahweh, and they provoked him to anger.

UST

17 [They also burned their own sons](#) and daughters to be sacrifices to those gods. [They went to](#) fortune tellers and they practiced sorcery. They continually chose to do [all kinds of evil things that caused Yahweh to become angry](#).

2 Kings 17:18

removed them out of his sight

“Sight” is metonymy for being within the attention of Yahweh so he no longer cared for them. Alternate translation: “removed them from his attention” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- face, facial
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Translation Words - UST

- So because Yahweh was very angry
- with the Israelite people...from their country
- of Judah
- he allowed their enemies
- the tribe

ULT

18 Therefore Yahweh was very angry with Israel and removed them out of his sight. There was no one left but the tribe of Judah alone.

UST

18 [So because Yahweh was very angry with the Israelite people, he allowed their enemies](#) to take them away [from their country](#). Only the people of [the tribe of Judah](#) were left in the land.

2 Kings 17:19

General Information:

The summary of Yahweh's judgment on Israel includes how Judah also fell into idolatry.

Judah

The location "Judah" is metonymy for the people that live there.

Alternate translation: "the people of Judah" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the commands](#)
- [their God](#)
- [of Yahweh](#)
- [the Israelites](#)
- [But even the people of Judah](#)
- [obey](#)

ULT

19 Even Judah did not keep the commandments of Yahweh their God, and they followed the practices that Israel had done.

UST

19 [But even the people of Judah](#) did not [obey the commands of Yahweh their God](#). They imitated the evil customs that [the Israelites](#) had introduced.

2 Kings 17:20

he afflicted them

“Yahweh punished the Israelites”

gave them into the hand of those who would take the possession as spoil

“Hand” is metonymy for control, power or authority. Alternate translation: “handed them over to those who robbed them of their property” (See: [Metonymy](#))

until he had cast them out of his sight

“his sight” is metaphor for attention and caring. Alternate translation: “until he got rid of them all” or “until they were no longer in his presence” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- hand
- seed, semen

Translation Words - UST

- So Yahweh rejected
- of Israel
- the armies of other nations
- the people...and of Judah

ULT

²⁰ So Yahweh rejected all the descendants of Israel; he afflicted them and gave them into the hand of those who would take the possession as spoil, until he had cast them out of his sight.

UST

²⁰ [So Yahweh rejected](#) all [the people of Israel and of Judah](#). He punished them by allowing [the armies of other nations](#) to defeat them and take them away. He got rid of all of them.

2 Kings 17:21

General Information:

The reason for Yahweh's judgment on Israel continues by relating the history behind it.

He tore Israel

"He tore" here is a metaphor for violent removal. Alternate translation: "Yahweh removed the people of Israel" (See: [Metaphor](#))

from the royal line of David

"from the rule of David's descendants"

drove Israel away from following Yahweh

"turned the people of Israel away from following Yahweh"

Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- David
- reign, rule
- house

Translation Words - UST

- sins
- son of
- to stop worshiping Yahweh and
- Earlier, when Yahweh...the ten tribes of Israel
- of Israel
- away from...of David's descendants
- the rule
- away from...of David's descendants

ULT

²¹ He tore Israel from the royal line of David, and they made Jeroboam son of Nebat king. Jeroboam drove Israel away from following Yahweh and made them commit a great sin.

UST

²¹ [Earlier, when Yahweh](#) had forced [the ten tribes of Israel away from the rule of David's descendants](#), those tribes had chosen Jeroboam [son of](#) Nebat, to be their king. Then Jeroboam enticed the people [of Israel to stop worshiping Yahweh and](#) to worship idols instead. He induced them to commit great [sins](#).

2 Kings 17:22

they did not depart from them

“the Israelites did not stop committing these sins” or “they did not turn away from those sins”

Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- son
- Israel, Israelites

Translation Words - UST

- evil things...introduced
- And the Israelite
- And the Israelite

ULT

²² The people of Israel followed all the sins of Jeroboam and they did not depart from them,

UST

²² [And the Israelite](#) people continued to do the [evil things](#) that Jeroboam [introduced](#). They did not turn away from those sins,

2 Kings 17:23

so Yahweh removed Israel from his sight

“Sight” here is a metaphor for attention and care. Alternate translation: “so Yahweh removed the people of Israel from his attention and care” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelites
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- hand
- face, facial
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- prophets had warned...taken away
- Yahweh
- The Israelite
- people
- of Assyria
- prophets had warned...taken away
- would happen
- prophets had warned...taken away

ULT

²³ so Yahweh removed Israel from his sight, as he had said through all his servants the prophets that he would. So Israel was carried away out of their own land to Assyria, and it is this way to this present day.

UST

²³ so finally [Yahweh](#) got rid of them. That was just what his [prophets had warned would happen](#). [The Israelite people](#) were [taken away](#) to the land [of Assyria](#), and they are still there.

2 Kings 17:24

General Information:

Yahweh's judgment continues against the new Assyrian inhabitants who practice their pagan religions.

Kuthah...Avva...Hamath...Sepharvaim

These are places in the Assyrian empire. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- Samaria, Samaritan
- Samaria, Samaritan
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- who lived there previously
- the Israelites
- the Israelites
- the cities of Babylon
- to the region of Samaria, and
- Those people took control over Samaria and
- Assyria
- The king of

ULT

²⁴ The king of Assyria brought people from Babylon and from Kuthah, and from Avva, and from Hamath and Sepharvaim, and placed them in the cities of Samaria in place of the people of Israel. They took over Samaria and lived in its cities.

UST

²⁴ [The king of Assyria](#) ordered his soldiers to take groups of people from [the cities of Babylon](#), Kuthah, Avva, Hamath, and Sepharvaim [to the region of Samaria, and](#) to resettle them in the cities there, to take the place of [the Israelites who lived there previously](#). [Those people took control over Samaria and](#) lived in the cities of Samaria.

2 Kings 17:25

It happened at the beginning of their residence there that

“When those people first lived there”

Translation Words - ULT

- [fear, afraid, dread](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [worship](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [So Yahweh](#)
- [kill](#)

ULT

²⁵ It happened at the beginning of their residence there that they did not honor Yahweh. So Yahweh sent lions among them which killed some of them.

UST

²⁵ But those people who came from other countries did not [worship Yahweh](#) when they first arrived in Samaria. [So Yahweh](#) sent lions to [kill](#) some of them.

2 Kings 17:26

The nations that you have carried away and placed in the cities of Samaria

"The people you have moved from other lands and sent to live in the cities of Samaria"

do not know the practices required by the god of the land

"do not know how to worship the God that the Israelites worshiped in this land"

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- judge, judgment
- judge, judgment (2)
- Samaria, Samaritan
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- nation
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- exile, exiled
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- the God
- because we have not worshiped him correctly
- know
- because we have not worshiped him correctly (2)
- in...of Samaria
- of Assyria
- We people
- the king
- the Israelites worshiped in this land
- because we have not worshiped him correctly
- resettled...the towns
- know
- because we have not worshiped him correctly

ULT

²⁶ So they spoke to the king of Assyria, saying, "The nations that you have carried away and placed in the cities of Samaria do not know the practices required by the god of the land. So he has sent lions among them, and, see, the lions are killing people there because they do not know the practices required by the god of the land."

UST

²⁶ Then those people sent a message to the king of Assyria. They wrote, "We people who have resettled in the towns of Samaria do not know how to worship the God that the Israelites worshiped in this land. So he has sent lions among us to kill us, because we have not worshiped him correctly."

2 Kings 17:27

Take one of the priests there whom you brought from there

"Take a priest who came from Samaria back there"

let him teach them

"let the Samaritan priest teach the people who are living there now"

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- God
- judge, judgment
- priest, priesthood
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked
- earth, earthen, earthly
- exile, exiled

Translation Words - UST

- commanded
- how to worship...the God whom the Israelites worshiped
- correctly
- priests
- Assyria read this letter
- When the king of
- he
- land
- who are now living

ULT

²⁷ Then the king of Assyria commanded, saying, "Take one of the priests there whom you brought from there, and let him go and live there, and let him teach them the practices required by the god of the land."

UST

²⁷ When the king of Assyria read this letter, he commanded his officers, "Send one of the priests whom you brought here from Samaria to go back there. Tell him to teach the people who are now living there how to worship correctly the God whom the Israelites worshiped in that land."

2 Kings 17:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- exile, exiled

Translation Words - UST

- how to worship
- Yahweh
- the Israelite priests
- the people there

ULT

²⁸ So one of the priests whom they had carried away from Samaria came and lived in Bethel; he taught them how they should honor Yahweh.

UST

²⁸ So the officers did that. They sent one of [the Israelite priests](#) back to Samaria. That priest went to live in the city of Bethel, and he taught [the people there how to worship Yahweh](#).

2 Kings 17:29

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- temple
- nation
- nation
- nation (2)
- nation

Translation Words - UST

- They took their idols
- and...in the houses
- But all those people continued to make their own idols
- But all those people continued to make their own idols
- Each group of people (2)
- Each group of people

ULT

²⁹ Every ethnic group made gods of their own, and put them in the high places that the Samaritans had made—every ethnic group in the cities where they lived.

UST

²⁹ But all those people continued to make their own idols. They took their idols and placed them in the houses that the Samaritan people had built upon the hills all around. Each group of people made their own gods that they worshiped, and each of the gods had a name.

2 Kings 17:30

Succoth Benoth...Nergal...Ashima

These are the names of gods, both male and female. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Kuthah...Hamath

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [from Babylon](#)

ULT

³⁰ The people of Babylon made Succoth Benoth; the people of Kuthah made Nergal; the people of Hamath made Ashima;

UST

³⁰ The people [from Babylon](#) made idols to represent their god Succoth Benoth. The people from Kuthah made idols to represent their god Nergal. The people from Hamath made idols to represent their god Ashima.

2 Kings 17:31

Nibhaz...Tartak

These are the names of gods, both male and female. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Avvites...Sepharvites

These are the names of people groups. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

burned their children in the fire

“sacrificed their own children” or “burned their children in fire as an offering”

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Translation Words - UST

- sacrificed their own children. They completely burned them on altars to be offerings
- God
- sacrificed their own children. They completely burned them on altars to be offerings

ULT

³¹ the Avvites made Nibhaz and Tartak. The Sepharvites burned their children in the fire to Adrammelek and Anammelek, the gods of the Sepharvites.

UST

³¹ The people from Avva made idols to represent their gods Nibhaz and Tartak. The people from Sepharvaim [sacrificed their own children. They completely burned them on altars to be offerings](#) to their gods Adrammelek and Anammelek.

2 Kings 17:32

They

This refers to the pagan people that the king of Assyria moved into the cities of Samaria.

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- Yahweh
- temple
- priest, priesthood

Translation Words - UST

- But those people also worshiped
- Yahweh
- the high places
- priests

ULT

³² They also honored Yahweh, and appointed from among themselves priests of the high places, who sacrificed for them in the temples at the high places.

UST

³² But those people also worshiped Yahweh, but they also appointed from among their own groups many people to be priests at the places where idols were worshiped on the hills, and these priests could would offer sacrifices for them upon the high places.

2 Kings 17:33

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- God
- Yahweh
- nation
- ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- exile, exiled

Translation Words - UST

- but they also worshiped
- gods
- So they revered Yahweh
- their people
- just as
- gods
- living in

ULT

³³ They honored Yahweh and also worshiped their own gods, in the customs of the nations from among whom they had been taken away.

UST

³³ So they revered Yahweh, but they also worshiped their own gods, just as their people living in their home countries did.

2 Kings 17:34

they persist in their old customs

“they continue in the same habits as before”

They neither honor Yahweh

The people were only interested in appeasing Yahweh. They were either not interested or not aware Yahweh was interested in a relationship with them.

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- command, commandment
- son
- law of Moses, God’s law, law of Yahweh, the law
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- name
- Israel, Israelites
- Israel, Israelite, Jacob
- ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

Translation Words - UST

- worship
- all the laws and decrees that
- descendants of
- all the laws and decrees that
- Yahweh...gave to the
- Yahweh
- the new name
- Israel
- Jacob
- keep their old customs

ULT

³⁴ To this day they persist in their old customs. They neither honor Yahweh, nor do they follow the statutes, decrees, the law, or the commandments that Yahweh gave to the people of Jacob—whom he named Israel—

UST

³⁴ These people in Samaria still keep their old customs. They really do not worship Yahweh, and they do not obey all the laws and decrees that Yahweh gave to the descendants of Jacob, to whom he gave the new name Israel.

2 Kings 17:35

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- command, commandment
- God
- covenant
- Yahweh
- prostrate, worship
- cut off
- sacrifice, sacrifices, offering
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- commanding them not...worship
- Yahweh had previously made an covenant with the ancestors of Israel
- other gods
- Yahweh had previously made an covenant with the ancestors of Israel
- Yahweh had previously made an covenant with the ancestors of Israel
- or bow down to honor
- Yahweh had previously made an covenant with the ancestors of Israel
- or offer sacrifices
- to please them

ULT

³⁵ and with whom Yahweh had made a covenant and commanded them, "You will not fear other gods, nor bow yourselves to them, nor worship them, nor sacrifice to them.

UST

³⁵ Yahweh had previously made an covenant with the ancestors of Israel, commanding them not to worship other gods or bow down to honor them or do other things to please them or offer sacrifices to them.

2 Kings 17:36

General Information:

The summary comes toward the end with an appeal to worship only Yahweh.

with great power and a raised arm

The phrase “raised arm” is metonymy for displaying power and means basically the same thing as “great power.” Alternate translation: “with very great power” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [fear, afraid, dread](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [sacrifice, sacrifices, offering](#)
- [strength, strengthen, strong](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [bow down to honor](#)
- [Yahweh, the one who](#)
- [bow down to honor](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [bow down to honor](#)
- [my very great power](#)

ULT

36 But Yahweh, who brought you up from the land of Egypt with great power and a raised arm, is the one you must honor; it is to him that you will prostrate yourselves, and it is to him that you will sacrifice.

UST

36 He had said to them, “You must have a sincere respect for me, [Yahweh, the one who](#) brought you out of [Egypt](#) with [my very great power](#). I am the one whom you must [bow down to honor](#), and I am the one to whom you must offer sacrifices.

2 Kings 17:37

keep them

“obey them”

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- God
- statute
- ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

Translation Words - UST

- worship
- other gods
- for
- the laws
- obey

ULT

³⁷ The statutes and the decrees, the law and the commandments that he wrote for you, you will keep them forever. So you must not fear other gods,

UST

³⁷ You must always [obey the laws](#) and decrees that I told Moses to write [for](#) you. You must not [worship other gods](#).

2 Kings 17:38

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- God
- cut off

Translation Words - UST

- fear or respect
- You must...other gods
- I made

ULT

³⁸ and the covenant that I have made with you, you will not forget; neither will you honor other gods.

UST

³⁸ And you must not forget the covenant that I made with your ancestors. You must not fear or respect other gods.

2 Kings 17:39

General Information:

The summary now ends with an appeal to worship only Yahweh and a description of the sins of the people.

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- God
- Yahweh
- hand
- adversary, enemy

Translation Words - UST

- Instead, you must have a sincere respect for me
- your God
- Yahweh
- rescue you
- your enemies

ULT

39 But Yahweh your God is who you will honor. He will rescue you from the might of your enemies."

UST

39 Instead, you must have a sincere respect for me, Yahweh, your God. If you do that, I will rescue you from the power of all your enemies."

2 Kings 17:40

They would not listen

“Listen” here is a metaphor for paying attention and acting on the command. Alternate translation: “They did not obey” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [ordinance](#), [regulations](#), [requirements](#), [strict law](#), [customs](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [continued to](#)

ULT

⁴⁰ They would not listen, because they continued to do what they had done in the past.

UST

⁴⁰ But, the Israelites refused to pay attention to what Yahweh said. Instead, they [continued to](#) adhere to their old customs.

2 Kings 17:41

these nations feared Yahweh

These nations feared Yahweh only to the point of appeasing him the same way they treated their own gods.

up to this day

“and have continued ever since.” The phrase “this day” refers to the time period in which the writer lived.

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- son
- son
- son
- Yahweh
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- nation
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- worshiped
- descendants
- descendants
- descendants
- Yahweh
- descendants
- people
- worshiped their idols

ULT

⁴¹ So these nations feared Yahweh and they also worshiped their carved figures, and their children did the same—as did their children’s children. They continue to do what their ancestors did, up to this day.

UST

⁴¹ So, those [people worshiped Yahweh](#), but they also [worshiped their idols](#). And their [descendants](#) still do the same thing.

2 Kings 18

2 Kings 18 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins the story of Hezekiah, one of the great kings of Judah (2 Kings 18 – 20). Because he was so important, there is more space dedicated to the history of his reign.

Special concepts in this chapter

Trust in Yahweh

Hezekiah trusted and obeyed God. He stopped paying tribute to Assyria so the Assyrians invaded Judah. The Assyrian king told the people of Judah that resistance was useless. Despite this, Hezekiah trusted in the power of Yahweh. (See: [trust](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

2 Kings 18:1

General Information:

Hezekiah becomes king over Judah in place of his father King Ahaz.

Hoshea...Elah

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- After King...had been ruling
- son
- Israel
- Judah
- After King...had been ruling
- of Ahaz

ULT

¹ Now in the third year of Hoshea son of Elah, king of Israel, Hezekiah son of Ahaz, king of Judah began to reign.

UST

¹ [After King](#) Hoshea [had been ruling Israel](#) for almost three years, Hezekiah [son of Ahaz](#), began to rule [Judah](#).

2 Kings 18:2

Zechariah

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Abijah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- twenty
- from Jerusalem

ULT

² He was twenty-five years old when he began to reign; he reigned twenty-nine years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Abijah; she was the daughter of Zechariah.

UST

² He was [twenty](#)-five years old when he became the king of Judah and he ruled [from Jerusalem](#) for twenty-nine years. His mother was Abijah, the daughter of a man whose name was Zechariah.

2 Kings 18:3

He did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh

“In the eyes” here is a metaphor for Yahweh’s attention and care.
 Alternate translation: “King Hezekiah did what was right to Yahweh”
 or “Hezekiah did things that Yahweh said are right” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [that Yahweh](#)
- [King David](#)
- [ancestor](#)

ULT

³ He did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh, following the example of all that David, his ancestor, had done.

UST

³ Hezekiah did things [that Yahweh](#) said are right, like his [ancestor King David](#) had done.

2 Kings 18:4

General Information:

The story of King Hezekiah's reign continues.

He removed the high places, destroyed the stone pillars, and cut down the Asherah poles

"Hezekiah removed the high places of worship, smashed into pieces the memorial stones, and cut down the wooden poles of Asherah"

Nehushtan

This name could be translated "Bronze Serpent Idol." (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Moses
- cut off
- bronze
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- the people
- the people
- Moses had made
- and he broke into pieces the poles for worshipping
- the bronze
- had named

ULT

⁴ He removed the high places, destroyed the stone pillars, and cut down the Asherah poles. He broke to pieces the bronze serpent that Moses had made, because in those days the people of Israel were burning incense to it; it was called "Nehushtan."

UST

⁴ He destroyed the places where people worshiped Yahweh, [and he broke into pieces the poles for worshipping](#) the goddess Asherah. He also broke into pieces [the bronze](#) replica of a snake that [Moses had made](#). He did that because [the people had named](#) it Nehushtan, and they were burning incense in front of it to honor it.

2 Kings 18:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Hezekiah trusted in Yahweh, the
- the Israelites
- ruled Judah before him
- no king who

ULT

⁵ Hezekiah trusted in Yahweh, the God of Israel, so that after him there was no one like him among all the kings of Judah, nor among the kings who were before him.

UST

⁵ [Hezekiah trusted in Yahweh, the God](#) whom [the Israelites](#) worshiped. There was [no king who ruled Judah before him](#) or after him who was as devoted to Yahweh as he was.

2 Kings 18:6

General Information:

The story of King Hezekiah's reign continues.

he held on to Yahweh

To "hold on" is metaphor for staying loyal and attached. Alternate translation: "Hezekiah stayed loyal to Yahweh" or "Hezekiah remained faithful to Yahweh" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [had given to](#)
- [all the commandments](#)
- [He remained loyal to Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

ULT

⁶ For he held on to Yahweh. He did not stop following him but kept his commandments, which Yahweh commanded Moses.

UST

⁶ [He remained loyal to Yahweh](#) and never disobeyed him. He carefully obeyed [all the commandments](#) that [Yahweh had given to Moses](#).

2 Kings 18:7

wherever he went he prospered

“wherever Hezekiah went he was successful”

Translation Words - ULT

- wise, wisdom
- Yahweh
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- He rebelled against
- Yahweh always helped Hezekiah
- of Assyria
- He rebelled against
- the king
- to do
- He rebelled against

ULT

⁷ So Yahweh was with Hezekiah, and wherever he went he prospered. He rebelled against the king of Assyria and did not serve him.

UST

⁷ Yahweh always helped Hezekiah. He was successful in everything he did. He rebelled against the king of Assyria and refused to do what the king of Assyria wanted him to do

2 Kings 18:8

fortified city

city with a wall all around it

Translation Words - ULT

- [Philistines](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [soldiers of Philistia](#)

ULT

⁸ He attacked the Philistines to Gaza and the borders around, from the tower of the watchmen to the fortified city.

UST

⁸ His army defeated the [soldiers of Philistia](#) as far south as the city of Gaza and the nearby villages. They conquered the entire area, from the smallest village with only a watchtower to the largest cities surrounded by walls.

2 Kings 18:9

Hoshea...Elah...Shalmaneser

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Samaria, Samaritan
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- had been ruling
- Israel
- and surrounded...city of Samaria
- of Assyria
- After King
- the army of
- King

ULT

⁹ In the fourth year of King Hezekiah, which was the seventh year of Hoshea son of Elah king of Israel, Shalmaneser king of Assyria came up against Samaria and besieged it.

UST

⁹ [After King](#) Hezekiah had been ruling Judah for almost four years, and when King Hoshea [had been ruling Israel](#) for almost seven years, [the army of King](#) Shalmaneser [of Assyria](#) invaded Israel [and surrounded](#) the [city of Samaria](#).

2 Kings 18:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Samaria, Samaritan
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Israel
- the city
- had been ruling

ULT

¹⁰ At the end of three years they took it, in the sixth year of Hezekiah, which was the ninth year of Hoshea king of Israel; in this way Samaria was captured.

UST

¹⁰ In the third year they captured [the city](#). That was when Hezekiah had been ruling Judah for almost six years, and when Hoshea [had been ruling Israel](#) for almost nine years.

2 Kings 18:11

Halah...Habor River...Gozan

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Medes

This is the name of a people group. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

So the king of Assyria carried Israel away to Assyria

“So the king of Assyria commanded his army to take the Israelites away from their homes, and he made them live in Assyria”

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- the people of Israel
- of Assyria commanded that
- to Assyria
- The king

ULT

¹¹ So the king of Assyria carried Israel away to Assyria and put them in Halah, and at the Habor River in Gozan, and in the cities of the Medes.

UST

¹¹ [The king of Assyria commanded that the people of Israel](#) be taken [to Assyria](#). Some of them were taken to the city of Halah, some were taken to a place near the Habor River in the region of Gozan, and some were taken to cities where the Mede people group live.

2 Kings 18:12

the voice of Yahweh

“Voice” is metonymy for the message about the command of Yahweh. Alternate translation: “the command of Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [God](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation](#)
- [voice](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the laws](#)
- [their God](#)
- [They had disobeyed the covenant](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [that Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [told them](#)
- [did not obey](#)
- [the man who served Yahweh very well](#)

ULT

¹² He did this because they did not obey the voice of Yahweh their God, but they violated the terms of his covenant, all that Moses the servant of Yahweh commanded. They refused to listen to it or do it.

UST

¹² That happened because the Israelites [did not obey Yahweh their God](#). [They had disobeyed the covenant that Yahweh](#) had made with their ancestors, and all [the laws](#) that [Moses, the man who served Yahweh very well](#), had [told them](#) to obey. They would not obey those laws. They would not even listen to them.

2 Kings 18:13

Sennacherib

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

fortified cities

Cities with walls around them for protection. See how you translated “fortified city” in [2 Kings 18:8](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)
- [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [had been ruling Judah for almost](#)
- [of Assyria](#)
- [After King](#)
- [King](#)

ULT

¹³ Then in the fourteenth year of King Hezekiah, Sennacherib king of Assyria attacked all the fortified cities of Judah and captured them.

UST

¹³ [After King](#) Hezekiah [had been ruling Judah for almost](#) fourteen years, the army of [King](#) Sennacherib [of Assyria](#) attacked all the cities in Judah that had walls around them. They did not capture Jerusalem, but they captured all the other cities.

2 Kings 18:14

Lachish

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Withdraw from me

This expression assumes that “me” represents the kingdom of Hezekiah. Alternate translation: “Take your army out of my territory” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Whatever you put on me I will bear

“I will pay you whatever you demand of me”

talents

This is the name of type of weight that was used for money. One talent weighted about 33 kilograms. (See: [Biblical Money](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- appoint, appointed
- restore, restoration
- Judea
- Judea
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- silver
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship (2)
- king, kingdom, kingship (3)
- king, kingdom, kingship (4)
- gold, golden

Translation Words - UST

- saying, “What I have done was wrong
- I will pay you whatever you tell me
- Please tell your soldiers...stop attacking us
- King
- must pay to
- city of Lachish
- Assyria
- of silver
- King
- the (2)
- king of (3)
- So the (4)
- of gold

ULT

¹⁴ So Hezekiah king of Judah sent word to the king of Assyria, who was at Lachish, saying, “I have offended you. Withdraw from me. Whatever you put on me I will bear.” The king of Assyria required Hezekiah king of Judah to pay three hundred talents of silver and thirty talents of gold.

UST

¹⁴ [King](#) Hezekiah sent a message to Sennacherib, while Sennacherib was in [the city of Lachish, saying, “What I have done was wrong. Please tell your soldiers to stop attacking us.](#) If you do that, [I will pay you whatever you tell me to.”](#) [So the king of Assyria](#) said that Hezekiah [must pay to](#) him 10,000 kilograms (or about ten metric tons) [of silver](#) and 1,000 kilograms (about one metric ton) [of gold](#).

2 Kings 18:15

treasuries

This was the place in the palace where money and valuable things were stored.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- silver
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- temple and
- silver
- the
- temple and
- palace

ULT

15 So Hezekiah gave him all the silver that was found in the house of Yahweh and in the treasuries of the king's palace.

UST

15 So Hezekiah gave to him all the [silver](#) that was in [the temple and](#) that was stored in his [palace](#).

2 Kings 18:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- temple
- Judea
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- of the temple
- of the temple
- and the gold...he himself had put on
- the king of Assyria
- from the doors
- and the gold...he himself had put on
- the

ULT

¹⁶ Then Hezekiah cut off the gold from the doors of the temple of Yahweh and from the pillars that he had overlaid; he gave the gold to the king of Assyria.

UST

¹⁶ Hezekiah's men also stripped the gold from the doors of the temple and the gold that he himself had put on the doorposts, and he sent all that gold to the king of Assyria.

2 Kings 18:17

the king of Assyria mobilized his great army, sending Tartan and Rabsaris and the chief commander

Sennacherib sent a group of men from his army to Jerusalem to meet with King Hezekiah, including officials named Tartan and Rabsaris.

Tartan...Rabsaris

Some Bibles translate these as proper names. Other versions of the Bible translate them as titles. Alternate translation: “the Tartan...the Rabsaris” or “the leader of the soldier...a court official” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Lachish

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the conduit of the upper pool

the channel where the water stored in the “upper pool” flows into the city of Jerusalem

stood by it

“and waited there for King Hezekiah to meet with them”

Translation Words - ULT

- Jerusalem
- Jerusalem
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- at Jerusalem
- into Jerusalem
- Assyria
- But the king of
- King

ULT

¹⁷ But the king of Assyria mobilized his great army, sending Tartan and Rabsaris and the chief commander from Lachish to King Hezekiah at Jerusalem. They traveled up the roads and arrived outside Jerusalem. They approached the conduit of the upper pool, on the highway of the launderers' field, and stood by it.

UST

¹⁷ [But the king of Assyria](#) sent a large army with some of his important officials from the city of Lachish to persuade [King](#) Hezekiah to surrender. When they arrived [at Jerusalem](#), they stood alongside the aqueduct in which water flows from the upper pool [into Jerusalem](#), near the road to the field where the women wash clothes.

2 Kings 18:18

Eliakim...Hilkiah...Shebna...Joah...Asaph

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- scribe
- command, commandment
- son
- son (2)
- Asaph
- king, kingdom, kingship
- declare, proclaim, announce
- house

Translation Words - UST

- communicated the king's messages
- to come
- son Eliakim
- and...son (2)
- Asaph's
- but the king
- palace
- to the people

ULT

18 When they had called to King Hezekiah, Eliakim son of Hilkiah, who was over the household, and Shebna the scribe, and Joah son of Asaph, the recorder, went out to meet them.

UST

18 They sent a message requesting King Hezekiah [to come](#) to them, [but the king](#) sent three of his officials to talk to them. He sent Hilkiah's [son Eliakim](#), who supervised the [palace](#), Shebna, the official secretary, and [Asaph's son](#) Joah, who [communicated the king's messages to the people](#).

2 Kings 18:19

General Information:

Rabshakeh continues telling the message from the king of Assyria to King Hezekiah's men.

What is the source of your confidence?

The King of Assyria (through his messenger Rabshakeh) wants to make King Hezekiah doubt himself and Egypt's support. He does not ask this question looking for an answer. Alternate translation: "You have no reason to think that you can defeat me." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Assyria
- the...king
- the king

ULT

19 So the chief commander said to them to tell Hezekiah what the great king, the king of Assyria, said: "What is the source of your confidence?"

UST

19 One of Sennacherib's important officials told them to take this message to Hezekiah: "This is what [the king](#) of [Assyria](#), the great [king](#), says: 'What are you trusting in to rescue you?'"

2 Kings 18:20

In whom are you trusting, that you should rebel against me?

The King of Assyria (through his messenger Rabshakeh) wants to make King Hezekiah doubt himself and Egypt's support. He does not ask this question looking for an answer. Alternate translation: "You cannot trust anyone to help you rebel against me." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [rebel](#), [rebellion](#), [rebellious](#), [rebelliousness](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [rebel against](#)

ULT

²⁰ You speak only useless words, saying there are allies and strength for war. In whom are you trusting, that you should rebel against me?

UST

²⁰ You say that you have weapons to fight us and that some country has promised to help you, but that is only talk. Who do you think will help you to [rebel against](#) my soldiers from Assyria?

2 Kings 18:21

walking stick of this bruised reed of Egypt

The King of Assyria compares Egypt to a weak walking stick; you expect that it will support you when you lean on it, but instead it breaks and cuts you. Alternate translation: “the weak support from Egypt” (See: [Metaphor](#))

but if a man leans...and pierce it

The speaker is extending the metaphor by describing what happens when a reed is used as a support. Alternate translation: “but if someone uses this for support, he will be injured” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Egypt, Egyptian](#)
- [Egypt, Egyptian](#) (2)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the army of Egypt](#)
- [what the king of Egypt would be like](#) (2)
- [what the king of Egypt would be like](#)

ULT

21 Look, you trust in the walking stick of this bruised reed of Egypt, but if a man leans on it, it will stick into his hand and pierce it. That is what Pharaoh king of Egypt is to anyone who trusts in him.

UST

21 Listen to me! You are relying on [the army of Egypt](#). But that is like using a broken reed for a walking stick on which you could lean. It would pierce the hand of anyone who would lean on it! That is [what the king of Egypt would be like](#) for anyone who relied on him for help.

2 Kings 18:22

General Information:

Rabshakeh continues telling the message from the king of Assyria to King Hezekiah's men.

is not he the one whose high places...Jerusalem?

This question assumes the listeners know the answer and is used for emphasis. Alternate translation: "You need to remember that he is the one whose high places...Jerusalem!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- altar
- God
- Yahweh
- prostrate, worship
- Judah
- Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- and the altars on which you offered sacrifices
- the altar
- our God
- we...relying on Yahweh
- worship
- in Judah
- in Jerusalem

ULT

22 But if you say to me, 'We are trusting in Yahweh our God,' is not he the one whose high places and altars Hezekiah has taken away, and has said to Judah and to Jerusalem, 'You must worship before this altar in Jerusalem'?

UST

22 But perhaps you will say to me, "No, we are [relying on Yahweh our God](#) to help us." I would reply, "Is he not the one whom you insulted by tearing down his houses on the hills where the idols were worshiped [and the altars on which you offered sacrifices](#), forcing everyone in Jerusalem and other places [in Judah](#) to [worship](#) only in front of [the altar in Jerusalem](#)?"

2 Kings 18:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- king, kingdom, kingship
- horse, warhorse, horseback

Translation Words - UST

- my master
- the king of Assyria
- the king of Assyria
- horses

ULT

²³ Now therefore, I want to make you a good offer from my master the king of Assyria. I will give you two thousand horses, if you are able to find riders for them.

UST

²³ So I suggest that you make a deal between you and [my master](#), [the king of Assyria](#). I will give you two thousand [horses](#), but I do not think that you are able to find two thousand of your men who can ride on them!

2 Kings 18:24

General Information:

Rabshakeh continues telling the message from the king of Assyria to King Hezekiah's men.

How could you resist even one captain of the least of my master's servants?

He asks this question to emphasize that the army of Hezekiah does not have the resources to fight. He also uses exaggeration to mock Hezekiah's army. Alternate translation: Possible meanings are 1) "You could not defeat even one of the least of the king's soldiers." or 2) "You could not defeat a group of the king's soldiers commanded by his least important officer." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- restore, restoration
- Egypt, Egyptian
- face, facial
- govern, government, governor, proconsul
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- But they certainly would not be able to defeat
- You are hoping that
- the king of Egypt
- You are hoping that
- even the most
- official

ULT

24 How could you resist even one captain of the least of my master's servants? You have put your trust in Egypt for chariots and horsemen!

UST

24 [You are hoping that the king of Egypt](#) will send chariots and men riding horses to assist you. [But they certainly would not be able to defeat even the most](#) unimportant [official](#) in my army!

2 Kings 18:25

Have I traveled up here without Yahweh to fight against this place and destroy it?

He asks this question to emphasize that Yahweh is behind his success to obey the command to destroy Israel. Alternate translation: "Yahweh himself told us to come here and destroy this land!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh's help](#)
- [It is Yahweh himself who](#)
- [land](#)

ULT

²⁵ Have I traveled up here without Yahweh to fight against this place and destroy it? Yahweh said to me, 'Attack this land and destroy it.'

UST

²⁵ Furthermore, do you think that we have come to destroy Jerusalem without [Yahweh's help](#)? [It is Yahweh himself who](#) told us to come here and destroy this [land](#)!"

2 Kings 18:26

Eliakim...Hilkiah...Shebnah...Joah

Translate the names of these men as in [2 Kings 18:18](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

in the ears of the people who are on the wall

"In the ears" is metonymy for being able to listen. Alternate translation: "because the people standing on the city wall will hear it and be afraid" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Hebrew](#)
- [son](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [our Hebrew language](#)
- [Then Eliakim](#)
- [the people](#)
- [the official](#)

ULT

²⁶ Then Eliakim son of Hilkiah, and Shebnah, and Joah said to the chief commander, "Please speak to your servants in the Aramaic language, for we understand it. Do not speak with us in the language of Judah in the ears of the people who are on the wall."

UST

²⁶ [Then Eliakim](#), Shebna and Joah said to [the official](#) from Assyria, "Sir, please speak to us in your Aramaic language, because we understand it. Do not speak to us in [our Hebrew language](#), because [the people](#) who are standing on the wall will understand it and be frightened."

2 Kings 18:27

Has my master sent me to your master and to you to speak these words? Has he not sent me to the men who sit on the wall, who will have to eat their own dung and drink their own urine with you?

He asks these questions assuming the listeners know the answers to emphasize their intention to destroy and humiliate the leaders and people of Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "My master sent me not only to you and your master, but also to speak to the people in this city, who will suffer with you when they have to eat their own dung and drink their own urine to survive." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- lord, Lord, master, sir

Translation Words - UST

- [Do you think that my master...If you reject this](#)
- [Do you think that my master...If you reject this](#)

ULT

²⁷ But the chief commander said to them, "Has my master sent me to your master and to you to speak these words? Has he not sent me to the men who sit on the wall, who will have to eat their own dung and drink their own urine with you?"

UST

²⁷ But the official replied, "[Do you think that my master](#) sent me to say these things only to you and not to the people who are standing on the wall? [If you reject this](#) message, the people in this city will soon need to eat their own dung and drink their own urine, just like you will, because there will be nothing more for you to eat or drink."

2 Kings 18:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Hebrew
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- voice
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- in the Hebrew language to the people sitting on the wall
- of Assyria. He says this
- and shouted
- the
- the king
- and shouted

ULT

²⁸ Then the chief commander stood and shouted in a loud voice in the Jews' language, saying, "Listen to the word of the great king, the king of Assyria.

UST

²⁸ Then the official stood up and shouted in the Hebrew language to the people sitting on the wall. He said, "Listen this message from the great king, the king of Assyria. He says this:

2 Kings 18:29

from my power

“my power” is metonymy for the ability of the king himself. Alternate translation: “from me” or “from the power of my army” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [deceive, deceit, deceiver, deceitful, deception, illusions](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [from](#)
- [my power](#)
- [to deceive](#)

ULT

²⁹ The king says, ‘Do not let Hezekiah deceive you, for he will not be able to rescue you from my power.’

UST

²⁹ ‘Do not allow Hezekiah [to deceive](#) you. He will not be able to rescue you [from my power](#).’

2 Kings 18:30

this city will not be given into the hand of the king of Assyria

This can be expressed in an active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh will never allow the king of Assyria's army to take this city" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the hand

"Hand" is metonymy for control, authority and power. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [hand](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [of Assyria will](#)
- [of Assyria will](#)
- [of Assyria will](#)

ULT

³⁰ Do not let Hezekiah make you trust in Yahweh, saying, "Yahweh will surely rescue us, and this city will not be given into the hand of the king of Assyria."

UST

³⁰ Do not allow him to persuade you to rely on [Yahweh](#), saying that [Yahweh](#) will rescue you, and that the army [of Assyria will](#) never capture this city!

2 Kings 18:31

Make peace with me and come out to me

"Come out of the city and surrender to me" or "Make an agreement with me to surrender, and come out of the city to me"

his own vine...his own fig tree...his own cistern

These sources of food and water are metaphors for security and plenty. This also was a common way of expressing this idea. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- bless, blessed, blessing
- command, commandment
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- vine
- devour
- fig
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- I will arrange for
- Come out of the city and surrender to me
- of Assyria
- to drink the juice from you own grapevines
- eat
- and to...figs from your own trees
- the king

ULT

31 Do not listen to Hezekiah, for this is what the king of Assyria says: 'Make peace with me and come out to me. Then every one of you will eat from his own vine and from his own fig tree, and drink from the water in his own cistern.'

UST

31 Do not pay attention to what Hezekiah says! This is what [the king of Assyria](#) says: '[Come out of the city and surrender to me](#). If you do that, [I will arrange for](#) each of you [to drink the juice from you own grapevines](#), [and to eat figs from your own trees](#), and to drink water from your own wells.'

2 Kings 18:32

a land of grain and new wine...bread and vineyards... olive trees and honey

These are metaphors for having good things and plenty in daily life.
(See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- Yahweh
- bread
- honey, honeycomb
- olive
- oil
- vineyard
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly (2)
- grain, grainfields

Translation Words - UST

- to live
- Yahweh
- to make bread
- and honey
- plenty of olive trees
- plenty of olive trees
- and vineyards
- a land that is like
- a land
- to produce grapes for making wine
- It will be a land that has (2)
- there is grain

ULT

³² You will do this until I come and take you away to a land like your own land, a land of grain and new wine, a land of bread and vineyards, a land of olive trees and honey, so that you may live and not die.' Do not listen to Hezekiah when he tries to persuade you, saying, 'Yahweh will rescue us.'

UST

³² You will be able to do that until we come and take you to [a land that is like](#) your land—[a land](#) where [there is grain to make bread and vineyards to produce grapes for making wine](#). [It will be a land that has plenty of olive trees and honey](#).' If you do what the king of Assyria commands, you will not die. You will continue [to live](#). Do not allow Hezekiah to persuade you to trust in [Yahweh](#), saying that he will rescue you!

2 Kings 18:33

General Information:

Rabshakeh continues telling the message from the king of Assyria to King Hezekiah's men.

Has any of the gods...Assyria?

He asks this question for emphasis because they know the answer. Alternate translation: "None the gods of the peoples have rescued them...Assyria." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- hand
- nation
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- The gods
- of Assyria
- from
- that...of other nations worship
- the power of the king
- people

ULT

33 Has any of the gods of the peoples rescued them out of the hand of the king of Assyria?

UST

33 [The gods](#) that [people of other nations worship](#) have never rescued them [from the power of the king of Assyria](#)!

2 Kings 18:34

Where are the gods of...Arpad?

He asks this question for emphasis because they know the answer. Alternate translation: "I have destroyed the gods of...Arpad!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Hamath...Arpad...Sepharvaim...Hena...Ivvah...Samaria

These are the names of places that represent the people living there. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

out of my hand

"Hand" is metonymy for control, power, or authority. Alternate translation: "out from my control" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- Samaria, Samaritan
- hand

Translation Words - UST

- are the gods
- the gods
- Samaria
- out of my hand

ULT

34 Where are the gods of Hamath and Arpad? Where are the gods of Sepharvaim, Hena, and Ivvah? Have they rescued Samaria out of my hand?

UST

34 Where [are the gods](#) of Hamath and Arpad? Where are [the gods](#) of Sepharvaim, Hena, and Ivvah? Did any of their gods delivered [Samaria out of my hand](#)?

2 Kings 18:35

is there any god who has rescued his land from my power?

He asks this question for emphasis because they know the answer.
Alternate translation: "No god has rescued his land from my power."
(See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

from my power

"My power" is metonymy for the person whose has the power.
Alternate translation: "from me" (See: [Metonymy](#))

How could Yahweh save Jerusalem from my might?

He asks this question for emphasis because they know the answer. Alternate translation: "There is no way Yahweh can save Jerusalem from my might!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

³⁵ Among all the gods of the lands, is there any god who has rescued his land from my power? How could Yahweh save Jerusalem from my might?"

UST

³⁵ [None](#) of these gods kept their people [from being destroyed](#) by the king of Assyria. [Do you think your God Yahweh, can do any better?](#)

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [hand](#)
- [hand](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [None](#)
- [Do you think your God Yahweh, can do any better](#)
- [Do you think your God Yahweh, can do any better](#)
- [from being destroyed](#)
- [Do you think your God Yahweh, can do any better](#)
- [None](#)
- [from being destroyed](#)

2 Kings 18:36

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- because...had told them
- were listening
- said anything
- But the people who
- When the official from Assyria talks

ULT

³⁶ But the people remained silent and did not respond, for the king had commanded, "Do not answer him."

UST

³⁶ But the people who were listening were silent. No one said anything, because King Hezekiah had told them, "When the official from Assyria talks to you, do not answer him."

2 Kings 18:37

Eliakim...Shebna...Joah...Asaph

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

who was over the household

“who managed the king’s palace”

the recorder

“the history keeper”

chief commander

and is the translation of the Hebrew; some see this as a personal name, “Rabshakeh”

Translation Words - ULT

- [scribe](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [Asaph](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and they told](#)
- [Then Eliakim](#)
- [and Joah](#) (2)
- [and Joah](#)
- [Then Eliakim](#)

ULT

37 Then Eliakim son of Hilkiah, who was over the household; Shebna the scribe; and Joah son of Asaph, the recorder, came to Hezekiah with their clothes torn, and reported to him the words of the chief commander.

UST

37 [Then Eliakim](#) and Shebna [and Joah](#) went back to Hezekiah with their clothes torn because they were extremely distressed, [and they told](#) him what the official from Assyria had said.

2 Kings 19

2 Kings 19 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of Hezekiah continues in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

God's power

God is in control of everything. God caused the Assyrian king to fail in conquering Jerusalem because he mocked God.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Idiom

"The virgin daughter of Zion" here is an idiom meaning the people of Jerusalem. "The virgin daughter of Zion despises you and laughs you to scorn" means that "the people of Jerusalem know that Assyria will fail because they have mocked God." (See: [Idiom](#))

2 Kings 19:1

house of Yahweh

This is another way of saying “temple of Yahweh.”

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- sackcloth
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

Translation Words - UST

- temple to ask God what to do
- made of rough cloth
- When King
- to the

ULT

¹ It came about that when King Hezekiah heard their report, he tore his clothes, covered himself with sackcloth, and went into the house of Yahweh.

UST

¹ [When King](#) Hezekiah heard what they reported, he tore his clothes and put on clothes [made of rough cloth](#) because he was very distressed. Then he went [to the temple to ask God what to do](#).

2 Kings 19:2

Eliakim...Shebna...Isaiah...Amoz

These are all names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

He sent Eliakim

"Hezekiah sent Eliakim"

all covered with sackcloth

"all wearing sackcloth"

Translation Words - ULT

- scribe
- son
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- priest, priesthood
- sackcloth
- elder, older, old
- house

Translation Words - UST

- and Shebna
- son of
- the prophet
- and the older priests
- made of rough sackcloth
- and the older priests
- and Shebna

ULT

² He sent Eliakim, who was over the household, and Shebna the scribe, and the elders of the priests, all covered with sackcloth, to Isaiah son of Amoz, the prophet.

UST

² Then he summoned Eliakim [and Shebna and the older priests](#), who were also wearing clothes [made of rough sackcloth](#), and told them to talk to Isaiah [the prophet](#), [son of](#) Amoz.

2 Kings 19:3

This day is a day of distress

"This is a time of distress"

the children have come to the time of birth, but there is no strength for them to be born

This is a metaphor to describe how the people and their leaders have become so weak and unable to fight the enemy. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, hardship

Translation Words - UST

- Other nations are causing us to be
- we have great distress

ULT

³ They said to him, "Hezekiah says, 'This day is a day of distress, rebuke, and disgrace, for the children have come to the time of birth, but there is no strength for them to be born.'

UST

³ He said to them to say these things to Isaiah: "King Hezekiah says that this is a day when we have great distress. Other nations are causing us to be insulted and disgraced like a woman who is about to give birth to a child, but she is not strong enough to do it.

2 Kings 19:4

all the words of the chief commander

"everything that the chief commander has said"

lift up your prayer

This a common way (an idiom) to use the action of lifting to metaphorically represent praying earnestly to Yahweh who is above us. Alternate translation: "pray earnestly" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- God
- God
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- God...punish him
- him
- our God
- God...punish him
- and that Yahweh will
- Perhaps Yahweh...has heard everything
- and that Yahweh will
- that you pray
- of Assyria
- the king

ULT

⁴ It may be that Yahweh your God will hear all the words of the chief commander, whom the king of Assyria his master has sent to defy the living God, and will rebuke the words which Yahweh your God has heard. Now lift up your prayer for the remnant that is still here."

UST

⁴ [Perhaps Yahweh our God has heard everything](#) that the official from Assyria said. Perhaps he knows that his master, [the king of Assyria](#), sent [him](#) to insult the all-powerful [God and that Yahweh will punish him](#) for what he said. And Hezekiah requests [that you pray](#) for the few of us who are still alive here in Jerusalem."

2 Kings 19:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- When the
- messengers

ULT

⁵ So the servants of King Hezekiah came to Isaiah,

UST

⁵ [When the messengers](#) from Hezekiah came to Isaiah, and

2 Kings 19:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- things about me...be disturbed
- him what
- Yahweh
- of Assyria
- Those...from the king
- messengers

ULT

⁶ and Isaiah said to them, "Say to your master: 'Yahweh says, "Do not be afraid of the words that you have heard, with which the servants of the king of Assyria have insulted me.

UST

⁶ Isaiah instructed them to go back to their master and tell [him what Yahweh](#) says: "Those [messengers from the king of Assyria](#) have said evil [things about me](#). But you should not [be disturbed](#) because of what they said.

2 Kings 19:7

I will put a spirit in him, and he will hear a certain report and go back to his own land

"I will control the attitude of the king of Assyria, so when he hears a report, he will want to return to his own country"

I will put a spirit in him

"I will influence his thinking" or "I will cause him to think differently." Here "spirit" probably refers to his attitude and thoughts, rather than to a spirit being.

I will cause him to fall by the sword

"Fall by the sword" is metonymy for being killed. Alternate translation: "I will cause him to die by the sword" or "I will cause some men to kill him with a sword" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [spirit, spiritual](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)
- [return](#)
- [bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [I will cause Sennacherib](#)
- [and there I will cause him to be assassinated by some men](#)
- [So he will return](#)
- [and there I will cause him to be assassinated by some men](#)

ULT

⁷ Look, I will put a spirit in him, and he will hear a certain report and go back to his own land. I will cause him to fall by the sword in his own land.'""

UST

⁷ Listen to this: [I will cause Sennacherib](#) to hear a rumor that will worry him, that other armies are about to attack his country. [So he will return](#) to his own country, [and there I will cause him to be assassinated by some men.](#)"

2 Kings 19:8

the chief commander

“the official from Assyria in charge under the king”

found the king of Assyria fighting

“discovered that the Assyrian army was fighting”

Libnah...Lachish

The names of cities in the kingdom of Judah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- king, kingdom, kingship
- return

Translation Words - UST

- of Assyria
- the King
- The official from Assyria

ULT

⁸ Then the chief commander returned and found the king of Assyria fighting against Libnah, for he had heard that the king had gone away from Lachish.

UST

⁸ [The official from Assyria](#) found out that [the King of Assyria](#) and his army had left the city of Lachish, and that they were attacking Libnah, which was a nearby city. So the official went there to report to him what had happened in Jerusalem.

2 Kings 19:9

Sennacherib...Tirhakah

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

had mobilized to fight against him

“had prepared his army to fight against Assyria”

so he sent

“so Sennacherib sent”

a message

This message was written in a letter.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Ethiopia, Ethiopian](#)
- [messenger](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [return](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [King Tirhakah of Ethiopia](#)
- [attack them...he sent other messengers](#)
- [King Tirhakah of Ethiopia](#)
- [attack them...he sent other messengers](#)
- [was leading his army](#)

ULT

⁹ Then Sennacherib heard that Tirhakah king of Cush and Egypt had mobilized to fight against him, so he sent messengers again to Hezekiah with a message:

UST

⁹ Soon after that, King Sennacherib received a report that [King Tirhakah of Ethiopia was leading his army](#) to [attack them](#). But before King Sennacherib left Libnah to fight against the army from Ethiopia, [he sent other messengers](#) to King Hezekiah with a letter.

2 Kings 19:10

General Information:

This is the message that King Sennacharib of Assyria sent to King Hezekiah.

Do not let your God in whom you trust deceive you, saying

“Do not believe your God in whom you trust. He is lying when he says”

the hand of the king of Assyria

“Hand” is metonymy for control, authority or power. Alternate translation: “the control of the government of Assyria” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire](#)
- [hand](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [deceive, deceit, deceiver, deceitful, deception, illusions](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [your god on](#)
- [In the letter](#)
- [that my army will never capture Jerusalem](#)
- [that my army will never capture Jerusalem](#)
- [that my army will never capture Jerusalem](#)
- [In the letter](#)
- [that my army will never capture Jerusalem](#)
- [Do not allow](#)

ULT

10 “Say to Hezekiah king of Judah, ‘Do not let your God in whom you trust deceive you, saying, “Jerusalem will not be given over into the hand of the king of Assyria.”

UST

10 [In the letter](#) he wrote this to Hezekiah: “[Do not allow your god on](#) whom you are relying to deceive you by promising [that my army will never capture Jerusalem](#).”

2 Kings 19:11

See, you have heard

“Notice, you have heard” or “You have certainly heard.” Here “see” was used to draw attention to what he was about to say next.

So will you be rescued?

Sennacharib used this question to emphasize that God will not be able to rescue them. Alternate translation: “Your God will not rescue you!” or “You will not be able to escape either!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- of Assyria
- the armies of the kings
- countries

ULT

11 See, you have heard what the kings of Assyria have done to all lands by destroying them completely. So will you be rescued?

UST

11 You have certainly heard what [the armies of the kings of Assyria](#) have done to all the other [countries](#). Our armies have completely destroyed them. So do you think that you will escape?

2 Kings 19:12

General Information:

King Sennacharib's message to King Hezekiah continues.

Have the gods of the nations rescued them, the nations...destroyed: Gozan...Assar?

This question assumes Hezekiah knows the answer and provides emphasis. Alternate translation: "The gods of the nations, the nations...destroyed—Gozan...Assar—certainly did not rescue them!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

my fathers

"the previous kings of Assyria" or "the armies of the previous kings of Assyria"

Gozan...Haran...Rezeph...Eden...Tel Assar

These are all place names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [nation](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [by the armies of...and Rezeph in northern Aram](#)
- [Did the gods](#)
- [the previous kings of Assyria](#)
- [Did those gods rescue the people](#)

ULT

¹² Have the gods of the nations rescued them, the nations that my fathers destroyed: Gozan, Haran, Rezeph, and the people of Eden in Tel Assar?

UST

¹² [Did the gods](#) of the nations that were about to be destroyed [by the armies of the previous kings of Assyria](#) rescue them? [Did those gods rescue the people](#) in the region of Gozan or in the cities of Haran [and Rezeph in northern Aram](#)? Did they rescue the people of Eden who had been deported to the city of Tel Assar? None of the gods of those cities was able to rescue them.

2 Kings 19:13

Hamath...Arpad...Sepharvaim...Hena...Ivvah

These are all place names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- [What happened to the](#)

ULT

¹³ Where are the king of Hamath, the king of Arpad, the king of the cities of Sepharvaim, of Hena, and Ivvah?"

UST

¹³ [What happened to the](#) kings of the cities of Hamath, Arpad, Sepharvaim, and Ivvah? They are all dead."

2 Kings 19:14

this letter

This refers to the letter that King Sennacherib of Assyria sent to Hezekiah (2 Kings 19:8).

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- hand
- declare, proclaim, announce
- house

Translation Words - UST

- spread out the letter
- Yahweh
- received
- Then he went up to
- the temple and

ULT

¹⁴ Hezekiah received this letter from the messengers and read it. Then he went up to the house of Yahweh and spread it before him.

UST

¹⁴ Hezekiah received the letter that the messengers gave him, and he read it. Then he went up to the temple and spread out the letter in front of Yahweh.

2 Kings 19:15

you who sit above the cherubim

You may need to make explicit that the cherubim are those on the lid of the ark of the covenant. The biblical writers often spoke of the ark of the covenant as if it were Yahweh's footstool upon which he rested his feet as he sat on his throne in heaven above. Alternate translation: "you who sit on your throne above the cherubim on the ark of the covenant" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- God
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- pray, prayer
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- kingdom

Translation Words - UST

- and in the sky
- the God
- God
- Yahweh
- the God
- the God
- prayed this
- the kingdoms on this earth
- on the earth
- rule

ULT

15 Then Hezekiah prayed before Yahweh and said, "Yahweh of hosts, God of Israel, you who sit above the cherubim, you are God alone over all the kingdoms of the earth. You made the heavens and the earth.

UST

15 Then Hezekiah [prayed this](#): "[Yahweh, the God](#) to whom we Israelites belong, you are seated on your throne above the statues of creatures with wings, above the sacred chest. Only you are truly [God](#). You [rule](#) all [the kingdoms on this earth](#). You are the one who created everything [on the earth and in the sky](#)."

2 Kings 19:16

General Information:

King Hezekiah continues praying to Yahweh after receiving the letter from King Sennacherib of Assyria.

Turn your ear, Yahweh, and listen. Open your eyes, Yahweh, and see

Both of these sentences urge Yahweh to pay attention to the things that Sennacherib is saying. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Turn your ear, Yahweh, and listen

The words “Turn your ear” and “listen” mean the same thing and add emphasis to the plea. Alternate translation: “Yahweh, please listen to what he is saying” (See: [Doublet](#))

Open your eyes, Yahweh, and see

The words “Open your eyes” and “see” mean the same thing and add emphasis to the plea. Alternate translation: “Yahweh, please pay attention to what is happening” (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- the all-powerful God
- the all-powerful God
- So, Yahweh, please
- I am saying

ULT

16 Turn your ear, Yahweh, and listen. Open your eyes, Yahweh, and see, and hear the words of Sennacherib, which he has sent to mock the living God.

UST

16 [So, Yahweh, please](#) listen to what [I am saying](#), and look at what is happening. And listen to what King Sennacherib has said to insult you, [the all-powerful God](#).

2 Kings 19:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- true, truth
- Yahweh
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- nation
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- it is true that
- Yahweh
- of Assyria
- many nations...their
- the armies of the kings
- lands

ULT

¹⁷ Truly, Yahweh, the kings of Assyria have destroyed the nations and their lands.

UST

¹⁷ Yahweh, it is true that the armies of the kings of Assyria have completely destroyed many nations and ruined their lands.

2 Kings 19:18

They have put their gods into the fire

"The Assyrian kings have burned up the gods of the other nations"

Assyrians have destroyed them

"Assyrians have destroyed both the nations and the nations' gods"

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- hand
- destroy, destruction, annihilate
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Translation Words - UST

- the idols of those nations
- and...idols
- that were shaped
- they were destroyed easily
- into fires and burned them

ULT

18 They have put their gods into the fire, for they were not gods but the work of men's hands, just wood and stone. So the Assyrians have destroyed them.

UST

18 And they have thrown [the idols of those nations into fires and burned them](#). But that was not difficult to do, because they were not gods. They were only statues made of wood and stone, [idols that were shaped](#) by humans, and that is why [they were destroyed easily](#).

2 Kings 19:19

General Information:

King Hezekiah continues praying to Yahweh after receiving the letter from King Sennacherib of Assyria.

I implore you

"I beg of you"

from his power

"from the power of the King of Assyria" or "from the armies of the King of Assyria"

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- hand
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue
- earth, earthen, earthly
- kingdom
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- our God
- truly God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- from the power of the king of Assyria
- rescue us
- the kingdoms of the world
- the kingdoms of the world
- may know

ULT

19 Now then, Yahweh our God, save us, I implore you, from his power, so that all the kingdoms of the earth may know that you, Yahweh, are God alone."

UST

19 So now, Yahweh our God, please rescue us from the power of the king of Assyria, in order that the people in all the kingdoms of the world may know that you, Yahweh, are the only one who is truly God."

2 Kings 19:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Then Isaiah
- the God
- Yahweh
- the God
- of Assyria
- the king

ULT

²⁰ Then Isaiah son of Amoz sent a message to Hezekiah, saying, "Yahweh, the God of Israel says, 'Because you have prayed to me concerning Sennacherib king of Assyria, I have heard you.

UST

²⁰ [Then Isaiah](#) sent this message to Hezekiah to tell him what [Yahweh, the God](#) to whom the Israelites belonged, said in response: "I have heard what you prayed to me about Sennacherib, [the king of Assyria](#).

2 Kings 19:21

The virgin daughter of Zion

“Virgin daughter” here is a metaphor for the people of Jerusalem as if they are young, vibrant and beautiful. The term “daughter” was used to give personal characteristics to cities by some biblical writers. Alternate translation: “The beautiful people of Jerusalem” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Personification](#))

The virgin daughter of Zion despises you and laughs you to scorn. The daughter of Jerusalem shakes her head at you.

Both of these sentences intend to give the same meaning. (See: [Parallelism](#))

The daughter of Jerusalem

“Daughter” is metaphor for the people of Jerusalem. Alternate translation: “The people of the city of Jerusalem” (See: [Metaphor](#))

shakes her head at you

This action is a metaphor to represent disdain at the pride of the Assyrians. Alternate translation: “scorns you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Zion, Mount Zion
- Jerusalem
- head
- virgin, virginity

Translation Words - UST

- I say
- of Jerusalem
- The people
- their heads...to mock you
- of Jerusalem

ULT

²¹ This is the word that Yahweh has spoken about him: “The virgin daughter of Zion despises you and laughs you to scorn. The daughter of Jerusalem shakes her head at you.

UST

²¹ This is what [I say](#) to that king: [The people of Jerusalem](#) despise you and make fun of you. They wag [their heads to mock you](#).

2 Kings 19:22

Whom have you defied and insulted? Against whom have you exalted your voice and lifted up your eyes in pride? Against the Holy One of Israel!

Yahweh uses rhetorical questions to rebuke Sennacherib. Alternate translation: "You have defied and insulted me! You have exalted your voice and lifted up your eyes in pride against me, the Holy One of Israel!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

lifted up your eyes in pride

"lifted up your eyes in pride" is metonymy for a haughty or arrogant facial expression. Alternate translation: "looked at very proudly" (See: [Metonymy](#))

the Holy One of Israel

An expression for the God of Israel, Yahweh.

Translation Words - ULT

- [holy, holiness, unholy, sacred](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [It was I, the holy God whom](#)
- [the Israelites worship](#)
- [you were despising](#)

ULT

²² Whom have you defied and insulted? Against whom have you exalted your voice and lifted up your eyes in pride? Against the Holy One of Israel!

UST

²² Who do you think that [you were despising](#) and ridiculing? Who do you think you were shouting at? Who do you think you were looking at very proudly? [It was I, the holy God whom the Israelites worship.](#)

2 Kings 19:23

General Information:

This continues the message from Yahweh given by Isaiah, the prophet, to King Hezekiah concerning King Sennacherib. It uses parallelism throughout. (See: [Parallelism](#))

you have defied the Lord

To “defy” is to openly resist or mock.

I have gone up...I will cut down...I will enter

These boasts made by Sennacherib could only be fulfilled by his army. The pronoun “I” represents him and his army. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- hand
- shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach
- cut off
- cedar, cedarwood
- messenger

Translation Words - UST

- made fun of me
- The messengers
- made fun of me
- We have cut down
- and its best...trees
- The messengers

ULT

²³ By your messengers you have defied the Lord, and have said, ‘With the multitude of my chariots I have gone up to the heights of the mountains, to the highest elevations of Lebanon. I will cut down the tall cedars and the choice cypress trees there. I will enter into its farthest parts, its most fruitful forest.

UST

²³ [The messengers](#) whom you sent [made fun of me](#). You said, ‘With my many chariots I have gone to the highest mountains, to the highest mountains in Lebanon. [We have cut down](#) its tallest cedar trees [and its best cedar trees](#). We have been to the most distant peaks and to its densest forests.

2 Kings 19:24

I dried up all the rivers of Egypt under the soles of my feet.

This is a boast that Sennacherib has so many soldiers that their feet dry up the water when they cross a river. This is an exaggeration to emphasize the great number of soldiers he has. Alternate translation: "And by marching through the streams of Egypt, we dried them all up!" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

ULT

²⁴ I have dug wells and have drunk foreign waters. I dried up all the rivers of Egypt under the soles of my feet.'

UST

²⁴ We have dug wells in other countries and drunk water from them. And by marching through the streams of Egypt, we dried them all up!'

2 Kings 19:25

General Information:

This continues the message from Yahweh, given by Isaiah, the prophet, for King Hezekiah concerning King Sennacherib. It uses parallelism throughout. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Have you not heard how...times?

To make the point strongly this question assumes the listener knows the answer. Alternate translation: "Surely you know how...times." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

impregnable cities

"cities that cannot be captured" or "cities surrounded by high walls"

ULT

25 Have you not heard how I determined it long ago, and worked it out in ancient times? Now I am bringing it to pass. You are here to reduce impregnable cities into heaps of ruins.

UST

25 But I reply, 'Have you never heard that long ago I planned that those things would happen? I planned it long ago, and now I have been causing it to occur. I planned that your army would have the power to capture many cities that were surrounded by high walls, and cause them to become piles of rubble.'

2 Kings 19:26

plants in the field, green grass

This metaphor compares the weak victims of the Assyrian advance to fragile plants. Alternate translation: “as frail as plants and grass in the fields” or “as weak as shallow rooted plants” (See: [Metaphor](#))

the grass on the roof or in the field, burned before it has grown up

This continues the metaphor comparing the weak victims of the Assyrian advance to fragile plants in difficult conditions for growing fully. Alternate translation: “like grass before it has matured” or “like grass before it has grown tall” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [courage](#), [courageous](#), [encourage](#), [encouragement](#), [discourage](#), [discouragement](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [have no power](#)
- [and as a result...and discouraged](#)

ULT

²⁶ Their inhabitants, of little strength, are shattered and ashamed. They are plants in the field, green grass, the grass on the roof or in the field, burned before it has grown up.

UST

²⁶ The people who lived in those cities [have no power](#), [and as a result](#) they became dismayed [and discouraged](#). They are as frail as plants and grass in the fields, as frail as grass that grows on the roofs of houses and is scorched before it can grow tall.

2 Kings 19:27

General Information:

This continues the message from Yahweh, given by Isaiah, the prophet, for King Hezekiah concerning King Sennacherib. It uses parallelism throughout. (See: [Parallelism](#))

raging against me

“angry shouting about me”

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [tremble](#), [stagger](#)
- [know](#), [knowledge](#), [unknown](#), [distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [But I know everything about you...I know when you are in your house](#)
- [raging against](#)
- [I also know that](#)

ULT

²⁷ But I know your sitting down, your going out, your coming in, and your raging against me.

UST

²⁷ [But I know everything about you. I know when you are in your house](#) and when you go outside; [I also know that](#) you are [raging against](#) me.

2 Kings 19:28

because your arrogance has reached my ears

“Ears” are metonymy for listening or hearing. Alternate translation: “because I have heard your proud words” (See: [Metonymy](#))

I will put my hook in your nose, and my bit in your mouth

A “hook” and a “bit” (to control a horse) are metaphors for Yahweh’s control of Sennacherib. Alternate translation: “I will lead you like an animal” (See: [Metaphor](#))

I will turn you back the way you came

That Sennacherib will return home before he can conquer Jerusalem can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “I will make you return to your own country the same way you came, without conquering Jerusalem” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#), [appointed](#)
- [tremble](#), [stagger](#)
- [return](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and I will put an iron bit](#)
- [raged against me](#)
- [I can take you where I want you to go. I will force you to return to your own country](#)

ULT

28 Because of your raging against me, and because your arrogance has reached my ears, I will put my hook in your nose, and my bit in your mouth; I will turn you back the way you came.”

UST

28 So, because you have [raged against me](#), and because I have heard you do this, it will be as though I will put a hook in your nose, [and I will put an iron bit](#) in your mouth, in order that I can take you where I want you to go. I will force you to return to your own country on the same road on which you came here, without conquering Jerusalem.’

2 Kings 19:29

General Information:

Here Isaiah is talking to King Hezekiah. He continues using parallelism throughout. (See: [Parallelism](#))

grows wild

“grows without having been planted”

Translation Words - ULT

- fruit, fruitful, unfruitful
- devour
- devour
- vineyard

Translation Words - UST

- the grapes
- harvest
- and eat
- vineyards

ULT

29 This will be the sign for you: This year you will eat what grows wild, and in the second year what grows from that. But in the third year you must plant and harvest, plant vineyards and eat their fruit.

UST

29 Now I say this to Hezekiah: ‘This is what will happen to prove that I am telling the truth: This year and next year you and your people will be able to [harvest](#) only wild grain. But the following year, you Israelites will be able to plant grain and harvest it, and to plant [vineyards and eat the grapes](#).

2 Kings 19:30

The remnant of the house of Judah that survives will again take root and bear fruit

This metaphor compares restoration of the remnant to plantings that take hold and produce results. Alternate translation: “The people of Judah who remain alive will restore their lives and prosperity” or “The people who remain in Judah will prosper and have many children” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)
- [fruit](#), [fruitful](#), [unfruitful](#)
- [deliver](#), [deliverer](#), [deliverance](#), [hand over](#), [turn over](#), [released](#), [rescue](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The people in Judah](#)
- [and which...much fruit](#)
- [who remain alive will prosper...many children](#)
- [who remain alive will prosper...many children](#)

ULT

³⁰ The remnant of the house of Judah that survives will again take root and bear fruit.

UST

³⁰ [The people in Judah who remain alive will prosper](#) and have [many children](#); they will be like plants whose roots go deep down into the ground [and which](#) produce [much fruit](#).

2 Kings 19:31

The zeal of Yahweh of hosts will do this

"The strong action of Yahweh will make this happen"

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- remnant
- Zion, Mount Zion
- Jerusalem
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- I, Yahweh
- who will remain alive
- in Jerusalem
- There will be many people
- There will be many people

ULT

31 For from Jerusalem a remnant will come out, from Mount Zion survivors will come. The zeal of Yahweh of hosts will do this.

UST

31 There will be many people in Jerusalem who will remain alive, because I, Yahweh, commander of the armies, have planned it to happen.

2 Kings 19:32

General Information:

This is the end of the message from Yahweh, spoken through the prophet Isaiah to King Hezekiah. It uses parallelism throughout. (See: [Parallelism](#))

nor shoot an arrow here

“Arrow” is metonymy representing all tools of warfare and destruction. Alternate translation: “nor do any fighting here” (See: [Metonymy](#))

or build up a siege ramp against it

“and they will not even build up high mounds of earth against the city wall to enable them to attack the city”

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- I, Yahweh
- Assyria
- the king of

ULT

³² Therefore Yahweh says this about the king of Assyria: “He will not come into this city nor shoot an arrow here. Neither will he come before it with shield or build up a siege ramp against it.

UST

³² So this is what [I, Yahweh](#), say about [the king of Assyria](#): “His armies will not enter this city; they will not even shoot any arrows into it. His soldiers will not march outside the city gates carrying shields, and they will not even build high mounds of earth against the city walls to enable them to attack the city.

2 Kings 19:33

this is Yahweh's declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. Alternate translation: "this is what Yahweh has declared" or "this is what I, Yahweh, have declared" (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [I, Yahweh, have](#)
- [Their king will return...his own country](#)

ULT

³³ The way by which he came will be the same way he will leave; he will not enter this city— this is Yahweh's declaration."

UST

³³ [Their king will return](#) to [his own country](#) on the same road on which he came here. He will not enter this city. That will happen because [I, Yahweh,](#) [have](#) said it!

2 Kings 19:34

for my own sake and for my servant David's sake

"for the sake of my own reputation and because of what I promised to King David, who served me well"

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [King David, who served](#)
- [me well](#)

ULT

34 For I will defend this city and rescue it, for my own sake and for my servant David's sake."

UST

34 I will defend this city and prevent it from being destroyed. I will do this for the sake of my own reputation and because of what I promised to King David, who served [me well](#)."

2 Kings 19:35

It came about

"It happened"

185,000 soldiers

"one hundred eighty-five thousand soldiers" (See: [Numbers](#))

When the men arose

"When the men who were left alive got up"

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#)
- [messenger](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [went out](#)
- [That night...from Yahweh](#)
- [Assyria](#)
- [an angel](#)

ULT

³⁵ It came about that night that the angel of Yahweh went out and attacked the camp of the Assyrians, putting to death 185,000 soldiers. When the men arose early in the morning, dead bodies lay everywhere.

UST

³⁵ [That night, an angel from Yahweh went out](#) to where the army of [Assyria](#) had put up their tents, and killed 185,000 of their soldiers. When the rest of the soldiers woke up the next morning, they saw that there were corpses everywhere.

2 Kings 19:36

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- king, kingdom, kingship
- return

Translation Words - UST

- of Assyria
- the
- and went home

ULT

³⁶ So Sennacherib king of Assyria left Israel and went home and stayed in Nineveh.

UST

³⁶ Then King Sennacherib left [and went home](#) to Nineveh, [the](#) capital [of Assyria](#).

2 Kings 19:37

Adrammelek...Sharezer...Esarhaddon

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [save, saved, safe, salvation](#)
- [son](#)
- [God](#)
- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [sword, swordsmen](#)
- [reign, rule](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [escaped and went](#)
- [And another of Sennacherib's sons](#)
- [his god](#)
- [worshiping](#)
- [with their swords](#)
- [the king of Assyria](#)
- [to the region](#)
- [temple of](#)

ULT

³⁷ Later, as he was worshiping in the house of Nisrok his god, his sons Adrammelek and Sharezer killed him with the sword. Then they escaped into the land of Ararat. Then Esarhaddon his son became king in his place.

UST

³⁷ One day, when he was [worshiping](#) in the [temple of his god](#) Nisrok, his two sons, Adrammelek and Sharezer, killed him [with their swords](#). Then they [escaped and went to the region](#) of Ararat, northwest of Nineveh. [And another of Sennacherib's sons](#), Esarhaddon, became [the king of Assyria](#).

2 Kings 20

2 Kings 20 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter finishes the story of Hezekiah.

Special concepts in this chapter

Hezekiah's additional time

God hears the distressed call of his faithful believers. Hezekiah was dying but when he prayed, God gave him 15 more years of life. (See: [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [unfaithful](#), [unfaithfulness](#), [trustworthy](#) and [believe](#), [believer](#), [belief](#), [unbeliever](#), [unbelief](#))

2 Kings 20:1

Set your house in order

“House” is metonymy for what was under Hezekiah’s control.

Alternate translation: “Give final instructions to your household and government” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- command, commandment
- son
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- house

Translation Words - UST

- to recover from this illness
- Yahweh says
- Isaiah
- the prophet
- Yahweh says
- He thought that he was about to die
- You should tell the people in your palace

ULT

¹ In those days Hezekiah was sick to the point of dying. So Isaiah son of Amoz, the prophet came to him, and said to him, “Yahweh says, ‘Set your house in order; for you will die, and not live.’”

UST

¹ About that time, Hezekiah became very ill. [He thought that he was about to die](#). [Isaiah the prophet](#) came to him and said, “This is what [Yahweh says](#): ‘[You should tell the people in your palace](#) what you want them to do after you die, because you are not going [to recover from this illness](#). You are going to die.’”

2 Kings 20:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- face, facial

Translation Words - UST

- and prayed this
- and prayed this
- face

ULT

² Then Hezekiah turned his face to the wall and prayed to Yahweh, saying,

UST

² Hezekiah turned his [face](#) toward the wall [and prayed this](#):

2 Kings 20:3

call to mind

This is a common way of speaking, an idiom, urging Yahweh to remember. Alternate translation: "remember" (See: [Idiom](#))

walked

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "lived my life" (See: [Idiom](#))

good in your sight

Here sight represents judgment or evaluation. Alternate translation: "in your judgment" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- pray, prayer
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- that I have...and I

ULT

³ "Please, Yahweh, call to mind how I have faithfully walked before you with my whole heart, and how I have done what was good in your sight." Then Hezekiah wept loudly.

UST

³ "[Yahweh](#), do not forget [that I have](#) always served you faithfully with all my inner being, [and I](#) have done things that pleased you." Then Hezekiah started to cry loudly.

2 Kings 20:4

the word of Yahweh came

“Word” represents the message Yahweh revealed to Isaiah. This is a common way of speaking, an idiom. Alternate translation: “Yahweh spoke his word” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [the middle courtyard of the palace](#)

ULT

⁴ Before Isaiah had gone out into the middle courtyard, the word of Yahweh came to him, saying,

UST

⁴ Isaiah left the king, but before he had crossed [the middle courtyard of the palace](#), [Yahweh](#) gave him a message.

2 Kings 20:5

I have heard your prayer, and I have seen your tears

The second part reinforces the first part to make one message by using parallelism. Alternate translation: "I have heard your prayers and seen your tears" (See: [Parallelism](#))

on the third day

"two days from now" The day Isaiah said this was the first day, so "the third day" would be the same as "two days from now."

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- pray, prayer
- David
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- people, people group,
- house

Translation Words - UST

- the God whom
- I, Yahweh
- I am going to
- Go back
- you prayed
- King David worshiped
- your ancestor
- of my people, and say
- my temple

ULT

⁵ "Turn back, and say to Hezekiah, the leader of my people, 'This is what Yahweh, the God of David your ancestor, says: "I have heard your prayer, and I have seen your tears. I am about to heal you on the third day, and you will go up to the house of Yahweh.

UST

⁵ He said, "[Go back](#) to Hezekiah, the ruler [of my people, and say](#) to him, '[I, Yahweh, the God whom your ancestor King David worshiped](#), have heard what [you prayed](#). And I have seen your tears. So, listen, [I am going to](#) heal you. Two days from now you will be able to go up to [my temple](#).

2 Kings 20:6

General Information:

The message from Yahweh to King Hezekiah through the prophet Isaiah continues.

fifteen years

15 years (See: [Numbers](#))

from the hand of the king of Assyria

“Hand” is metonymy for power, authority and control. Alternate translation: “from the control of the king of Assyria” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [David](#)
- [Assyria](#), [Assyrian](#), [Assyrian Empire](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [King David](#), [who served](#)
- [of Assyria](#)
- [the king](#)
- [me well](#)

ULT

⁶ I will add fifteen years to your life, and I will rescue you and this city from the hand of the king of Assyria, and I will defend this city for my own sake and for my servant David's sake.'"

UST

⁶ I will enable you to live for fifteen more years. And I will rescue you and this city again from the power of [the king of Assyria](#). I will defend this city for the sake of my own reputation and because of what I promised [King David, who served me well](#)."

2 Kings 20:7

lump of figs

"paste made of boiled figs"

They did so and put it on his boil

"Hezekiah's servants did this and put the paste on Hezekiah's sore"

Translation Words - ULT

- [life, live, living, alive](#)
- [appoint, appointed](#)
- [fig](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [he will get well](#)
- [Put some of it](#)
- [made of boiled figs](#)

ULT

⁷ So Isaiah said, "Take a lump of figs." They did so and put it on his boil, and he recovered.

UST

⁷ Isaiah returned to the palace and told Hezekiah what Yahweh had said. Then he said to Hezekiah's servants, "Bring a paste [made of boiled figs](#). [Put some of it](#) on his boils, and [he will get well](#)." The servants did that, and the king recovered.

2 Kings 20:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [sign, proof, reminder](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to prove](#)
- [will Yahweh do](#)
- [will be able to](#)
- [to the temple](#)

ULT

⁸ Hezekiah said to Isaiah, "What will be the sign that Yahweh will heal me, and that I should go up to the temple of Yahweh on the third day?"

UST

⁸ Then Hezekiah replied to Isaiah, "What [will Yahweh do to prove](#) that he will heal me and that two days from now I [will be able to](#) go up [to the temple](#)?"

2 Kings 20:9

Shall the shadow go forward ten steps, or go back ten steps?

The source of “the shadow” can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “Do you want Yahweh to make the shadow caused by the sunlight on the stairway to go forward ten steps or to go back ten steps?” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ten steps

This expression refers to the “stairway of Ahaz” in [2 Kings 20:11](#). This was probably a special stairway built for King Ahaz in such a way that its steps marked the hours of daylight as the sun’s rays advanced along them. In this way, the staircase served to tell the time during the day.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#) (2)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [walk, walked](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)
- [on the stairway to](#) (2)
- [go back](#)
- [go](#)

ULT

⁹ Isaiah replied, “This will be the sign for you from Yahweh, that Yahweh will do the thing that he has spoken. Shall the shadow go forward ten steps, or go back ten steps?”

UST

⁹ Isaiah replied, “[Yahweh](#) will do something that will prove to you that he will do what he promised. Do you want him to cause the shadow [on the stairway to go back](#) ten steps or to [go](#) forward ten steps?”

2 Kings 20:10

It is an easy thing for the shadow to go forward ten steps

Why "it is an easy thing" can be stated clearly. "It is easy to cause the shadow to move forward ten steps, because that is the normal thing for it to do" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [restore, restoration](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Aks Yahweh to make it move backward...on the stairway](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Hezekiah answered, "It is an easy thing for the shadow to go forward ten steps. No, let the shadow go backward ten steps."

UST

¹⁰ Hezekiah replied, "It is easy to for the shadow to move forward, because that is what it always does. [Aks Yahweh to make it move backward](#) ten steps [on the stairway](#) that King Ahaz ordered his servants to build."

2 Kings 20:11

the stairway of Ahaz

This was probably a special stairway built for King Ahaz in such a way that its steps marked the hours of daylight as the sun's rays advanced along them. In this way, the staircase served to tell the time during the day. Alternate translation: "the steps that had been built for King Ahaz" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh
- return
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- So Isaiah
- Yahweh
- and Yahweh caused the shadow to go backward
- prayed earnestly

ULT

11 So Isaiah the prophet cried out to Yahweh, and he brought the shadow ten steps backward, from where it had moved on the stairway of Ahaz.

UST

11 [So Isaiah prayed earnestly](#) to [Yahweh, and Yahweh caused the shadow to go backward](#) ten steps on the stairway of king Ahaz.

2 Kings 20:12

Marduk-Baladan...Baladan

These are the names of the king of Babylon and his son. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- king, kingdom, kingship
- grain offering

Translation Words - UST

- son of Baladan
- Babylonia
- previous king of
- along with a gift

ULT

¹² At that time Marduk-Baladan son of Baladan king of Babylon sent letters and a gift to Hezekiah, for he had heard that Hezekiah had been sick.

UST

¹² At that time, King Marduk-Baladan [son of Baladan](#), the [previous king of Babylonia](#), heard a report that King Hezekiah had been very sick. So he wrote some letters and gave them to some messengers to take to Hezekiah, [along with a gift](#).

2 Kings 20:13

listened to those letters

1) “carefully considered those letters” or 2) “heard the message from the king of Babylon”

There was nothing in his house, nor in all his kingdom, that Hezekiah did not show them

Here “There was nothing...did not show them” is an exaggeration used for emphasis. It means Hezekiah showed them all of his most valuable things. This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “Hezekiah showed him absolutely everything valuable in his house and in all his kingdom” (See: [Double Negatives](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- temple
- silver
- olive
- gold, golden
- house
- house (2)

Translation Words - UST

- the spices
- in...storerooms
- the silver
- olive oil
- and gold
- was in...palace...his
- for his soldiers (2)

ULT

13 Hezekiah listened to those letters, and then showed the messengers all the palace and his valuable things, the silver, the gold, the spices and precious oil, and the storehouse of his weapons, and all that was found in his storehouses. There was nothing in his house, nor in all his kingdom, that Hezekiah did not show them.

UST

13 When the messengers arrived, Hezekiah welcomed them gladly. Then he showed them all the treasure that was in his palace and treasuries—the silver and gold, the spices, the nice-smelling olive oil, and all the weapons for his soldiers. There were no valuable things in his storerooms or anywhere else in his kingdom that he did not show them.

2 Kings 20:14

these men

This refers to the men sent to King Hezekiah with a message and gifts from Marduk-Baladan.

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Then the prophet
- Babylonia
- Hezekiah

ULT

14 Then Isaiah the prophet came to King Hezekiah and asked him, "What did these men say to you? Where did they come from?" Hezekiah said, "They came from the distant country of Babylon."

UST

14 [Then the prophet](#) Isaiah went to [Hezekiah](#) and asked him, "Where did those men come from, and what did they say to you?" Hezekiah replied, "They came from a country very far from here. They came from [Babylonia](#)."

2 Kings 20:15

They have seen everything in my house. There is nothing among my valuable things that I have not shown them

Hezekiah repeats the same idea in two ways to emphasize his point. (See: [Hyperbole](#) and [Parallelism](#))

There is nothing among my valuable things that I have not shown them

“Nothing” and “not” cancel each other out to make the idea positive. This exaggeration is used for emphasis. Alternate translation: “I showed them absolutely every one of my valuable things” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- temple
- temple

Translation Words - UST

- palace
- all

ULT

¹⁵ Isaiah asked, “What have they seen in your house?” Hezekiah answered, “They have seen everything in my house. There is nothing among my valuable things that I have not shown them.”

UST

¹⁵ Isaiah asked, “What did they see in your [palace](#)?” Hezekiah replied, “They saw everything. I showed them absolutely everything that I own—[all](#) my valuable things.”

2 Kings 20:16

So Isaiah said to Hezekiah

Why Isaiah spoke can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “So, because Isaiah knew Hezekiah had been foolish to show the men all his valuable things, Isaiah said to him” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the word of Yahweh

“the message of Yahweh”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

16 So Isaiah said to Hezekiah, “Listen to the word of Yahweh:

UST

16 Isaiah knew that Hezekiah had done a very foolish thing. So Isaiah said to him, “Listen to what [Yahweh](#) says to you.

2 Kings 20:17

Look, the days are about to come when

"Listen to me, someday there will come a time when"; "Look" is used to draw attention to what Isaiah is about to tell Hezekiah.

the days

"Days" is synecdoche to refer to an undefined span of time. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- temple
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- what Yahweh
- your palace
- to Babylon
- put there by you and your ancestors

ULT

17 "Look, the days are about to come when everything in your palace, the things that your ancestors stored away until this present day, will be carried to Babylon. Nothing will be left, says Yahweh.

UST

17 There will be a time when everything that is still in [your palace](#), all the valuable things that were [put there by you and your ancestors](#), will be carried away [to Babylon](#). There will be nothing left here! That is [what Yahweh](#) says to you!

2 Kings 20:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- king, kingdom, kingship
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- own descendants will
- of Babylon
- of the king
- to go there

ULT

18 The sons born from you, whom you yourself have fathered—they will take them away, and they will become eunuchs in the palace of the king of Babylon.”

UST

18 Furthermore, some of your [own descendants will](#) be forced [to go there](#), and they will be castrated in order that they may become servants in the palace [of the king of Babylon.](#)”

2 Kings 20:19

For he thought

"Because Hezekiah thought"

Will there not be peace and stability in my days?

Hezekiah asks this question for emphasis knowing the answer already. Alternate translation: "I can be sure that there will be peace and stability in my days." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- true, truth
- Yahweh
- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers

Translation Words - UST

- and security in Israel
- Yahweh
- is good
- peace

ULT

¹⁹ Then Hezekiah said to Isaiah, "The word of Yahweh that you have spoken is good." For he thought, "Will there not be peace and stability in my days?"

UST

¹⁹ Then Hezekiah replied to Isaiah, "The message from [Yahweh](#) that you have given to me [is good](#)." He said that because he was thinking, "Even if that happens, there will be [peace and security in Israel](#) all during the remaining time that I remain alive."

2 Kings 20:20

pool

A small area of still water for storage

conduit

A tunnel for carrying the water

are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

This question is used to remind the reader that these things are recorded. See how this phrase is translated in [2 Kings 8:23](#). Alternate translation: “they are written in the book of the history of the kings of Judah.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Judah](#)
- [of the Kings](#)

ULT

²⁰ As for the other matters concerning Hezekiah, and all his power, and how he constructed the pool and the conduit, and how he brought water into the city—are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

UST

²⁰ If you want to know more about all the other things that Hezekiah did, about his brave deeds in battle, about how he commanded his people to build a reservoir in the city and a tunnel to be dug to bring water into the reservoir, they are all written in the book of the events [of the Kings of Judah](#).

2 Kings 20:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- reign, rule

Translation Words - UST

- and his son
- Later Hezekiah died
- the king

ULT

²¹ Hezekiah slept with his ancestors, and Manasseh his son became king in his place.

UST

²¹ Later Hezekiah died, and his son Manasseh became the king.

2 Kings 21

2 Kings 21 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

God's judgment

God judges sin. When Manasseh worshiped idols and did many evil things, God said he would cause Judah to be destroyed by its enemies. (See: [judge, judgment](#) and [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#) and [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Simile

"I will wipe Jerusalem clean, as a man wipes a dish, wiping it and turning it upside down" means "God would completely destroy Jerusalem." (See: [Simile](#))

2 Kings 21:1

Hephzibah

The mother of King Manasseh (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [twelve](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)

ULT

¹ Manasseh was twelve years old when he began to reign; he reigned fifty-five years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Hephzibah.

UST

¹ Manasseh was [twelve](#) years old when he began to rule. He ruled Judah for fifty-five years [in Jerusalem](#). His mother was Hephzibah.

2 Kings 21:2

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment or evaluation. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

like the disgusting things

Another possible meaning is "including the disgusting things."

Translation Words - ULT

- [abomination, abominable](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [evil, wicked, unpleasant](#)
- [nation](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [He imitated the disgusting things](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [that Yahweh](#)
- [that Yahweh](#)
- [of Israel](#)
- [evil](#)
- [formerly done by the people of the nations](#)

ULT

² He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh, like the disgusting things of the nations whom Yahweh had driven out before the people of Israel.

UST

² He did many things [that Yahweh](#) said were [evil](#). [He imitated the disgusting things](#) that were [formerly done by the people of the nations that Yahweh](#) had driven out from the land [of Israel](#) as his people advanced through the land.

2 Kings 21:3

he rebuilt the high places...he built altars for Baal, made an Asherah pole

Manasseh would have commanded his workers to do the building for him. Alternate translation: “he had the high places rebuilt...he had altars built for Baal, had an Asherah pole made” or “he had his workers rebuild the high places...he had them build altars for Baal, make an Asherah pole” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [altar](#)
- [perish](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [prostrate, worship](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [return](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the stars](#)
- [altars to offer sacrifices](#)
- [destroyed](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [And Manasseh worshiped](#)
- [his father](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [rebuild](#)

ULT

³ For he rebuilt the high places that Hezekiah his father had destroyed, and he built altars for Baal, made an Asherah pole, as Ahab king of Israel had done, and he bowed down to all the stars of heaven and worshiped them.

UST

³ He commanded his workers to [rebuild](#) the places of idol worship built on the hills. Those were the very high places that [his father](#) Hezekiah had [destroyed](#). He directed his workers to build [altars to offer sacrifices](#) of living creatures to Baal. Manasseh made a statue of the goddess Asherah, as Ahab [the king of Israel](#) had done previously. [And Manasseh worshiped the stars](#) and he served them.

2 Kings 21:4

General Information:

The story of King Manasseh's reign continues.

It is in Jerusalem that my name will be forever

The name is a metonym for the person. Alternate translation: "Jerusalem is where I will forever make known who I am" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- name
- temple
- Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- It is here
- Yahweh
- even though Yahweh had
- foreign gods in the
- temple of
- in Jerusalem

ULT

⁴ Manasseh built altars in the house of Yahweh, although Yahweh had commanded, "It is in Jerusalem that my name will be forever."

UST

⁴ He directed his workers to build altars for worshiping [foreign gods in the temple of Yahweh, even though Yahweh had](#) said, "[It is here in Jerusalem](#) where I want people to worship me, forever."

2 Kings 21:5

He built altars for all the stars of heaven in the two courtyards of the house of Yahweh

It is implied that he built these altars so people could make sacrifices and worship the stars. Also, he would not have built these altars himself, rather he would have commanded his workers to do it.

Alternate translation: "He had his workers build altars in the two courtyards of the house of Yahweh so that the people could worship the stars and offer them sacrifices" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [altar](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [He directed that...for worshiping the stars](#)
- [altars](#)
- [in the temple grounds](#)
- [in the temple grounds](#)

ULT

⁵ He built altars for all the stars of heaven in the two courtyards of the house of Yahweh.

UST

⁵ [He directed that altars for worshiping the stars](#) be built in both of the courtyards [in the temple grounds](#).

2 Kings 21:6

He caused his son to pass through the fire

You may need to make explicit why he caused his son be put into the fire and what happened after he did so. Alternate translation: "He burned his son to death as an offering to his gods" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

consulted with

"asked for information from"

much evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment or evaluation. See how you translated a similar phrase in [2 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: "many things that were evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "many things that Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Translation Words - UST

- He even sacrificed his own son
- that caused Yahweh to become
- that Yahweh said are extremely evil, things
- He also went
- and burned him in the fire

ULT

⁶ He caused his son to pass through the fire, he performed sorcery and divination and consulted with those who talked with the dead and with those who talked with spirits. He did much evil in the sight of Yahweh, provoking him to anger.

UST

⁶ [He even sacrificed his own son and burned him in the fire.](#) He performed rituals to practice sorcery and spells. [He also went](#) to people who consulted the spirits of dead people to find out what would happen in the future. He did many things [that Yahweh said are extremely evil, things that caused Yahweh to become](#) very angry.

2 Kings 21:7

General Information:

The story of King Manasseh's reign continues.

that he had made

Manasseh probably did not do the work. His servants would have done the work. Alternate translation: "that Manasseh had ordered his servants to make" (See: [Metonymy](#))

that I will put my name forever

Here Yahweh putting his "name" on the temple represents him designating it as the place to worship him. Alternate translation: "where I want people to worship me forever" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- appoint, appointed
- Yahweh
- name
- Israel, Israelites
- temple
- temple
- David
- Solomon
- Jerusalem
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Translation Words - UST

- son
- placed
- the place about which Yahweh
- He...the statue
- twelve...of Israel, where
- in the temple
- My temple will be here
- David and
- Solomon
- in Jerusalem
- tribes

ULT

⁷ The carved figure of Asherah that he had made, he placed it in the house of Yahweh. It was about this house that Yahweh had spoken to David and Solomon his son; he had said: "It is in this house and in Jerusalem, which I have chosen from all the tribes of Israel, that I will put my name forever.

UST

⁷ [He placed the statue](#) of the goddess Asherah [in the temple, the place about which Yahweh](#) had said to [David and his son Solomon](#), "[My temple will be here in Jerusalem](#)". This is the city that I have chosen from all the territory of the [twelve tribes of Israel, where](#) I want people to worship me forever.

2 Kings 21:8

the feet of Israel

The feet are a synecdoche for the person. Alternate translation: “the people of Israel” or “the Israelites” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [law of Moses](#), [God's law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [the law](#)
- [Israel](#), [Israelites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [watch](#), [watchman](#), [watchful](#), [guard](#), [take heed](#), [beware](#), [watch out](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [force them](#)
- [to their](#)
- [the laws](#)
- [the Israelite people](#)
- [I gave to Moses](#)
- [ancestors](#)
- [obey](#)
- [the man](#)

ULT

⁸ I will not cause the feet of Israel to wander any more out of the land that I gave to their ancestors, if they will only be careful to obey all that I have commanded them, and to follow all the law that my servant Moses commanded them.”

UST

⁸ And if [the Israelite people obey](#) all my commands and all [the laws](#) that [I gave to Moses](#), [the man](#) who served me very well, I will not again [force them](#) to leave this land that I gave [to their ancestors](#).”

2 Kings 21:9

even more than the nations that Yahweh had destroyed before the people of Israel

Here “nations” refers to the people who had lived in the land of Canaan before the Israelites had arrived. Alternate translation: “even more than the people whom Yahweh had destroyed as the people of Israel advanced through the land” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [nation](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [as the Israelite people](#)
- [Yahweh had driven from the land](#)
- [as the Israelite people](#)
- [the sins that were committed](#)

ULT

⁹ But the people did not listen, and Manasseh led them to do evil even more than the nations that Yahweh had destroyed before the people of Israel.

UST

⁹ But the people did not pay attention to Yahweh. Manasseh persuaded them to commit sins that were more evil than [the sins that were committed](#) by the people of the nations that [Yahweh had driven from the land as the Israelite people](#) advanced.

2 Kings 21:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh
- hand
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- said through his prophets
- These are some of the things that Yahweh
- said through his prophets
- said through his prophets

ULT

¹⁰ So Yahweh spoke by his servants the prophets, saying,

UST

¹⁰ [These are some of the things that Yahweh said through his prophets.](#)

Many times Yahweh had given them these messages:

2 Kings 21:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- abomination, abominable
- Judea
- Judea
- Amorite
- afflict, affliction, distress
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- to sin against Yahweh
- abominable
- of Judah
- of Judah
- Amor people group
- ago
- the king

ULT

11 "Because Manasseh king of Judah has done these disgusting things, and has acted wickedly more than all that the Amorites who were before him did, and has also made Judah sin with his idols,

UST

11 "Manasseh, [the king of Judah](#), has done these [abominable](#) things, things that are much worse than the things that the [Amor people group](#) did in this land long [ago](#). He has lead the people [of Judah to sin against Yahweh](#) by worshiping the idols that he worshiped.

2 Kings 21:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Judah
- Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- the God
- I, Yahweh
- the God
- It will be terrible
- and the rest of Judah
- to Jerusalem

ULT

¹² therefore Yahweh, the God of Israel, says this: Look, I am about to bring such evil on Jerusalem and Judah that whoever hears of it, both his ears will tingle.

UST

¹² Therefore, this is what I, Yahweh, the God whom you Israelite people worship, says to you: I am about to cause disaster to come to Jerusalem and the rest of Judah. It will be terrible, with the result that everyone who hears about it will be stunned.

2 Kings 21:13

stretch over Jerusalem the measuring line used against Samaria, and the plumb line used against the house of Ahab

The words “measuring line” and “plumb line” are metaphors for the standards Yahweh uses to judge people. Alternate translation: “judge Jerusalem using the same measure I used when I judged Samaria and the house of Ahab” (See: [Metaphor](#))

against Samaria

Samaria is the capital city and it represents all the people of the kingdom of Israel. Alternate translation: “against the people of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

plumb line

a tool made of a heavy weight and a thin rope used to show if a wall is straight

the house of Ahab

Here “house” represents family. Alternate translation: “the family of Ahab” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Samaria, Samaritan
- Jerusalem
- Jerusalem
- blot out, wipe out
- blot out, wipe out
- face, facial
- house

Translation Words - UST

- I will judge and punish the people of Jerusalem
- I will judge and punish the people of Jerusalem
- I will remove the people of Jerusalem
- as people wipe
- a...clean
- to show
- as I punished the family of

ULT

¹³ I will stretch over Jerusalem the measuring line used against Samaria, and the plumb line used against the house of Ahab; I will wipe Jerusalem clean, as a man wipes a dish, wiping it and turning it upside down.

UST

¹³ [I will judge and punish the people of Jerusalem as I punished the family of King Ahab of Israel. I will remove the people of Jerusalem as people wipe a plate clean](#) and then turn it upside down [to show](#) that they are now satisfied.

2 Kings 21:14

I will throw off

"I will abandon" or "I will reject"

give them into the hand of their enemies

Here the "hand" of the enemies refers to their enemies' control.
Alternate translation: "let their enemies defeat them and take over their land" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- inherit, inheritance, heir
- remnant
- hand
- adversary, enemy
- adversary, enemy

Translation Words - UST

- their land
- And I will abandon the people who remain alive
- enemies...and steal everything valuable from
- enemies...and steal everything valuable from
- enemies...and steal everything valuable from

ULT

14 I will throw off the remnant of my inheritance and give them into the hand of their enemies. They will become victims and plunder for all their enemies,

UST

14 And I will abandon the people who remain alive, and I will allow their enemies to conquer them and steal everything valuable from their land.

2 Kings 21:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Egypt, Egyptian
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Translation Words - UST

- very evil, things which
- Egypt
- their ancestors
- left

ULT

¹⁵ because they have done what is evil in my sight, and have provoked me to anger, since the day their ancestors came out of Egypt, to this day.”

UST

¹⁵ I will do this because my people have done things that I say are very evil, things which have caused me to become very angry. They have caused me to become angry continually, ever since the time that their ancestors left Egypt.”

2 Kings 21:16

Moreover, Manasseh

“Also, Manasseh” or “In addition, Manasseh”

Manasseh shed much innocent blood

The words “shed much innocent blood” are a metonym for killing people violently. It might be best to translate this so the reader understands that other people helped Manasseh do this. Alternate translation: “Manasseh ordered his soldiers to kill many innocent people” (See: [Metonymy](#))

he had filled Jerusalem from one end to another with death

This hyperbole emphasizes the great number of people Manasseh had killed throughout Jerusalem. The abstract noun “death” can be stated as “dead people.” Alternate translation: “there were very many dead people throughout Jerusalem” (See: [Hyperbole](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh’s judgment or evaluation. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: “what was evil in Yahweh’s judgment” or “what Yahweh considers to be evil” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- innocent
- blood
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Judea
- Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- to do
- innocent
- kill
- Yahweh
- evil
- the people of Judah
- in Jerusalem, with the result

ULT

16 Moreover, Manasseh shed much innocent blood, until he had filled Jerusalem from one end to another with death. This was in addition to the sin by which he made Judah to sin, when they did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh.

UST

16 Manasseh commanded his officials to [kill](#) many [innocent](#) people [in Jerusalem](#), [with the result](#) that their blood flowed in the streets. He did this in addition to persuading [the people of Judah to do](#) many things that [Yahweh](#) said were [evil](#).

2 Kings 21:17

are they not written...Judah?

This can be expressed in active form and assumes that the answer is positive. The question is rhetorical and is used for emphasis. See how this phrase is translated in [2 Kings 8:23](#). Alternate translation: “they are written...Judah.” or “you can find them...Judah.” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [sin, sinful, sinner, sinning](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and the sin that he committed](#)
- [and the sin that he committed](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [the events of the Kings of](#)

ULT

17 As for the other matters concerning Manasseh, all that he did, and the sin that he committed, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

UST

17 If you want to know more about all the things that Manasseh did, [and the sin that he committed](#), they are written in the book of [the events of the Kings of Judah](#).

2 Kings 21:18

slept with his ancestors and

This is a polite way of saying he “died, as his ancestors had, and” (See: [Euphemism](#))

the garden of Uzza

Possible meanings are 1) “the garden that had once belonged to a man named Uzza” or 2) “Uzza Garden.” (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Amon

This is a man’s name (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)
- [reign, rule](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then his son](#)
- [Manasseh](#)
- [the king](#)
- [garden outside his palace, the garden that](#)

ULT

18 Manasseh slept with his ancestors and was buried in the garden of his own house, in the garden of Uzza. Amon his son became king in his place.

UST

18 [Manasseh](#) died and was buried in the [garden outside his palace, the garden that](#) Uzza had made. [Then his son](#) Amon became [the king](#).

2 Kings 21:19

Amon...Haruz

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Meshullemeth

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Jotbah

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [was twenty-two](#)
- [from Jerusalem](#)

ULT

¹⁹ Amon was twenty-two years old when he began to reign; he reigned two years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Meshullemeth; she was the daughter of Haruz of Jotbah.

UST

¹⁹ Amon [was twenty-two](#) years old when he became king. He ruled Judah [from Jerusalem](#) for only two years. His mother's name was Meshullemeth. She was from the city of Jotbah, and was the daughter of Haruz.

2 Kings 21:20

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment or evaluation. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- evil, as
- his father

ULT

²⁰ He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh, as Manasseh his father had done.

UST

²⁰ He did many things that [Yahweh](#) said were [evil, as his father](#) Manasseh had done.

2 Kings 21:21

followed in all the way that his father had walked in

“walked in all the ways that his father walked in.” The way a person lives is spoken of as if that person were walking on a path. Alternate translation: “lived completely the way his father had lived” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [prostrate](#), [worship](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)
- [walk](#), [walked](#)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [his father had worshiped](#)
- [his father](#)
- [his father had worshiped](#)
- [his father](#)
- [his father had worshiped](#)

ULT

²¹ Amon followed in all the way that his father had walked in and worshiped the idols that his father worshiped, and bowed down to them.

UST

²¹ He imitated the behavior of [his father](#), and he worshiped the same idols that [his father had worshiped](#).

2 Kings 21:22

He abandoned Yahweh

“He went away from Yahweh” or “He paid no more attention to Yahweh”

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- walk, walked

Translation Words - UST

- God whom
- He abandoned Yahweh, the
- as Yahweh
- his ancestors
- had worshiped, and did...behave

ULT

²² He abandoned Yahweh, the God of his fathers, and did not walk in the way of Yahweh.

UST

²² He abandoned Yahweh, the God whom his ancestors had worshiped, and did not behave as Yahweh wanted him to behave.

2 Kings 21:23

conspired against him

“made plans and worked together to harm him”

Translation Words - ULT

- temple
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- palace
- made plans to kill
- the
- Then one day some of his officials

ULT

²³ The servants of Amon conspired against him and put the king to death in his own house.

UST

²³ Then one day some of his officials made plans to kill him. They assassinated him in the palace.

2 Kings 21:24

the people of the land

This is a generalization. Alternate translation: “some of the people in Judah” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

conspired against

“made plans and worked together to harm.” See how you translated this in [2 Kings 21:23](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- people, people group,
- people, people group, (2)
- reign, rule
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- son
- But then the people of
- and they (2)
- King Amon
- King Amon
- Judah
- and they

ULT

24 But the people of the land killed all those who had conspired against King Amon, and they made Josiah his son king in his place.

UST

24 [But then the people of Judah](#) killed all those who had assassinated [King Amon](#), [and they](#) appointed his [son](#) Josiah to be their king.

2 Kings 21:25

are they not written...Judah?

This can be expressed in active form and assumes that the answer is positive. The question is rhetorical and is used for emphasis. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 8:23](#). Alternate translation: “they are written...Judah.” or “you can find them...Judah.” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Judah](#)
- [events of the Kings](#)

ULT

²⁵ As for the other matters concerning Amon that he did, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

UST

²⁵ If you want to read about the other things that Amon did, they are written in the book of the [events of the Kings of Judah](#).

2 Kings 21:26

the garden of Uzza

Possible meanings are 1) “the garden that had once belonged to a man named Uzza” or 2) “Uzza Garden.” See how you translated this in [2 Kings 21:18](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [reign, rule](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Then his son](#)
- [the king](#)

ULT

²⁶ The people buried him in his tomb in the garden of Uzza, and Josiah his son became king in his place.

UST

²⁶ Amon was also buried in the tomb in the garden that Uzza had made. [Then his son](#) Josiah became [the king](#).

2 Kings 22

2 Kings 22 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The next two chapters (2 Kings 22-23) tell about the spiritual revival under King Josiah. A revival occurs when the people begin to worship Yahweh properly again. (See: [spirit](#), [spiritual](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

The law

The priests found a copy of the law in the temple and took it to the king. He was upset because the people had disobeyed the law so badly. Josiah asked God about it. God said that he would destroy Judah for these sins but not in Josiah's lifetime, since he humbled himself and wanted to do better. Many scholars believe this was a copy of the book of Deuteronomy. (See: [priest](#), [priesthood](#), [law of Moses](#), [God's law](#), [law of Yahweh](#), [the law](#) and [temple](#) and [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

2 Kings 22:1

thirty-one years

"31 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

Jedidah

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Adaiah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bozkath

This is the name of a town in Judah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [eight](#)
- [from Jerusalem](#)

ULT

¹ Josiah was eight years old when he began to reign; he reigned thirty-one years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Jedidah (she was the daughter of Adaiah of Bozkath).

UST

¹ Josiah was [eight](#) years old when he became the king of Judah. He ruled [from Jerusalem](#) for thirty-one years. His mother was Jedidah and his grandfather was Adaiah from the city of Bozkath.

2 Kings 22:2

He did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh

Here “eyes” represents Yahweh’s thoughts or what he considered about something. Alternate translation: “He did what Yahweh considered to be right” or “He did what was right according to Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

He walked in all the way of David his ancestor

“He walked in all the ways of David his ancestor” Josiah behaving as David did is spoken of as if he walked on the same road or way as David. Alternate translation: “He lived the way David his ancestor had lived” or “He followed the example of David his ancestor” (See: [Metaphor](#))

he did not turn away either to the right or to the left

To fully obey Yahweh is spoken of as if a person were on the correct road and never turned from it. Alternate translation: “he did not do anything that would displease Yahweh” or “he fully obeyed all the laws of Yahweh” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [David](#)
- [ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [pleasing to Yahweh](#)
- [King David had done](#)
- [and conducted his life as his ancestor](#)

ULT

² He did what was right in the eyes of Yahweh. He walked in all the way of David his ancestor, and he did not turn away either to the right or to the left.

UST

² Josiah did things that were [pleasing to Yahweh and conducted his life as his ancestor King David had done](#). He fully obeyed all the laws of God.

2 Kings 22:3

It came about that

If your language has a way to mark the beginning of a new part of the story, consider using it here.

the eighteenth year

“Eighteenth” is the ordinal form of 18. Alternate translation: “year 18” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Shaphan...Azaliah...Meshullam

These are men’s names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- scribe
- son
- son
- Yahweh
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

Translation Words - UST

- with these
- son of
- and grandson of Meshullam
- temple
- After Josiah
- his
- to the

ULT

³ It came about that in the eighteenth year of King Josiah, he sent Shaphan son of Azaliah son of Meshullam, the scribe, to the house of Yahweh, saying,

UST

³ [After Josiah](#) had been ruling for almost eighteen years, he sent [his](#) secretary Shaphan [son of](#) Azaliah [and grandson of Meshullam, to the temple with these](#) instructions:

2 Kings 22:4

Go up to Hilkiah

The phrase “Go up” is used because Yahweh’s temple was higher in elevation than where King Josiah was located. Alternate translation: “Go to Hilkiah”

Hilkiah

This is a man’s name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

that has been brought into the house of Yahweh, which the temple guards have gathered from the people

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that the temple guards who gathered the money from the people brought into the temple of Yahweh” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

house of Yahweh

This is another name for the “temple” (verse 3).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [silver](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting](#)
- [threshold, doorway](#)
- [watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of the temple](#)
- [the high priest, and](#)
- [how much money the men](#)
- [the people as offerings](#)
- [have collected](#)
- [the doors](#)
- [guard](#)
- [of the temple](#)

ULT

4 “Go up to Hilkiah the high priest and tell him to count the money that has been brought into the house of Yahweh, which the temple guards have gathered from the people.

UST

4 “Go to Hilkiah, [the high priest, and](#) tell him to give me a report, telling me [how much money the men](#) who [guard the doors of the temple have collected](#) from [the people as offerings](#).

2 Kings 22:5

house of Yahweh...in the temple

Here “house of Yahweh” and “temple” mean the same thing.

Let it be given into the hand of the workmen

Here “hand” represents the workmen as a whole. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Tell Hilkiah to give the money to the workmen” (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [temple](#)
- [temple](#)
- [hand](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [temple](#)
- [the work of repairing the](#)
- [to the](#)
- [men](#)
- [all that money](#)
- [the work of repairing the](#)

ULT

⁵ Let it be given into the hand of the workmen who are in charge of the house of Yahweh, and let them give it to the workmen who are in the house of Yahweh, for them to make repairs to damage in the temple.

UST

⁵ Then tell him to give [all that money to the men](#) who are supervising [the work of repairing the temple](#).

2 Kings 22:6

General Information:

The message from King Josiah to Hilkiah, the high priest, continues.

Let them give money

Here “them” refers to the workmen who are in charge of the house of Yahweh in [2 Kings 22:5](#).

the carpenters, the builders, and the masons

These are the same as the workmen who are in the house of Yahweh in [2 Kings 22:5](#). Here the workers are described in more detail.

carpenters

workers who build with wood

masons

workers who build with stone

Translation Words - ULT

- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [They must give that money to the](#)

ULT

⁶ Let them give money to the carpenters, the builders, and the masons, and also to buy timber and cut stone to repair the temple.”

UST

⁶ [They must give that money to the](#) carpenters, the builders, and the masons, and they should also buy the timber and the stones that they will use to repair the temple.”

2 Kings 22:7

was given to them...because they handled

Here “them” and “they” refer to the workmen who are in charge of the house of Yahweh in [2 Kings 22:5](#).

no accounting was required for the money that was given to them

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the workmen who were in charge did not have to report how they used the money that the temple guards gave them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

because they handled it faithfully

“because they used the money honestly”

Translation Words - ULT

- [hand](#)
- [silver](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [those men](#)
- [the money that](#)

ULT

⁷ But no accounting was required for the money that was given to them, because they handled it faithfully.

UST

⁷ But the men who supervise the work will not be required to make a report on [the money that](#) is given to them, saying what they spent it for, because [those men](#) are completely honest.

2 Kings 22:8

Hilkiah

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 18:18](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the book of the law

Most likely these laws were written on a scroll. A scroll was a type of book made of one long, rolled-up sheet of papyrus or leather.

Translation Words - ULT

- scribe
- law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law
- Yahweh
- temple
- priest, priesthood
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- a scroll on which is written
- the laws that God gave to Moses
- temple
- temple
- Hilkiah said
- started to read it

ULT

⁸ Hilkiah the high priest said to Shaphan the scribe, "I have found the book of the law in the house of Yahweh." So Hilkiah gave the book to Shaphan, and he read it.

UST

⁸ After Shaphan the king's secretary said that to Hilkiah, [Hilkiah said](#) to Shaphan, "I have found in the [temple a scroll on which is written the laws that God gave to Moses!](#)" Hilkiah gave the scroll to Shaphan, and he [started to read it](#).

2 Kings 22:9

given it into the hand of the workmen

Here “hand” represents the workmen as a whole. Alternate translation: “given it to the workmen” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- scribe
- Yahweh
- temple
- hand
- silver
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- return
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women
- house

Translation Words - UST

- the scroll
- temple
- the temple, and
- the work of repairing the
- have taken...money that was
- the king
- the
- to
- Your temple guards
- to the

ULT

⁹ Shaphan went and took the book to the king, and also reported to him, saying, “Your servants have spent the money that was found in the temple and they have given it into the hand of the workmen who supervise the care for the house of Yahweh.”

UST

⁹ Then Shaphan took [the scroll](#) to [the king](#) and said [to](#) him, “[Your temple guards have taken the money that was in the temple, and](#) they have given it [to the men who will supervise the work of repairing the temple.](#)”

2 Kings 22:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- scribe
- priest, priesthood
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- I have brought to you
- Hilkiah
- the king
- the king
- started to read it

ULT

¹⁰ Then Shaphan the scribe said to the king, "Hilkiah the priest has given me a book." Then Shaphan read it to the king.

UST

¹⁰ Then Shaphan said to [the king](#), "I [have brought to you](#) a scroll that [Hilkiah](#) gave to me." And Shaphan [started to read it](#) to [the king](#).

2 Kings 22:11

It came about that

If your language has a way to mark the beginning of a new part of the story, consider using it here.

had heard the words of the law

Here “words” represents the message of the law. Alternate translation: “had heard the laws that were written in the book” or “had heard the laws that were written in the scroll” (See: [Metonymy](#))

he tore his clothes

This is a symbolic action that indicates intense grief or sadness. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- the laws
- When the king

ULT

11 It came about that when the king had heard the words of the law, he tore his clothes.

UST

11 [When the king](#) heard [the laws](#) that were written in the scroll that Shaphan was reading to him, he tore his clothes because he was very upset.

2 Kings 22:12

Ahikam...Shaphan...Akbors...Micaiah...Asaiah

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- scribe
- command, commandment
- son
- son (2)
- priest, priesthood
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- instructions
- gave
- son
- son (2)
- Hilkiah
- king's
- the
- special advisor

ULT

¹² The king commanded Hilkiah the priest, Ahikam son of Shaphan, Akbor son of Micaiah, Shaphan the scribe, and Asaiah, his own servant, saying,

UST

¹² Then he [gave](#) these [instructions](#) to [Hilkiah](#), to Shaphan's [son](#) Ahikam, to Micaiah's [son](#) Akbor, and to Asaiah, [the king's special advisor](#):

2 Kings 22:13

Go and consult with Yahweh

It is made clear in 22:14 that the king means for the men to go to the prophetess of Yahweh to determine Yahweh's will.

consult

to go to someone to ask for advice

the words of this book that has been found

Here "words" represents the laws. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the laws in this book that Hilkiah has found" (See: [Synecdoche](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

For great is the anger of Yahweh that has been kindled against us

Yahweh's anger is spoken of as if it were a fire that was lit. Alternate translation: "For Yahweh is very angry with us" (See: [Metaphor](#))

all that was written concerning us

This refers to the law that was given to Israel. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "all that Moses wrote in the law that we should do" or "all the laws that God gave through Moses to the people of Israel" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- wrath, fury
- Judea
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- people, people group,
- walk, walked
- seek, search, look for

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- of Judah
- because our ancestors
- the people
- Go and
- ask

ULT

13 "Go and consult with Yahweh for me, and for the people and for all Judah, because of the words of this book that has been found. For great is the anger of Yahweh that has been kindled against us because our ancestors have not listened to the words of this book so as to obey all that was written concerning us."

UST

13 "[Go and ask Yahweh](#) for me and for all [the people of Judah](#), about what is written in this scroll that has been found. Because it is clear that [Yahweh](#) is very angry with us [because our ancestors](#) disobeyed the things that are written on this scroll, things that we should have done."

2 Kings 22:14

Huldah

This is a woman's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Shallum...Tikvah...Harhas

These are men's names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

keeper of the wardrobe

Possible meanings are 1) the person who took care of the clothing that priests wore in the temple or 2) the person who took care of the king's clothing.

she lived in Jerusalem in the second quarter

Here "second quarter" refers to the new part of the city that was built on the north side of Jerusalem. Also, "second" is the ordinal form of 2. Alternate translation: "she lived in Jerusalem in the new part of the city" or "she lived in the new part of Jerusalem" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son (2)
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- priest, priesthood
- Jerusalem
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

Translation Words - UST

- son of
- and grandson of Harhas (2)
- who was a prophetess who
- So Hilkiah
- Jerusalem
- took care of

ULT

¹⁴ So Hilkiah the priest, Ahikam, Akbor, Shaphan, and Asaiah went to Huldah the prophetess, the wife of Shallum son of Tikvah son of Harhas, keeper of the wardrobe (she lived in Jerusalem in the second quarter), and they spoke with her.

UST

¹⁴ So Hilkiah, Ahikam, Akbor, Shaphan, and Asaiah went to consult a woman whose name was Huldah, [who was a prophetess who](#) lived in the newer part of [Jerusalem](#). Her husband Shallum [son of Tikvah and grandson of Harhas, took care of](#) the robes that were worn in the temple. Those five men told her about the scroll.

2 Kings 22:15

the man who sent you to me

Here “the man” refers to King Josiah.

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites

Translation Words - UST

- the God whom
- Yahweh has
- the Israelites worship

ULT

¹⁵ She said to them, “This is what Yahweh, the God of Israel, says: ‘Tell the man who sent you to me,

UST

¹⁵ She then told them what Yahweh [the God whom the Israelites worship](#) says, “[Yahweh has](#) a message for the king who sent you to me, and this is what Yahweh says:

2 Kings 22:16

I will bring disaster to this place and to its inhabitants

Yahweh causing terrible things to happen is spoken of as if disaster were an object that he could bring to a place. Alternate translation: "I will cause terrible things to happen to this place and to those who live there" (See: [Metaphor](#))

to this place

"to Jerusalem." This refers to the city of Jerusalem which represents the whole land of Judah. Alternate translation: "to Judah" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- call, call out
- Yahweh
- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- Judea
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- has read
- I
- disaster
- the king
- the king

ULT

16 "This is what Yahweh says: 'See, I will bring disaster to this place and to its inhabitants, according to everything written in the book that the king of Judah has read.'

UST

16 'Listen to this carefully. [I](#) am going to bring a [disaster](#) on Jerusalem and all the people who live here, which is what was written in the scroll that [the king has read](#).

2 Kings 22:17

General Information:

The message Yahweh sent to King Josiah through Huldah, the prophetess, continues.

my anger has been kindled against this place, and it will not be extinguished

Yahweh's anger is spoken of as if it were a fire that was lit. Alternate translation: "my anger against this place is like a fire that cannot be put out" (See: [Metaphor](#))

this place

Here "place" represents the people who live in Jerusalem and Judah. Alternate translation: "these people" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [wrath, fury](#)
- [hand](#)
- [forsake, forsaken, leave](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [other gods](#)
- [and my anger is like a fire](#)
- [and my anger is like a fire](#)
- [they have abandoned me](#)

ULT

17 Because they have forsaken me and have burned incense to other gods, so that they might provoke me to anger with all the deeds they have committed —therefore my anger has been kindled against this place, and it will not be extinguished."

UST

17 I will do that because [they have abandoned me](#), and they burn incense to honor [other gods](#). They have caused me to become very angry by all the idols that they have made, [and my anger is like a fire](#) that will not be put out.

2 Kings 22:18

About the words that you heard

Here “words” represents the message that Huldah just spoke.
 Alternate translation: “About the message that you heard” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- king, kingdom, kingship
- seek, search, look for

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- want him to do
- inquire what I
- Yahweh
- of Judah
- The king
- want him to do

ULT

18 But to the king of Judah, who sent you to ask Yahweh's will, this is what you will say to him: “Yahweh, the God of Israel says this: ‘About the words that you heard,

UST

18 [The king of Judah](#) sent you to [inquire what I, Yahweh, want him to do](#). This is what you should say to him, “You have paid attention to what was written in the scroll.

2 Kings 22:19

because your heart was tender

Here “heart” represents a person’s inner being. Feeling sorry is spoken of as if the heart were tender. Alternate translation: “because you felt sorry” or “because you repented” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

that they would become a desolation and a curse

The abstract nouns “desolation” and “curse” can be stated as an adjective and a verb. Alternate translation: “that I would make the land desolate and would curse them” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

torn your clothes

This is a symbolic action that indicates intense grief or sadness. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

this is Yahweh’s declaration

Yahweh speaks of himself by name to express the certainty of what he is declaring. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 19:33](#).

Alternate translation: “this is what Yahweh has declared” or “this is what I, Yahweh, have declared” (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- pray, prayer

Translation Words - UST

- and...when you heard what I threatened
- I
- I
- I

ULT

19 because your heart was tender, and because you have humbled yourself before Yahweh, when you heard what I said against this place and its inhabitants, that they would become a desolation and a curse, and because you have torn your clothes and wept before me, I also have listened to you—this is Yahweh’s declaration.

UST

19 Also, you have repented and humbled yourself [when you heard what I threatened](#) to do to punish this city and the people who live here, [I](#) have heard what you prayed. I said that [I](#) would cause this city to be abandoned. It will be a city whose name people will use when they curse someone. But because you tore your robes and wept in my presence, [I](#) have heard you.

2 Kings 22:20

General Information:

This is the end of the message from Yahweh to King Josiah through the prophetess Huldah.

See, I will gather you to your ancestors, and you will be gathered to your grave in peace

Both statements mean basically the same thing. They are polite ways of saying he will die. Alternate translation: "So I will allow you to die and be buried peacefully" (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Euphemism](#))

Your eyes will not see

Here "will not see" represents not experiencing something. Alternate translation: "You will not experience" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Your eyes

Here "eyes" represents the whole person. (See: [Synecdoche](#))

the disaster that I will bring upon this place

Yahweh causing terrible things to happen is spoken of as if disaster were an object that Yahweh would bring to a place. Alternate translation: "the terrible things I will cause to happen in this place" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- evil, wicked, unpleasant
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place
- king, kingdom, kingship
- return

Translation Words - UST

- disaster
- So I will allow you to die and be buried peacefully...to
- So I will allow you to die and be buried peacefully...to
- So I will allow you to die and be buried peacefully...to
- After the men
- returned

ULT

²⁰ See, I will gather you to your ancestors, and you will be gathered to your grave in peace. Your eyes will not see all the disaster that I will bring upon this place. "" So the men took this message back to the king.

UST

²⁰ [So I will allow you to die and be buried peacefully](#). I will cause a great [disaster to](#) come to this place, but you will not be alive to see it. "" [After the men](#) heard that, they [returned](#) to King Josiah and gave him that message.

2 Kings 23

2 Kings 23 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of Josiah ends in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Ending idolatry

Josiah destroyed idolatry in Judah and in the deserted areas of Israel. But he fought against Egypt and was killed in battle. After his death, Egypt set up a government of Judah that it controlled.

2 Kings 23:1

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [elder, older, old](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [in Judah](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [the elders of](#)
- [Then the king](#)

ULT

¹ So the king sent messengers who gathered to him all the elders of Judah and of Jerusalem.

UST

¹ [Then the king](#) summoned all [the elders of Jerusalem](#) and of the other places [in Judah](#).

2 Kings 23:2

all the men of Judah and all the inhabitants of Jerusalem

This is a generalization. Alternate translation: “many other people” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

from small to great

This merism includes everyone in between. Alternate translation: “from the least important to the most important” (See: [Merism](#))

He then read in their hearing

“Then the king read aloud so that they could hear”

that had been found

In [2 Kings 22:8](#) it states that Hilkiah found the book. This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “that Hilkiah had found” or “that they had found” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [covenant](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [temple](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [declare, proclaim, announce](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the scroll](#)
- [to the temple](#)
- [in the temple](#)
- [to the](#)
- [along with the priests and the prophets](#)
- [and many other people](#)
- [and many other people](#)
- [important people. And](#)
- [the king](#)
- [read to them](#)
- [to the temple](#)

ULT

² Then the king went up to the house of Yahweh, and all the men of Judah and all the inhabitants of Jerusalem with him, and the priests, prophets, and all the people, from small to great. He then read in their hearing all the words of the book of the Covenant that had been found in the house of Yahweh.

UST

² They went together [to the temple](#), [along with the priests and the prophets, and many other people](#), from the most important people [to the](#) least [important people. And](#) while they listened, [the king read to them](#) all of the laws that Moses had written. He read from [the scroll](#) that had been found [in the temple](#).

2 Kings 23:3

walk after Yahweh

The way a person lives is spoken of as if that person were walking on a path, and “to walk after” someone is a metonym for doing what that other person does or wants others to do. Alternate translation: “live obeying Yahweh” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

his commandments, his regulations, and his statutes

These words all share similar meanings. Together they emphasize everything that Yahweh had commanded in the law. (See: [Doublet](#))

with all his heart and all his soul

The idiom “with all his heart” means “completely” and “with all his soul” means “with all his being.” These two phrases have similar meanings. Alternate translation: “with all his being” or “with all his energy” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Doublet](#))

that were written in this book

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “that this book contained” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

stand by the covenant

This idiom means to “obey the terms of the covenant.” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- command, commandment
- heart
- covenant
- covenant (2)
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- people, people group,
- cut off
- confirm, confirmation, legal
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- inner being
- and, while Yahweh was listening
- inner being
- when they made important announcements
- covenant (2)
- he repeated
- he repeated
- the people also promised

ULT

³ The king stood by the pillar and made a covenant before Yahweh, to walk after Yahweh and to keep his commandments, his regulations, and his statutes, with all his heart and all his soul, to confirm the words of this covenant that were written in this book. So all the people agreed to stand by the covenant.

UST

³ [Then the king](#) stood next to the pillar where the kings stood [when they made important announcements, and, while Yahweh was listening, he repeated](#) his promise to sincerely obey with his [inner being](#) the [covenant](#). And all [the people also promised](#) to obey the covenant.

- when they made important announcements
- inner being
- Then the king

2 Kings 23:4

the priests under him

“the other priests who served him”

gatekeepers

men who guarded the gates to the temple

for Baal...for all the stars

“so people could use them to worship Baal...so people could use them to worship all the stars”

He burned...and carried

The word “he” refers to Josiah. He would have commanded his workers to do these things. It is likely that Hilkiah and the priests who assisted him did these things. Alternate translation: “he had them burn them...and carry them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Kidron Valley...Bethel

names of places (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [threshold, doorway](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and the stars](#)
- [gave a command](#)
- [from the temple](#)
- [the high priest, to](#)
- [all the other priests](#)
- [outside the city](#)
- [and to the men who](#)
- [Then the king](#)
- [guarded the](#)

ULT

⁴ The king commanded Hilkiah the high priest, the priests under him, and the gatekeepers to bring out of the temple of Yahweh all the vessels that were made for Baal and Asherah, and for all the stars of heaven. He burned them outside Jerusalem in the fields in the Kidron Valley and carried their ashes to Bethel.

UST

⁴ [Then the king gave a command](#) to Hilkiah, [the high priest, to all the other priests](#) who assisted him, [and to the men who guarded the](#) entrance to the temple. He told them to bring out [from the temple](#) all the items that people had been using to worship Baal, the goddess Asherah, [and the stars](#). After they carried them out, they burned all those things [outside the city](#) in the Kidron Valley. Then they took all the ashes to Bethel.

2 Kings 23:5

He got rid

The word “He” refers to Josiah. He would have commanded his workers to do these things. It is likely that Hilkiah and the priests who assisted him did these things. Alternate translation: “He had them get rid” (See: [Metonymy](#))

to Baal, to the sun and the moon, to the planets, and to all the stars

“as a way to worship Baal, the sun and the moon, the planets, and all the stars”

Translation Words - ULT

- [heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [Judea](#) (2)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and the stars](#)
- [of Judah](#)
- [of Judah...that](#) (2)
- [on the high places](#)
- [whom the previous kings](#)

ULT

⁵ He got rid of the idolatrous priests whom the kings of Judah had chosen to burn incense at the high places in the cities of Judah and in the places around Jerusalem—those who burned incense to Baal, to the sun and the moon, to the planets, and to all the stars of heaven.

UST

⁵ There were many pagan priests [whom the previous kings of Judah](#) had appointed to burn incense on the altars scattered throughout the region [of Judah](#) and to worship [on the high places that](#) they had built on the hills. They had been offering sacrifices to Baal, to the sun, to the moon, the planets, [and the stars](#). The king stopped them from doing those things.

2 Kings 23:6

General Information:

This continues to tell what King Josiah did in response to the message from Yahweh.

He brought out...and burned it...He beat it...and threw

The word "he" refers to Josiah. He would have commanded his workers to do these things. Hilkiah and the priests who assisted him did these things. Alternate translation: "He had them bring out...and burn it...He had them beat it...and throw" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [be taken](#)
- [over the graves of ordinary](#)
- [of the temple](#)
- [Then they took it outside Jerusalem](#)
- [people](#)
- [over the graves of ordinary](#)
- [of the temple](#)

ULT

⁶ He brought out the Asherah pole from the temple of Yahweh, outside Jerusalem to the Kidron Valley and burned it there. He beat it to dust and threw that dust onto the graves of the common people.

UST

⁶ He commanded that the statue of the goddess Asherah [be taken](#) out [of the temple](#). [Then they took it outside Jerusalem](#), down to the Kidron Valley, and burned it. Then they pounded the ashes to powder and scattered that [over the graves of ordinary people](#).

2 Kings 23:7

He cleared

The word “He” refers to Josiah. He would have commanded his workers to do these things. Hilkiah and the priests who assisted him did these things. Alternate translation: “He had them clear” (See: [Metonymy](#))

wove garments

“made clothes”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [temple](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [temple](#)
- [temple](#)
- [in the temple](#)
- [where the...lived](#)

ULT

⁷ He cleared out the rooms of the cultic prostitutes who were in the temple of Yahweh, where the women wove garments for Asherah.

UST

⁷ He also took everything out of the rooms [in the temple where the temple](#) male prostitutes [lived](#). That was where women wove robes that were used to worship the goddess Asherah.

2 Kings 23:8

Josiah brought...and defiled...He destroyed

Josiah would have commanded his workers to do these things. It is likely that Hilkiah and the priests who assisted him did these things. Alternate translation: "He commanded them to bring...and to defile... He had them destroy" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Geba...Beersheba

names of places (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Joshua (the city governor)

"the city ruler named Joshua" or "the city leader named Joshua." This is a different Joshua from the Joshua in the Old Testament Book of Joshua.

Translation Words - ULT

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [Joshua](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [Joshua](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway](#)
- [prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility](#)

ULT

⁸ Josiah brought all the priests out of the cities of Judah and defiled the high places where the priests had burned incense, from Geba to Beersheba. He destroyed the high places at the gates that were at the entrance to the gate of Joshua (the city governor), on the left side of the city gate.

UST

⁸⁻⁹ Josiah also brought to Jerusalem all the priests who were offering sacrifices in the other cities of Judah. He also desecrated the places on the hills where the priests had burned incense to honor idols, from Geba in the north to Beersheba in the south. Those priests were not allowed to offer sacrifices in the temple, but they were allowed to eat the unleavened bread that the priests who worked in the temple ate. He also commanded that the altars that were near the gate built by Joshua, the mayor of Jerusalem, be destroyed. Those altars were at the left of the main gate into the city.

2 Kings 23:9

their brothers

Here “brothers” refers to their fellow priests who served at the temple.

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- unleavened bread
- brother
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- Jerusalem
- devour

Translation Words - UST

- altar
- unleavened bread
- brother
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- Jerusalem
- devour

ULT

⁹ Although the priests of those high places were not allowed to serve at the altar of Yahweh in Jerusalem, they ate unleavened bread among their brothers.

UST

⁸⁻⁹ Josiah also brought to Jerusalem all the priests who were offering sacrifices in the other cities of Judah. He also desecrated the places on the hills where the priests had burned incense to honor idols, from Geba in the north to Beersheba in the south. Those priests were not allowed to offer sacrifices in the temple, but they were allowed to eat the unleavened bread that the priests who worked in the temple ate. He also commanded that the altars that were near the gate built by Joshua, the mayor of Jerusalem, be destroyed. Those altars were at the left of the main gate into the city.

2 Kings 23:10

Topheth...Ben Hinnom

place names (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

cause his son or his daughter to pass through the fire as a sacrifice to Molech

“put his son or his daughter in the fire and burn them as an offering to Molech”

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [son](#)
- [fire](#), [firebrands](#), [firepans](#), [fireplace](#), [firepot](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [son](#)
- [his son...there](#)
- [to be completely burned](#)

ULT

¹⁰ Josiah defiled Topheth, which is in the Valley of Ben Hinnom, so that no one might cause his son or his daughter to pass through the fire as a sacrifice to Molech.

UST

¹⁰ Josiah also desecrated the place named Topheth, in the Ben Hinnom Valley, in order that no one could offer [his son](#) or daughter [there to be completely burned](#) on the altar as a sacrifice to the god Molech.

2 Kings 23:11

He took away

It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people, perhaps Hilkiah and “the priests under him” (2 Kings 23:4), might have helped Josiah do this. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the horses

Possible meanings are 1) real horses or 2) statues of horses.

had given to the sun

Here “given” represents being dedicated for worship. Alternate translation: “had used to worship the sun” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Nathan-Melek

a man’s name (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Judea
- chariot, charioteers
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- king, kingdom, kingship
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- house

Translation Words - UST

- outside the temple, near the entrance
- of Judah
- the chariots
- and he burned
- previous kings
- the horses that the
- the temple, and

ULT

¹¹ He took away the horses that the kings of Judah had given to the sun. They had been in an area at the entrance to the temple of Yahweh, near the room of Nathan-Melek, the chamberlain. Josiah burned the chariots of the sun.

UST

¹¹ He also removed [the horses that the previous kings of Judah](#) had dedicated to worshiping the sun, [and he burned the chariots](#) that were used in that worship. Those horses and chariots were kept in the courtyard [outside the temple, near the entrance to the temple, and](#) near the room where one of Josiah’s officials lived, whose name was Nathan-Melek.

2 Kings 23:12

Josiah the king destroyed...Josiah smashed...and threw

Josiah would have commanded his workers to do these things. It is likely that Hilkiah and the priests who assisted him did these things. Alternate translation: "Josiah the king commanded them to destroy... He had them smash...had them throw" (See: [Metonymy](#))

the kings of Judah had made...Manasseh had made

Manasseh and the kings of Judah probably commanded their workers to make these things. Alternate translation: "the kings of Judah had their workers make...Manasseh had his workers make" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Kidron Valley

place name. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 23:4](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- altar
- Yahweh
- Judea
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

Translation Words - UST

- the altars
- They also tore down the altars
- temple
- of Judah
- the previous kings
- the
- temple

ULT

¹² Josiah the king destroyed the altars that were on the roof of the upper chamber of Ahaz, which the kings of Judah had made, and the altars that Manasseh had made in the two courts of the temple of Yahweh. Josiah smashed them into pieces and threw them into the Kidron Valley.

UST

¹² Josiah also commanded his servants to tear down [the altars](#) that [the previous kings of Judah](#) had built on the palace roof, above the room where King Ahaz had stayed. [They also tore down the altars](#) that had been built by King Manasseh in the two courtyards outside [the temple](#). He commanded that they be smashed to pieces and thrown down into the Kidron Valley.

2 Kings 23:13

The king ruined

Josiah would have commanded his workers to do these things. It is likely that Hilkiah and the priests who assisted him did these things. Alternate translation: "He had them ruin...He had them break...they filled" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Solomon the king of Israel had built

Solomon would have commanded his workers to do these things. Alternate translation: "Solomon the king of Israel had his workers build" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- Moab, Moabite
- Solomon
- Jerusalem
- face, facial
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- of
- worshiped by the people
- Moab people group
- Solomon
- had built east of Jerusalem
- for the worship of
- the
- the

ULT

¹³ The king ruined the high places east of Jerusalem, south of the mount of corruption that Solomon the king of Israel had built for Ashtoreth, the detestable idol of the Sidonians; for Chemosh, the detestable idol of Moab; and for Molech, the detestable idol of the people of Ammon.

UST

¹³ He also commanded that the altars that King Solomon [had built east of Jerusalem](#), south of the Mount of Olives—the so-called Mount of Corruption—be desecrated. [Solomon](#) had built them [for the worship of the](#) disgusting idols—the statue of the goddess Ashtoreth [worshiped by the people](#) in the city of Sidon, Chemosh the god of the [Moab people group](#), and Molech the god [of the](#) Ammon people group.

2 Kings 23:14

He broke...he filled

Josiah would have commanded his workers to do these things. It is likely that Hilkiah and the priests who assisted him did these things. Alternate translation: "He had them break...they filled" (See: [Metonymy](#))

filled those places with the bones of human beings

"covered the ground with human bones so people could not use it as a shrine anymore" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [cut off](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and cut down the poles that honored](#)

ULT

14 He broke the stone pillars into pieces and cut down the Asherah poles and he filled those places with the bones of human beings.

UST

14 They also broke into pieces the stone pillars that the Israelite people worshiped, [and cut down the poles that honored](#) the goddess Asherah, and they scattered the ground there with human bones to desecrate it.

2 Kings 23:15

Josiah also completely destroyed...He also burned...and beat...He also burned

It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people, perhaps Hilkiah and “the priests under him” (2 Kings 23:4), might have helped Josiah do these things. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- altar
- sin, sinful, sinner, sinning
- son
- Israel, Israelites

Translation Words - UST

- the place of worship
- altar
- to sin against Yahweh
- the very same place of worship
- of Israel

ULT

¹⁵ Josiah also completely destroyed the altar that was at Bethel and the high place that Jeroboam son of Nebat (the one who made Israel to sin) had constructed. He also burned that altar and the high place and beat it to dust. He also burned the Asherah pole.

UST

¹⁵ Furthermore, he commanded them to tear down [the place of worship](#) that was near the city of Bethel, [the very same place of worship](#) that had been built by King Jeroboam (whose father was Nebat, the same man who made Israel [to sin against Yahweh](#)). Josiah led the people [of Israel](#) to tear down that [altar](#) that was on the high hill, and they also burned the wooden pole used in the worship of the idol that had the name “Asherah.”

2 Kings 23:16

spoke of these things beforehand

"had said that these things would happen"

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- call, call out
- call, call out
- God
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- the altar
- to Israel
- were predicted
- by his prophet
- Yahweh

ULT

16 As Josiah looked over the area, he noticed the graves that were on the hillside. He sent men to take the bones from the graves; then he burned them on the altar, which defiled it. This was according to the word of Yahweh which the man of God had spoken, the man who spoke of these things beforehand.

UST

16 Then Josiah looked around and saw some tombs on the hill. He commanded his men to take the bones out of those tombs and burn them on the altar. By doing that, he desecrated [the altar](#). These events [were predicted](#) many years before when [Yahweh](#) gave his word [to Israel by his prophet](#).

2 Kings 23:17

monument

marker or statue that honors a person. A tomb is one kind of monument.

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- God
- Judah
- declare, proclaim, announce

Translation Words - UST

- this altar
- the prophet
- Judah
- and predicted

ULT

17 Then he said, "What monument is that I see?" The men of the city told him, "That is the grave of the man of God who came from Judah and spoke about these things that you have just done against the altar of Bethel."

UST

17 Josiah asked, "Whose tomb is that?" The people of Bethel replied, "It is the tomb of [the prophet](#) who came from [Judah and predicted](#) that these things that you have just now done to [this altar](#) would happen."

2 Kings 23:18

So they let his bones alone, along with the bones of

"So they did not touch his bones or the bones of"

Translation Words - ULT

- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Translation Words - UST

- the prophet's

ULT

18 So Josiah said, "Let it alone. No one should move his bones." So they let his bones alone, along with the bones of the prophet who had come from Samaria.

UST

18 Josiah replied, "Allow his tomb to remain as it is. Do not remove [the prophet's](#) bones from the tomb." So the people did not remove those bones, or the bones of the other prophet, the one who had come from Samaria.

2 Kings 23:19

Josiah removed...He did

It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people, perhaps Hilkiah and “the priests under him” (2 Kings 23:4), might have helped Josiah do these things. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the kings of Israel had made

It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people, probably the kings’ workers, might have helped the kings make these things. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

what had been done

“what he had done”

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel, Israelites
- Samaria, Samaritan
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house

Translation Words - UST

- of Israel
- in Samaria
- by the previous kings
- to the

ULT

19 Then Josiah removed all the houses on the high places that were in the cities of Samaria, which the kings of Israel had made, and that provoked Yahweh to anger. He did to them exactly what had been done at Bethel.

UST

19 In every city [in Samaria](#), at Josiah’s command, they tore down the houses built on hills to worship idols. The ones that had been built [by the previous kings of Israel](#), which had caused Yahweh to become very angry. He did to all those places of idols worship the same thing that he had done [to the](#) altars at Bethel.

2 Kings 23:20

He slaughtered...he burned

It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people, perhaps Hilkiah and “the priests under him” (2 Kings 23:4), might have helped Josiah do these things. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

he burned human bones on them

You may need to make explicit why he burned the bones. “he burned human bones on them so no one would use them again” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- altar
- priest, priesthood
- Jerusalem
- return

Translation Words - UST

- altars
- priests
- Jerusalem
- Then he returned to

ULT

²⁰ He slaughtered all the priests of the high places on the altars and he burned human bones on them. Then he returned to Jerusalem.

UST

²⁰ He ordered that all the [priests](#) who offered sacrifices on the places built on the hills where they worshiped idols, and they were to be killed on those [altars](#). Then he burned human bones on every one of those altars to desecrate them. [Then he returned to Jerusalem.](#)

2 Kings 23:21

Keep the Passover

"You must celebrate the Passover"

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [God](#)
- [covenant](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [commanded](#)
- [their God](#)
- [which was written in the law of Moses](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [people](#)
- [Then the king](#)

ULT

²¹ Then the king commanded all the people, saying, "Keep the Passover to Yahweh your God, as it is written in this book of the covenant."

UST

²¹ [Then the king commanded](#) all the [people](#) to celebrate the Passover festival to honor [Yahweh their God](#), [which was written in the law of Moses](#) that they should do every year.

2 Kings 23:22

Such a Passover celebration had never been held from the days of

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “The descendants of Israel had not celebrated the Passover festival in such a great way in the time of” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ruled Israel

The name “Israel” is a metonym for “the descendants of Israel.” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the days of the kings of Israel or Judah

“the time when the people of Israel had their own king and the people of Judah had their own king”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [judge, judgment](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [ruled](#)
- [of Judah](#)
- [that kings](#)

ULT

²² Such a Passover celebration had never been held from the days of the judges who ruled Israel, nor in all the days of the kings of Israel or Judah.

UST

²² During all the years that leaders [ruled Israel](#) and during all the years [that kings of Israel](#) and the kings [of Judah](#), they had not celebrated that festival.

2 Kings 23:23

this Passover of Yahweh was celebrated

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "the people of Judah celebrated this Passover of Yahweh" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Passover
- Yahweh
- Jerusalem
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- they celebrated the Passover festival
- Yahweh
- in Jerusalem
- But...after Josiah...been ruling

ULT

²³ But in the eighteenth year of King Josiah this Passover of Yahweh was celebrated in Jerusalem.

UST

²³ But now, after Josiah had been ruling for almost eighteen years, to honor Yahweh they celebrated the Passover festival in Jerusalem.

2 Kings 23:24

banished...spirits

"forced those...spirits to leave" or "made a law that those...spirits had to leave"

those who talked with the dead or with spirits

See how you translated "those who talked with the dead and...those who talked with spirits," in [2 Kings 21:6](#).

fetishes

things that people wrongly believe have special power

Translation Words - ULT

- law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law
- Yahweh
- priest, priesthood
- Judea
- Jerusalem
- house

Translation Words - UST

- been written
- in the temple
- Hilkiah
- and from the other places in Judah
- from Jerusalem
- in the temple

ULT

²⁴ Josiah also banished those who talked with the dead or with spirits. He also banished the fetishes, the idols, and all the disgusting things that were seen in the land of Judah and in Jerusalem, so as to confirm the words of the law which were written in the book that Hilkiah the priest had found in the house of Yahweh.

UST

²⁴ Furthermore, Josiah removed from Jerusalem and other places in Judah all the people who practiced sorcery and those who asked the spirits of dead people to tell them what they should do. He also removed [from Jerusalem and from the other places in Judah](#) all the household idols and all the other idols and abominable things. He did those things in order to obey what had [been written](#) in the scroll that [Hilkiah](#) had found [in the temple](#).

2 Kings 23:25

who turned to Yahweh

“who gave himself completely to Yahweh”

Nor did any king like Josiah arise after him

“And since then there has never been a king who was like Josiah”

Translation Words - ULT

- life, live, living, alive
- heart
- law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law
- Yahweh
- restore, restoration
- Moses
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- all
- he felt and thought
- the laws
- Yahweh
- to
- of Moses
- a king

ULT

²⁵ Before Josiah, there had been no king like him, who turned to Yahweh with all his heart, all his soul, and all his might, who followed all the law of Moses. Nor did any king like Josiah arise after him.

UST

²⁵ Josiah was devoted [to Yahweh](#) with all that [he felt and thought](#) and with all his strength. There had never been in Judah or Israel [a king](#) like him. He obeyed [all the laws of Moses](#). And there has never since then been a king like Josiah.

2 Kings 23:26

Nevertheless

The writer uses this word to show that even though all of these things that Josiah did were good, Yahweh was still angry with Judah.

Yahweh did not turn away from the burning of his fierce anger, which burned against

Fire is a metaphor for anger, and starting a fire is a metaphor for becoming angry. The abstract noun “anger” can be translated as an adjective. Alternate translation: “Yahweh did not stop being fierce because he was angry with” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

had done to provoke him

“had done to cause him to be angry”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [restore, restoration](#)
- [Judah](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [But Yahweh had become extremely angry...that King](#)
- [But Yahweh had become extremely angry...that King](#)
- [with the people of Judah](#)

ULT

²⁶ Nevertheless, Yahweh did not turn away from the burning of his fierce anger, which burned against Judah because of all that Manasseh had done to provoke him to anger.

UST

²⁶ [But Yahweh had become extremely angry with the people of Judah](#) because of all the things [that King](#) Manasseh had done to provoke him, and he continued to be very angry.

2 Kings 23:27

out of my sight

“from where I am” or “from being near me”

My name will be there

The name is a metonym for the honor that people should give to the person. Alternate translation: “People should worship me there” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- name
- Israel, Israelites
- Judea
- Jerusalem
- face, facial
- house

Translation Words - UST

- I will do to Judah what I have done
- I should be worshiped
- Israel
- of Judah
- Jerusalem
- to
- the temple, the place

ULT

²⁷ So Yahweh said, “I will also remove Judah out of my sight, as I have removed Israel, and I will throw away this city that I have chosen, Jerusalem, and the house of which I said, ‘My name will be there.’”

UST

²⁷ He said, “[I will do to Judah what I have done to Israel](#). I will drive away the people [of Judah](#), with the result that they will never enter my presence again. And I will reject [Jerusalem](#), the city that I chose to belong to me, and I will reject [the temple, the place](#) where I said that [I should be worshiped](#).”

2 Kings 23:28

are they not written...Judah?

This can be expressed in active form and assumes that the answer is positive. The question is rhetorical and is used for emphasis. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 8:23](#). Alternate translation: “you can find them...Judah.” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Judah](#)
- [of the events of the Kings](#)

ULT

²⁸ As for the other matters concerning Josiah, everything that he did, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

UST

²⁸ If you want to know more about all the other things that Josiah did, they are written in the book [of the events of the Kings of Judah](#).

2 Kings 23:29

In his days, Pharaoh Necho, king of Egypt

“During the time of Josiah, Pharaoh Necho, king of Egypt”

Necho...Megiddo

Necho is the name of a man. Megiddo is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Egypt, Egyptian
- Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire
- Euphrates River, the River
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- of Egypt
- of Assyria
- the Euphrates
- killed
- king of Judah
- King
- to help the king

ULT

²⁹ In his days, Pharaoh Necho, king of Egypt, went to fight against the king of Assyria at the Euphrates River. King Josiah went to meet Necho in battle, and Necho killed him at Megiddo.

UST

²⁹ While he was the [king of Judah](#), King Necho [of Egypt](#) led his army north to [the Euphrates](#) River [to help the king of Assyria](#). [King](#) Josiah tried to stop the army of Egypt at the city of Megiddo, but he was [killed](#) in a battle there.

2 Kings 23:30

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Jerusalem
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- people, people group,
- reign, rule
- earth, earthen, earthly
- horse, warhorse, horseback
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- son Joahaz
- Jerusalem
- to be the new king
- Then the people of
- to appoint
- Judah
- in a chariot from
- His officials

ULT

³⁰ Josiah's servants carried him dead in a chariot from Megiddo, brought him to Jerusalem, and buried him in his own grave. Then the people of the land took Jehoahaz son of Josiah, anointed him, and made him king in his father's place.

UST

³⁰ His officials placed his corpse in a chariot from Megiddo, and took it back to Jerusalem, where it was buried in his own tomb. Then the people of Judah poured olive oil on Josiah's son Joahaz, to appoint him to be the new king.

2 Kings 23:31

twenty-three years old

"23 years old" (See: [Numbers](#))

Hamutal

This is a woman's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Libnah

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Jeremiah
- Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- was twenty
- of Jeremiah
- from Jerusalem

ULT

³¹ Jehoahaz was twenty-three years old when he began to reign, and he reigned three months in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Hamutal; she was the daughter of Jeremiah of Libnah.

UST

³¹ Joahaz was twenty-three years old when he became the king of Judah, but he ruled from Jerusalem for only three months. His mother was Hamutal, the daughter of Jeremiah from the city of Libnah.

2 Kings 23:32

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment or evaluation. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [evil](#), [wicked](#), [unpleasant](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [that Yahweh](#)
- [evil](#)
- [his ancestors](#)

ULT

³² Jehoahaz did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh, like everything that his ancestors had done.

UST

³² Joahaz did many things [that Yahweh](#) said were [evil](#), just like many of [his ancestors](#) had done.

2 Kings 23:33

Riblah...Hamath

These are names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

put him in chains

Being put "in chains" represents being captured and imprisoned.
Alternate translation: "put him in prison" (See: [Metonymy](#))

finned Judah

"forced the people of Judah to give him"

one hundred talents...one talent

A talent was about 33 kilograms. Alternate translation: "3,300 kilograms...33 kilograms" (See: [Biblical Money](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [silver](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)
- [gold, golden](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [of silver](#)
- [Necho forced the people of Judah](#)
- [of gold](#)

ULT

33 Pharaoh Necho put him in chains at Riblah in the land of Hamath, so that he might not reign in Jerusalem. Then Necho fined Judah one hundred talents of silver and one talent of gold.

UST

33 King Necho's army captured him and tied him up with chains and took him as a prisoner to the city of Riblah in the district of Hamath, to prevent him from continuing to rule in [Jerusalem](#). [Necho forced the people of Judah](#) to pay to him about 3.3 metric tons [of silver](#) and thirty three kilograms [of gold](#).

2 Kings 23:34

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- name
- Egypt, Egyptian
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- reign, rule

Translation Words - UST

- another son of
- Eliakim's name to Jehoiakim
- Egypt, and later
- and he changed
- Joahaz died
- King Necho appointed

ULT

³⁴ Pharaoh Necho made Eliakim son of Josiah king in the place of Josiah his father, and changed his name to Jehoiakim. But he took Jehoahaz away to Egypt, and Jehoahaz died there.

UST

³⁴ King Necho appointed another son of Josiah, Eliakim, to be the new king, and he changed Eliakim's name to Jehoiakim. Then he took Joahaz to Egypt, and later Joahaz died there in Egypt.

2 Kings 23:35

Jehoikim taxed the land

"Jehoikim collected taxes from the people who owned land"

people of the land

"people of the land of Judah." Possible meanings are 1) "the people who lived in the land of Judah" or 2) "the richest and most powerful of those who lived in Judah."

Translation Words - ULT

- silver
- silver
- silver
- people, people group,
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly (2)
- gold, golden
- gold, golden

Translation Words - UST

- and less from the poor people
- silver
- King Jehoiakim collected a tax
- from the people of
- Judah
- from the people of (2)
- and less from the poor people
- and gold from them

ULT

³⁵ Jehoiakim paid the silver and gold to Pharaoh. In order to meet the demand of Pharaoh, Jehoikim taxed the land and he forced each man among the people of the land to pay him the silver and gold according to their assessments.

UST

³⁵ [King Jehoiakim collected a tax from the people of Judah](#). He collected more from the rich people [and less from the poor people](#). He collected [silver and gold from them](#), in order to pay to the king of Egypt what he commanded them to give.

2 Kings 23:36

Zebidah

This is a woman's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Pedaiah

This is a man's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Rumah

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jehoiakim was twenty](#)
- [from Jerusalem](#)

ULT

³⁶ Jehoiakim was twenty-five years old when he began to reign, and he reigned eleven years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Zebidah; she was the daughter of Pedaiah of Rumah.

UST

³⁶ [Jehoiakim was twenty](#)-five years old when he became the king of Judah, and he ruled [from Jerusalem](#) for eleven years. His mother was Zebidah, the daughter of Pedaiah from the city of Rumah.

2 Kings 23:37

did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment or evaluation. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [evil](#), [wicked](#), [unpleasant](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [that Yahweh](#)
- [evil](#)
- [his ancestors](#)

ULT

³⁷ Jehoiakim did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh, just as his ancestors had done.

UST

³⁷ He did many things [that Yahweh](#) said were [evil](#), as [his ancestors](#) had done.

2 Kings 24

2 Kings 24 General Notes

Structure and formatting

These last two chapters are the final defeat of Judah and the beginning of their exile to Babylon.

Special concepts in this chapter

God's punishment

God punished Judah because of their sin. The Babylonians conquer Jerusalem and carry away all the craftsmen, soldiers and wealthy. They make Zedekiah the king. He was not truly a king because he lacked absolute authority. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

2 Kings 24:1

In Jehoiakim's days

"During the time that Jehoiakim ruled Judah"

attacked Judah

You may need to make explicit what happened after Nebuchadnezzar attacked Judah. Alternate translation: "attacked and defeated Judah" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- Nebuchadnezzar
- rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness
- king, kingdom, kingship
- return
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- of Babylon invaded Judah
- King Nebuchadnezzar
- rebelled
- the army of
- pay much tribute to King Nebuchadnezzar
- was required to

ULT

¹ In Jehoiakim's days, Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon attacked Judah; Jehoiakim became his servant for three years. Then Jehoiakim turned back and rebelled against Nebuchadnezzar.

UST

¹ While Jehoiakim was ruling Judah, [the army of King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon invaded Judah](#). They defeated the Judean army, and as a result, Jehoiakim [was required to pay much tribute to King Nebuchadnezzar](#). But after three years, Jehoiakim [rebelled](#).

2 Kings 24:2

This was in conformity with the word of Yahweh that had been spoken through his servants the prophets

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “This was according to the word of Yahweh that his servants the prophets had spoken” or “This was exactly what Yahweh had told his servants the prophets to say would happen” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Moab, Moabite
- Judah
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- hand
- destroy, destruction, annihilate
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- and Ammon people groups
- his prophets
- Then Yahweh
- Yahweh
- and from the Moab
- sent...of Judah
- from Babylonia
- to warn
- to attack the people
- his prophets

ULT

² Yahweh sent against Jehoiakim bands of Chaldeans, Arameans, Moabites, and Ammonites; he sent them against Judah to destroy it. This was in conformity with the word of Yahweh that had been spoken through his servants the prophets.

UST

² [Then Yahweh sent](#) raiders [from Babylonia](#) and Aram, [and from the Moab and Ammon people groups, to attack the people of Judah](#) and kill them, just as [Yahweh](#) had told [his prophets to warn](#) the people would happen.

2 Kings 24:3

It was certainly at the mouth of Yahweh

Some versions have, "It was certainly because of the wrath of Yahweh," which is just as good a reading of the original text. If translators have access to versions in major languages in their region, they should probably follow their choice.

at the mouth of Yahweh

Here "mouth" represents Yahweh's command. Alternate translation: "as Yahweh had commanded" (See: [Metonymy](#))

remove them out of his sight

"get rid of them" or "destroy them"

Translation Words - ULT

- [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [face](#), [facial](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [had committed](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [of Judah just](#)
- [to destroy the people of Judah](#)

ULT

³ It was certainly at the mouth of Yahweh that this came on Judah, to remove them out of his sight, because of the sins of Manasseh, all that he did, ^[1]

UST

³ These things happened to the people [of Judah just](#) as [Yahweh](#) had commanded. He decided [to destroy the people of Judah](#) because of the many sins that King Manasseh [had committed](#).

2 Kings 24:4

innocent blood that he shed

Blood is a metonym for innocent life, and shedding blood is a metonym for killing innocent people. Alternate translation: “innocent people whom he killed” (See: [Metonymy](#))

he filled Jerusalem with innocent blood

Blood is a metonym for innocent life, and shedding blood is a metonym for killing innocent people. Alternate translation: “he killed many innocent people in Jerusalem” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [innocent](#)
- [blood](#)
- [blood](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Manasseh had even caused...people in Jerusalem to be killed](#)
- [innocent](#)
- [Manasseh had even caused...people in Jerusalem to be killed](#)
- [and Yahweh would...forgive that](#)
- [Manasseh had even caused...people in Jerusalem to be killed](#)

ULT

⁴ and also because of the innocent blood that he shed, for he filled Jerusalem with innocent blood. Yahweh was not willing to pardon that.

UST

⁴ [Manasseh had even caused](#) many [innocent people in Jerusalem to be killed](#), [and Yahweh would](#) not [forgive that](#).

2 Kings 24:5

are they not written...Judah?

This is written as a rhetorical question because at the time this was written people were already aware of this information. This can be written as a statement. It can be translated in active form. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 8:23](#). Alternate translation: “they are indeed written...Judah.” or “you can find them...Judah” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judea](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Judah](#)
- [of the events of the Kings](#)

ULT

⁵ As for the other matters concerning Jehoiakim, and all that he did, are they not written in the book of the events of the kings of Judah?

UST

⁵ The other things that happened while Jehoiakim was king, and all the things that he did, are written in the book [of the events of the Kings of Judah](#).

2 Kings 24:6

slept with his ancestors

Sleeping is a euphemism for dying. Alternate translation: “died and was buried along with his ancestors” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- reign, rule

Translation Words - UST

- his son
- When Jehoiakim died
- the king

ULT

⁶ Jehoiakim slept with his ancestors, and Jehoiachin his son became king in his place.

UST

⁶ [When Jehoiakim died](#), [his son](#) Jehoiachin became [the king](#).

2 Kings 24:7

The king of Egypt did not attack any more out of his land

“The king of Egypt did not come out of his land any more to attack other people groups”

Translation Words - ULT

- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Euphrates River, the River
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship (2)
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- The army of the king of Babylon
- the army of Egypt
- Egypt in the south
- Egypt
- the Euphrates
- The king of
- the king of (2)
- So the army of

ULT

⁷ The king of Egypt did not attack any more out of his land, because the king of Babylon had conquered all the lands that had been controlled by the king of Egypt, from the brook of Egypt to the Euphrates River.

UST

⁷ [The army of the king of Babylon](#) defeated [the army of Egypt](#). [The king of Babylon](#) took control of all the area that the Egyptians formerly controlled, from the brook at the border of [Egypt in the south](#) to [the Euphrates](#) River in the north. [So the army of the king of Egypt](#) did not return to attack Judah again.

2 Kings 24:8

Nehushta...Elnathan

Nehushta is the name of a woman. Elnathan is the name of a man.
(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Jerusalem
- Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- of
- a man from Jerusalem
- in Jerusalem

ULT

⁸ Jehoiachin was eighteen years old when he began to reign; he reigned in Jerusalem three months. His mother's name was Nehushta; she was the daughter of Elnathan of Jerusalem.

UST

⁸ Jehoiachin was eighteen years old when he became the king of Judah. His mother's name was Nehushta. She was the daughter [of a man from Jerusalem](#) named Elnathan. Jehoiachin ruled [in Jerusalem](#) for only three months.

2 Kings 24:9

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment or evaluation. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

he did all that his father had done

Here "all" is a generalization. It means he did the same sinful things as his father. Alternate translation: "he committed the same kinds of sins his father had committed" (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [evil](#), [wicked](#), [unpleasant](#)
- [ancestor](#), [father](#), [fathered](#), [forefather](#), [grandfather](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [that](#) [Yahweh](#)
- [evil](#)
- [his father](#)

ULT

⁹ He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh; he did all that his father had done.

UST

⁹ Jehoiachin did many things [that](#) [Yahweh](#) said were [evil](#), all the evil things that [his father](#) had done.

2 Kings 24:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Babylon](#)
- [to Jerusalem](#)
- [of King Nebuchadnezzar](#)
- [along with the whole Babylonian army](#)
- [some officers](#)

ULT

¹⁰ At that time the army of Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon attacked Jerusalem and besieged the city.

UST

¹⁰ While Jehoiachin was king, [some officers of King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon](#) came [along with the whole Babylonian army to Jerusalem](#), and they surrounded the city.

2 Kings 24:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- Nebuchadnezzar
- king, kingdom, kingship
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- Nebuchadnezzar himself
- Nebuchadnezzar himself
- Nebuchadnezzar himself
- While they were doing that...the

ULT

¹¹ Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon came to the city while his soldiers were besieging it,

UST

¹¹ While they were doing that, Nebuchadnezzar himself came to the city.

2 Kings 24:12

Jehoiachin the king of Judah went out to the king of Babylon, he, his mother, his servants, his princes, and his officers

You may need to make explicit why Jehoiachin went out to meet Nebuchadnezzar. Alternate translation: “Jehoiachin the king of Judah, with his mother, his servants, his princes, and his officers, went out to where the king of Babylon was, to surrender to him” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

The king of Babylon captured him in the eighth year of his own reign

“After the king of Babylon had been king for more than seven years, he captured Jehoiachin”

Translation Words - ULT

- command, commandment
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian (2)
- Judea
- reign, rule
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship (2)
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Translation Words - UST

- Then King Jehoiachin
- Babylonian army
- to Babylon (2)
- Then King Jehoiachin
- When Nebuchadnezzar had been...for
- Then King Jehoiachin
- the
- king (2)
- his mother, his advisors, important officers, palace officials all surrendered
- his mother, his advisors, important officers, palace officials all surrendered

ULT

¹² and Jehoiachin the king of Judah went out to the king of Babylon, he, his mother, his servants, his princes, and his officers. The king of Babylon captured him in the eighth year of his own reign.

UST

¹² [Then King Jehoiachin, his mother, his advisors, important officers, palace officials all surrendered to the Babylonian army. When Nebuchadnezzar had been king for eight years, he captured Jehoiachin and took him to Babylon.](#)

2 Kings 24:13

Solomon king of Israel had made

You might want to translate this so the reader understands that Solomon might have had others help him do this. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command, commandment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#) (2)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel, Israelites](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [storehouse](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [gold, golden](#)
- [house](#)
- [house](#) (2)

Translation Words - UST

- [Nebuchadnezzar's soldiers took to Babylon](#)
- [Yahweh's](#)
- [Yahweh](#) (2)
- [temple](#)
- [the king's](#)
- [the king's](#)
- [valuable things from](#)
- [the](#)
- [the king's](#)
- [gold items](#)
- [temple and from](#)
- [palace](#) (2)

ULT

¹³ Nebuchadnezzar took out from there all the valuable things in the house of Yahweh, and those in the king's palace. He cut into pieces all the golden objects that Solomon king of Israel had made in the temple of Yahweh, as Yahweh had said would happen.

UST

¹³ Just as [Yahweh](#) had said would happen, [Nebuchadnezzar's soldiers took to Babylon](#) all the [valuable things from Yahweh's temple and from the king's palace](#). They cut up all the [gold items](#) that King Solomon had put in [the temple](#).

2 Kings 24:14

He took into exile all Jerusalem

Here "Jerusalem" is a metonym for the people who lived there. And, "all" is a generalization. It means all the most important people
Alternate translation: "Nebuchadnezzar took all the important people away from Jerusalem" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Hyperbole](#))

the craftsmen and the smiths

"the men who knew how to make and repair things that are made from metal"

No one was left except the poorest people in the land

This can be translated as a positive statement. Alternate translation: "Only the poorest people in the land still lived there" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [might, mighty, mighty works](#)
- [people, people group,](#)
- [chief](#)
- [earth, earthen, earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [They took from Jerusalem](#)
- [and the best soldiers](#)
- [people](#)
- [the important officials](#)
- [in Judah](#)

ULT

14 He took into exile all Jerusalem, all the leaders, and all the fighting men, ten thousand captives, and all the craftsmen and the smiths. No one was left except the poorest people in the land.

UST

14 [They took from Jerusalem](#) to Babylon ten thousand people, including [the important officials and the best soldiers](#) and the people who made and repaired things that were made of metal. Only the very poor [people](#) were left [in Judah](#).

2 Kings 24:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- Jerusalem
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship
- walk, walked
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- to Babylon
- to Babylon
- from Jerusalem
- Nebuchadnezzar's soldiers seized King
- the
- He took them
- important people

ULT

¹⁵ Nebuchadnezzar took Jehoiachin into exile at Babylon, as well as the king's mother, wives, officers, and the chief men of the land. He took them into exile from Jerusalem to Babylon.

UST

¹⁵ Nebuchadnezzar's soldiers seized King Jehoiachin and took him to Babylon, along with his wives and officials, his mother, and all the important people. He took them into exile from Jerusalem to Babylon.

2 Kings 24:16

seven thousand...one thousand

"7,000...1,000" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Babylon](#), [Babylonia](#), [Babylonian](#)
- [Babylon](#), [Babylonia](#), [Babylonian](#)
- [might](#), [mighty](#), [mighty works](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [They also took](#)
- [They also took](#)
- [were able to fight in](#)
- [Babylon](#)

ULT

16 All the fighting men, seven thousand in number, and one thousand craftsmen and blacksmiths, all of them fit for fighting—the king of Babylon brought these men into exile at Babylon.

UST

16 [They also took](#) to [Babylon](#) all seven thousand soldiers and one thousand men who knew how to make and repair things that are made from metal. All of these people whom they took [were able to fight in](#) battle.

2 Kings 24:17

Mattaniah

This is a man's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- name
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- reign, rule
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Mattaniah's name
- of Babylon
- Then the king
- of Babylon

ULT

¹⁷ The king of Babylon made Mattaniah, Jehoiachin's father's brother, king in his place, and changed his name to Zedekiah.

UST

¹⁷ [Then the king of Babylon](#) appointed Jehoiachin's uncle, Mattaniah, to be the king of Judah, and he changed [Mattaniah's name](#) to Zedekiah.

2 Kings 24:18

twenty-one...eleven

"21...11" (See: [Numbers](#))

Hamutal

This is a woman's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Jeremiah

This is a man's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Libnah

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- Jeremiah
- Jerusalem

Translation Words - UST

- was twenty
- of a man named Jeremiah
- in Jerusalem

ULT

¹⁸ Zedekiah was twenty-one years old when he began to reign; he reigned eleven years in Jerusalem. His mother's name was Hamutal; she was the daughter of Jeremiah from Libnah.

UST

¹⁸ When Zedekiah was twenty-one years old, he became king, and he ruled in Jerusalem for eleven years. His mother's name was Hamutal. She was the daughter of a man named Jeremiah from the city of Libnah.

2 Kings 24:19

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment or evaluation. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 3:2](#). Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considers to be evil" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [evil](#), [wicked](#), [unpleasant](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [that](#) [Yahweh](#)
- [evil](#)

ULT

¹⁹ He did what was evil in the sight of Yahweh; he did all that Jehoiakim had done.

UST

¹⁹ But Zedekiah did many things [that](#) [Yahweh](#) said were [evil](#), just as Jehoiakim had done.

2 Kings 24:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- Jerusalem
- rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness
- face, facial
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- of Babylon
- of Jerusalem
- rebelled
- against the
- king

ULT

²⁰ Through Yahweh's anger, all these events happened in Jerusalem and Judah, until he drove them out of his presence. Then Zedekiah rebelled against the king of Babylon.

24:3 ^[1] Some versions read, *It was certainly because of the wrath of Yahweh* .

UST

²⁰ Because [Yahweh](#) was very angry, he finally drove the people out [of Jerusalem](#) and the other places in Judah and sent them to Babylon. This is what happened when Zedekiah [rebelled against the king of Babylon](#).

2 Kings 25

2 Kings 25 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter is the final defeat of Judah and the beginning of their exile to Babylon.

Special concepts in this chapter

Zedekiah's revolt

Zedekiah revolted against the Babylonians, so they came and completely destroyed Jerusalem. They tore down the city walls and took the rest of the people to Babylon as slaves, except the very poorest people remained.

2 Kings 25:1

in the ninth year

(See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

in the tenth month, and on the tenth day of the month

This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. The tenth day is near the end of December on Western calendars. This is during the cold season when there may be rain and snow. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Hebrew Months](#))

came with all his army against Jerusalem

The name "Jerusalem" is a metonym for the people who lived in it. Alternate translation: "came with his whole army to fight against the people of Jerusalem" or "came with his whole army to conquer Jerusalem" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)
- [reign, rule](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [with his whole army](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [King Nebuchadnezzar](#)
- [They surrounded](#)
- [ruling](#)
- [Against the walls of](#)

ULT

¹ It happened that in the ninth year of the reign of King Zedekiah, in the tenth month, and on the tenth day of the month, Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon came with all his army against Jerusalem. He camped opposite it, and they built a siege wall around it.

UST

¹ After Zedekiah had been [ruling](#) for nine years, on the tenth day of the tenth month of that year, [King Nebuchadnezzar](#) arrived [with his whole army](#). [They surrounded Jerusalem](#). [Against the walls of](#) the city, they built ramps made of earth, so that they could climb up and attack the city.

2 Kings 25:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [It took them two years](#)

ULT

² So the city was besieged until the eleventh year of King Zedekiah's reign.

UST

² [It took them two years](#) to do that.

2 Kings 25:3

the ninth day of the fourth month

This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. The ninth day is near the end of June on Western calendars. This is during the dry season when there is very little or no rain. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Hebrew Months](#))

the people of the land

These are the inhabitants of Jerusalem, including refugees from the surrounding villages that fled to Jerusalem when the war started.

Translation Words - ULT

- bread
- people, people group,
- earth, earthen, earthly

Translation Words - UST

- food
- people's
- people's

ULT

³ On the ninth day of the fourth month of that year, the famine was so severe in the city that there was no food for the people of the land.

UST

³ After Zedekiah had been ruling for eleven years, by the ninth day of the fourth month of that year, the famine had become very bad. All the [people's food](#) was gone.

2 Kings 25:4

Then the city was broken into

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "Then the Babylonian army broke into the city" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

all the fighting men

"all the warriors"

by the way of the gate

"by using the gate"

the Chaldeans

Some translations use "Chaldeans" and others use "Babylonians." Both terms refer to the same people group.

The king went in the direction of

"King Zedekiah also fled and he went toward"

Translation Words - ULT

- Arabah
- gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- down to the plain along the Jordan River
- the gate
- the king's park

ULT

⁴ Then the city was broken into, and all the fighting men fled at night by the way of the gate between the two walls, by the king's garden, although the Chaldeans were all around the city. The king went in the direction of the Arabah.

UST

⁴ Then the Babylonian soldiers broke through part of the city wall, and that enabled them to enter the city. All the soldiers of Judah tried to escape. But the Babylonian soldiers surrounded the city, so the king and the soldiers of Judah waited until it was nighttime. Then they fled through [the gate](#) that was between the two walls near [the king's park](#). They ran across the fields and started to go [down to the plain along the Jordan River](#).

2 Kings 25:5

All his army was scattered away from him

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "His whole army ran away from him" or "The Chaldeans chased away his whole army" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Jericho
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Jericho
- But the Babylonian soldiers
- when he was by himself
- soldiers
- the king

ULT

⁵ But the army of Chaldeans pursued King Zedekiah and overtook him in the plains of the Jordan River valley near Jericho. All his army was scattered away from him.

UST

⁵ [But the Babylonian soldiers](#) chased after them. They caught [the king when he was by himself](#) in the plains of [Jericho](#). He was by himself because all his [soldiers](#) had abandoned him.

2 Kings 25:6

Riblah

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

passed sentence on him

“decided what they would do to punish him”

Translation Words - ULT

- judge, judgment
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- to punish
- of Babylon
- King Zedekiah
- There the king

ULT

⁶ They captured the king and brought him up to the king of Babylon at Riblah, where they passed sentence on him.

UST

⁶ The Babylonian soldiers took [King Zedekiah](#) to the city of Riblah in Babylonia. [There the king of Babylon](#) decided what they would do [to punish](#) him.

2 Kings 25:7

they slaughtered them before his eyes

The eyes are synecdoche for the whole person. Alternate translation: “they forced king Zedekiah to watch them kill his sons” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

he put out his eyes

“Nebuchadnezzar put out Zedekiah’s eyes.” It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people might have helped Nebuchadnezzar do this. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [son](#)
- [Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [The king of Babylon](#)
- [the city of Babylon](#)

ULT

7 As for Zedekiah’s sons, they slaughtered them before his eyes. Then he put out his eyes, bound him in bronze chains, and brought him to Babylon.

UST

7 [The king of Babylon](#) forced Zedekiah to watch as the Babylonian soldiers killed all of Zedekiah’s sons. Then they gouged out Zedekiah’s eyes. They put bronze chains on his hands and feet and took him to [the city of Babylon](#).

2 Kings 25:8

in the fifth month, on the seventh day of the month

This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. The seventh day is near the end of July on Western calendars. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Hebrew Months](#))

the nineteenth year

This is the ordinal form of the number 19. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Nebuzaradan

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Babylon](#), [Babylonia](#), [Babylonian](#)
- [Babylon](#), [Babylonia](#), [Babylonian](#)
- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Nebuchadnezzar](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#) (2)
- [servant](#), [serve](#), [slave](#), [worker](#), [young man](#), [young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [He was one of King Nebuchadnezzar's officials](#)
- [the king](#)
- [in Jerusalem](#)
- [He was one of King Nebuchadnezzar's officials](#)
- [after Nebuchadnezzar had been ruling](#)
- [He was one of King Nebuchadnezzar's officials](#)
- [the king](#) (2)
- [men who guarded](#)

ULT

⁸ Now in the fifth month, on the seventh day of the month, which was the nineteenth year of the reign of Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, Nebuzaradan, a servant of the king of Babylon and commander of his bodyguards, came to Jerusalem.

UST

⁸ On the seventh day in the fifth month of that year, [after Nebuchadnezzar had been ruling](#) for nineteen years, Nebuzaradan arrived [in Jerusalem](#). [He was one of King Nebuchadnezzar's officials](#); he was in command of the [men who guarded the king](#).

2 Kings 25:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Jerusalem
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- king, kingdom, kingship
- house
- house
- house
- house

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh's
- in Jerusalem
- So they burned down
- the
- temple
- king's palace, and
- the houses
- buildings in the city

ULT

⁹ He burned the house of Yahweh, the king's palace, and all the houses of Jerusalem; also every important building in the city he burned.

UST

⁹ He ordered his soldiers to burn down Yahweh's temple, the king's palace, and all the houses in Jerusalem. So they burned down all the important buildings in the city.

2 Kings 25:10

As for all the walls around Jerusalem, all

"This is what happened to all the walls around Jerusalem: all"

who were under

"who were following the orders of"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Chaldea, Chaldean](#)
- [prosper, prosperity, prosperous](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Jerusalem](#)
- [Then Nebuzaradan supervised the Babylonian](#)
- [Then Nebuzaradan supervised the Babylonian](#)

ULT

10 As for all the walls around Jerusalem, all the army of the Babylonians who were under the commander of the bodyguard destroyed them.

UST

10 [Then Nebuzaradan supervised the Babylonian](#) soldiers as they tore down the walls surrounding [Jerusalem](#).

2 Kings 25:11

As for the rest of the people...city, those

"This is what happened to the rest of the people...city: those"

the rest of the people who were left in the city

"the people who remained in the city"

deserted to the king

"left the city and gone to be with the king"

Translation Words - ULT

- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship
- exile, exiled

Translation Words - UST

- Babylonian army
- the people who
- to Babylon
- took

ULT

¹¹ As for the rest of the people who were left in the city, those who had deserted to the king of Babylon, and the remainder of the population—Nebuzaradan, the commander of the bodyguard, took them away into exile.

UST

¹¹ After that, he and his soldiers [took to Babylon the people who](#) were still living in the city, the other people who lived in the region of Judah, and the soldiers who had previously surrendered to the [Babylonian army](#).

2 Kings 25:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [earth](#), [earthen](#), [earthly](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [in Judah](#)

ULT

¹² But the commander of the bodyguard did leave some of the poorest of the land to work the vineyards and fields.

UST

¹² But Nebuzaradan allowed some of the very poor people to stay [in Judah](#) to take care of the vineyards and to plant crops in the fields.

2 Kings 25:13

As for the bronze pillars...Yahweh, the Chaldeans

"This is what happened to the bronze pillars...Yahweh: the Chaldeans"

the stands

This refers to the large, moveable bronze stands with bronze wheels and axles. "the moveable bronze stands" or "the bronze stands with wheels"

the bronze sea

"the large bronze basin"

broke them into pieces

"cut them into pieces" or "chopped them up into small pieces"

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- temple
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- bronze
- bronze
- bronze
- house

Translation Words - UST

- The Babylonian soldiers broke into pieces the bronze pillars...all...which were in the
- temple courtyard, and they took all the bronze
- temple courtyard, and they took all the bronze
- to Babylon
- temple courtyard, and they took all the bronze
- The Babylonian soldiers broke into pieces the bronze pillars...all...which were in the
- the bronze
- temple courtyard, and they took all the bronze
- The Babylonian soldiers broke into pieces the bronze pillars...all...which were in the

ULT

13 As for the bronze pillars that were in the house of Yahweh, and the stands and the bronze sea that were in the house of Yahweh, the Chaldeans broke them into pieces and carried the bronze back to Babylon.

UST

13 [The Babylonian soldiers broke into pieces the bronze pillars, the bronze stands with wheels, and the large bronze tank known as "The Sea," all of which were in the temple courtyard, and they took all the bronze to Babylon.](#)

2 Kings 25:14

shovels

A shovel was a tool that was used to clean the altar, typically used to move big piles of dirt, sand, or ashes.

with which the priests had served in the temple

“which the priests had used in the temple service”

Translation Words - ULT

- [bronze](#)
- [servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [the other bronze items](#)
- [the Israelite priests had used for offering sacrifices in the temple](#)

ULT

14 The pots, shovels, lamp trimmers, spoons, and all the utensils of bronze with which the priests had served in the temple—the Chaldeans took them all away.

UST

14 They also took the pots, the shovels, the instruments for snuffing out the lamps, the dishes, and all [the other bronze items](#) that [the Israelite priests had used for offering sacrifices in the temple](#).

2 Kings 25:15

The pots for removing ashes

You may need to make explicit which ashes are spoken of. Alternate translation: "The pots that were used for removing ashes from the altar" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- silver
- silver
- gold, golden
- gold, golden

Translation Words - UST

- silver
- silver
- and all the other items made of gold
- and all the other items made of gold

ULT

¹⁵ The pots for removing ashes and the bowls that were made of gold, and those made of silver—the captain of the king's guard took them away as well.

UST

¹⁵ The soldiers also took away the pans for the ashes of the sacrifices, the basins, [and all the other items made of gold](#) or [silver](#).

2 Kings 25:16

the sea

"the large bronze basin." See how you translated this in [2 Kings 25:13](#).

the stands

See how you translated this in [2 Kings 25:13](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Solomon](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [for the temple](#)
- [when Solomon was the king of Israel](#)
- [for the temple](#)

ULT

16 The two pillars, the sea, and the stands that Solomon had made for the house of Yahweh contained more bronze than could be weighed.

UST

16 The bronze from the two pillars, the bronze stands with wheels, and the huge tank that was called "The Sea," were all so very heavy that they could not be weighed. These things had been made [for the temple when Solomon was the king of Israel](#).

2 Kings 25:17

eighteen cubits...three cubits

A cubit was 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: “about 8.3 meters... about 1.4 meters” (See: [Biblical Distance](#))

a capital of bronze

“an artistic, bronze design” or “a bronze piece with designs”

latticework

This was a design made of crossed strips that looked like a net.

all made of bronze

“completely made of bronze”

Translation Words - ULT

- [bronze](#)
- [bronze](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and one-third meters high. The bronze capital](#)
- [bronze](#)

ULT

¹⁷ The height of the first pillar was eighteen cubits, and a capital of bronze was on top of it. The capital was three cubits high, with latticework and pomegranates all around on the capital, all made of bronze. The other pillar and its latticework were the same as the first.

UST

¹⁷ Each of the pillars was eight [and one-third meters high](#). The [bronze capital](#) of each pillar was one and one-third meters high. They were each decorated all around with something that looked like a net made of [bronze](#) chains connecting bronze pomegranates.

2 Kings 25:18

The commander of the bodyguard

See how you translated this in [2 Kings 25:8](#).

Seraiah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the second priest

These words refer to Zephaniah. Another possible meaning is “the priest under Seraiah.”

gatekeepers

See how you translated this in [2 Kings 7:10](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [priest, priesthood](#)
- [priest, priesthood \(2\)](#)
- [threshold, doorway](#)
- [chief](#)
- [watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [Seraiah, the high priest...his](#)
- [assistant \(2\)](#)
- [the entrance](#)
- [Seraiah, the high priest...his](#)
- [who guarded](#)

ULT

18 The commander of the bodyguard took Seraiah the chief priest, together with Zephaniah, the second priest, and the three gatekeepers.

UST

18 Nebuzaradan took with him to Babylon [Seraiah, the high priest](#); Zephaniah, [his assistant](#); and the three men [who guarded the entrance](#) to the temple.

2 Kings 25:19

took prisoner

“captured and kept from escaping”

an officer who was in charge of soldiers

Other translations may read “a eunuch who was in charge of soldiers.” A eunuch is a man whose private parts have been removed.

officer responsible for drafting men into the army

Possible meanings are 1) the officer forced men to become soldiers or 2) the officer wrote down the names of the men who became soldiers.

Translation Words - ULT

- scribe
- people, people group,
- people, people group,
- face, facial
- king, kingdom, kingship
- earth, earthen, earthly
- earth, earthen, earthly
- oversee, overseer
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

- secretary of the army
- From the people
- join the army, and sixty other important Judean men
- advisors...to
- king's
- join the army, and sixty other important Judean men
- join the army, and sixty other important Judean men
- commander
- the chief

ULT

¹⁹ From the city he took prisoner an officer who was in charge of soldiers, and five men of those who advised the king, who were still in the city. He also took prisoner the king's army officer responsible for drafting men into the army, along with sixty important men from the land who were in the city.

UST

¹⁹ [From the people](#) who were still left in Jerusalem, he took one officer from the Judean army, five of the [king's advisors](#), [the chief secretary of the army commander](#) who was in charge of recruiting men [to join the army, and sixty other important Judean men](#).

2 Kings 25:20

Nebuzaradan

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 25:8](#).

Riblah

This is the name of a place. See how you translated this in [2 Kings 25:6](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Babylon](#)
- [the king](#)

ULT

²⁰ Then Nebuzaradan, the commander of the bodyguard, took them and brought them to the king of Babylon at Riblah.

UST

²⁰ Nebuzaradan took them all to [the king of Babylon](#) at the city of Riblah.

2 Kings 25:21

put them to death

This is a polite way of saying “killed them.” It might be best to translate so that the reader understands that other people might have helped the king do this. (See: [Euphemism](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

In this way, Judah went out of its land into exile

“So Judah was taken into exile out of its land”

Judah went out of its land

Judah, the name of the people group, is a metonym for the people themselves. Alternate translation: “the people of Judah went out of their land” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [of Babylon](#)
- [That is what happened when the people of](#)
- [executed](#)
- [the king](#)

ULT

²¹ The king of Babylon put them to death at Riblah in the land of Hamath. In this way, Judah went out of its land into exile.

UST

²¹ There at the city of Riblah, in the province of Hamath, [the king of Babylon](#) commanded that they all be [executed](#). [That is what happened when the people of](#) Judah were taken forcefully from their land to Babylon.

2 Kings 25:22

Gedaliah...Ahikam...Shaphan

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- son
- son (2)
- appoint, appointed
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- Judea
- Nebuchadnezzar
- people, people group,
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- Gedaliah was a son of
- of (2)
- to live
- King
- to be the governor of the...who...still allowed...Judah
- Then...Nebuchadnezzar
- people
- King

ULT

²² As for the people who remained in the land of Judah, those whom Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon had left, he put Gedaliah son of Ahikam, son of Shaphan, in charge of them.

UST

²² Then [King Nebuchadnezzar](#) appointed a man named Gedaliah [to be the governor of the people](#) who he [still allowed to live](#) in [Judah](#). [Gedaliah was a son of](#) Ahikam and a grandson [of](#) Shaphan.

2 Kings 25:23

Ishmael...Nethaniah...Johanan...Kareah...Seraiah... Tanhumeth...Jaazaniah

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Netophathite

This refers to a person who is a descendant of a man named Netophah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Maakathite

This refers to a person who comes from a place called Maakah. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [command](#), [commandment](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [son](#)
- [son](#) (3)
- [Mizpah](#)
- [Babylon](#), [Babylonia](#), [Babylonian](#)
- [king](#), [kingdom](#), [kingship](#)
- [prince](#), [princess](#), [governors](#), [provincial governors](#), [officials](#), [noblemen](#), [nobility](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [in Judah](#)
- [son of](#)
- [son of](#) (2)
- [son of](#)
- [from the region of Maacah](#) (3)
- [at the city of Mizpah](#)
- [Babylon](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [commanders](#)

ULT

²³ Now when all the commanders of the soldiers, they and their men, heard that the king of Babylon had made Gedaliah governor, they went to Gedaliah at Mizpah. These men were Ishmael son of Nethaniah, Johanan son of Kareah, Seraiah son of Tanhumeth the Netophathite, and Jaazaniah son of the Maakathite—they and their men.

UST

²³ When all the army [commanders in Judah](#) and their soldiers found out that [the king of Babylon](#) had appointed Gedaliah to be the governor, they met with him [at the city of Mizpah](#). These commanders were Ishmael [son of](#) Nethaniah; Johanan [son of](#) Kareah; Seraiah [son of](#) Tanhumeth, from the city of Netophah; and Jaazaniah, [from the region of Maacah](#).

2 Kings 25:24

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian
- king, kingdom, kingship
- oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Translation Words - UST

- afraid
- of Babylon
- the king
- solemnly promised them

ULT

²⁴ Gedaliah made an oath to them and to their men, and said to them, “Do not be afraid of the Chaldean officials. Live in the land and serve the king of Babylon, and it will go well with you.”

UST

²⁴ Gedaliah solemnly promised them that the officials from Babylon were not planning to harm them. He said, “You may live in this land without being afraid; you should obey the king of Babylon. If you do, everything will go well for you.”

2 Kings 25:25

the seventh month

This is the seventh month on the Hebrew calendar. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Elishama

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jew, Jewish](#)
- [son](#)
- [son](#) (2)
- [descend, descendant](#)
- [die, dead, deadly, death,](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [and all the men...men from Judah](#)
- [whose grandfather Elishama was in the family](#)
- [whose grandfather Elishama was in the family](#) (2)
- [whose grandfather Elishama was in the family](#)
- [and all the men...men from Judah](#)

ULT

²⁵ But it happened that in the seventh month Ishmael son of Nethaniah son of Elishama, from the royal family, came with ten men and attacked Gedaliah. Gedaliah died, along with the men of Judah and the Babylonians who were with him at Mizpah.

UST

²⁵ But in the seventh month of that year, Ishmael, [whose grandfather Elishama was in the family](#) descended from King David, went to Mizpah along with ten other men. They assassinated Gedaliah [and all the men](#) with him. There were also [men from Judah](#) and men from Babylon whom they assassinated.

2 Kings 25:26

all the people

This is a generalization. Alternate translation: “many people” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

from the least to the greatest

This is a merism that means “everyone,” which is a generalization. Alternate translation: “from the least important to the most important” or “everyone” (See: [Merism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- fear, afraid, dread
- Egypt, Egyptian
- Chaldea, Chaldean
- people, people group,
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Translation Words - UST

- were very afraid
- Egypt
- of what the Babylonians would do
- people and
- commanders

ULT

26 Then all the people, from the least to the greatest, and the commanders of the soldiers, arose and went to Egypt, because they were afraid of the Babylonians.

UST

26 Then many of the people from Judah, important [people and](#) unimportant ones, and the army [commanders were very afraid of what the Babylonians would do](#) to them, so they fled to [Egypt](#).

2 Kings 25:27

in the thirty-seventh year

(See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

in the twelfth month, on the twenty-seventh day of the month

This is the twelfth month of the Hebrew calendar. The twenty-seventh day is near the beginning of April on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Awel-Marduk

This is a man's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [Judea](#)
- [head](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship](#)
- [king, kingdom, kingship \(2\)](#)
- [house](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [to Babylon](#)
- [of Judah](#)
- [the](#)
- [Jehoiachin](#)
- [the king of Babylon](#)
- [after King](#)
- [the \(2\)](#)
- [from prison](#)

ULT

²⁷ It happened later in the thirty-seventh year of the exile of Jehoiachin king of Judah, in the twelfth month, on the twenty-seventh day of the month, that Awel-Marduk king of Babylon released Jehoiachin king of Judah from prison. This happened in the year that Awel-Marduk began to reign.

UST

²⁷ Thirty-seven years [after King](#) Jehoiachin [of Judah](#) had been taken [to Babylon](#), Nebuchadnezzar's son Awel-Marduk became [the king of Babylon](#). He was kind to Jehoiachin, and on the twenty-seventh day of [the](#) twelfth month of that same year, he released [Jehoiachin from prison](#).

2 Kings 25:28

a seat more honorable than that of the other kings

Giving a good place at the dining table is a metonym for honoring him. Alternate translation: “more honor than the other kings” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best
- throne, enthroned
- throne, enthroned
- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- kindly
- He...honored...more than
- He...honored...more than
- the other kings

ULT

²⁸ He spoke kindly to him and gave him a seat more honorable than that of the other kings who were with him in Babylon.

UST

²⁸ [He](#) always spoke [kindly](#) to Jehoiachin and [honored](#) him [more than the other kings](#) who had been taken to Babylon.

2 Kings 25:29

removed Jehoiachin's prison clothes

The act of removing Jehoiachin's prison clothes represents making him a free man. (See: [Metonymy](#))

at the king's table

"with the king and his officials"

Translation Words - ULT

- [bread](#)
- [devour](#)

Translation Words - UST

- [allowed Jehoiachin](#)
- [to eat](#)

ULT

²⁹ Awel-Marduk removed Jehoiachin's prison clothes, and Jehoiachin ate regularly at the king's table for the rest of his life.

UST

²⁹ He gave Jehoiachin new clothes to replace the clothes that he had been wearing in prison, and he [allowed Jehoiachin to eat](#) at the king's table every day for the rest of his life.

2 Kings 25:30

A regular food allowance was given to him

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "The king made sure that he had a regular food allowance" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

A regular food allowance

"Money to buy food"

Translation Words - ULT

- king, kingdom, kingship

Translation Words - UST

- The king

ULT

30 A regular food allowance was given to him every day for the rest of his life.

UST

30 The king of Babylon also gave him money every day, so that he could buy the things that he needed. [The king](#) continued to do that until Jehoiachin died.



unfoldingWord® Translation Academy

Version 12

Abstract Nouns

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **Abstract Nouns** are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. It is a way of giving names to actions or qualities so that people who speak these languages can talk about them as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, they may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. They would say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, "What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

Examples from the Bible

...from ***childhood*** you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers how slowly something is done.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

The abstract noun "purposes" refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

...**from** childhood

you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.

But godliness

with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**.
 But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**.
 But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.

Today salvation

has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

Today the people in this house **have been saved**...
 Today God **has saved** the people in this house...

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness

to be. (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes

of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:27](#); [10:16](#); [13:4](#); [15:5](#); [15:18](#); [15:19](#); [21:16](#); [22:19](#); [23:26](#))

Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- ACTIVE: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- PASSIVE: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

- **ACTIVE:** **My father** built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
- **PASSIVE:** **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons this is a translation issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

Purposes for the passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples from the Bible

And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed**, too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal **was broken down**... (Judges 6:28 ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea (Luke 17:2 ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
3. Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

A loaf of bread was given

him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

The king's servants gave Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

It would be better for him if a millstone were put

around his neck and he were thrown into the sea. (Luke 17:2 ULT)

It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

(3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

A loaf of bread was given

him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Abstract Nouns](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:18](#); [2:9](#); [2:22](#); [3:17](#); [4:13](#); [5:10](#); [5:14](#); [5:17](#); [6:5](#); [6:25](#); [7:1](#); [7:11](#); [7:16](#); [8:23](#); [8:24](#); [8:29](#); [9:7](#); [9:15](#); [9:20](#); [9:27](#); [10:17](#); [10:21](#); [10:24](#); [11:3](#); [11:8](#); [12:3](#); [12:9](#); [12:15](#); [12:16](#); [14:4](#); [14:5](#); [14:6](#); [14:12](#); [15:4](#); [15:6](#); [15:11](#); [15:15](#); [15:26](#); [15:31](#); [15:35](#); [16:10](#); [16:19](#); [16:20](#); [18:30](#); [21:17](#); [21:25](#); [22:4](#); [22:5](#); [22:7](#); [22:13](#); [23:2](#); [23:3](#); [23:22](#); [23:23](#); [23:28](#); [24:2](#); [24:5](#); [25:4](#); [25:5](#); [25:30](#))

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

- **Assumed knowledge** is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.
- When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways:
 - **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
 - **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. **Implicit information** is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this **implicit information** by combining what they already know (**assumed knowledge**) with the **explicit information** that the speaker tells them directly.

Reasons this is a translation issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different than the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the **assumed knowledge** or the **implicit information** is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

Examples from the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you. (Matthew 11:21, 22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, "**Foxes** have holes

, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon

at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.

...it will be more tolerable for **those cities Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, at the day of judgment than for you.
or:
...it will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands

when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19, 20 ULT) - The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, he would have to live like Jesus without a house.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man**, have **no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live.**"

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you.**

or:

At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

(Go back to: 2 Kings 1:2; 1:4; 1:5; 1:6; 1:8; 1:9; 1:13; 1:14; 1:16; 1:17; 2:9; 2:14; 2:16; 2:17; 2:19; 3:1; 3:4; 3:7; 3:12; 3:17; 3:19; 3:25; 3:27; 4:4; 4:7; 4:8; 4:13; 4:19; 4:21; 4:22; 4:23; 4:27; 4:31; 4:39; 5:5; 5:7; 5:16; 5:17; 5:22; 5:23; 6:2; 6:10; 6:12; 6:15; 6:19; 6:23; 6:31; 6:32; 6:33; 7:1; 7:10; 7:13; 7:14; 8:3; 8:5; 8:6; 8:12; 8:15; 8:16; 8:18; 8:19; 8:21; 8:22; 8:25; 8:27; 9:5; 9:9; 9:10; 9:13; 9:15; 9:24; 9:25; 9:26; 9:29; 9:33; 9:34; 10:5; 10:6; 10:9; 10:19; 10:21; 10:25; 11:1; 11:7; 11:15; 12:3; 12:16; 13:14; 13:17; 13:21; 13:23; 14:3; 14:4; 14:5; 14:14; 15:1; 15:8; 15:12; 15:13; 15:15; 15:17; 15:23; 15:27; 15:29; 15:30; 15:32; 15:37; 16:1; 16:3; 16:18; 18:14; 19:15; 19:28; 20:9; 20:10; 20:11; 20:16; 21:5; 21:6; 22:14; 23:11; 23:14; 23:15; 23:19; 23:20; 24:1; 24:12; 24:13; 25:7; 25:15; 25:21)

Background Information

Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called

background information. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

This page answers the question: *What is background information, and how can I show that some information is background information?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-events]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

Example - The underlined sentences in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because ***their village was going to have a feast the next day. Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day!*** They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope ***they had brought with them***, and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that ***it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig.***

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are: "their village was going to have a feast the next day;" "He once killed three wild pigs in one day;" "that they had brought with them;" and "Peter had mistakenly killed his cousins' pig."

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were", rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "Peter ***was*** the best hunter in the village" and "it ***was*** his own pig."

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are "because," "once," and "had."

A writer may use background information

- To help their listeners be interested in the story
- To help their listeners understand something in the story
- To help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- To tell the setting of a story
- Setting includes:
 - where the story takes place
 - when the story takes place
 - who is present when the story begins
 - what is happening when the story begins

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- You (the translator) need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- You will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that your own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.

Examples from the Bible

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram **was eighty-six years old** when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

Now Jesus himself, when he began to teach, **was about thirty years of age**. He **was the son** (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus' age and ancestors. The story starts up again in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

Now **it happened on a Sabbath** that Jesus **was going through the grain fields** and his disciples **were picking the heads of grain**, rubbing them between their hands, and eating the grain. But some of the Pharisees said... (Luke 6:1-2a ULT)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the sentence, "But some of the Pharisees said."

Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kind of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

1. Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.
2. Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULT English translations.

Now

Jesus himself, when he began to teach, was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

English uses the word "now" to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb "was" shows that it is background information.

With many other exhortations also, he preached good news to the people. John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias

, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The underlined phrases happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb "had" in "had done" shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael.
 Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram

. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

"When Abram was eighty-six years old, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael."

John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias

, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20)

The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.

"Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and he did many other evil things, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison."

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/grammar-connect-words-phrases]]

[Introduction of a New Event](#)

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:21](#); [8:4](#); [9:14](#); [9:16](#); [13:20](#))

Biblical Distance

Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man's hand.
- The **span** or handspace was the width of a man's hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man's forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **"long" cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as "furlong", which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the lengths and distances that are in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal\]\]](#)

[Fractions](#)

The metric values in the table below are close but not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact length from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Metric Measure
handbreadth	8 centimeters
span	23 centimeters
cubit	46 centimeters
"long" cubit	54 centimeters
stadia	185 meters

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one cubit as ".46 meters" or even as "46 centimeters", readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say "half a meter", "45 centimeters", or "50 centimeters".
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word "about" to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, Luke 24:13 says that Emmaus was sixty stadia from Jerusalem. This can be translated as "about ten kilometers" from Jerusalem.
6. When God tells people how long something should be, and when people make things according to those lengths, do not use "about" in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how long something should be.

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half. (Exodus 25:10 ULT)

- (1) Use the measurements given in the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half kubits** ; its width will be **one kubit and a half** ; and its height will be **one kubit and a half**."

- (2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter** ; its width will be **two thirds of a meter** ; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard meter length, you could translate it as below.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**."

- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half cubits (one meter)**; its width will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)** ; and its height will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)**."

- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**¹; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**²; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter.**"

The footnotes would look like:

"They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**¹; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**²; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter.**"

The footnotes would look like:

[1] two and a half cubits
[2] one cubit and a half

(Go back to: [2 Kings 14:13; 25:17](#))

Biblical Money

Description:

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of money in the Bible?*

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals such as silver and gold and would give a certain weight of that metal in order to buy things. Later people started to make coins that each contained a standard amount of a certain metal. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

Unit in OT	Metal	Weight
daric	gold coin	8.4 grams
shekel	various metals	11 grams
talent	various metals	33 kilograms

Unit in NT	Metal	Day's Wage
denarius/denarii	silver coin	1 day
drachma	silver coin	1 day
mite	copper coin	1/64 day
shekel	silver coin	4 days
talent	silver	6,000 days

Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see [Biblical Weight](#). The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)
2. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.
3. Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
4. Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a note.
5. Use the Bible term and explain it in a note.

Translation Strategies

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.

The one owed five hundred denarii, and the other owed fifty denarii. (Luke 7:41 ULT)

(1) Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

"The one owed **five hundred denali**, and the other owed **fifty denali**."

(2) Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.

"The one owed **five hundred silver coins**, and the other owed **fifty silver coins**."

(3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.

"The one owed **five hundred days' wages**, and the other owed **fifty days' wages**."

(4) Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

"The one owed **five hundred denarii** ¹, and the other owed **fifty denarii**. ²"

The footnotes would look like:

^[1] five hundred days's wages
^[2] fifty day's wages

(5) Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.

"The one owed **five hundred denarii** ¹, and the other owed **fifty denarii**."
(Luke 7:41 ULT)

^[1] A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Copy or Borrow Words](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-unknown]]

(Go back to: [2 Kings 7:1](#); [7:16](#); [7:18](#); [15:19](#); [15:20](#); [18:14](#); [23:33](#))

Biblical Volume

Description

The following terms are the most common units of volume used in the Bible to state how much a certain container could hold. The containers and measurements are given for both liquids (such as wine) and dry solids (such as grain). The metric values are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the measures of volume that are in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal\]\]](#)

Type	Original Measure	Liters
Dry	omer	2 liters
Dry	ephah	22 liters
Dry	homer	220 liters
Dry	cor	220 liters
Dry	seah	7.7 liters
Dry	letheq	114.8 liters
Liquid	metrete	40 liters
Liquid	bath	22 liters
Liquid	hin	3.7 liters
Liquid	kab	1.23 liters
Liquid	log	0.31 liters

Translation Principles

- The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
- Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
- Whatever measures you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kinds of measures in the text or a footnote.
- If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one hin as “3.7 liters”, readers might think that the measurement is exactly 3.7 liters, not 3.6 or 3.8. It would be better to use a more approximate measure such as “three and a half liters” or “four liters”.
- When God tells people how much of something to use, and when people use those amounts in obedience to him, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much they used.

When the unit of measure is stated

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Isaiah 5:10 below.

For four hectares of vineyard will yield only one bath, and one homer of seed will yield only an ephah. (Isaiah 5:10 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

"For four hektares of vineyard will yield only one **bat**, and one **homer** of seed will yield only an **efa**."

(2) Use the measurements given in the UST. Usually they are metric measurements. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

"For four hectares of vineyard will yield only **twenty-two liters** and **220 liters** of seed will yield only **twenty-two liters**."

"For four hectares of vineyard will yield only **twenty-two liters**, and **ten baskets** of seed will yield only **one basket**."

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

"For four hectares of vineyard will yield only six gallons, and **six and a half bushels** of seed will yield only twenty quarts."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

"For four hectares of vineyard will yield only **one bath (six gallons)**, and **one homer (six and a half bushels)** of seed will yield only **an ephah (twenty quarts)**."

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in footnotes.

"For four hectares of vineyard will yield only twenty-two liters ¹, and 220 liters ² of seed will yield only twenty-two liters ³."

The footnotes would look like:

- [1] one bath
- [2] one homer
- [3] one ephah

When the unit of measure is implied

Sometimes the Hebrew does not specify a particular unit of volume but only uses a number. In these cases, many English versions, including the ULT and UST, add the word “measure”.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty measures

of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty measures of wine, there were only twenty. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

Translation Strategies

1. Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
2. Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount”.
3. Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.
4. Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Haggai 2:16 below.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for twenty measures

of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty measures of wine, there were only twenty. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

(1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for **twenty** of grain, there were only **ten**, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty** of wine, there were only **twenty**.

(2) Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount”.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for **twenty amounts** of grain, there were only **ten**, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty amounts** of wine, there were only **twenty**.

(3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for **twenty baskets** of grain, there were only **ten**, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty jars** of wine, there were only **twenty**.

(4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

whenever anyone came to the grainery for **twenty liters** of grain, there were only **ten liters**, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty liters** of wine, there were only **twenty liters**.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Fractions](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]

(Go back to: [2 Kings 6:25](#); [7:1](#); [7:16](#); [7:18](#))

Biblical Weight

Description

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of weight in the Bible?*

The following terms are the most common units of weight in the Bible. The term “shekel” means “weight”, and many other weights are described in terms of the shekel. Some of these weights were used for money. The metric values in the table below are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are only an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Shekels	Grams	Kilograms
shekel	1 shekel	11 grams	-
bekah	1/2 shekel	5.7 grams	-
pim	2/3 shekel	7.6 grams	-
gerah	1/20 shekel	0.57 grams	-
mina	50 shekels	550 grams	1/2 kilogram
talent	3,000 shekels	-	34 kilograms

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one gerah as “.57 grams” readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a gram”.
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, 2 Samuel 21:16 says that Goliath’s spear weighed 300 shekels. Instead of translating this as “3300 grams” or “3.3 kilograms”, it can be translated as “about three and one half kilograms”.
6. When God tells people how much something should weigh, and when people use those weights, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much the thing should weigh.

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 38:29 below.

The bronze from the offering weighed seventy talents and 2,400 shekels

. (Exodus 38:29 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

"The bronze from the offering weighed **seventy talents and 2,400 sekeles**."

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

"The bronze from the offering weighed **2,400 kilograms**."

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

"The bronze from the offering weighed **5,300 pounds**."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a footnote. The following shows both measurements in the text.

"The bronze from the offering weighed **seventy talents (2,380 kilograms)** and **2,400 shekels (26.4 kilograms)**."

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a footnote. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

"The bronze from the offering weighed **seventy talents and 2,400 shekels**.
1 "

The footnote would look like:

[1] This was a total of about 2,400 kilograms.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal\]\]](#)
[Fractions](#)

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:5](#); [5:22](#); [5:23](#))

Copy or Borrow Words

Description

Sometimes the Bible includes things that are not part of your culture and that your language may not have a word for. It also includes people and places that you may not have names for.

When that happens you can “borrow” the word from the Bible into your own language. This means that you basically copy it from the other language. This page tells how to “borrow” words. (There are also other ways to translate words for things that are not in your language. See Translate Unknowns.)

This page answers the question: *What does it mean to borrow words from another language and how can I do it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-unknown]]

Examples from the Bible

He saw a **fig** tree on the roadside (Matthew 21:19 ULT)

If there are no fig trees where your language is spoken, there might not be a name for this kind of tree in your language.

Above him were the **seraphim**; each one had six wings; with two each covered his face, and with two he covered his feet, and with two he flew. (Isaiah 6:2 ULT)

Your language might not have a name for this kind of creature.

The declaration of the word of Yahweh to Israel by the hand of **Malachi**. (Malachi 1:1 ULT)

Malachi might not be a name that people who speak your language use.

Translation Strategies

There are several things to be aware of when borrowing words from another language.

- Different languages use different scripts, such as the Hebrew, Greek, Latin, Cyrillic, Devanagari, and Korean scripts. These scripts use different shapes to represent the letters in their alphabets.
- Languages that use the same script might pronounce the letters in that script differently. For example, when speaking German, people pronounce the letter “j” the same way that people pronounce the letter “y” when speaking English.
- Languages do not all have the same sounds or combinations of sounds. For example, many languages do not have the soft “th” sound in the English word “think,” and some languages cannot start a word with a combination of sounds like “st” as in “stop.”

There are several ways to borrow a word.

1. If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.
2. You can spell the word as the other language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.
3. You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the other language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.

אֶפְרַיִם - A man's name in Hebrew letters.

"Zephaniah" - The same name in Roman letters

(2) You can spell the word as the other language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.

Zephaniah - This is a man's name.

"Zephaniah" - The name as it is spelled in English, but you can pronounce it according to the rules of your language.

(3) You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the other language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

Zephaniah - If your language does not have the "z", you could use "s". If your writing system does not use "ph" you could use "f". Depending on how you pronounce the "i" you could spell it with "i" or "ai" or "ay".

"Sefania"

"Sefanaia"

"Sefanaya"

(Go back to: [2 Kings 9:9](#))

Direct and Indirect Quotations

Description

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotation and indirect quotation.

A **direct quotation** occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker's exact words. In the example below, John would have said "I" when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is reporting John's words, uses the word "I" in the quotation to refer to John. To show that these are John's exact words, many languages put the words between quotation marks: "".

- John said, "I do not know at what time I will arrive."

An **indirect quotation** occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead of from the original person's point of view. This kind of quotation usually features changes in pronouns, and it often features changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as "he" in the quotation and uses the word "would", to replace the future tense indicated by "will".

- John said that **he** did not know at what time **he** would arrive.

Why this is a translation issue

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by either direct or indirect quotations. In other languages, it is more natural to use one rather than the other, or there is a certain meaning implied by using one rather than the other. So for each quotation, translators need to decide whether it is best to translate it as a direct quotation or an indirect quotation.

Examples from the Bible

The verses in the examples below contain both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have underlined the quotations.

He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, "Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them." (Luke 5:14 ULT)

- Indirect quote: He instructed him **to tell no one**,
- Direct quote: but told him, "**Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest...**"

Being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God would come, Jesus answered them and said, "The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, 'Look here!' or, 'Look there!' because the kingdom of God is among you." (Luke 17:20-21 ULT)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees **when the kingdom of God would come**,
- Direct quote: Jesus answered them and said, "**The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, 'Look here!' or, 'Look there!' because the kingdom of God is among you.**"
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, '**Look here!**' or, '**Look there!**'

This page answers the question: *What are direct and indirect quotations?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-quotations\]\]](#)

Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it. If the kind of quote used in that context is not natural for your language, follow these strategies.

1. If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
2. If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, “Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.

” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He instructed him to tell no one, but ***to go on his way, and to show himself to the priest and to offer a sacrifice for his cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.***”

- (2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

He instructed him, to tell no one

, but told him, “Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He instructed him, “***Tell no one.*** Just go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_quotations.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-quotesinquotes\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [2 Kings 6:8](#); [14:9](#))

Double Negatives

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of “not.” Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

This page answers the question: *What are double negatives?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning “not.” Examples in English are “no,” “not,” “none,” “no one,” “nothing,” “nowhere,” “never,” “nor,” “neither,” and “without.” Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean “not” such as the underlined parts of these words: “**un** happy,” “**im** possible,” and “use**less**.” Some other kinds of words also have a negative meaning, such as “lack” or “reject,” or even “fight” or “evil.”

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each have a negative meaning.

It is **not** that we do **not** have authority... (2 Thessalonians 3:9 ULT)

And this better confidence did **not** happen **without** the taking of an oath,... (Hebrews 7:20 ULT.)

Be sure of this—wicked people will **not** go **unpunished** (Proverbs 11:21 ULT)

Reason this is a translation issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as Spanish, a double negative emphasizes the negative. The following Spanish sentence *No ví a nadie* is literally, “I did not see no one”. It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one”. The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, “I did not see anyone”.
- In some languages, a second negative cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, “He is not unintelligent” means “He is intelligent”.
- In some languages the double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” means, “He is somewhat intelligent”.
- In some languages, such as the languages of the Bible, the double negative can create a positive sentence, and often strengthens the statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” can mean “He is intelligent” or “He is very intelligent”.

To translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know both what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

Examples from the Bible

...in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14 ULT)

This means “so that they will be fruitful”.

All things were made through him and **without** him there was **not** one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

By using a double negative, John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything. The double negative makes a stronger statement than the simple positive.

Translation Strategies

If double negatives are natural and are used to express the positive in your language, consider using them. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

1. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
2. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely” or “absolutely.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

■ **For we do** not

have a high priest who cannot feel sympathy for our weaknesses. (Hebrews 4:15 ULT)

■ “For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses.”

...in order not

to be unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14 ULT)

■ “...so that they may be fruitful.”

(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely” or “absolutely.”

■ **Be sure of this—wicked people will** not

go unpunished... (Proverbs 11:21 ULT)

■ “Be sure of this—wicked people will **certainly** be punished...”

All things were made through him and without

him there was not one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

■ “All things were made through him. He made **absolutely** everything that has been made.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:21](#); [3:14](#); [5:17](#); [10:21](#); [20:13](#); [20:15](#); [24:14](#))

Doublet

Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike Hendiadys, in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

Examples from the Bible

King David was **old** and **advanced in years**. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean that he was “very old.”

...he attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself... (1 Kings 2:32 ULT)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

...as of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19 ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect--not even one.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words or phrases.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

You have decided to prepare false

and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)

“You have decided to prepare **false** things to say.”

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

■ **King David was** old

and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

■ “King David was **very old**.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

■ **...a lamb** without blemish

and without spot... (1 Peter 1:19 ULT) - English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

■ “...a lamb **without any blemish at all**...”

(Go back to: [2 Kings 17:36](#); [19:16](#); [23:3](#))

Ellipsis

Description

Ellipsis is what happens when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words from a sentence that it normally should have to be a complete sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, ***nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.***
(Psalm 1:5)

There is ellipsis in the second part because “nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would be:

...nor ***will*** sinners ***stand*** in the assembly of the righteous.

There are two types of ellipsis.

1. A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.
2. An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage, or from the nature of the situation.

Reason this is a translation issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

Examples from the Bible

Relative Ellipsis

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf ***and Sirion like a young ox.*** (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and ***he makes*** Sirion ***skip*** like a young ox.

But if we are afflicted, ***for your comfort and salvation;*** if we are comforted, ***for your comfort,***...
(2 Corinthians 1:6)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

But if we are afflicted, **we are afflicted** for your comfort and salvation; if we are comforted, **we are comforted** for your comfort,...

Absolute Ellipsis

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, **that I might receive my sight.**" (Luke 18:40-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

"Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight."

To Titus...**Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.** (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

To Titus...**May you receive** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our savior.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

...**the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor** sinners in the assembly

of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5)

...the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinner will not stand in the assembly** of the righteous

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, that I might receive my sight

." (Luke 18:40-41)

...when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my sight."

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox

. (Psalm 29:6)

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:13](#); [5:17](#); [5:23](#); [6:25](#); [6:32](#); [9:7](#))

End of Story

Description

There are different types of information that may be given at the end of a story. Often this is background information. This background information is different from the actions that make up the main part of the story. A book of the Bible is often made up of many smaller stories that are part of the larger story of the book itself. For example, the story of Jesus' birth is a smaller story in the larger story of the book of Luke. Each of these stories, whether large or small, can have background information at the end of it.

This page answers the question: *What kinds of information are given at the end of a story?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

[Background Information](#)

Different purposes for end of story information

- To summarize the story
- To give a comment about what happened in the story
- To connect a smaller story to the larger story it is a part of
- To tell the reader what happens to a specific character after the main part of the story ends
- To tell on-going action that continues after the main part of the story ends
- To tell what happens after the story as a result of the events that happened in the story itself

Reasons this is a translation issue

Different languages have different ways of presenting these kinds of information. If you (the translator) do not use your language's ways of doing this, readers may not know these things:

- That this information is ending the story
- What the purpose of the information is
- How the information is related to the story

Principles of translation

- Translate the particular kind of information at the end of a story the way your language expresses that kind of information.
- Translate it so that people will understand how it relates to the story it is part of.
- If possible, translate the end of the story in a way that people will know where that story ends and the next begins.

Examples from the Bible

1. To summarize the story

Then the rest of the men should follow, some on planks, and some on other things from the ship. ***In this way it happened that all of us came safely to land.*** (Acts 27:44 ULT)

1. To give a comment about what happened in the story

Many who practiced magical arts brought their books together and burned them in the sight of everyone. When they counted the value of them, it was fifty thousand pieces of silver. ***So the word of the Lord spread very widely in powerful ways.*** (Acts 19:19-20 ULT)

1. To tell the reader what happens to a specific character after the main part of the story ends

Mary said, "My soul praises the Lord, and my spirit has rejoiced in God my savior..." **Mary stayed with Elizabeth about three months and then returned to her house.** (Luke 1:46-47, 56 ULT)

1. To tell on-going action that continues after the main part of the story ends

All who heard it were amazed at what was spoken to them by the shepherds. **But Mary kept thinking about all the things she had heard, treasuring them in her heart.** (Luke 2:18-19 ULT)

1. To tell what happens after the story as a result of the events that happened in the story itself

"Woe to you teachers of Jewish laws, because you have taken away the key of knowledge; you do not enter in yourselves, and you hinder those who are entering." **After Jesus left there, the scribes and the Pharisees opposed him and argued with him about many things, trying to trap him in his own words.** (Luke 11:52-54 ULT)

(Go back to: [2 Kings 7:18](#); [7:19](#))

Euphemism

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

This page answers the question: *What is a Euphemism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Definition

...they found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons “were dead”. It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples from the Bible

...where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself...(1 Samuel 24:3 ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

Mary said to the angel, “How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

...where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself

. (1 Samuel 24:3 ULT) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:

“...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave **to dig a hole**”
 “...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave **to have some time alone**”

Mary said to the angel, “How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

■ Mary said to the angel, "How will this happen, since ***I do not know a man?***" - (This is the euphemism used in the original Greek)

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

■ **they found Saul and his sons** fallen

on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULT)

■ "they found Saul and his sons ***dead*** on Mount Gilboa."

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:31](#); [6:31](#); [6:32](#); [8:24](#); [9:8](#); [9:33](#); [10:6](#); [10:11](#); [10:35](#); [13:9](#); [13:13](#); [14:16](#); [14:22](#); [14:29](#); [15:7](#); [15:22](#); [15:38](#); [16:20](#); [21:18](#); [22:20](#); [24:6](#); [25:21](#))

First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you”. Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than “I” or “you”.

Description

- **First person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we”. (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- **Second person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you”. (Also: your, yours)
- **Third person** - This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he”, “she”, “it” and “they”. (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns]]

Reason this is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you”.

Examples from the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and “his”. He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,
“...Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **him**? (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “him”. He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look what I have done, taking it upon myself to speak to **my Lord**, even though I am only dust and ashes! (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you”. He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your”.

Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you”.
2. Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you”.

But David said to Saul, “Your servant

used to keep his father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34)

But David said to Saul, “**I, your servant**, used to keep **my** father’s sheep.”

(2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like God’s

? Can you thunder with a voice like him? (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **mine**? Can you thunder with a voice like **me**?”

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you

does not forgive his brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **your** brother from your heart.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-you]]

(Go back to: [2 Kings 16:15](#); [19:33](#); [22:19](#))

Fractions

Description

Fractions are a kind of number that refer to equal parts of a thing or to equal groups within a larger group of people or things. An item or a group of items is divided into two or more parts or groups, and a fraction refers to one or more of those parts or groups.

This page answers the question: *What are fractions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Numbers](#)

For the drink offering, you must offer **a third** of a hin of wine. (Numbers 15:7 ULT)

A hin is a container used for measuring wine and other liquids. They were to think about dividing a hin container into three equal parts and fill up only one of those parts, and offer that amount.

a third of the ships were destroyed. (Revelation 8:9 ULT)

There were many ships. If all those ships were divided into three equal groups of ships, one group of ships was destroyed.

Most fractions in English simply have “-th” added to the end of the number.

Number of parts the whole is divided into	Fraction
four	fourth
ten	tenth
one hundred	one hundredth
one thousand	one thousandth

Some fractions in English do not follow that pattern.

Number of parts the whole is divided into	Fraction
two	half
three	third
five	fifth

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use fractions. They may simply talk about parts or groups, but they do not use fractions to tell how big a part is or how many are included in a group.

Examples From the Bible

Now to **one half** of the tribe of Manasseh, Moses had given an inheritance in Bashan, but to the other **half**, Joshua gave an inheritance beside their brothers in the land west of the Jordan. (Joshua 22:7 ULT)

The tribe of Manasseh divided into two groups. The phrase “one half of the tribe of Manasseh” refers one of those groups. The phrase “the other half” refers to the other group.

The four angels who had been prepared for that very hour, that day, that month, and that year, were released to kill **a third** of humanity. (Revelation 9:15 ULT)

If all the people in the world were to be divided into three equal groups, then the number of people in one group would be killed.

You must also prepare **a fourth** of a hin of wine as the drink offering. (Numbers 15:5 ULT)

They were to imagine dividing a hin of wine into four equal parts and prepare the amount equal to one of them.

Translation Strategies

If a fraction in your language would give the right meaning, consider using it. If not, you could consider these strategies.

1. Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.
2. For measurements such as for weight and length, use a unit that your people might know or the unit in the UST.
3. For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

Examples of These Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.

A third

of the ocean became red like blood (Revelation 8:8 ULT)

It was like they **divided** the ocean **into three parts**, and **one part** of the ocean became blood.

then you must offer with the bull a grain offering of three tenths

of an ephah of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil. (Numbers 15:9 ULT)

...then you must **divide** an ephah of fine flour **into ten parts** and **divide** a hin of oil **into two parts**. Then mix **three of those parts** of the flour with **one of the parts** of oil. Then you must offer that grain offering along with the bull.

(2) For measurements, use the measurements that are given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

two thirds of a shekel

(1 Samuel 13:21 ULT)

eight grams of silver (1 Samuel 13:21 UST)

three tenths of an ephah

of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil. (Numbers 15:9 ULT)

six and one-half liters of finely ground flour mixed with **two liters** of olive oil. (Numbers 15:9 UST)

(3) For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

■ three tenths of an ephah

of fine flour mixed with half a hin of oil. (Numbers 15:9, ULT)

■ **six quarts** of fine flour mixed with **two quarts** of oil.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

[Biblical Money](#)

(Go back to: [2 Kings 6:25](#))

Hebrew Months

Description

This page answers the question: *What are the Hebrew months?*

The Hebrew calendar used in the Bible has twelve months. Unlike the western calendar, its first month begins in the spring of the northern hemisphere. Sometimes a month is called by its name (Abib, Ziv, Sivan), and sometimes it is called by its order in the Hebrew calendar year (first month, second month, third month).

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may be surprised to read of months that they have never heard of, and they may wonder how those months correspond to the months that they use.
- Readers may not realize that phrases such as “the first month” or “the second month” refer to the first or second month of the Hebrew calendar, not some other calendar.
- Readers may not know when the first month of the Hebrew calendar begins.
- The Bible may tell about something happening in a certain month, but readers will not be able to fully understand what is said about it if they do not know what season of the year that was.

List of Hebrew Months

This is a list of the Hebrew months with information about them that may be helpful in the translation.

Abib - (This month is called **Nisan** after the Babylonian exile.) This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God brought the people of Israel out of Egypt. It is at the beginning of the spring season when the late rains come and people begin to harvest their crops. It is during the last part of March and the first part of April on western calendars. The Passover celebration started on Abib 10, the Festival of Unleavened Bread was right after that, and the Festival of Harvest was a few weeks after that.

Ziv - This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the harvest season. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on western calendars.

Sivan - This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the harvest season and the beginning of the dry season. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on western calendars. The Feast of Weeks is celebrated on Sivan 6.

Tammuz - This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of June and the first part of July on western calendars.

Ab - This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of July and the first part of August on western calendars.

Elul - This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the dry season and the beginning of the rainy season. It is during the last part of August and the first part of September on western calendars.

Ethanim - This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the early rain season which would soften the land for sowing. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on western calendars. The Feast of Ingathering and the Day of Atonement are celebrated in this month.

Bul - This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the rainy season when people plough their fields and sow seed. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on western calendars.

Kislev - This is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. This is at the end of the sowing season and the beginning of the cold season. It is during the last part of November and the first part of December on western calendars.

Tebeth - This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the cold season when there may be rain and snow. It is during the last part of December and the first part of January on western calendars.

Shebat - This is the eleventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is the coldest month of the year, and it has heavy rain fall. It is during the last part of January and the first part of February on western calendars.

Adar - This is the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the cold season. It is during the last part of February and the first part of March on western calendars. The feast called Purim is celebrated in Adar.

Examples from the Bible

You are going out of Egypt on this day, in **the month of Abib**. (Exodus 13:4 ULT)

You must eat unleavened bread from twilight of the fourteenth day **in the first month of the year**, until twilight of the twenty-first day of the month. (Exodus 12:18 ULT)

Translation Strategies

You may need to make some information about the months explicit. (See [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#).)

1. Tell the number of the Hebrew month.
2. Use the months that people know.
3. State clearly what season the month occurred in.
4. Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month. (If possible, use a footnote to show the Hebrew month and day.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The examples below use these two verses.

At that time, you will appear before me in the month of Abib

, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt. (Exodus 23:15 ULT)

It will always be a statute for you that in the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month,
you must humble yourselves and do no work. (Leviticus 16:29 ULT)

- (1) Tell the number of the Hebrew month.

At that time, you will appear before me in **the first month of the year**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

- (2) Use the months that people know.

At that time, you will appear before me in **the month of March**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

It will always be a statute for you that **on the day I choose in late September** you must humble yourselves and do no work."

- (3) State clearly what season the month occurred in.

It will always be a statute for you that **in the autumn, on the tenth day of the seventh month**, you must humble yourselves and do no work.

- (4) Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month.

It will always be a statute for you that in ***the day I choose in early autumn***
¹ you must humble yourselves and do no work.

The footnote would look like:

^[1] The Hebrew says, “the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

(Go back to: [2 Kings 25:1](#); [25:3](#); [25:8](#); [25:25](#); [25:27](#))

How to Translate Names

Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-unknown]]

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

It was this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name “Melchizedek” means “king of righteousness,” and also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2 ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title, because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see [Borrow Words](#).
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples from the Bible

You went over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the **Amorites** (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called **Beerlahairoi**; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beerlahairoi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me”.

She named him **Moses** and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out”.

Saul was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

You went over the Jordan

and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites**

Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because Herod wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)

Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, “Go and leave here because **King Herod** wants to kill you.

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

She named him Moses

and said, “Because I drew him from the water.” (Exodus 2:11 ULT)

She named him **Moses (which sounds like ‘drawn out’)**, and said, “Because I drew him from the water.”

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

...she said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore the well was called Beerlahairoi

; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULT)

...she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**;

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

...a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

...a young man named **Paul**¹

The footnote would look like:

^[1] Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But Saul

, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."

a young man named Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

^[1] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But Saul

, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

It came about in Iconium that Paul

and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul**¹ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:

^[1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Copy or Borrow Words](#)

(Go back to: 2 Kings 1:2; 1:3; 3:3; 3:11; 3:25; 4:8; 4:12; 4:42; 5:12; 5:20; 6:13; 6:24; 8:7; 8:8; 8:22; 8:26; 9:1; 9:2; 9:14; 9:21; 9:25; 9:27; 9:31; 9:36; 10:12; 10:15; 10:29; 10:32; 10:33; 10:35; 11:1; 11:2; 11:4; 11:18; 12:1; 12:17; 12:20; 12:21; 13:10; 13:17; 13:24; 13:25; 14:2; 14:7; 14:11; 14:13; 14:19; 14:22; 14:25; 15:2; 15:10; 15:13; 15:14; 15:16; 15:19; 15:22; 15:23; 15:25; 15:29; 15:30; 15:33; 15:37; 16:1; 16:5; 16:6; 16:7; 16:9; 17:1; 17:3; 17:4; 17:6; 17:24; 17:30; 17:31; 18:1; 18:2; 18:4; 18:9; 18:11; 18:13; 18:14; 18:17; 18:18; 18:26; 18:34; 18:37; 19:2; 19:8; 19:9; 19:12; 19:13; 19:37; 20:12; 21:1; 21:18; 21:19; 21:26; 22:1; 22:3; 22:4; 22:8; 22:12; 22:14; 23:4; 23:8; 23:10; 23:11; 23:12; 23:29; 23:31; 23:33; 23:36; 24:8; 24:17; 24:18; 25:6; 25:8; 25:18; 25:22; 25:23; 25:25; 25:27)

Hyperbole

Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

- It rains here every night.
1. The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
 2. The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.
 3. The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

Hyperbole: This is a figure of speech that uses **exaggeration**. A speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

They will not leave **one stone upon another** (Luke 19:44 ULT)

- This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

Moses was educated in **all the learning of the Egyptians** (Acts 7:22 ULT)

- This hyperbole means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught, and thus was as educated as any Egyptian.

Generalization: This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

The one who ignores instruction **will have poverty and shame**, but **honor will come** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

- These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as **the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words**. (Matthew 6:7)

- This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," it does not necessarily mean **exactly** "all," "always," "none," or "never." It simply means "most," "most of the time," "hardly any," or "rarely."

Reason this is a translation issue

1. Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.
2. If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

This page answers the question: *What are hyperboles? What are generalizations? How can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Examples from the Bible

Examples of Hyperbole

If your hand causes you to stumble, **cut it off**. It is better for you to enter into life maimed... (Mark 9:43 ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should **do whatever extreme things** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expression the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were **many, many** soldiers in the Philistine army.

But as his anointing teaches you about **all things** and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about **all things that we need to know**. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

They found him, and they said to him, "**Everyone** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that **many people** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

Examples of Generalization

Can anything good come out of Nazareth? (John 1:46 ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "**Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies**." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

A lazy hand causes poverty, but the hand of the diligent makes him rich. (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

Caution

Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

...they saw Jesus **walking on the sea** and coming near the boat... (John 6:19 ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

Do not assume that the word "all" is always a generalization that means "most."

Yahweh is righteous in **all** his ways
and gracious in **all** he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
3. For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
4. For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops as numerous as the sand on the seashore

. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and **a great number of troops**.

- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases”.

The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame... (Proverbs 13:18 ULT)

In general, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7)

“And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles **generally** do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.”

- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

The whole

country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5 ULT)

Almost all the country of Judea and **almost all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”
or:
Many of the country of Judea and **many** of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.”

- (4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

The whole

country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5 ULT)

■ The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:2](#); [7:15](#); [11:18](#); [11:20](#); [14:21](#); [16:4](#); [17:10](#); [18:24](#); [19:24](#); [20:13](#); [20:15](#); [21:16](#); [21:24](#); [23:2](#); [24:9](#); [24:14](#); [25:26](#))

Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are telling me a lie.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

he resolutely **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided”.

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you should **enter under my roof**. (Luke 7:6 ULT)

The phrase “enter under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house”.

Let these words **go deeply into your ears**. (Luke 9:44 ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say”.

Purpose: An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples from the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

the children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8 ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3 ULT)

This means, "the one who helps me."

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your flesh and bone."
(1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

...Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

he resolutely set his face

to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof

. (Luke 7:6 ULT)

I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

(2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Let these words go deeply into your ears

(Luke 9:44 ULT)

Be all ears when I say these words to you.

"My eyes grow dim

from grief (Psalm 6:7 ULT)

I am crying my **eyes out**

(Go back to: 2 Kings 2:3; 2:5; 2:7; 2:15; 2:22; 2:23; Notes; 3:3; 3:11; 4:1; 4:7; 4:13; 4:38; 5:22; 5:27; 6:1; 6:11; 6:16; 6:17; 6:20; 6:32; 6:33; 8:8; 8:18; 8:27; 9:1; 9:32; 9:34; 10:6; 10:14; 10:15; 10:20; 10:22; 10:27; 10:31; 14:10; 15:19; 18:31; Notes; 19:4; 20:3; 20:4; 23:3)

Introduction of a New Event

Description

When people tell a story, they tell about an event or a series of events. Often they put certain information at the beginning of the story, such as who the story is about, when it happened, and where it happened. This information that the writer gives before the events of the story begin is called the setting of the story. Some new events in a story also have a setting because they might involve new people, new times, and new places. In some languages people also tell if they saw the event or heard about it from someone else.

When your people tell about events, what information do they give at the beginning? Is there a certain order that they put it in? In your translation, you will need to follow the way your language introduces new information at the beginning of a story or a new event rather than the way the source language did that. In this way your translation will sound natural and communicate clearly in your language.

This page answers the question: *How do we introduce a new event in a story?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-events\]\]](#)

Examples from the Bible

In the days of Herod, king of Judea, ***there was a certain priest named Zechariah***, from the division of Abijah. ***His wife was*** from the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elizabeth. (Luke 1:5 ULT)

The verses above introduce a story about Zechariah. The first underlined phrase tells when it happened, and the next two underlined phrases introduce the main people. The next two verses go on to explain that Zechariah and Elizabeth were old and did not have any children. All of this is the setting. Then the phrase “One day” in Luke 1:8 helps to introduce the first event in this story:

One day while Zechariah was performing his duties as a priest before God in the order of his division, the priests followed their custom and chose him by lot to enter the temple of the Lord and burn incense. (Luke 1:8-9 ULT)

The birth of Jesus Christ happened in the following way. His mother Mary was engaged to marry Joseph, but before they came together, she was found to be pregnant by the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 1:18 ULT)

The underlined sentence above makes it explicit that a story about Jesus is being introduced. The story will tell about how the birth of Jesus happened.

After Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king, learned men from the east arrived in Jerusalem saying,... (Matthew 2:1 ULT)

The underlined phrase above shows that the events concerning the learned men happened ***after*** Jesus was born.

In those days John the Baptist came preaching in the wilderness of Judea saying,... (Matthew 3:1-22 ULT)

The underlined phrase above shows that John the Baptist came preaching around the time of the previous events. It is probably very general and refers to when Jesus lived in Nazareth.

Then Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan River to be baptized by John. (Matthew 3:13 ULT)

The word “then” shows that Jesus came to the Jordan River some time after the events in the previous verses.

Now there was a ***Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus, a member of the Jewish Council***. This man came to Jesus at night time (John 3:1-2 ULT)

The author first introduced the new person and then told about what he did and when he did it. In some languages it might be more natural to tell about the time first.

⁶ Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. ⁷ Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood.
(Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Verse 6 is a summary of the events that happen in the rest of chapter 7. Chapter 6 already told about how God told Noah that there would be a flood, and how Noah prepared for it. Chapter 7 verse 6 introduces the part of the story that tells about Noah and his family and the animals going into the ship, the rain starting, and the rain flooding the earth. Some languages might need to make it clear that this verse simply introduces the event, or move this verse after verse 7. Verse 6 is not one of the events of the story. The people went into the ship before the flood came.

Translation Strategies

If the information given at the beginning of a new event is clear and natural to your readers, consider translating it as it is in the ULT or UST. If not, consider one of these strategies.

1. Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.
2. If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase to fill in that information, such as: "another time" or "someone."
3. If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.
4. If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event would actually happen later in the story.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.

Now there was a Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus, a member of the Jewish Council

. This man came to Jesus at night time and said to him... (John 3:1,2)

There was a **man whose name was Nicodemus. He was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council.** One night he came to Jesus and said...

One night **a man named Nicodemus, who was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council,** came to Jesus and said...

As he passed by, he saw Levi the son of Alpheus, who was sitting

at the tax collecting place, and he said to him... (Mark 2:14 ULT)

As he passed by, **Levi the son of Alpheus was sitting** at the tax collecting place. Jesus saw him and said to him...

As he passed by, **there was a man sitting** at the tax collecting place. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him...

As he passed by, **there was a tax collector** sitting at the tax collecting place. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him...

- (2) If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase such as: another time, someone.

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT) - If people expect to be told something about when the new event happened, the phrase "after that" can help them see that it happened after the events already mentioned.

After that, when Noah was six hundred years old, the flood came upon the earth.

Again he began

to teach beside the lake. (Mark 4:1 ULT) - In chapter 3 Jesus was teaching at someone's house. Readers may need to be told that this new event happened at another time, or that Jesus actually went to the lake.

Another time Jesus began to teach people again beside the lake.

Jesus went to the lake and **began to teach people again** there.

(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. (Genesis 7:6 ULT)

Now this is what happened when Noah was six hundred years old and the flood came upon the earth.

This part tells about what happened when the flood came upon the earth. It happened when Noah was six hundred years old.

(4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event will actually happen later in the story.

Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Now this is what happened when Noah was six hundred years old. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because **God had said that the waters of the flood would come.**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Background Information](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-participants]]

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:1](#); [14:5](#))

Irony

Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which the sense that the speaker intends to communicate is actually the opposite of the literal meaning of the words. Sometimes a person does this by using someone else's words, but in a way that communicates that he does not agree with them. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief about something is wrong or foolish. It is often humorous.

This page answers the question: *What is irony and how can I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Jesus answered them, "People who are in good health do not need a physician, only people who are sick need one. I did not come to call righteous people to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance." (Luke 5:31-32 ULT)

When Jesus spoke of "righteous people," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous, but to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous. By using irony, Jesus communicated that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

Reason this is a translation issue

- If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will understand the passage to mean the opposite of what it was intended to mean.

Examples from the Bible

How well you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9 ULT)

Here Jesus praises the Pharisees for doing something that is obviously wrong. Through irony, he communicates the opposite of praise: He communicates that the Pharisees, who take great pride in keeping the commandments, are so far from God that they do not even recognize that their traditions are breaking God's commandments. The use of irony makes the Pharisee's sin more obvious and startling.

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. ***"Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled."*** (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not do this, but by speaking as if they could, he mocked the idols, making their inability more obvious, and rebuked the people for worshiping them.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
Can you find the way back to their houses for them?
Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then; "the number of your days is so large!" (Job 38:20, 21 ULT)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two underlined phrases above are irony. They emphasize the opposite of what they say, because they are so obviously false. They emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many, many years later.

Already you have all you could want! Already you have become rich! You began to reign—and that quite apart from us! (1 Corinthians 4:8 ULT)

The Corinthians considered themselves to be very wise, self-sufficient, and not in need of any instruction from the Apostle Paul. Paul used irony, speaking as if he agreed with them, to show how proudly they were acting and how far from being wise they really were.

Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.
2. Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony. The actual meaning of the irony is **not** found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

How well you reject the commandment of God

so you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9 ULT)

You think that you are doing well when you reject God's commandment so you may keep your tradition!

You act like it is good to reject God's commandment so you may keep your tradition!

I did not come to call righteous people

to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance. (Luke 5:32 ULT)

I did not come to call **people who think that they are righteous** to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.

(2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

How well you reject the commandment of God

so you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9 ULT)

You are doing a terrible thing when you reject the commandment of God so you may keep your tradition!

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. "Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen

, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled." (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

'Present your case,' says Yahweh; 'present your best arguments for your idols,' says the King of Jacob. Your idols **cannot bring us their own arguments or come forward to declare to us what will happen** so we may know these things well. We cannot hear them because **they cannot speak** to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?

Can you find the way back to their houses for them?

Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;

the number of your days is so large!" (Job 38:20, 21 ULT)

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? ***You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation, but you are not!***

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-litotes]]

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:3](#); [1:16](#); [5:12](#))

Merism

Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

“I am the Alpha and the Omega,” says the Lord God, “the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8, ULT)

I am the **Alpha and the Omega, the First and the Last, the Beginning and the End**. (Revelation 22:13, ULT)

This page answers the question: *What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

Alpha and Omega are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth...**, (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

Heaven and earth is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples from the Bible

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere”.

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of, old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone”.

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of heaven and earth

... (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything...**

From the rising of the sun to its setting

, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

■ ***In all places***, people should praise Yahweh's name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

■ **I praise you, Father, Lord of** heaven and earth

. (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

■ I praise you, Father, Lord of ***everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth.***

He will bless those who honor him, both young and old

. (Psalm 115:13 ULT)

■ He will bless ***all those*** who honor him, regardless of whether they are ***young or old.***

(Go back to: [2 Kings 11:8](#); [23:2](#); [25:26](#))

Metaphor

Description

A **metaphor** is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say:

- The girl I love is a red rose.

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer's task is to understand in what way they are alike.

The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about "the girl I love". This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and "a red rose." The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both *beautiful*. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a **metaphor** is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker's **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison (Idea)** between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a "passive" metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being "active." Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these "dead metaphors." Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms "table **leg**", "family **tree**", "book **leaf**" (meaning a page in

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a Bible passage that has one?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[Simile](#)

a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

Patterned Pairs of Concepts acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction UP (the Image) often represents the concepts of MORE or BETTER (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going *up*,” “A *highly* intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going *down*,” and “I am feeling very *low*.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat *up*.” MORE is spoken of as UP.
- “Let us *go ahead* with our debate.” DOING WHAT WAS PLANNED is spoken of as WALKING or ADVANCING.
- “You *defend* your theory well.” ARGUMENT is spoken of as WAR.
- “A *flow* of words” WORDS are spoken of as LIQUIDS.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. They make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.
(Malachi 4:2 ULT)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

Jesus said, “Go and tell that fox...,” (Luke 13:32 ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors are the metaphors that need special care to translate correctly. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is "I" (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is "bread." Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is "life." In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

Examples from the Bible

Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1 ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you", the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshipped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay**. **You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are "we" and "you," and the Image(s) are "clay" and "potter." The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter's clay and "us" is that **neither the clay nor God's people have a right to complain about what they are becoming**.

Jesus said to them, "Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees**." The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, "It is because we took no bread." (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said "yeast," they thought he was talking about bread, but "yeast" was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally ***if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible***. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
3. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as." See [Simile](#).
4. If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.
5. If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
6. If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
8. If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, fell at his feet

. (Mark 5:22 ULT)

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, ***immediately bowed down in front of him***.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally ***if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible***. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

It was because of your hard hearts

that he wrote you this law, (Mark 10:5 ULT)

It was because of your ***hard hearts*** that he wrote you this law,

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.”

■ **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay**

. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

■ And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are *like* clay. You are *like* a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.

■ **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you** to kick a goad

. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

■ Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to *kick against a pointed stick*.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

■ **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the clay**

. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

■ “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *wood*. You are our *carver*; and we all are the work of your hand.”

■ “And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the *string*. You are the *weaver*; and we all are the work of your hand.”

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

■ **Yahweh lives; may** my rock

be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

■ Yahweh lives; *He is my rock*. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

■ **Yahweh lives; may** my rock

be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

■ Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock *under which I can hide from my enemies*. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad

. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

■ Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You *fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick*.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

I will make you become fishers of men

. (Mark 1:17 ULT)

I will make you become **people who gather men**.
Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns.

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:13](#); [1:14](#); [2:15](#); [2:21](#); [3:2](#); [3:14](#); [3:18](#); [5:10](#); [5:16](#); [7:2](#); [7:9](#); [7:17](#); [7:19](#); [8:9](#); [8:13](#); [8:18](#); [8:27](#); [9:31](#); [10:5](#); [10:10](#); [10:29](#); [10:30](#); [10:35](#); [12:2](#); [12:18](#); [Notes](#); [13:2](#); [13:3](#); [13:6](#); [13:11](#); [13:23](#); [14:3](#); [14:9](#); [14:24](#); [14:26](#); [14:27](#); [15:3](#); [15:4](#); [15:5](#); [15:7](#); [15:9](#); [15:14](#); [15:18](#); [15:19](#); [15:22](#); [15:24](#); [15:25](#); [15:28](#); [15:29](#); [15:30](#); [15:34](#); [15:35](#); [15:38](#); [16:2](#); [16:3](#); [16:7](#); [16:9](#); [16:20](#); [17:2](#); [17:8](#); [17:17](#); [17:20](#); [17:21](#); [17:23](#); [17:40](#); [18:3](#); [18:6](#); [18:21](#); [18:31](#); [18:32](#); [19:3](#); [19:4](#); [19:21](#); [19:26](#); [19:28](#); [19:30](#); [20:3](#); [21:2](#); [21:6](#); [21:13](#); [21:16](#); [21:20](#); [21:21](#); [22:2](#); [22:13](#); [22:16](#); [22:17](#); [22:19](#); [22:20](#); [23:3](#); [23:26](#); [23:32](#); [23:37](#); [24:9](#); [24:19](#))

Metonymy

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

He took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not used to metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples from the Bible

The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

Immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64 ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

...who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people, and as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "***This cup*** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

"He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "***The wine in this cup*** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."

(2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him ***the throne*** of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

"The Lord God will give him ***the kingly authority*** of his father, David."

or:

"The Lord God will ***make him king*** like his ancestor, King David."

who warned you to flee from ***the wrath*** to come? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

"who warned you to flee from God's coming ***punishment?***"

To learn about some common metonymies, see Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies.

(Go back to: 2 Kings 2:9; 2:15; 3:10; 3:13; 3:14; 3:15; 3:21; 4:15; 4:24; 4:40; 4:44; 5:1; 5:11; 6:13; 6:17; 6:21; 6:22; 6:23; 6:30; 7:9; 7:16; 8:6; 8:12; 8:18; 8:19; 8:20; 8:22; 8:27; 9:7; 9:9; 10:1; 10:3; 10:6; 10:7; 10:11; 10:15; 10:24; 10:30; 10:31; 11:3; 13:3; 13:5; 13:12; 13:13; 14:11; 14:25; 14:27; 15:9; 15:12; 15:18; 15:19; 15:24; 15:35; 16:3; 16:6; 16:7; 16:9; 17:6; 17:7; 17:18; 17:19; 17:20; 17:36; 18:12; 18:26; 18:29; 18:30; 18:34; 18:35; 19:7; 19:10; 19:22; 19:28; 19:32; 20:1; 20:4; 20:6; 21:3; 21:4; 21:5; 21:7; 21:9; 21:13; 21:16; 22:2; 22:11; 22:17; 22:18; 22:19; 22:20; 23:3; 23:4; 23:5; 23:6; 23:7; 23:8; 23:11; 23:12; 23:13; 23:14; 23:22; 23:27; 23:33; 24:3; 24:4; 24:14; 25:1; 25:21; 25:28; 25:29)

Numbers

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words ("five") or as numerals ("5"). Some numbers are very large, such as "two hundred" (200), "twenty-two thousand" (22,000), or "one hundred million" (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate numbers?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-unknown\]\]](#)

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

Abram was **eighty-six** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

That day about **three thousand** men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULT)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word "about" shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples from the Bible

When Jared had lived **162** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived **eight hundred** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived **962** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

Our sister, may you be the mother of **thousands of ten thousands** (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one **hundred thousand (100,000)** talents of gold, **one million (1,000,000)** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **a thousand thousand** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents)**, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULT and UST

The *unfoldingWord® Literal Text* (ULT) and the *unfoldingWord® Simplified Text* (UST) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals "130" instead of "one hundred thirty").

When Adam had lived **130** years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived **eight hundred** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived **930** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

[Fractions](#)

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:9](#); [1:11](#); [1:13](#); [2:7](#); [2:16](#); [2:24](#); [3:4](#); [3:26](#); [4:42](#); [4:43](#); [5:5](#); [6:25](#); [8:9](#); [8:17](#); [8:26](#); [10:1](#); [10:6](#); [10:7](#); [10:14](#); [10:36](#); [11:4](#); [11:9](#); [11:15](#); [11:19](#); [11:21](#); [12:1](#); [13:1](#); [13:10](#); [14:2](#); [14:7](#); [14:13](#); [14:23](#); [15:1](#); [15:8](#); [15:13](#); [15:17](#); [15:19](#); [15:23](#); [15:25](#); [15:27](#); [15:30](#); [15:32](#); [15:33](#); [16:1](#); [19:35](#); [20:6](#); [22:1](#); [23:31](#); [24:16](#); [24:18](#))

Ordinal Numbers

Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

He gave to the church **first** apostles, **second** prophets, **third** teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULT)

This page answers the question: *What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Numbers](#)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

Reason this is a translation issue:

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

Examples from the Bible

The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim, ... the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

The people cast lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The **first** row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The **second** row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The **third** row

must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The **fourth** row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULT)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

1. Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim,...the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

There were **twenty-four** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **another** to Jedaiah, **another** to Harim,...**another** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.
There were **twenty-four** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **the next** to Jedaiah, **the next** to Harim,...**the next** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became four

rivers. The name of the first is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of the second river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of the third river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The fourth river is the Euphrates. (Genesis 2:10-14 ULT)

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **one** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the next** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the next** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The **last** river is the Euphrates.

- (2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim,...the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

They cast **twenty-four** lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim,...Delaiah, and Maaziah.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Fractions](#)

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:17](#); [3:1](#); [8:16](#); [8:25](#); [9:19](#); [9:29](#); [10:6](#); [10:30](#); [22:3](#); [22:14](#); [25:1](#); [25:3](#); [25:8](#); [25:25](#); [25:27](#))

Parallelism

Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.
This is also called synonymous parallelism.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

Synonymous parallelism (the kind in which the two phrases mean the same thing) in the poetry of the original languages has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and above the ordinary way of speaking.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it is confusing, rather than beautiful.

Note: We use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term **Doublet** for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

Examples from the Bible

(1) The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

Your word is a lamp to my feet
and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

(2) The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,
keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULT)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

(3) The second completes what is said in the first.

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

I lift up my voice to Yahweh,
and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULT)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

(4) The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,
but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULT)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

A gentle answer turns away wrath,
but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULT)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”
3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

Until now you have deceived me and told me lies. (Judges 16:13, ULT) - Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

“Until now you have deceived me with your lies.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT) - The phrase “all the paths he takes” is a metaphor for “all he does.”

“Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.”

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2 ULT) - This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

“For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.”

- (2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

“Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.”

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

you have deceived me and told me lies. (Judges 16:13 ULT)

“All you have done is lie to me.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

“Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Personification](#)

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:14](#); [19:16](#); [19:21](#); [19:23](#); [19:25](#); [19:27](#); [19:29](#); [19:32](#); [20:5](#); [20:15](#); [22:20](#))

Personification

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

Or sin:

sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things, such as wealth, as if they were relationships between people.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples from the Bible

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

1. Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
2. In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

...sin crouches

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT) - God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

...**sin** is at your door, **waiting to attack you**

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

...**sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULT) - This can be translated with the word “as.”

...sin is crouching at the door, **just as a wild animal does waiting to attack a person**.

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

...**even the** winds and the sea obey him

(Matthew 8:27 ULT) - The men speak of the “wind and the sea” as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

He even **controls the winds and the sea**.

NOTE: We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-apostrophe\]\]](#)
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [2 Kings 7:9; 19:21](#))

Possession

Description

In common English, "possession" refers to having something, or to something that a person has. In English that grammatical relationship is shown by using the word "**of**", by using an apostrophe and the letter **s**, or by using a possessive pronoun.

- the house **of** my grandfather
- my grandfather**'s** house
- **his** house

This page answers the question: *What is possession and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Possession is used in Hebrew, Greek, and English for a variety of situations. Here are a few common situations that it is used for.

- Ownership - Someone owns something.
 - My clothes - The clothes that I own
- Social relationship - Someone has some kind of social relationship with another.
 - my mother - the woman who gave birth to me, or the woman who cared for me
 - my teacher - the person who teaches me
- Contents - Something has something in it.
 - a bag of clothes - a bag that has clothes in it, or a bag that is full of clothes
- Part and whole: One thing is part of another.
 - my head - the head that is part of my body
 - the roof of a house - the roof that is part of a house

Reasons this is a translation issue

- You (the translator) need to understand the relationship between two ideas represented by the two nouns when one possesses the other.
- Some languages do not use possession for all of the situations that your source text Bible might use it for.

Examples from the Bible

Ownership - In the example below, the son owned the money.

...the younger son...wasted **his money** with wildly extravagant living. (Luke 15:13)

Social Relationship - In the example below, the disciples were people who learned from John.

Then **the disciples of John** came to him..., (Matthew 9:14 ULT)

Material - In the example below, the material used for making the crowns was gold.

On their heads were something like **crowns of gold** (Revelation 9:7)

Contents - In the example below, the cup has water in it.

Whoever gives you **a cup of water** to drink...will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)

Part of a whole - In the example below, the door was a part of the palace.

But Uriah slept at **the door of the king's palace** (2 Samuel 11:9 ULT)

Part of a group - In the example below, “us” refers to the whole group and “each one” refers to the individual members.

■ To ***each one of us*** has been given a gift (Ephesians 4:7 ULT)

Events and Possession

Sometimes one or both of the nouns is an abstract noun that refers to an event or action. In the examples below, the abstract nouns are in **bold** print. These are just some of the relationships that are possible between two nouns when one of them refers to an event.

Subject - Sometimes the word after “of” tells who would do the action named by the first noun. In the example below, ***John baptized people***.

■ The baptism

* of John*, was it from heaven or from men? Answer me.” (Mark 11:30)

In the example below, ***Christ loves us***.

■ Who will separate us from ***the *love*** of Christ*? (Romans 3:35)

Object - Sometimes the word after “of” tells who or what something would happen to. In the example below, ***people love money***.

■ For ***the *love*** of money* is a root of all kinds of evil. (1 Timothy 6:10 ULT)

Instrument - Sometimes the word after “of” tells how something would happen. In the example below, God would ***punish people by sending enemies to attack them with swords***.

■ then be afraid of the sword, because wrath brings ***the *punishment*** of the sword* (Job 19:29 ULT)

Representation - In the example below, John was baptizing people who were repenting of their sins. They were being baptized to show that they were repenting. Their ***baptism represented their repentance***.

■ As John came, he was baptizing in the wilderness and was preaching ***a *baptism*** of repentance* for the forgiveness of sins. (Mark 1:4 ULT)

Strategies for learning what the relationship is between the two nouns

1. Read the surrounding verses to see if they help you to understand the relationship between the two nouns.
2. Read the verse in the UST. Sometimes it shows the relationship clearly.
3. See what the notes say about it.

Translation Strategies

If possession would be a natural way to show a particular relationship between two nouns, consider using it. If it would be strange or hard to understand, consider these.

1. Use an adjective to show that one describes the other.
2. Use a verb to show how the two are related.
3. If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use an adjective to show that one describes the other. The adjective below is in **bold** print.

■ ***On their heads were something like*** crowns of gold

(Revelation 9:7)

“On their heads were gold

* crowns* “

(2) Use a verb to show how the two are related. In the example below, the added verb is in bold.

...**Whoever gives you** a cup of water

to drink...will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)

...Whoever gives you **a cup that *has** water in it* to drink...will not lose his reward.

Wealth is worthless on the day of wrath

(Proverbs 11:4 ULT)

Wealth is worthless on **the day when God *shows** his wrath.* **Wealth is worthless on the** day when God **punishes** people because of his wrath

**.

(3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb. In the example below, that verb is in bold.

Notice that I am not speaking to your children, who have not known or seen the punishment of Yahweh your God

, (Deuteronomy 11:2 ULT)

Notice that I am not speaking to your children who have not known or seen **how Yahweh your God *punished** the people of Egypt.*

You will only observe and see the punishment of the wicked

. (Psalms 91:8 ULT)

You will only observe and see **how Yahweh *punishes** the wicked*.

...you will receive the gift of the Holy Spirit

. (Acts 2:38 ULT)

...you will receive **the Holy Spirit, whom God will *give** to you*.

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:12](#); [2:11](#); [3:2](#))

Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes\]\]](#)

Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

Those who stood by said, ***"Is this how you insult God's high priest?"*** (Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking about his way of insulting God's high priest. Rather they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purpose of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

Examples from the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULT)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden...(Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the answer after the question.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?

Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? ***Of course not!*** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? **None of you would do that!**

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?

It is like a mustard seed... (Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed..."

Is this how you insult God's high priest?

(Acts 23:4 ULT)

You should not insult God's high priest!

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?

(Job 3:11 ULT)

I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?

(Luke 1:43 ULT)

How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

Do you not still rule

the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)

You still rule the kingdom of Israel, **do you not?**

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Or what man among you is there who

, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, **would you give him a stone?**

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils

? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number

(Go back to: 2 Kings 1 General Notes; 1:3; 1:6; 1:16; 1:18; 2:18; 3:10; 3:11; 3:13; 4:28; 4:43; 5:7; 5:8; 5:12; 5:13; 5:26; Notes; 6:11; 6:22; 6:27; 6:32; 6:33; 7:2; 7:3; 7:19; 8:13; 8:23; 9:18; 9:19; 9:22; 9:31; 10:4; 10:9; 10:34; 12:7; 12:19; 13:8; 13:12; 14:10; 14:15; 14:18; 14:28; 15:6; 15:21; 15:36; 16:19; 18:19; 18:20; 18:22; 18:24; 18:25; 18:27; 18:33; 18:34; 18:35; 19:11; 19:12; 19:22; 19:25; 20:19; 20:20; 21:17; 21:25; 23:28; 24:5)

Simile

A simile is an explicit comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be “like” the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than”.

This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than”.

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were **like sheep without a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as serpents** and harmless **as doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus’ enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

God’s word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person’s flesh. God’s word is very effective in showing what is in a person’s heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people’s attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

Examples from the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier of Christ Jesus**. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

for **as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky**, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

See, I send **you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

(Matthew 10:16 ULT) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.

See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword

. (Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**

(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

See, I send **you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

, (Matthew 10:16 ULT) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**,

How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings

, but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULT)

How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!

If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard

, (Matthew 17:20)

If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

See, I send **you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

, (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

See, I send you out among **people who will want to harm you**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings
, but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULT)

How often I wanted to **protect you**, but you refused!

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metaphor](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:2](#); [2:4](#); [2:6](#); [3:2](#); [3:14](#); [3:22](#); [5:14](#); [5:16](#); [5:20](#); [5:27](#); [9:37](#); [13:7](#); [Notes](#))

Symbolic Action

Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their head up and down to mean “Yes” or turn their head from side to side to mean “No”. Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-unknown]]

Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

Reason this is a translation issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture, and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In others cultures it means “Yes”.

In the Bible people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

Examples from the Bible

Jairus fell down at Jesus’ feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I stand at the door and **knock**. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come in to his home, and have a meal with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.
2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41)

Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. (Revelation 3:20)

Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT) - Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

Look, I stand at the door and knock. (Revelation 3:20 ULT) - Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:12](#); [4:37](#); [5:7](#); [6:30](#); [10:15](#); [11:12](#); [11:14](#); [22:11](#); [22:19](#))

Synecdoche

Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

My soul exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULT)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

the Pharisees said to him, “Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful...” (Mark 2:24 ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example from the Bible

I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

“My soul

exalts the Lord.” (Luke 1:46 ULT)

“I exalt the Lord.”

...the Pharisees

said to him (Mark 2:24 ULT)

...a representative of the Pharisees said to him...

...I looked on all the deeds that my hands

This page answers the question: *What is a synecdoche, and how can I translate such a thing into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

had accomplished... (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

I looked on all the deeds that **I** had accomplished

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metonymy](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part2]]

(Go back to: 2 Kings 3:6; 3:7; 3:9; 3:10; 3:21; 3:23; 3:24; 4:20; 5:2; 5:20; 6:22; 6:24; 7:2; 7:6; 7:19; 8:8; 8:12; 8:28; 8:29; 9:1; 9:8; 9:13; 9:14; 9:15; 10:3; 10:25; 10:32; 12:11; 12:17; 13:25; 14:6; 14:7; 14:8; 14:11; 14:13; 14:14; 14:22; 14:27; 15:19; 15:29; 16:5; 16:7; 16:9; 19:23; 20:17; 21:8; 21:14; 22:5; 22:9; 22:13; 22:16; 22:20; 25:7)



unfoldingWord® Translation Words

Version 14

abomination, abominable

Definition:

The term “abomination” is used to refer to something that causes disgust or extreme dislike.

- The Egyptians considered the Hebrew people to be an “abomination.” This means that the Egyptians disliked the Hebrews and didn’t want to associate with them or be near them.
- Some of the things that the Bible calls “an abomination to Yahweh” include lying, pride, sacrificing humans, worship of idols, murder, and sexual sins such as adultery and homosexual acts.
- In teaching his disciples about the end times, Jesus referred to a prophecy by the prophet Daniel about an “abomination of desolation” that would be set up as a rebellion against God, defiling his place of worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “abomination” could also be translated by “something God hates” or “something disgusting” or “disgusting practice” or “very evil action.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the phrase “is an abomination to” could include “is greatly hated by” or “is disgusting to” or “is totally unacceptable to” or “causes deep disgust.”
- The phrase “abomination of desolation” could be translated as “defiling object that causes people to be greatly harmed” or “disgusting thing that causes great sorrow.”

(See also: adultery, desecrate, desolate, [false god](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Ezra 09:1-2
- Genesis 46:34
- Isaiah 01:13
- Matthew 24:15
- Proverbs 26:25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H887, H6292, H8251, H8262, H8263, H8441, G946

([Go back to: 2 Kings 16:3; 21:2; 21:11](#))

Abraham, Abram

Facts:

Abram was a Chaldean man from the city of Ur who was chosen by God to be the forefather of the Israelites. God changed his name to "Abraham."

- The name "Abram" means "exalted father."
- "Abraham" means "father of many."
- God promised Abraham that he would have many descendants, who would become a great nation.
- Abraham believed God and obeyed him. God led Abraham to move from Chaldea to the land of Canaan.
- Abraham and his wife Sarah, when they were very old and living in the land of Canaan, had a son, Isaac.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, [Chaldea](#), Sarah, Isaac)

Bible References:

- Galatians 03:08
- Genesis 11:29-30
- Genesis 21:04
- Genesis 22:02
- James 02:23
- Matthew 01:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When **Abram** arrived in Canaan, God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **05:04** Then God changed **Abram's** name to **Abraham**, which means "father of many."
- **05:05** About a year later, when **Abraham** was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's son.
- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested **Abraham's** faith by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **06:01** When **Abraham** was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, **Abraham** sent one of his servants back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **06:04** After a long time, **Abraham** died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the covenant were passed on to Isaac.
- **21:02** God promised **Abraham** that through him all people groups of the world would receive a blessing.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H87, H85, G11

(Go back to: [2 Kings 13:23](#))

adversary, enemy

Definition:

An "adversary" is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term "enemy" has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an "adversary" of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an "adversary" and an "enemy."
- The term "adversary" may be translated as "opponent" or "enemy," but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: Satan)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:14
- Isaiah 09:11
- Job 06:23
- Lamentations 04:12
- Luke 12:59
- Matthew 13:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G476, G480, G2189, G2190, G5227

(Go back to: [2 Kings 17:39](#); [21:14](#))

advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels

Definition:

The terms “counsel” and “advice” have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise “counselor” or “advisor” is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, “advice” or “counsel” could also be translated as “help in deciding” or “warnings” or “exhortations” or “guidance.”
- The action, to “counsel” could be translated as to “advise” or to “make suggestions” or to “exhort.”
- Note that “counsel” is a different word than “council,” which refers to a group of people.

(See also: exhort, Holy Spirit, [wise](#))

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1697, H1847, H1875, H1884, H1907, H3272, H3289, H3982, H4156, H4431, H5475, H5779, H6440, H6963, H6098, H7592, H8458, G1011, G1012, G1106, G4823, G4825

(Go back to: [2 Kings 6:8](#))

afflict, affliction, distress

Definition:

The term "afflict" means to cause someone distress or suffering. An "affliction" is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- Sometimes God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships with the intention for them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To "be afflicted with" means to suffer from some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

Translation Suggestions:

- To "afflict" someone could be translated as "cause someone to experience troubles" or "cause someone to suffer" or "cause suffering to come."
- A phrase like "afflict someone with leprosy" could be translated as "cause someone to be sick with leprosy."
- When a disease or disaster is sent to "afflict" people or animals, this could be translated as "cause suffering to."
- Depending on the context, the term "affliction" could be translated as "calamity" or "sickness" or "suffering" or "great distress."
- The phrase "afflicted with" could also be translated as "suffering from" or "sick with."

(See also: leprosy, plague, suffer)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 01:06
- Amos 05:12
- Colossians 01:24
- Exodus 22:22-24
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 29:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H3013, H3905, H3906, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, G2346, G2347, G3804

(Go back to: [2 Kings 14:26](#); [21:11](#))

altar

Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, [false god](#), [grain offering](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 08:20
- Genesis 22:09
- James 02:21
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 05:23
- Matthew 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **13:09** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **16:06** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G1041, G2379

(Go back to: [2 Kings 11:18](#); [12:9](#); [16:10](#); [16:11](#); [16:12](#); [16:13](#); [16:14](#); [16:15](#); [18:22](#); [21:3](#); [21:4](#); [21:5](#); [23:9](#); [23:12](#); [23:15](#); [23:16](#); [23:17](#); [23:20](#))

Amorite

Facts:

The Amorites were a powerful group of people who were descended from Noah's grandson Canaan.

- Their name means "high one," which may refer to the mountainous regions where they lived or to the fact that they were known to be very tall.
- The Amorites lived in regions on both sides of the Jordan River. The city of Ai was inhabited by Amorites.
- God refers to the "sin of the Amorites," which included their worship of false gods and the sinful practices associated.
- Joshua led the Israelites in destroying the Amorites, as God had commanded them to do.

Bible References:

- Amos 02:09
- Ezekiel 16:03
- Genesis 10:16
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Joshua 09:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:07** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the **Amorites**, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon.
- **15:08** In the early morning they surprised the **Amorite** armies and attacked them.
- **15:09** God fought for Israel that day. He caused the **Amorites** to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the **Amorites**.
- **15:10** God also caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky so that Israel would have enough time to completely defeat the **Amorites**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H567,

(Go back to: [2 Kings 21:11](#))

ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Definition:

The term “father” refers to a person’s male parent.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to a male ancestor(s) of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: God the Father, [son](#), Son of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:02
- Acts 07:32
- Acts 07:45
- Acts 22:03
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 07:4-6
- John 04:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 03:07
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 01:07
- Matthew 03:09
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 04:12

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1, H2, H25, H369, H539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G540, G1080, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:12](#); [3:2](#); [3:13](#); [4:18](#); [4:19](#); [5:13](#); [6:21](#); [8:24](#); [9:25](#); [9:28](#); [10:3](#); [10:35](#); [12:18](#); [12:21](#); [13:9](#); [13:13](#); [13:14](#); [13:25](#); [14:3](#); [14:5](#); [14:6](#); [14:16](#); [14:20](#); [14:21](#); [14:22](#); [14:29](#); [15:3](#); [15:7](#); [15:9](#); [15:22](#); [15:34](#); [15:38](#); [16:2](#); [16:20](#);

17:13; 17:14; 17:15; 17:41; 18:3; 19:12; 20:5; 20:17; 20:21; 21:3; 21:8; 21:15; 21:18; 21:20; 21:21; 21:22; 22:2; 22:13;
22:20; 23:30; 23:32; 23:34; 23:37; 24:6; 24:9)

appoint, appointed

Definition:

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 08:11
- Acts 03:20
- Acts 06:02
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 03:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H561, H977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G322, G606, G1299, G1303, G1935, G2525, G2749, G4287, G4296, G4384, G4929, G5021, G5087

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:7](#); [2:20](#); [3:6](#); [3:14](#); [4:10](#); [4:29](#); [4:31](#); [4:34](#); [5:16](#); [5:24](#); [6:31](#); [8:11](#); [9:13](#); [9:17](#); [9:30](#); [10:3](#); [10:4](#); [10:7](#); [10:27](#); [11:14](#); [11:16](#); [11:18](#); [12:17](#); [13:6](#); [13:7](#); [13:16](#); [15:20](#); [18:14](#); [19:28](#); [20:7](#); [21:7](#); [25:22](#))

Arabah

Facts:

The Old Testament term “Arabah” often refers to a very large desert and plains region that includes the valley surrounding the Jordan River and extends south to the northern tip of the Red Sea.

- The Israelites traveled through this desert region on their journey from Egypt to the land of Canaan.
- The “Sea of the Arabah” could also be translated as “sea located in the Arabah desert region.” This sea is often referred to as the “Salt Sea” or the “Dead Sea.”
- The term “arabah” can also be a general reference to any desert region.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: desert, Sea of Reeds, [Jordan River](#), Canaan, Salt Sea, [Egypt](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 23:24-25
- 2 Kings 25:4-5
- 2 Samuel 02:29
- Jeremiah 02:4-6
- Job 24:5-7
- Zechariah 14:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1026, H6160

(Go back to: [2 Kings 14:25](#); [25:4](#))

Asaph

Facts:

Asaph was a Levite priest and gifted musician who composed the music for the psalms of King David. He also wrote his own psalms.

- Asaph was appointed by King David to be one of three musicians who were responsible for providing songs for worship in the temple. Some of these songs were also prophecies.
- Asaph trained his sons and they carried on this responsibility, playing musical instruments and prophesying in the temple.
- Some of the musical instruments included the lute, harp, trumpet, and cymbals.
- Psalms 50 and 73-83 are said to be from Asaph. It may be that some of these psalms were written by his family members.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [descendant](#), harp, lute, [prophet](#), psalm, [trumpet](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:39-43
- 2 Chronicles 35:15
- Nehemiah 02:08
- Psalm 050:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H623

(Go back to: [2 Kings 18:18](#); [18:37](#))

assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting

Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together for some reason, often to discuss problems, give advice, or make decisions. An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.

Old Testament

- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.

New Testament

- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: [hyperbole](#))
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”

(See also: council)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:14
- Acts 07:38
- Ezra 10:12-13
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Leviticus 04:20-21
- Nehemiah 08:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H622, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H6116, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, G1577, G3831, G4863, G4864, G4871, G4905

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:3](#); [10:20](#); [22:4](#); [22:20](#))

Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire

Facts:

Assyria was a powerful nation during the time the Israelites were living in the land of Canaan. The Assyrian Empire was a group of nations ruled by an Assyrian king.

- The nation of Assyria was located in a region that is now the northern part of Iraq.
- The Assyrians fought against Israel at different times in their history.
- In the year 722 BC, the Assyrians completely conquered the kingdom of Israel and forced many of the Israelites to move to Assyria.
- The remaining Israelites intermarried with foreigners that the Assyrians had brought into Israel from Samaria. The descendants of those people who intermarried were later called the Samaritans.

(See also: [Samaria](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:11
- Genesis 25:17-18
- Isaiah 07:16-17
- Jeremiah 50:17
- Micah 07:11-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:02** So God punished both kingdoms by allowing their enemies to destroy them. The kingdom of Israel was destroyed by the **Assyrian Empire**, a powerful, cruel nation. The **Assyrians** killed many people in the kingdom of Israel, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country.
- **20:03** The **Assyrians** gathered all the leaders, the rich people, and the people with skills and took them to **Assyria**.
- **20:04** Then the **Assyrians** brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H804, H1121

(Go back to: [2 Kings 15:19; 15:20; 15:29; 16:7; 16:8; 16:9; 16:10; 16:18; 17:3; 17:4; 17:5; 17:6; 17:23; 17:24; 17:26; 17:27; 18:7; 18:9; 18:11; 18:13; 18:14; 18:16; 18:17; 18:19; 18:23; 18:28; 18:30; 18:31; 18:33; 19:4; 19:6; 19:8; 19:10; 19:11; 19:17; 19:20; 19:32; 19:35; 19:36; 20:6; 23:29](#))

Babylon, Babylonia, Babylonian

Facts:

The city of Babylon was the capital of the ancient region of Babylonia, which was also part of the Babylonian Empire.

- Babylon was located along the Euphrates River, in the same region where the Tower of Babel had been built hundreds of years before.
- Sometimes the word “Babylon” refers to the entire Babylonian Empire. For example, the “king of Babylon” ruled the entire empire, not just the city.
- The Babylonians were a powerful people group who attacked the kingdom of Judah and kept the people in exile in Babylonia for 70 years.
- Part of this region was called “Chaldea” and the people living there were the “Chaldeans.” As a result, the term “Chaldea” was often used to refer to Babylonia. (See: [synecdoche](#))

(See also: Babel, [Chaldea](#), Judah, [Nebuchadnezzar](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:01
- 2 Kings 17:24-26
- Acts 07:43
- Daniel 01:02
- Ezekiel 12:13
- Matthew 01:11
- Matthew 01:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:06** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent Nebuchadnezzar, king of the **Babylonians**, to attack the kingdom of Judah. **Babylon** was a powerful empire.
- **20:07** But after a few years, the king of Judah rebelled against **Babylon**. So, the **Babylonians** came back and attacked the kingdom of Judah. They captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:09** Nebuchadnezzar and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to **Babylon**, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.
- **20:11** About seventy years later, Cyrus, the king of the Persians, defeated **Babylon**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3778, H3779, H8152, H894, H895, H896, G897

(Go back to: [2 Kings 17:24](#); [17:30](#); [20:12](#); [20:14](#); [20:17](#); [20:18](#); [24:1](#); [24:7](#); [24:10](#); [24:11](#); [24:12](#); [24:15](#); [24:16](#); [24:17](#); [24:20](#); [25:1](#); [25:6](#); [25:7](#); [25:8](#); [25:11](#); [25:13](#); [25:20](#); [25:21](#); [25:22](#); [25:23](#); [25:24](#); [25:27](#))

barley

Definition:

The term “barley” refers to a kind of grain that is used to make bread.

- The barley plant has a long stalk with a head at the top where the seeds or grains grow.
- Barley does well in warmer weather so it is often harvested in spring or summer.
- When barley is threshed, the edible seeds are separated from the worthless chaff.
- Barley grain is ground up into flour, which is then mixed with water or oil to make bread.
- If barley is not known, this could be translated as “grain called barley” or “barley grain.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: [grain](#), [thresh](#), wheat)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:12-14
- Job 31:40
- Judges 07:14
- Numbers 05:15
- Revelation 06:06

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8184, G2915, G2916

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:42](#); [7:1](#); [7:16](#); [7:18](#))

believe, believer, belief, unbeliever, unbelief

Definition:

The terms “believe” and “believe in” are closely related, but have slightly different meanings:

1. believe

- To believe something is to accept or trust that it is true.
- To believe someone is to acknowledge that what that person has said is true.

2. believe in

- To “believe in” someone means to “trust in” that person. It means to trust that the person is who he says he is, that he always speaks the truth, and that he will do what he has promised to do.
- When a person truly believes in something, he will act in such a way that shows that belief.
- The phrase “have faith in” usually has the same meaning as “believe in.”
- To “believe in Jesus” means to believe that he is the Son of God, that he is God himself who also became human and who died as a sacrifice to pay for our sins. It means to trust him as Savior and live in a way that honors him.

3. believer

In the Bible, the term “believer” refers to someone who believes in and relies on Jesus Christ as Savior.

- The term “believer” literally means “person who believes.”
- The term “Christian” eventually came to be the main title for believers because it indicates that they believe in Christ and obey his teachings.

4. unbelief

The term “unbelief” refers to not believing something or someone.

- In the Bible, “unbelief” refers to not believing in or not trusting in Jesus as one’s Savior.
- A person who does not believe in Jesus is called an “unbeliever.”

Translation Suggestions:

- To “believe” could be translated as to “know to be true” or “know to be right.”
- To “believe in” could be translated as “trust completely” or “trust and obey” or “completely rely on and follow.”
- Some translations may prefer to say “believer in Jesus” or “believer in Christ.”
- This term could also be translated by a word or phrase that means “person who trusts in Jesus” or “someone who knows Jesus and lives for him.”
- Other ways to translate “believer” could be “follower of Jesus” or “person who knows and obeys Jesus.”
- The term “believer” is a general term for any believer in Christ, while “disciple” and “apostle” were used more specifically for people who knew Jesus while he was alive. It is best to translate these terms in different ways, in order to keep them distinct.
- Other ways to translate “unbelief” could include “lack of faith” or “not believing.”
- The term “unbeliever” could be translated as “person who does not believe in Jesus” or “someone who does not trust in Jesus as Savior.”

(See also: [believe](#), [apostle](#), [Christian](#), [disciple](#), [faith](#), [trust](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:06
- Genesis 45:26
- Job 09:16-18
- Habakkuk 01:5-7
- Mark 06:4-6
- Mark 01:14-15
- Luke 09:41
- John 01:12
- Acts 06:05
- Acts 09:42
- Acts 28:23-24
- Romans 03:03
- 1 Corinthians 06:01
- 1 Corinthians 09:05
- 2 Corinthians 06:15
- Hebrews 03:12
- 1 John 03:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:04** Noah warned the people about the coming flood and told them to turn to God, but they did not **believe** him.
- **04:08** Abram **believed** God's promise. God declared that Abram was righteous because he **believed** God's promise.
- **11:02** God provided a way to save the firstborn of anyone who **believed in** him.
- **11:06** But the Egyptians did not **believe** God or obey his commands.
- **37:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever **believes in** me will live, even though he dies. Everyone who **believes in** me will never die. Do you **believe** this?"
- **43:01** After Jesus returned to heaven, the disciples stayed in Jerusalem as Jesus had commanded them to do. The **believers** there constantly gathered together to pray.
- **43:03** While the **believers** were all together, suddenly the house where they were was filled with a sound like a strong wind. Then something that looked like flames of fire appeared over the heads of all the **believers**.
- **43:13** Every day, more people became **believers**.
- **46:06** That day many people in Jerusalem started persecuting the followers of Jesus, so the **believers** fled to other places. But in spite of this, they preached about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **46:01** Saul was the young man who guarded the robes of the men who killed Stephen. He did not believe in Jesus, so he persecuted the **believers**.
- **46:09** Some **believers** who fled from the persecution in Jerusalem went far away to the city of Antioch and preached about Jesus. It was at Antioch that **believers** in Jesus were first called "Christians."
- **47:14** They also wrote many letters to encourage and teach the **believers** in the churches.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H540, G543, G544, G569, G570, G571, G3982, G4100, G4102, G4103, G4135

(Go back to: [2 Kings 6 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

bind, bond, bound

Definition:

The term “bind” means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a “bond.” The term “bound” is the past tense of this term.

- To be “bound” means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be “bound” to a vow, which means he is “required to fulfill” what he promised to do.
- The term “bonds” refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term “bind” can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be “bound” with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term “bond” is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are “bound” or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “bind” could also be translated as “tie” or “tie up” or “wrap (around).”
- Figuratively, it could be translated as to “restrain” or to “prevent” or to “keep from (something).”
- A special use of “bind” in Matthew 16 and 18 means “forbid” or “not permit.”
- The term “bonds” could be translated as “chains” or “ropes” or “shackles.”
- Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
- The phrase “bond of peace” means “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
- To “bind up” could be translated as “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
- To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
- Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translated as “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: [fulfill](#), [peace](#), prison, [servant](#), vow)

Bible References:

- Leviticus 08:07

Word Data:

- Strong's: H247, H481, H519, H615, H631, H632, H640, H1366, H1367, H1379, H2280, H2706, H3256, H3533, H3729, H4147, H4148, H4205, H4562, H5650, H5656, H5659, H6029, H6123, H6616, H6696, H6872, H6887, H7194, H7405, H7573, H7576, H8198, H8244, H8379, G254, G331, G332, G1195, G1196, G1198, G1199, G1210, G1397, G1398, G1401, G1402, G2611, G2615, G3734, G3784, G3814, G4019, G4029, G4385, G4886, G4887, G5265

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:8](#))

bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as to “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 01:03
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:03
- James 01:25
- Luke 06:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 09:05
- Romans 04:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:07** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **01:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **01:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **04:04** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”
- **04:07** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, “May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram.”
- **07:03** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.

- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H833, H835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G6050

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:29](#); [5:15](#); [10:15](#); [18:31](#))

blood

Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body.

- Blood is a metaphor for life, and when it is shed or poured out, it is a metaphor for the loss of life, or death.
- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: [flesh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 14:32
- Acts 02:20
- Acts 05:28
- Colossians 01:20
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 04:11
- Psalms 016:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:03** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **10:03** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **11:05** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **13:09** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1818, H5332, G129, G130, G131

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:23](#); [9:7](#); [9:26](#); [16:13](#); [16:15](#); [21:16](#); [24:4](#))

blot out, wipe out

Definition:

The terms “blot out” and “wipe out” are expressions that mean to completely remove or destroy something or someone.

- These expressions can be used in a positive sense, as when God “blots out” sins by forgiving them and choosing not to remember them.
- It is also often used in a negative sense, as when God “blots out” or “wipes out” a people group, destroying them because of their sin.
- The Bible talks about a person’s name being “blotted out” or “wiped out” of God’s Book of Life, which means that the person will not receive eternal life.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, these expressions could be translated as “get rid of” or “remove” or “completely destroy” or “completely remove.”
- When referring to blotting someone’s name out of the Book of Life, this could be translated as “removed from” or “erased.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 29:20
- Exodus 32:30-32
- Genesis 07:23
- Psalm 051:01

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4229, H8045, G1813

(Go back to: [2 Kings 21:13](#))

bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 05:18
- Exodus 20:05
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:05
- Matthew 02:11
- Revelation 03:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H86, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G1120, G2578, G2827, G4098

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:2](#); [4:37](#); [5:21](#); [7:4](#); [14:10](#); [19:7](#))

bread

Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast. However, bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. This is called “unleavened bread” in the Bible. The ancient Israelites ate “unleavened bread” during the passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#)) Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”
- The phrase “bread of the presence” refers to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The term “bread from heaven” refers to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert. Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”

(See also: [Passover](#), tabernacle, [temple](#), [unleavened bread](#), yeast)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:46
- Acts 27:35
- Exodus 16:15
- Luke 09:13
- Mark 06:38
- Matthew 04:04
- Matthew 11:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G106, G740, G4286

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:8](#); [4:42](#); [6:22](#); [18:32](#); [25:3](#); [25:29](#))

bridegroom

Definition:

In a marriage ceremony, the bridegroom is the man who will marry the bride.

- In the Jewish culture during Bible times, the ceremony was centered around the bridegroom coming to get his bride.
- In the Bible, Jesus is figuratively called the "Bridegroom" who will someday come for his "Bride," the Church.
- Jesus compared his disciples to the friends of the bridegroom who celebrate while the bridegroom is with them, but who will be sad when he is gone.

(See also: bride)

Bible References:

- Isaiah 62:5
- Joel 02:15-16
- John 03:30
- Luke 05:35
- Mark 02:19
- Mark 02:20
- Matthew 09:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2860, G3566

(Go back to: [2 Kings 8:27](#))

bronze

Definition:

The term “bronze” refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers’ armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called “casting.”

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: armor, tabernacle, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 07:16
- 1 Samuel 17:37-38
- Daniel 02:44-45
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Revelation 01:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5153, H5154, H5174, H5178, G5470, G5474, G5475

(Go back to: [2 Kings 16:14](#); [16:15](#); [16:17](#); [18:4](#); [25:13](#); [25:14](#); [25:17](#))

brother

Definition:

The term “brother” refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [God the Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 03:01
- Philippians 04:21
- Revelation 01:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2455, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

(Go back to: [2 Kings 7:6](#); [9:2](#); [10:13](#); [23:9](#))

burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances

Definition:

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term “burden” also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be “bearing” or “carrying” a “heavy burden.”
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person’s sin is a burden to him.
- The “burden of the Lord” is a figurative way of referring to a “message from God” that a prophet must deliver to God’s people.
- The term “burden” can be translated by “responsibility” or “duty” or “heavy load” or “message,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 03:6-9
- Galatians 06:1-2
- Galatians 06:03
- Genesis 49:15
- Matthew 11:30
- Matthew 23:04

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2960, H3053, H4614, H4853, H4864, H5445, H5447, H5448, H5449, H6006, G4, G916, G922, G2347, G2599, G2655, G5413

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:17](#); [8:9](#); [14:10](#))

burnt offering, offering by fire

Definition:

A “burnt offering” was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an “offering by fire.”

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: [altar](#), atonement, [ox](#), [priest](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 40:5-7
- Genesis 08:20
- Genesis 22:1-3
- Leviticus 03:05
- Mark 12:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H801, H5930, H7133, H8548, G3646

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:27](#); [5:17](#); [10:24](#); [16:13](#); [16:15](#))

bury, buried, burial

Definition:

The term “bury” refers to putting an object (usually a dead body) into a hole or other burial place and then covering it with dirt or stones, etc. The term “burial” is the act of burying something, or it can be used to describe a place where something has been buried.

- Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
- Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin, before burying it.
- In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
- The terms “burial place” or “burial room” or “burial chamber” or “burial cave” always refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
- Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
- The phrase “buried his face” usually means “covered his face with his hands.”
- Sometimes the word “hide” can mean “bury” as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also: [Jericho](#), [tomb](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 09:9-10
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Jeremiah 25:33
- Luke 16:22
- Matthew 27:07
- Psalm 079:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6900, H6912, H6913, G1779, G1780, G2290, G4916, G5027

(Go back to: [2 Kings 9:10](#); [13:21](#))

call, call out

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” usually mean to speak loudly, but the term “call” can also mean to name or summon a person. There are also some other meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- When God “calls” people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, “His name is called John,” means, “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God has specifically chosen that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as, “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as, “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as, “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as, “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as, “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as, “I know you and have chosen you.”

(See also: [pray](#), [cry](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 01:09
- Ephesians 04:01
- Galatians 01:15
- Matthew 02:15
- Philippians 03:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G154, G363, G1458, G1528, G1941, G1951, G2028, G2046, G2564, G2821, G2822, G2840, G2919, G3004, G3106, G3333, G3343, G3603, G3686, G3687, G4316, G4341, G4377, G4779, G4867, G5455, G5537, G5581

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:10](#); [3:13](#); [4:12](#); [4:15](#); [4:36](#); [8:1](#); [9:1](#); [10:19](#); [22:16](#); [23:16](#))

camel

Definition:

A camel is a large, four legged animal with one or two humps on its back. (See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

- In Bible times, the camel was the largest animal found in Israel and the surrounding regions.
- The camel was used mainly for carrying people and burdens.
- Some people groups also used camels for food but not the Israelites because God said that camels were unclean and were not to be eaten.
- Camels were valuable because they could move swiftly in the sand and could live without food and water for several weeks at a time.

(See also: [burden](#), [clean](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:21
- 2 Chronicles 09:1-2
- Exodus 09:1-4
- Mark 10:25
- Matthew 03:04
- Matthew 19:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1581, G2574

(Go back to: [2 Kings 8:9](#))

captive, captivate, captivity, catch, captured

Definition:

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to capturing people and forcing them to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression to “take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as, “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as, “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as, “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as, “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), [exile](#), prison, seize)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:05
- Isaiah 20:04
- Jeremiah 43:03
- Luke 04:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, G161, G162, G163, G164, G2221

(Go back to: [2 Kings 6:22](#))

cedar, cedarwood

Definition:

The term "cedar" refers to a large fir tree which normally has reddish-brown wood. Like other firs, it has cones and needle-like leaves.

- The Old Testament often mentions cedar trees in connection with Lebanon, where they grew plentifully.
- Cedar wood was used in the construction of the Jerusalem temple.
- It was also used for sacrifices and purification offerings.

(See also: fir, [pure](#), [sacrifice](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:1-2
- 1 Kings 07:1-2
- Isaiah 02:13
- Zechariah 11:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H730

(Go back to: [2 Kings 19:23](#))

Chaldea, Chaldean

Facts:

Chaldea was a region in the southern part of Mesopotamia or Babylonia. The people who lived in this region were called Chaldeans.

- The city of Ur, where Abraham was from, was located in Chaldea. It is often referred to as “Ur of the Chaldeans.”
- King Nebuchadnezzar was one of several Chaldeans who became kings over Babylonia.
- After many years, around 600 BC, the term “Chaldean” came to mean “Babylonian.”
- In the book of Daniel, the term “Chaldean” also refers to a special class of men who were highly educated and studied the stars.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Babylon](#), Shinar, Ur)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:4-5
- Ezekiel 01:01
- Genesis 11:27-28
- Genesis 11:31-32
- Genesis 15:6-8
- Isaiah 13:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3679, H3778, H3779, G5466

(Go back to: [2 Kings 24:2](#); [25:5](#); [25:10](#); [25:13](#); [25:26](#))

chariot, charioteers

Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

- People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
- In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
- The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: [Egypt](#), Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:22
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- Acts 08:29
- Acts 08:38
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:25
- Genesis 41:43

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:10** So they followed the Israelites onto the path through the sea, but God caused the Egyptians to panic and caused their **chariots** to get stuck.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2021, H4817, H4818, H7393, H7395, H7398, G716, G4480

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:26; 23:11](#))

chief

Definition:

The term "chief" refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

- Examples of this include, "chief musician," "chief priest," and "chief tax collector." and "chief ruler."
- It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as "chiefs" of their family clans. In this context, the term "chief" could also be translated as "leader" or "head father."
- When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as "leading" or "ruling," as in "leading musician" or "ruling priest."

(See also: chief priests, [priest](#), tax collector)

Bible References:

- Daniel 01:11-13
- Ezekiel 26:15-16
- Luke 19:02
- Psalm 004:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H441, H5057, H5387, H5632, H6496, H7218, H7225, H7227, H7229, H7262, H8269, H8334, G749, G750, G754, G4410, G4413, G5506

(Go back to: [2 Kings 9:5](#); [11:10](#); [24:14](#); [25:18](#))

children, child, offspring

Definition:

The term "child" (plural "children") refers to the offspring of a man and woman. The term is often used more generally to refer to anyone who is young in age and is not yet a fully grown adult. The term "offspring" is a general reference to the biological descendants of people or animals.

- In the Bible, disciples or followers are sometimes called "children."
- Often the term "children" is used to refer to a person's descendants.
- Often in the Bible, "offspring" has the same meaning as "children" or "descendants."
- The term "seed" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to offspring.
- The phrase "children of" can refer to being characterized by something. Some examples of this would be:
 - children of the light
 - children of obedience
 - children of the devil
- This term can also refer to the Church. For example, sometimes the New Testament refers to people who believe in Jesus as "children of God."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "children" could be translated as "descendants" when it is referring to a person's great-grandchildren or great-great-grandchildren, etc.
- Depending on the context, "children of" could be translated as, "people who have the characteristics of" or "people who behave like."
- If possible, the phrase, "children of God" should be translated literally since an important biblical theme is that God is our heavenly Father. A possible translation alternate would be, "people who belong to God" or "God's spiritual children."
- When Jesus calls his disciples "children," this could also be translated as, "dear friends" or "my beloved disciples."
- When Paul and John refer to believers in Jesus as "children," this could also be translated as "dear fellow believers."
- The phrase, "children of the promise" could be translated as, "people who have received what God promised them."

(See also: [descendant](#), [seed](#), [promise](#), [son](#), [spirit](#), [believe](#), [beloved](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:28
- 3 John 01:04
- Galatians 04:19
- Genesis 45:11
- Joshua 08:34-35
- Nehemiah 05:05
- Acts 17:29
- Exodus 13:11-13
- Genesis 24:07
- Isaiah 41:8-9
- Job 05:25
- Luke 03:7
- Matthew 12:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1069, H1121, H1123, H1129, H1323, H1397, H1580, H2029, H2030, H2056, H2138, H2145, H2233, H2945, H3173, H3205, H3206, H3208, H3211, H3243, H3490, H4392, H5209, H5271, H5288, H5290, H5759, H5764, H5768, H5953, H6185, H6363, H6529, H6631, H7908, H7909, H7921, G730, G815, G1025, G1064, G1081, G1085, G1471, G3439, G3515, G3516, G3808, G3812, G3813, G3816, G5040, G5041, G5042, G5043, G5044, G5206, G5207, G5388

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:18](#); [4:34](#))

clean, wash

Definition:

The term "clean" generally refers either to removing dirt or stains from something or to not having any dirt or stain in the first place. The term "wash" refers specifically to action of removing dirt or stains from something.

- "Cleanse" is the process of making something "clean." It could also be translated as "wash" or "purify."
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually "clean" and which ones were "unclean." Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term "clean" means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared "clean" again.
- Sometimes "clean" is used figuratively to refer to moral purity, meaning to be "clean" from sin.

In the Bible, the term "unclean" is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were "clean" and which ones were "unclean." The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be "unclean" until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something "unclean," they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God's commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God's service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an "unclean spirit" refers to an evil spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for "clean" or "pure" (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, "ritually clean" or "acceptable to God."
- "Cleanse" could be translated by "wash" or "purify."
- Make sure that the words used for "clean" and "cleanse" can also be understood in a figurative sense.
- The term "unclean" could also be translated as "not clean" or "unfit in God's eyes" or "physically unclean" or "defiled."
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, "unclean" could be translated as "evil" or "defiled."
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: defile, demon, [holy](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 07:02
- Genesis 07:08
- Deuteronomy 12:15
- Psalms 051:07
- Proverbs 20:30
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Matthew 23:27
- Luke 05:13
- Acts 08:07
- Acts 10:27-29

- Colossians 03:05
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- James 04:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2548, H2834, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3001, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6172, H6565, H6663, H6945, H7137, H8552, H8562, G167, G169, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2839, G2840, G3394, G3689

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:10](#))

command, commandment

Definition:

The term “command” means to order someone to do something. The term “commandment” refers to the thing that a person is commanded to do.

- The term “commandment” sometimes refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See decree, [statute](#), law, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Luke 01:06
- Matthew 01:24
- Matthew 22:38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 01:17-19
- Romans 07:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H560, H565, H1296, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2941, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4662, H4687, H4929, H4931, H4941, H5057, H5713, H5749, H6213, H6310, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7761, H7970, H8269, G1263, G1291, G1296, G1297, G1299, G1690, G1778, G1781, G1785, G2003, G2004, G2008, G2036, G2753, G3056, G3726, G3852, G3853, G4367, G4483, G4487, G5506

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:3](#); [2:21](#); [2:24](#); [3:6](#); [4:18](#); [4:21](#); [4:37](#); [4:39](#); [5:27](#); [6:15](#); [7:12](#); [7:16](#); [7:17](#); [8:3](#); [9:21](#); [9:24](#); [9:34](#); [10:9](#); [10:19](#); [10:22](#); [10:26](#); [11:5](#); [11:9](#); [11:12](#); [11:15](#); [12:11](#); [13:5](#); [14:6](#); [15:20](#); [16:15](#); [16:16](#); [17:13](#); [17:15](#); [17:16](#); [17:19](#); [17:27](#); [17:34](#); [17:35](#); [18:6](#); [18:12](#); [18:18](#); [18:31](#); [18:36](#); [19:27](#); [19:35](#); [20:1](#); [21:8](#); [22:12](#); [23:3](#); [23:4](#); [23:6](#); [23:21](#); [24:12](#); [24:13](#); [25:23](#))

confirm, confirmation, legal

Definition:

The term "confirm" refers to verifying that something is true or legally certifying that a transaction has occurred.

- When a king is "confirmed" it means that the decision to make him king has been agreed upon and supported by the people.
- To confirm what someone wrote means to verify that what was written is true.
- The "confirmation" of the gospel means teaching people about the good news of Jesus in such a way that it shows that it is true.
- To give an oath "as confirmation" means to solemnly state or swear that something is true or trustworthy.
- Ways to translate "confirm" could include, "state as true" or "prove to be trustworthy" or "agree with" or "assure" or "promise," depending on the context.

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [trust](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:15-18
- 2 Corinthians 01:21
- 2 Kings 23:3
- Hebrews 06:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H1396, H3045, H3559, H4390, H4672, H5414, H5975, H6213, H6965, G950, G951, G3315, G4972

(Go back to: [2 Kings 6:15](#); [23:3](#))

consecrate, consecrated, consecration

Definition:

To consecrate means to dedicate something or someone to serve God. The person or object that is consecrated is considered holy and set apart for God.

- The meaning of this term is similar to “sanctify” or to “make holy,” but with the added meaning of formally setting apart someone for service to God.
- Things that were consecrated to God included animals to be sacrificed, the altar of burnt offering, and the tabernacle.
- People who were consecrated to God included the priests, the people of Israel, and the oldest male child.
- Sometimes the word “consecrate” has a meaning that is similar to “purify,” especially when it pertains to preparing people or things for God’s service so that they will be cleansed and acceptable to him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “consecrate” could include, “set apart for God’s service” or “purify for service to God.”
- Also consider how the terms “holy” and “sanctify” are translated.

(See also: [holy](#), [pure](#), sanctify)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 04:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 13:8-9
- Ezekiel 44:19

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2763, H3027, H4390, H4394, H5144, H5145, H6942, H6944, G1457, G5048

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10:20](#); [12:18](#))

consume, devour

Definition:

The term “consume” literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

- In the Bible, the word “consume” often refers to destroying things or people.
- A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
- God is described as a “consuming fire,” which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
- To consume food means to eat or drink something.
- The phrase, “consume the land” could be translated as “destroy the land.”

Translation Suggestions

- In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as “destroy.”
- When fire is referred to, “consume” could be translated as “burn up.”
- The burning bush that Moses saw “was not consumed” which could be translated as, “did not get burned up” or “did not burn up.”
- When referring to eating, “consume” could be translated as “eat” or “devour.”
- If someone’s strength is “consumed,” it means his strength is “used up” or “gone.”
- The expression, “God is a consuming fire” could be translated as, “God is like a fire that burns things up” or “God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire.”

(See also: [devour](#), [wrath](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:38-40
- Deuteronomy 07:16
- Jeremiah 03:23-25
- Job 07:09
- Numbers 11:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H398, H402, H1086, H1104, H1197, H2628, H3615, H3617, H3857, H4529, H5595, H8046, H8552, G355, G2618, G2654, G2719, G5315

(Go back to: [2 Kings 13:17](#); [13:19](#))

courage, courageous, encourage, encouragement, discourage, discouragement

Facts:

The term “courage” refers to boldly facing or doing something that is difficult, frightening, or dangerous.

- The term, “courageous” describes someone who shows courage, who does the right thing even when feeling afraid or pressured to give up.
- A person shows courage when he faces emotional or physical pain with strength and perseverance.
- The expression “take courage” means, “don’t be afraid” or “be assured that things will turn out well.”
- When Joshua was preparing to go into the dangerous land of Canaan, Moses exhorted him to be “strong and courageous.”
- The term “courageous” could also be translated as “brave” or “unafraid” or “bold.”
- Depending on the context, to “have courage” could also be translated as, “be emotionally strong” or “be confident” or “stand firm.”
- To “speak with courage” could be translated as, “speak boldly” or “speak without being afraid” or “speak confidently.”

The terms “encourage” and “encouragement” refer to saying and doing things to cause someone to have comfort, hope, confidence, and courage.

- A similar term is “exhort,” which means to urge someone to reject an activity that is wrong and to instead do things that are good and right.
- The apostle Paul and other New Testament writers taught Christians to encourage one another to love and serve others.

The term “discourage” refers to saying and doing things that cause people to lose hope, confidence, and courage and so to have less desire to keep working hard to do what they know they should do.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “encourage” could include “urge” or “comfort” or “say kind things” or “help and support.”
- The phrase “give words of encouragement” means “say things that cause other people to feel loved, accepted, and empowered.”

(See also: confidence, exhort, [fear](#), [strength](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 01:37-38
- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 1 Chronicles 17:25
- Matthew 09:20-22
- 1 Corinthians 14:1-4
- 2 Corinthians 07:13
- Acts 05:12-13
- Acts 16:40
- Hebrews 03:12-13
- Hebrews 13:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H533, H553, H1368, H2388, H2388, H2428, H3820, H3824, H7307, G2114, G2115, G2174, G2292, G2293, G2294, G3870, G3874, G3954, G4389, G4837, G5111

(Go back to: [2 Kings 19:26](#))

covenant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "covenant" refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term "new covenant" refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God's "new covenant" was explained in the part of the Bible called the "New Testament."
- This new covenant is in contrast to the "old" or "former" covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people's sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "binding agreement" or "formal commitment" or "pledge" or "contract."
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as "promise" or "pledge."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term "new covenant" could be translated as "new formal agreement" or "new pact" or "new contract."
- The word "new" in these expressions has the meaning of "fresh" or "new kind of" or "another."

(See also: [covenant](#), promise)

Bible References:

- Genesis 09:12
- Genesis 17:07
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26
- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12

- Mark 14:24
- Luke 01:73
- Luke 22:20
- Acts 07:08
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 03:06
- Galatians 03:17-18
- Hebrews 12:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:09** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **05:04** "I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac."
- **06:04** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **07:10** The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- **13:04** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:05** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it."
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G802, G1242, G4934

(Go back to: [2 Kings 11:4](#); [11:17](#); [13:23](#); [17:15](#); [17:35](#); [18:12](#); [23:2](#); [23:3](#); [23:21](#))

cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

Definition:

The terms “cow,” “bull,” “heifer,” “ox,” and “cattle” all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow,” the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- In the Bible, cattle were among the “clean” animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A “heifer” is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An “ox” is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to “be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: yoke)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:9-11
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 01:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:03
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Kings 01:09
- 2 Chronicles 11:15
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- Matthew 22:4
- Luke 13:15
- Luke 14:05
- Hebrews 09:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H441, H504, H929, H1165, H1241, H1241, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H5697, H6499, H6499, H6510, H6510, H6629, H7214, H7716, H7794, H7794, H7921, H8377, H8377, H8450, H8450, G1016, G1151, G2353, G2934, G3447, G3448, G4165, G5022, G5022

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:17](#))

cry, cry out, outcry

Definition:

The terms “cry” or “cry out” usually mean to say something loudly or urgently. Someone can “cry out” in pain, distress, anger, or fear, often with the intent of asking for help.

- The phrase “cry out” can also mean to shout or to call out with the intent of asking for help.
- This term could also be translated as “exclaim loudly” or “urgently ask for help,” depending on the context.
- An expression such as, “I cry out to you” could be translated as, “I call to you for help” or “I urgently ask you for help.”

(See also: [call](#), plead)

Bible References:

- Job 27:09
- Mark 05:5-6
- Mark 06:48-50
- Psalm 022:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7771, H7775, H8663, G310, G349, G863, G994, G995, G1916, G2019, G2799, G2805, G2896, G2905, G2906, G2929, G4377, G5455

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:12](#); [4:1](#); [4:40](#); [6:26](#); [8:5](#))

curse, cursed, cursing

Definition:

The term "curse" means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as "cause bad things to happen to" or "declare that something bad will happen to" or "swear to cause evil things to happen to."
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, "punish by allowing bad things to happen."
- The term "cursed" when used to describe people could be translated as, "(this person) will experience much trouble."
- The phrase "cursed be" could be translated as, "May (this person) experience great difficulties."
- The phrase, "Cursed is the ground" could be translated as, "The soil will not be very fertile."
- However, if the target language has the phrase "cursed be" and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Galatians 03:10
- Galatians 03:14
- Genesis 03:14
- Genesis 03:17
- James 03:10
- Numbers 22:06
- Psalms 109:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:09** God said to the snake, "You are **cursed!**"
- **02:11** "Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food."
- **04:04** "I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you."
- **39:07** Then Peter vowed, saying, "May God **curse** me if I know this man!"
- **50:16** Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H779, H1288, H2763, H2764, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, H8381, G331, G332, G685, G1944, G2551, G2652, G2653, G2671, G2672, G6035

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:24](#); [3:18](#))

cut off

Definition:

The expression “be cut off” is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God’s commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God’s people and from his presence.
- God also said he would “cut off” or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression “cut off” is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “be cut off” could be translated as “be banished” or “be sent away” or “be separated from” or “be killed” or “be destroyed.”
- Depending on the context, to “cut off” could be translated as, to “destroy” or to “send away” or to “separate from” or to “destroy.”
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as “were stopped” or “were caused to stop flowing” or “were divided.”
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:14
- Judges 21:06
- Proverbs 23:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H1219, H1438, H1494, H1504, H1629, H1820, H2686, H3582, H3772, H5243, H5352, H6789, H7088, H7096, H7112, H7113, G609, G851, G1581

(Go back to: [2 Kings 9:8](#); [11:4](#); [11:17](#); [17:15](#); [17:35](#); [17:38](#); [18:4](#); [19:23](#); [23:3](#); [23:14](#))

David

Facts:

David was the second king of Israel and he loved and served God. He was the main writer of the book of Psalms.

- When David was still a young boy caring for his family's sheep, God chose him to become the next king of Israel.
- David became a great fighter and led the Israelite army in battles against their enemies. His defeat of Goliath the Philistine is well known.
- King Saul tried to kill David, but God protected him, and made him king after Saul's death.
- David committed a terrible sin, but he repented and God forgave him.
- Jesus, the Messiah, is called the "Son of David" because he is a descendant of King David.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Goliath, [Philistines](#), Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 17:12-13
- 1 Samuel 20:34
- 2 Samuel 05:02
- 2 Timothy 02:08
- Acts 02:25
- Acts 13:22
- Luke 01:32
- Mark 02:26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:02** God chose a young Israelite named **David** to be king after Saul. **David** was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. ... **David** was a humble and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **17:03** **David** was also a great soldier and leader. When **David** was still a young man, he fought against a giant named Goliath.
- **17:04** Saul became jealous of the people's love for **David**. Saul tried many times to kill him, so **David** hid from Saul.
- **17:05** God blessed **David** and made him successful. **David** fought many battles and God helped him defeat Israel's enemies.
- **17:06** **David** wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **17:09** **David** ruled with justice and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what **David** had done, so he sent the prophet Nathan to tell **David** how evil his sin was. **David** repented of his sin and God forgave him. For the rest of his life, **David** followed and obeyed God, even in difficult times.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1732, G1138

(Go back to: [2 Kings 8:19](#); [8:24](#); [9:28](#); [11:10](#); [12:21](#); [14:20](#); [15:7](#); [15:38](#); [16:20](#); [17:21](#); [18:3](#); [19:34](#); [20:5](#); [20:6](#); [21:7](#); [22:2](#))

deceive, deceit, deceiver, deceitful, deception, illusions

Definition:

The term “deceive” means to cause someone to believe something that is not true. The act of deceiving someone is called “deceit” or “deception.”

- Someone who causes others to believe something false is a “deceiver.” For example, Satan is called a “deceiver.” The evil spirits that he controls are also deceivers.
- A person, action, or message that is not truthful can be described as “deceptive.”
- The terms “deceit” and “deception” have the same meaning, but there are some small differences in how they are used.
- The descriptive terms “deceitful” and “deceptive” have the same meaning and are used in the same contexts.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate “deceive” could include “lie to” or “cause to have a false belief” or “cause someone to think something that is not true.”
- The term “deceived” could also be translated as “caused to think something false” or “lied to” or “tricked” or “fooled” or “misled.”
- “Deceiver” could be translated as “liar” or “one who misleads” or “someone who deceives.”
- Depending on the context, the terms “deception” or “deceit” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “falsehood” or “lying” or “trickery” or “dishonesty.”
- The terms “deceptive” or “deceitful” could be translated as “untruthful” or “misleading” or “lying” to describe a person who speaks or acts in a way that causes other people to believe things that are not true.

(See also: [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:08
- 1 Timothy 02:14
- 2 Thessalonians 02:3-4
- Genesis 03:12-13
- Genesis 31:26-28
- Leviticus 19:11-12
- Matthew 27:64
- Micah 06:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H898, H2048, H3577, H3584, H3868, H4123, H4820, H4860, H5230, H5377, H5558, H6121, H6231, H6601, H7411, H7423, H7683, H7686, H7952, H8267, H8496, H8582, H8591, H8649, G538, G539, G1386, G1387, G1388, G1818, G3884, G4105, G4106, G4108, G5422, G5423

(Go back to: [2 Kings 18:29](#); [19:10](#))

declare, proclaim, announce

Definition:

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. Other terms with similar meaning include “proclaim,” “proclamation,” “announce,” and “announcement.”

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: [preach](#), decree)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:24
- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- Amos 02:16
- Ezekiel 05:11-12
- Matthew 07:21-23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H262, H559, H816, H874, H1696, H3045, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H7121, H7561, H7878, H8085, G312, G518, G669, G1229, G1344, G1555, G1718, G1834, G2097, G2511, G2605, G2607, G3140, G3670, G3724, G3822, G3870, G3955, G4296

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:12](#); [4:15](#); [4:22](#); [4:36](#); [5:11](#); [6:11](#); [7:10](#); [7:11](#); [10:20](#); [11:14](#); [12:7](#); [14:7](#); [18:4](#); [18:18](#); [18:28](#); [19:14](#); [20:11](#); [22:8](#); [22:10](#); [23:2](#); [23:17](#))

deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

Definition:

To “deliver” someone means to rescue that person. The term “deliverer” refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term “deliverance” refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called “judges” and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a “deliverer.” Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
- The term “deliver over to” or “deliver up to” has a very different meaning of handing or turning someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term “deliver” can be translated as “rescue” or “liberate” or “save.”
- When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, “deliver over” can be translated as “betray to” or “hand over” or “give over.”
- The word “deliverer” can also be translated as “rescuer” or “liberator.”
- When the term “deliverer” refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as “governor” or “judge” or “leader.”

(See also: [judge](#), [save](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 01:10
- Acts 07:35
- Galatians 01:04
- Judges 10:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:03** Then God provided a **deliverer** who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- **16:16** They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another **deliverer**.
- **16:17** Over many years, God sent many **deliverers** who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H2020, H2502, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4672, H5337, H5414, H5462, H6299, H6403, H6413, H6475, H6561, H7725, H7804, H8199, G325, G525, G629, G1080, G1325, G1560, G1659, G1807, G1929, G2673, G3086, G3860, G4506, G4991, G5088, G5483

(Go back to: [2 Kings 6:26](#); [6:27](#); [13:5](#); [14:27](#); [16:7](#); [19:19](#); [19:30](#))

descend, descendant

Definition:

A “descendant” is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person's descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob's descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase “descended from” is another way of saying “a descendant of” as in “Abraham was descended from Noah.” This could also be translated as “from the family line of.”

(See also: [Abraham](#), [ancestor](#), [Jacob](#), Noah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:4-5
- Acts 13:23
- Deuteronomy 02:20-22
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 28:12-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:09** “The woman's **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel.”
- **04:09** “I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**.”
- **05:10** “Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky.”
- **17:07** “Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants**!”
- **18:13** The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David.
- **21:04** God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David's own **descendants**.
- **48:13** God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H319, H1004, H1121, H1323, H1755, H2232, H2233, H3205, H3211, H3318, H3409, H4294, H5220, H6849, H7611, H8435, G1074, G1085, G4690

(Go back to: [2 Kings 25:25](#))

destroy, destruction, annihilate

Definition:

The term "destroy" means to completely make an end to something, so that it no longer exists.

- The term "destroyer" means, "a person who destroys."
- This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
- When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as "the destroyer of the firstborn." This could be translated as "the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males."
- In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called "the Destroyer." He is the "one who destroys" because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.

(See also: angel, [Egypt](#), firstborn, [Passover](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 12:23
- Hebrews 11:28
- Jeremiah 06:26
- Judges 16:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H7, H622, H398, H1104, H1197, H1820, H1826, H1942, H2000, H2015, H2026, H2040, H2254, H2255, H2717, H2718, H2763, H2764, H3238, H3341, H3381, H3423, H3582, H3615, H3617, H3772, H3807, H4191, H4229, H4591, H4658, H4889, H5218, H5221, H5307, H5362, H5420, H5422, H5428, H5595, H5642, H6365, H6789, H6979, H7665, H7667, H7703, H7722, H7760, H7843, H7921, H8045, H8074, H8077, H8316, H8552, G355, G396, G622, G853, G1311, G1842, G2049, G2506, G2507, G2647, G2673, G2704, G3089, G3645, G4199, G5351, G5356

(Go back to: [2 Kings 9:8](#); [11:1](#); [19:18](#); [24:2](#))

devour

Definition:

The term “devour” means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term “devour” is often used with a meaning of “completely destroy” as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as “completely consume” or “totally destroy.”

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:08
- Amos 01:10
- Exodus 24:17
- Ezekiel 16:20
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 23:13-15
- Psalms 021:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H399, H400, H402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G2068, G2666, G2719, G5315

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:10](#); [1:12](#); [1:14](#); [4:41](#); [4:42](#); [4:43](#); [4:44](#); [6:22](#); [6:23](#); [6:28](#); [6:29](#); [7:2](#); [7:8](#); [7:19](#); [9:10](#); [9:34](#); [9:36](#); [18:31](#); [19:29](#); [23:9](#); [25:29](#))

die, dead, deadly, death,

Definition:

The term "death" refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

1. Physical death

- To "die" means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- The expression "put to death" refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Eternal death

- Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
- This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to "die" may be expressed as to "not live." The term "dead" may be translated as "not alive" or "not having any life" or "not living."
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to "pass away" in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say "eternal death" when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say "physical death" in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression "the dead" is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as "dead people" or "people who have died." (See: nominal adjective)
- The expression "put to death" could also be translated as "kill" or "murder" or "execute."

(See also: [believe](#), faith, [life](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:21
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Acts 10:42
- Acts 14:19
- Colossians 02:15
- Colossians 02:20
- Genesis 02:15-17
- Genesis 34:27
- Matthew 16:28
- Romans 05:10
- Romans 05:12
- Romans 06:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **02:11** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **07:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:05** "Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **40:08** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:07** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **48:02** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8045, H8546, H8552, G336, G337, G520, G599, G615, G622, G1634, G1935, G2079, G2253, G2286, G2287, G2288, G2289, G2348, G2837, G2966, G3498, G3499, G3500, G4430, G4880, G4881, G5053, G5054

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:17](#); [4:20](#); [5:7](#); [7:4](#); [7:17](#); [7:20](#); [8:5](#); [8:12](#); [8:15](#); [9:27](#); [9:31](#); [11:16](#); [11:18](#); [12:21](#); [13:20](#); [13:24](#); [14:19](#); [15:10](#); [15:14](#); [15:25](#); [15:30](#); [17:25](#); [20:1](#); [21:23](#); [23:29](#); [23:34](#); [25:21](#); [25:25](#))

donkey, mule

Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:32-34
- 1 Samuel 09:04
- 2 Kings 04:21-22
- Deuteronomy 05:12-14
- Luke 13:15
- Matthew 21:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H860, H2543, H3222, H5895, H6167, H6501, H6505, H6506, G3678, G3688, G5268

(Go back to: [2 Kings 6:25](#); [7:7](#))

drink offering

Definition:

A drink offering was a sacrifice to God that involved pouring wine on an altar. It was often offered together with a burnt offering and a grain offering.

- Paul refers to his life as being poured out like a drink offering. This means that he was totally dedicated to serving God and telling people about Jesus, even though he knew he would suffer and probably be killed because of that.
- Jesus' death on the cross was the ultimate drink offering, as his blood was poured out on the cross for our sins.

Translation Suggestions:

- Another way to translate this term could be "offering of grape wine."
- When Paul says he is being "poured out like an offering" this could also be translated as "I am completely committed to teaching God's message to people, just like an offering of wine is poured out completely on the altar."

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [grain offering](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 25:29
- Ezekiel 45:16-17
- Genesis 35:14
- Jeremiah 07:16-18
- Numbers 05:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5257, H5261, H5262

(Go back to: [2 Kings 16:15](#))

earth, earthen, earthly

Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- “Earth” can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: [metonymy](#))
- The expressions “let the earth be glad” and “he will judge the earth” are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term “earthly” usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: [spirit](#), world)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 02:11-12
- Daniel 04:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 06:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 06:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H127, H772, H776, H778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G1093, G1919, G2709, G2886, G3625, G4578, G5517

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:15](#); [3:20](#); [4:37](#); [5:15](#); [5:19](#); [8:1](#); [8:6](#); [10:10](#); [10:33](#); [11:3](#); [11:14](#); [11:18](#); [11:19](#); [11:20](#); [13:18](#); [15:5](#); [15:19](#); [15:29](#); [16:15](#); [17:5](#); [17:26](#); [17:27](#); [18:25](#); [18:32](#); [18:33](#); [18:35](#); [19:11](#); [19:15](#); [19:17](#); [19:19](#); [19:37](#); [21:24](#); [23:30](#); [23:33](#); [23:35](#); [24:14](#); [24:15](#); [25:3](#); [25:12](#); [25:19](#))

Egypt, Egyptian

Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as “Egypt” and “Pathros” in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel’s patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Herod the Great, Joseph (NT), Nile River, patriarchs)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 04:7-9
- Acts 07:10
- Exodus 03:07
- Genesis 41:29
- Genesis 41:57
- Matthew 02:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:04** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **08:08** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **08:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to *_Egypt_* to buy food.
- **08:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **09:01** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4713, H4714, G124, G125

(Go back to: [2 Kings 7:6](#); [17:4](#); [17:7](#); [17:36](#); [18:21](#); [18:24](#); [21:15](#); [23:29](#); [23:34](#); [24:7](#); [25:26](#))

elder, older, old

Definition:

The term "elder" or "older" refers to people (in the Bible, usually men) who have grown old enough to become mature adults and leaders within a community. For example, elders might have gray hair, have adult children, or perhaps even have grandchildren or great-grandchildren.

- The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish "elders" continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian "elders" gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers. Elders in these churches sometimes included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 03:1-3
- 1 Timothy 04:14
- Acts 05:19-21
- Acts 14:23
- Mark 11:28
- Matthew 21:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G1087, G3187, G4244, G4245, G4850

(Go back to: [2 Kings 6:32](#); [10:1](#); [10:5](#); [19:2](#); [23:1](#))

Ephraim, Ephraimite

Facts:

Ephraim was the second son of Joseph. His descendants, the Ephraimites, formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- The tribe of Ephraim was one of the ten tribes that were located in the northern part of Israel.
- Sometimes the name Ephraim is used in the Bible to refer to the whole northern kingdom of Israel. (See: [synecdoche](#))
- Ephraim was apparently a very mountainous or hilly area, based on references to “the hill country of Ephraim” or “the mountains of Ephraim.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: kingdom of Israel, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:66-69
- 2 Chronicles 13:4-5
- Ezekiel 37:16
- Genesis 41:52
- Genesis 48:1-2
- John 11:54

Word Data:

- Strong's: H669, H673, G2187

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:22](#); [14:13](#))

Ethiopia, Ethiopian

Facts:

Ethiopia is a country in Africa located just south of Egypt, bordered by the Nile River to the west and by the Red Sea to the east. A person from Ethiopia is an "Ethiopian."

- Ancient Ethiopia was located south of Egypt and included land that is now part of several modern-day African countries, such as Sudan, modern Ethiopia, Somalia, Kenya, Uganda, Central African Republic, and Chad.
- In the Bible, Ethiopia is sometimes called "Cush" or "Nubia."
- The countries of Ethiopia ("Cush") and Egypt are often mentioned together in the Bible, perhaps because they were located next to each other and their people may have had some of the same ancestors.
- God sent Philip the evangelist to a desert where he shared the good news about Jesus with an Ethiopian eunuch.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Cush, [Egypt](#), eunuch, Philip)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:27
- Acts 08:30
- Acts 08:32-33
- Acts 08:36-38
- Isaiah 18:1-2
- Nahum 03:09
- Zephaniah 03:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: G128

(Go back to: [2 Kings 19:9](#))

Euphrates River, the River

Facts:

The Euphrates is the name of one of the four rivers that flowed through the Garden of Eden. It is the river that is most often mentioned in the Bible.

- The modern day river named Euphrates is located in the Middle East and is the longest and most important river in Asia.
- Together with the Tigris River, the Euphrates borders a region of land known as Mesopotamia.
- The ancient city of Ur where Abraham came from was at the mouth of the Euphrates River.
- This river was one of the boundaries of the land that God promised to give to Abraham (Genesis 15:18).
- Sometimes the Euphrates is simply called "the River."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:7-9
- 2 Chronicles 09:25-26
- Exodus 23:30-33
- Genesis 02:13-14
- Isaiah 07:20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5104, H6578, G2166

(Go back to: [2 Kings 23:29](#); [24:7](#))

evil, wicked, unpleasant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, [sin](#), [good](#), [righteous](#), demon)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 06:10
- 3 John 01:10
- Genesis 02:17
- Genesis 06:5-6
- Job 01:01
- Job 08:20
- Judges 09:57
- Luke 06:22-23
- Matthew 07:11-12
- Proverbs 03:07
- Psalms 022:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **04:02** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **08:12** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:01** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:08** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:02** They said, “We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!”
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G92, G113, G459, G932, G987, G988, G1426, G2549, G2551, G2554, G2555, G2556, G2557, G2559, G2560, G2635, G2636, G4151, G4189, G4190, G4191, G5337

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:19](#); [3:2](#); [4:41](#); [6:33](#); [Notes](#); [8:12](#); [8:18](#); [8:27](#); [13:2](#); [13:11](#); [14:10](#); [14:24](#); [Notes](#); [15:9](#); [15:18](#); [15:24](#); [15:28](#); [Notes](#); [17:2](#); [17:11](#); [17:13](#); [17:17](#); [Notes](#); [21:2](#); [21:6](#); [21:12](#); [21:15](#); [21:16](#); [21:20](#); [22:16](#); [22:20](#); [23:32](#); [23:37](#); [24:9](#); [24:19](#))

ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: [Israel](#), lamb, [sacrifice](#), shepherd)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 02:14
- Luke 15:05
- Mark 06:34
- Matthew 09:36
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:02** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:08** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G4165, G4262, G4263

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:4](#))

exalt, exalted, exaltation

Definition:

To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term “exalt” is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “exalt” could include “highly praise” or “honor greatly” or “extol” or “speak highly of.”
- In some contexts it could be translated by a word or phrase that means “put in a higher position” or “give more honor to” or “talk about proudly.”
- “Do not exalt yourself” could also be translated as “Do not think of yourself too highly” or “Do not brag about yourself.”
- “Those that exalt themselves” could also be translated as “Those who think proudly about themselves” or “Those who boast about themselves.”

(See also: praise, [worship](#), glory, boast, [proud](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:5-7
- 2 Samuel 22:47
- Acts 05:31
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Psalms 018:46

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1361, H4984, H5375, H5549, H5927, H7311, H7426, H7682, G1869, G5229, G5251, G5311, G5312

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:13](#))

exile, exiled

Definition:

The term “exile” refers to people being forced to live somewhere away from their home country.

- People are usually sent into exile for punishment or for political reasons.
- A conquered people may be taken into exile to the country of the conquering army, in order to work for them.
- The “Babylonian exile” (or “the exile”) is a period in Bible history when many Jewish citizens of the region of Judah were taken from their homes and forced to live in Babylon. It lasted 70 years.
- The phrase “the exiles” refers to people who are living in exile, away from their home country.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “exile” could also be translated as to “send away” or to “force out” or to “banish.”
- The term “the exile” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the sent away time” or “the time of banishment” or “the time of forced absence” or “banishment.”
- Ways to translate “the exiles” could include “the exiled people” or “the people who were banished” or “the people exiled to Babylon.”

(See also: [Babylon](#), Judah)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 24:14
- Daniel 02:25-26
- Ezekiel 01:1-3
- Isaiah 20:04
- Jeremiah 29:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1541, H1546, H1547, H3212, H3318, H5080, H6808, H7617, H7622, H8689, G3927

(Go back to: [2 Kings 17:11](#); [17:26](#); [17:27](#); [17:28](#); [17:33](#); [25:11](#))

face, facial

Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression “your face” is often a figurative way of saying “you.” Similarly, the expression “my face” often means “I” or “me.”
- In a physical sense, to “face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to “face” could be translated as to “turn toward” or to “look at directly” or to “look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole earth” or “living throughout the earth.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 05:04
- Genesis 33:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H600, H639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G3799, G4383, G4750

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:14](#); [4:29](#); [4:31](#); [5:1](#); [8:11](#); [8:15](#); [9:32](#); [9:37](#); [12:17](#); [13:4](#); [13:14](#); [13:23](#); [14:8](#); [14:11](#); [16:14](#); [17:18](#); [17:23](#); [18:24](#); [20:2](#); [21:13](#); [23:13](#); [23:27](#); [24:3](#); [24:20](#); [25:19](#))

faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy

Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

The term “unfaithful” describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is “unfaithfulness.”

- The people of Israel were called “unfaithful” when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is “unfaithful” to his or her spouse.
- God used the term “unfaithfulness” to describe Israel’s disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”
- Depending on the context, “unfaithful” could be translated as “not faithful” or “unbelieving” or “not obedient” or “not loyal.”
- The phrase “the unfaithful” could be translated as “people who are not faithful (to God)” or “unfaithful people” or “those who disobey God” or “people who rebel against God.”
- The term “unfaithfulness” could be translated as “disobedience” or “disloyalty” or “not believing or obeying.”
- In some languages, the term “unfaithful” is related to the word for “unbelief.”

(See also: adultery, [believe](#), disobey, faith, [believe](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:07
- Joshua 02:14
- Judges 02:16-17
- 1 Samuel 02:9
- Psalm 012:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 01:26
- Jeremiah 09:7-9
- Hosea 05:07
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 01:07
- 1 Thessalonians 05:24
- 3 John 01:05

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:09** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon's death.
- **35:12** "The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!'"
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:04** If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H529, H530, H539, H540, H571, H898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G569, G571, G4103

(Go back to: [2 Kings 17:14](#); [Notes](#))

famine

Definition:

The term “famine” refers to an extreme lack of food throughout a country or region, usually due to not enough rain.

- Food crops can fail from natural causes such as lack of rain, crop disease, or insects.
- Food shortages can also be caused by people, such as enemies who destroy crops.
- In the Bible, God sometimes caused famine as a way to punish nations when they sinned against him.
- In Amos 8:11 the term “famine” is used figuratively to refer to a time when God punished his people by not speaking to them. This could be translated with the word for “famine” in your language, or with a phrase such as “extreme lack” or “severe deprivation.”

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:11-12
- Acts 07:11
- Genesis 12:10
- Genesis 45:06
- Jeremiah 11:21-23
- Luke 04:25
- Matthew 24:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3720, H7458, H7459, G3042

(Go back to: [2 Kings 6:25](#))

favor, favorable, favoritism

Definition:

The term “favor” generally means approval. Someone who favors another person regards that person positively and approves of them.

- Jesus grew up “in favor with” God and men. This means that both God and others approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression “find favor” with someone means that someone is approved of by that person.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person’s request and grants it.
- A “favor” can also be a gesture or action towards or for another person for their benefit.
- The term “favoritism” means an attitude of acting favorably toward some people but not others. It means the inclination to pick one person over another or one thing over another because the person or item is preferred. Generally, favoritism is considered unfair.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate the term “favor” could include “approval” or “blessing” or “benefit.”
- The “favorable year of Yahweh” could be translated as “the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing.”
- The term “favoritism” could be translated as “partiality” or “being prejudiced” or “unjust treatment.” This word is related to the word “favorite,” which means to prefer above all others.

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 19:07
- 2 Corinthians 01:11
- Acts 24:27
- Genesis 41:16
- Genesis 47:25
- Genesis 50:05

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H995, H1156, H1293, H1779, H1921, H2580, H2603, H2896, H5278, H5375, H5414, H5922, H6213, H6437, H6440, H7521, H7522, H7965, G1184, G3685, G4380, G4382, G5485, G5486

(Go back to: [2 Kings 11:18](#))

fear, afraid, dread

Definition:

The terms "fear" refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term "fear" can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king. The term "dread" refers to extreme or intense fear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "fear" can be translated in various ways, depending on the context. Some possibilities include: "be afraid;" "deeply respect;" or "deep respect;" "revere;" or "reverence;" or perhaps "be in awe of."
- The phrase "fear not" could also be translated as "do not be afraid" or "stop being afraid."
- The sentence "The fear of God fell on all of them" might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: "Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;" or, "Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;" or, "Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power)."

(See also: marvel, awe, [Lord](#), power, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:18
- Acts 02:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 06:14
- Jonah 01:09
- Luke 12:05
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H367, H926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G870, G1167, G1168, G1169, G1630, G1719, G2124, G2125, G2962, G5398, G5399, G5400, G5401

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:15](#); [4:1](#); [6:16](#); [10:4](#); [17:7](#); [17:25](#); [17:28](#); [17:32](#); [17:33](#); [17:34](#); [17:35](#); [17:36](#); [17:37](#); [17:38](#); [17:39](#); [17:41](#); [19:6](#); [25:24](#); [25:26](#))

feast, feasting

Definition:

The term “feast” is a very general term that refers to an event where people gather to celebrate something by eating a large meal together. In biblical times, a feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In biblical times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- The term to “feast” could also be translated as to “eat lavishly” or to “celebrate by eating lots of food” or to “eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: festival, banquet)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Genesis 26:30
- Genesis 29:22
- Genesis 40:20
- Jude 01:12-13
- Luke 02:43
- Luke 14:7-9
- Matthew 22:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H2077, H2282, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G26, G1062, G1173, G1859, G2165, G4910

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:16](#); [4:17](#))

fig

Definition:

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

- Fig trees can grow 6 meters in height and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
- Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
- Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
- In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
- The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
- Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

Bible References:

- Habakkuk 03:17
- James 03:12
- Luke 13:07
- Mark 11:14
- Matthew 07:17
- Matthew 21:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H1690, H6291, H8384, G3653, G4808, G4810

(Go back to: [2 Kings 18:31](#); [20:7](#))

fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as “cause to experience suffering in order to be purified.”

(See also: [pure](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 01:10
- 2 Thessalonians 01:08
- Acts 07:29-30
- John 15:06
- Luke 03:16
- Matthew 03:12
- Nehemiah 01:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H215, H217, H398, H784, H800, H801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H2734, H3341, H3857, H4071, H4168, H5135, H6315, H8316, G439, G440, G1067, G2741, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G4451, G5394, G5457

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:10](#); [1:12](#); [1:14](#); [2:11](#); [6:17](#); [8:12](#); [16:3](#); [17:17](#); [17:31](#); [19:18](#); [21:6](#); [23:10](#); [23:11](#); [25:9](#))

firstfruits

Definition:

The term “firstfruits” refers to a portion of the first crop of fruits and vegetables that was reaped during each harvest season.

- The Israelites offered these first fruits to God as a sacrificial offering.
- This term is also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to a firstborn son as being the first fruits of the family. That is, because he was the first son to be born into that family, he was the one who carried on the family name and honor.
- Because Jesus rose from the dead, he is called the “firstfruits” of all believers in him, believers who have died but who will some day come back to life.
- Believers in Jesus are also called the “firstfruits” of all creation, indicating the special privilege and position of those whom Jesus redeemed and called to be his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal use of this term could be translated as “first portion (of crops)” or “first part of the harvest.”
- If possible, the figurative uses should be translated literally, to allow for different meanings in different contexts. This will also show the correlation between the literal meaning and the figurative uses.

(See also: firstborn)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:4-5
- 2 Thessalonians 02:13
- Exodus 23:16-17
- James 01:18
- Jeremiah 02:03
- Psalms 105:36

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H6529, H7225, G536

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:42](#))

flesh

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kinfolk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: [euphemism](#)). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:16
- 2 John 01:07
- Ephesians 06:12
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 02:24
- John 01:14
- Matthew 16:17
- Romans 08:08

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4560, G4561

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:34](#); [5:10](#); [5:14](#); [6:30](#); [9:36](#))

flock, herd

Definition:

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals, and use the appropriate term for each kind of animal.
- If your language uses the same word to refer to both sheep and cattle, then you may need to say "groups of sheep" where the Bible says only “flocks,” and "groups of cattle" where the Bible says only “herds.”

(See also: goat, [cow](#), pig, [sheep](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- 2 Chronicles 17:11
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Luke 02:8-9
- Matthew 08:30
- Matthew 26:31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7399, H7462, G34, G4167, G4168

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:26](#))

forsake, forsaken, leave

Definition:

The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people “forsake” God, they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God “forsakes” people, he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following, God’s teachings.
- The term “forsaken” can be used in the past tense, as in “he has forsaken you” or as in referring to someone who has “been forsaken.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
- To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
- It more clearer to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text describes forsaking a thing or a person.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:11-13
- Daniel 11:29-30
- Genesis 24:27
- Joshua 24:16-18
- Matthew 27:45-47
- Proverbs 27:9-10
- Psalms 071:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H488, H2308, H5203, H5428, H5800, H5805, H7503, G646, G657, G863, G1459, G2641,

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:2](#); [2:4](#); [2:6](#); [4:30](#); [8:6](#); [14:26](#); [22:17](#))

fruit, fruitful, unfruitful

Definition:

The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person’s actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person’s words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces--”that is children.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural, “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression “fruit of the land” could also be translated as “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a woman gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elizabeth says to Mary “blessed is the fruit of your womb,” she means “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression “fruit of the vine,” could be translated as “vine fruit” or “grapes.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”
- The apostle Paul’s expression “fruitful labor” could be translated as “work that brings very good results” or “efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus.”
- The “fruit of the Spirit” could also be translated as “works that the Holy Spirit produces” or “words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [grain](#), grape, Holy Spirit, [vine](#), womb)

Bible References:

- Galatians 05:23
- Genesis 01:11
- Luke 08:15
- Matthew 03:08
- Matthew 07:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2233, H2981, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H5108, H6509, H6529, H7019, H8393, H8570, G1081, G2590, G2592, G2593, G3703, G5052, G5352

(Go back to: [2 Kings 19:29](#); [19:30](#))

fulfill, fulfilled, carried out

Definition:

The term “fulfill” means to complete or accomplish something that was expected.

- When a prophecy is fulfilled, it means that God causes to happen what was predicted in the prophecy.
- If a person fulfills a promise or a vow, it means that he does what he has promised to do.
- To fulfill a responsibility means to do the task that was assigned or required.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “fulfill” could be translated as “accomplish” or “complete” or “cause to happen” or “obey” or “perform.”
- The phrase “has been fulfilled” could also be translated as “has come true” or “has happened” or “has taken place.”
- Ways to translate “fulfill,” as in “fulfill your ministry,” could include “complete” or “perform” or “practice” or “serve other people as God has called you to do.”

(See also: [prophet](#), Christ, minister, [call](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 02:27
- Acts 03:17-18
- Leviticus 22:17-19
- Luke 04:21
- Matthew 01:22-23
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalms 116:12-15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:04** John **fulfilled** what the prophets said, “See I send my messenger ahead of you, who will prepare your way.”
- **40:03** The soldiers gambled for Jesus’ clothing. When they did this, they **fulfilled** a prophecy that said, “They divided my garments among them, and gambled for my clothing.”
- **42:07** Jesus said, “I told you that everything written about me in God’s word must be **fulfilled**.”
- **43:05** “This **fulfills** the prophecy made by the prophet Joel in which God said, ‘In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.’”
- **43:07** “This **fulfills** the prophecy which says, ‘You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.’”
- **44:05** “Although you did not understand what you were doing, God used your actions to **fulfill** the prophecies that the Messiah would suffer and die.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H5487, G1096, G4138

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10 General Notes](#))

gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Definition:

A “gate” is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city. The “gate bar” refers to a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place so that the gate cannot be opened from the outside.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase “bars of the gate” could be translated as “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

Bible References:

- Acts 09:24
- Acts 10:18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:01
- Genesis 24:60
- Matthew 07:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G2374, G4439, G4440

(Go back to: [2 Kings 7:1](#); [7:3](#); [7:11](#); [7:17](#); [7:18](#); [7:20](#); [9:31](#); [10:8](#); [11:6](#); [11:19](#); [14:13](#); [15:35](#); [18:16](#); [23:8](#); [25:4](#))

Gilead, Gileadite

Definition:

Gilead was the name of a mountainous region east of the Jordan river where the Israelite tribes of Gad, Reuben, and Manasseh lived.

- This region was also referred to as the “hill country of Gilead” or “Mount Gilead.”
- “Gilead” was also the name of several men in the Old Testament. One of these men was the grandson of Manasseh. Another Gilead was the father of Jephthah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Gad, Jephthah, Manasseh, Reuben, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:22
- 1 Samuel 11:01
- Amos 01:03
- Deuteronomy 02:36-37
- Genesis 31:21
- Genesis 37:25-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1568, H1569

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10:33](#); [15:29](#))

gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around

Definition:

The term “gird” means to fasten something around something else. It often refers to using a belt or sash around the waist to keep a robe or tunic in place.

- The common biblical phrase, “gird up the loins” refers to tucking the bottom of a garment into a belt to allow a person to move more freely, usually to do work.
- This phrase can also mean “get ready to work” or to be prepared to do something difficult.
- The expression “gird up the loins” could be translated using an expression in the target language that has the same meaning. Or it could be translated figuratively as “prepare yourself for action” or “get yourself ready.”
- The term “girded with” could be translated as “encircled by” or wrapped with” or “belted with.”

(See also: loins)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:13
- Job 38:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H640, H247, H2290, H2296, H8151, G328, G1241, G4024

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:21](#); [4:29](#); [7:10](#); [9:1](#); [9:21](#))

glean, gleanings

Definition:

The term “glean” means to go through a field or orchard and pick up whatever grain or fruit the harvesters have left behind.

- God commanded the Israelites to let the widows, poor people, and foreigners glean the leftover grain in order to provide food for themselves.
- Sometimes the owner of the field would allow the gleaners to go directly behind the harvesters to glean, which enabled them to glean much more of the grain. A clear example of how this worked is in the story of Ruth, who was generously allowed to glean among the harvesters in the fields of her relative Boaz.
- Other ways to translate “glean” can be “pick up” or “gather” or “collect.”

(See also: Boaz, [grain](#), [harvest](#), Ruth)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 24:21-22
- Isaiah 17:4-5
- Job 24:06
- Ruth 02:02
- Ruth 02:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3950, H3951, H5953, H5955

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:39](#))

God

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”
NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: create, [false god](#), God the Father, Holy Spirit, [false god](#), Son of God, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 04:10
- Colossians 01:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 03:1-2
- Genesis 01:02
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:20
- Jeremiah 05:05
- John 01:03
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:43
- Micah 04:05
- Philippians 02:06
- Proverbs 24:12
- Psalms 047:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **01:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **05:03** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **09:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:02** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:07** You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:09** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:07** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:01** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:09** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H136, H305, H410, H426, H430, H433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G112, G516, G932, G935, G1096, G1140, G2098, G2124, G2128, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2299, G2304, G2305, G2312, G2313, G2314, G2315, G2316, G2317, G2318, G2319, G2320, G3361, G3785, G4151, G5207, G5377, G5463, G5537, G5538

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:2](#); [1:3](#); [1:6](#); [1:9](#); [1:10](#); [1:11](#); [1:12](#); [1:13](#); [1:16](#); [2:14](#); [4:7](#); [4:9](#); [4:16](#); [4:21](#); [4:22](#); [4:25](#); [4:27](#); [4:40](#); [4:42](#); [5:8](#); [5:11](#); [5:14](#); [5:15](#); [5:17](#); [5:20](#); [6:6](#); [6:9](#); [6:10](#); [6:15](#); [6:31](#); [7:2](#); [7:17](#); [7:18](#); [7:19](#); [8:2](#); [8:4](#); [8:7](#); [8:8](#); [8:11](#); [9:6](#); [10:31](#); [13:19](#); [14:25](#); [16:2](#); [17:7](#); [17:9](#); [17:14](#); [17:16](#); [17:19](#); [17:26](#); [17:27](#); [17:29](#); [17:31](#); [17:33](#); [17:35](#); [17:37](#); [17:38](#); [17:39](#); [18:5](#); [18:12](#); [18:22](#); [18:33](#); [18:34](#); [18:35](#); [19:4](#); [19:10](#); [19:12](#); [19:15](#); [19:16](#); [19:18](#); [19:19](#); [19:20](#); [19:37](#); [20:5](#); [21:12](#); [21:22](#); [22:15](#); [22:17](#); [22:18](#); [23:16](#); [23:17](#); [23:21](#))

god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry

Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), Asherah, Baal, Molech, demon, image, [kingdom](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 35:02
- Exodus 32:01
- Psalms 031:06
- Psalms 081:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 07:41
- Acts 07:43
- Acts 15:20
- Acts 19:27
- Romans 02:22
- Galatians 04:8-9
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Colossians 03:05
- 1 Thessalonians 01:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:02** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's **gods**.
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H367, H410, H426, H430, H457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H2553, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6089, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G1493, G1494, G1495, G1496, G1497, G2299, G2712

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

gold, golden

Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), ark of the covenant, [false god](#), [silver](#), tabernacle, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:07
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 01:15
- Acts 03:06
- Daniel 02:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6884, H6885, G5552, G5553, G5554, G5557

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:5](#); [7:8](#); [10:29](#); [12:13](#); [12:18](#); [14:14](#); [16:8](#); [18:14](#); [20:13](#); [23:33](#); [23:35](#); [24:13](#); [25:15](#))

good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

Definition:

The word “good” has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God’s character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is “good” could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is “good” could be called “fertile” or “productive.”
- A “good” crop could be a “plentiful” crop.
- A person can be “good” at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, “a good farmer.”
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”
- The term “goodness” usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone.
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: [evil](#), [holy](#), profit, [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 01:12
- Genesis 02:09
- Genesis 02:17
- James 03:13
- Romans 02:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:04** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **01:11** God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.”
- **01:12** Then God said, “It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- **02:04** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- **08:12** “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good**!”
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.

- **28:01** “**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘**good**?’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H145, H155, H202, H239, H410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G14, G15, G18, G19, G515, G744, G865, G979, G1380, G2095, G2097, G2106, G2107, G2108, G2109, G2114, G2115, G2133, G2140, G2162, G2163, G2174, G2293, G2565, G2567, G2570, G2573, G2887, G2986, G3140, G3617, G3776, G4147, G4632, G4674, G4851, G5223, G5224, G5358, G5542, G5543, G5544

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:19](#); [3:19](#); [3:25](#); [5:12](#); [8:9](#); [10:3](#); [10:5](#); [20:13](#); [20:19](#); [25:28](#))

govern, government, governor, proconsul

Definition:

A “governor” is a person who rules over a state, region, or territory. To “govern” means to guide, lead, or manage them.

- The term “proconsul” was a more specific title for a governor who ruled over a Roman province.
- In Bible times, governors were appointed by a king or emperor and were under his authority.
- A “government” consists of all the rulers who govern a certain country or empire. These rulers make laws that guide the behavior of their citizens so that there is peace, safety, and prosperity for all the people of that nation.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “governor” can also be translated as “ruler” or “overseer” or “regional leader” or “one who rules over a small territory.”
- Depending on the context, the term “govern” could also be translated as, “rule over” or “lead” or “manage” or supervise.”
- The term “governor” should be translated differently than the terms for “king” or “emperor”, since a governor was a less powerful ruler who was under their authority.
- The term “proconsul” could also be translated as, “Roman governor” or “Roman provincial ruler.”

(See also: authority, [king](#), power, province, Rome, ruler)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 23:22
- Acts 26:30
- Mark 13:9-10
- Matthew 10:18
- Matthew 27:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H324, H1777, H2280, H4951, H5148, H5460, H6346, H6347, H6486, H7989, H8269, H8660, G445, G446, G746, G1481, G2232, G2233, G2230, G4232

(Go back to: [2 Kings 18:24](#))

grain offering

Definition:

A grain offering was a gift of wheat or barley flour offered to God, often after a burnt offering.

- The grain used for the grain offering had to be finely ground up. Sometimes it was cooked before being offered, but other times it was left uncooked.
- Oil and salt were added to the grain flour, but no yeast or honey was permitted.
- Part of the grain offering was burned up and part of it was eaten by the priests.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), guilt offering , [sacrifice](#), sin offering)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:27-29
- Exodus 29:41-42
- Judges 13:19
- Leviticus 02:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4503, H8641

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:20](#); [8:8](#); [8:9](#); [16:13](#); [16:15](#); [17:3](#); [17:4](#); [20:12](#))

grain, grainfields

Definition:

The term “grain” usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

- In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
- A head of grain is the part of the plant that holds the grain.
- Note that some older Bible versions use the word “corn” to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, “corn” only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: [head](#), wheat)

Bible References:

- Genesis 42:03
- Genesis 42:26-28
- Genesis 43:1-2
- Luke 06:02
- Mark 02:24
- Matthew 13:7-9
- Ruth 01:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1250, H1430, H1715, H2233, H2591, H3759, H3899, H7054, H7383, H7641, H7668, G248, G2590, G3450, G4621, G4719

(Go back to: [2 Kings 18:32](#))

grave, gravediggers, tomb, burial place

Definition:

The terms “tomb” and “grave” refer to a place where people put the body of a person who has died. A “burial place” is a more general term that also refers to this.

- The Jews sometimes used natural caves as tombs, and sometimes they dug caves into rock in the side of a hill.
- In New Testament times, it was common to roll a large, heavy stone in front of the opening of a tomb in order to close it.
- If the target language the word for a tomb can only refer to a hole in which the body is placed below the ground, other ways to translate this could include “cave” or “hole in the side of a hill.”
- The phrase “the grave” is often used generally and figuratively to refer to the condition of being dead or a place where the souls of dead people are.

(See also: [bury](#), [death](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 02:29-31
- Genesis 23:06
- Genesis 50:05
- John 19:41
- Luke 23:53
- Mark 05:1-2
- Matthew 27:53
- Romans 03:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **32:04** The man lived among the **tombs** in the area.
- **37:06** Jesus asked them, “Where have you put Lazarus?” They told him, “In the **tomb**. Come and see.”
- **37:07** The **tomb** was a cave with a stone rolled in front of its opening.
- **40:09** Then Joseph and Nicodemus, two Jewish leaders who believed Jesus was the Messiah, asked Pilate for Jesus’ body. They wrapped his body in cloth and placed it in a **tomb** cut out of rock. Then they rolled a large stone in front the **tomb** to block the opening.
- **41:04** He (the angel) rolled away the stone that was covering the entrance to the **tomb** and sat on it. The soldiers guarding the **tomb** were terrified and fell to the ground like dead men.
- **41:05** When the women arrived at the **tomb**, the angel told them, “Do not be afraid. Jesus is not here. He has risen from the dead, just like he said he would! Look in the **tomb** and see.” The women looked into the **tomb** and saw where Jesus’ body had been laid. His body was not there!

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1430, H6900, H6913, H7585, H7845, G3418, G3419, G5028

(Go back to: [2 Kings 22:20](#); [23:6](#))

hand

Definition:

The word “hand” refers to the part of the body at the end of the arm. In the Bible, this term is associated with a person's power, control, or action, whether it be in reference to God or in reference to a human person.

Some of the various uses of the term “hand” include the following:

- To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.”
- To “save from the hand of” means to prevent someone from being harmed by another person.
- The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
- The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, the phrase “by the hand of the Lord” means that God caused something to happen.
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- The term “laying on of hands” can refer to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service, to pray for healing, or to ask God to bless that person.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that he himself wrote that part of the letter rather than speaking it to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as, “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: [adversary](#), [bless](#), [captive](#), honor, power)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:25
- Acts 08:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 09:05
- Genesis 14:20
- John 03:35
- Mark 07:32
- Matthew 06:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G710, G1188, G1448, G1451, G2176, G2902, G4084, G4474, G5495, G5496, G5497

(Go back to: 2 Kings 3:10; 3:11; 3:13; 3:15; 3:18; 4:29; 4:34; 5:5; 5:11; 5:18; 5:20; 5:24; 6:7; 7:2; 7:17; 8:8; 8:9; 8:20; 8:22; 9:1; 9:7; 9:23; 9:24; 9:36; 10:10; 10:15; 10:24; 11:8; 11:11; 11:12; 11:16; 12:11; 12:15; 13:3; 13:5; 13:16; 13:25; 14:5; 14:25; 14:27; 15:19; 16:7; 17:7; 17:13; 17:20; 17:23; 17:39; 18:29; 18:30; 18:33; 18:34; 18:35; 19:10; 19:14; 19:18; 19:19; 19:23; 19:26; 21:10; 21:14; 22:5; 22:7; 22:9; 22:17; 24:2)

harvest, reap

Definition:

The term “harvest” refers to the gather the ripe fruits, vegetables, seeds, or grains from the plants on which they were growing. The term “reap” means to harvest crops.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a “Festival of Harvest” or “Festival of Ingathering” to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In biblical times, reapers usually harvested crops by hand, either pulling up the plants or cutting them with a sharp cutting tool.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate the concept with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as, “time of gathering in” or “crop gathering time” or “fruit picking time.”
- The verb to “harvest” could be translated as, to “gather in” or to “pick up” or to “collect.”

(See also: [firstfruits](#), festival, good news)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 09:9-11
- 2 Samuel 21:7-9
- Galatians 06:9-10
- Isaiah 17:11
- James 05:7-8
- Leviticus 19:09
- Matthew 09:38
- Ruth 01:22
- Galatians 06:9-10
- Matthew 06:25-26
- Matthew 13:30
- Matthew 13:36-39
- Matthew 25:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2758, H4395, H4672 H7105, H7114, H7938, G270, G2325, G2326, G2327

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:18](#))

head

Definition:

The word "head" refers to the uppermost body part of a human body, above the neck. This term is often used figuratively to mean many different things, including "top," "first," "beginning," "source," and other concepts.

Some examples of various uses of the term "head" include:

- The expression "no razor will ever touch his head" means that he should never cut or shave his hair.
- The expression "let their blood be on his own head" means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
- The expression "heads of grain" refers to the top part of wheat or barley plants that contains the seeds. Similarly, the expression "head of a mountain" refers to the top part of the mountain.
- The term "head" can also refer to the beginning or source of something, or the first in a series of things (can be objects or people).
- Often the term "head" refers to the most important person in a group or to a person who is in authority over others. For example, the phrase "You have made me the head over nations" means "You have made me the ruler..." or "You have given me authority over...."

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "head" could be translated as "authority" or "ruler" or "the one who is responsible for."
- The expression "will be on his own head" could be translated as "will be on him" or "he will be punished for" or "he will be held responsible for" or "he will be considered guilty for."
- Depending on the context, some other ways to translate this term might include "top" or "beginning" or "source" or "leader."

(See also: [grain](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:51-54
- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 09:22
- Colossians 02:10
- Colossians 02:19
- Numbers 01:04

Word Data:

- Strong's: H441, H1270, H1538, H3852, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6287, H6797, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G346, G755, G2775, G2776, G4719

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:9](#); [2:3](#); [2:5](#); [4:19](#); [6:25](#); [6:31](#); [6:32](#); [9:3](#); [9:6](#); [9:30](#); [10:6](#); [10:7](#); [10:8](#); [19:21](#); [25:27](#))

heart

Definition:

The term "heart" refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term "heart" is often used figuratively to refer to a person's thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a "hard heart" is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
- The expression "take it to heart" means to treat something seriously and apply it to one's life.
- The term "brokenhearted" describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as "stomach" or "liver" to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If "heart" or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as "thoughts" or "emotions" or "desires."
- Depending on the context, "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" could be translated as "with all my energy" or "with complete dedication" or "completely" or "with total commitment."
- The expression "take it to heart" could be translated as "treat it seriously" or "carefully think about it."
- The expression "hard-hearted" could also be translated as "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to obey" or "continually disobeying God."
- Ways to translate "brokenhearted" could include "very sad" or "feeling deeply hurt."

(See also: hard)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:17
- 1 Thessalonians 02:04
- 2 Thessalonians 03:13-15
- Acts 08:22
- Acts 15:09
- Luke 08:15
- Mark 02:06
- Matthew 05:08
- Matthew 22:37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1079, H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H5640, H7130, H7307, H7356, H7907, G674, G1282, G1271, G2133, G2588, G2589, G4641, G4698, G5590

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:26](#); [6:11](#); [9:24](#); [10:15](#); [10:31](#); [12:4](#); [14:10](#); [22:19](#); [23:3](#); [23:25](#))

heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as “heaven” usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean “sky,” depending on the context.

- The term “heavens” refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can’t directly see from the earth.
- The term “sky” refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be “up in the sky.”
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word “heaven” could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

Translation Suggestions:

- For “kingdom of heaven” in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word “heaven” since this is distinctive to Matthew’s gospel.
- The terms “heavens” or “heavenly bodies” could also be translated as, “sun, moon, and stars” or “all the stars in the universe.”
- The phrase, “stars of heaven” could be translated as “stars in the sky” or “stars in the galaxy” or “stars in the universe.”

(See also: kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Deuteronomy 09:01
- Ephesians 06:9
- Genesis 01:01
- Genesis 07:11
- John 03:12
- John 03:27
- Matthew 05:18
- Matthew 05:46-48

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:02** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called “manna.”
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **29:09** Then Jesus said, “This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart.”
- **37:09** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, “Father, thank you for hearing me.”
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:10](#); [1:12](#); [1:14](#); [2:1](#); [2:11](#); [Notes](#); [7:2](#); [7:19](#); [14:27](#); [17:16](#); [19:15](#); [21:3](#); [21:5](#); [23:4](#); [23:5](#))

Hebrew

Facts:

The term "Hebrew" refers in a very general sense to the people group descended from Abraham through the line of Isaac and Jacob.

- The specific word "Hebrew" can refer either to a individual person in the people group or to the language spoken by that people group.
- The vast majority of the Old Testament was written in the language called "Hebrew." However, in most cases in the New Testament, the specific term "Hebrew" probably refers to the Aramaic language rather than the Hebrew language.
- In different places in the Bible, the Hebrews were also called "Israelites" or "Jews." When translating, it is best to keep all three terms distinct in the text, as long as it is clear that these terms refer to the same people group.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [Jew](#), Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

- Acts 26:12-14
- Genesis 39:13-15
- Genesis 40:15
- Genesis 41:12-13
- John 05:1-4
- John 19:13
- Jonah 01:8-10
- Philippians 03:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5680, G1444, G1445, G1446, G1447

(Go back to: [2 Kings 18:26](#); [18:28](#))

Hittite

Definition:

The Hittites were descendants of Ham through his son Canaan. They became a large empire located in what is now Turkey and northern Palestine.

- Abraham bought a piece of property from Ephron the Hittite so that he could bury his deceased wife Sarah in a cave there. Eventually Abraham and several of his descendants were also buried in that cave.
- Esau's parents were grieved when he married two Hittite women.
- One of David's mighty men was named Uriah the Hittite.
- Some of the foreign women that Solomon married were Hittites. These foreign women turned Solomon's heart away from God because of the false gods they worshiped.
- The Hittites were often a threat to the Israelites, both physically and spiritually.

(See also: [descendant](#), Esau, foreigner, Ham, [mighty](#), [Solomon](#), Uriah)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:20-21
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 23:11
- Genesis 25:10
- Joshua 01:4-5
- Nehemiah 09:08
- Numbers 13:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2850

(Go back to: [2 Kings 7:6](#))

holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sacred” was often used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” and “sacred music” refer to music that was sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” referred to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”
- Ways to translate “unholy” could include “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”
- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, [consecrate](#), sanctify, set apart)

Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 03:02
- Lamentations 04:01
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 07:6
- Mark 08:38

- Acts 07:33
- Acts 11:08
- Romans 01:02
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 01:22
- 1 Thessalonians 03:13
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 03:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **09:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:01** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:05** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:05** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:02** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G37, G38, G39, G40, G41, G42, G462, G1859, G2150, G2412, G2413, G2839, G3741, G3742

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:9](#); [12:4](#); [12:18](#); [19:22](#))

honey, honeycomb

Definition:

“Honey” is the sweet, sticky, edible substance that honeybees make out of flower nectar. Honeycomb is the waxy frame where the bees store honey.

- Depending on the kind, honey can be yellowish or brownish in color.
- Honey can be found in the wild, such as in the hollow of a tree, or wherever bees make a nest. People also raise bees in hives in order to produce honey to eat or sell, but probably the honey mentioned in the Bible was wild honey.
- Three people that the Bible specifically mentions as eating wild honey were Jonathan, Samson, and John the Baptist.
- This term is often used figuratively to describe something that is sweet or very pleasurable. For example, God’s words and decrees are said to be “sweeter than honey.” (See also: [Simile](#), [Metaphor](#))
- Sometimes a person’s words are described as seeming sweet like honey, but instead result in deceiving and harming others.

(See also: John (the Baptist), Jonathan, [Philistines](#), Samson)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:1-3
- Deuteronomy 06:3
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Joshua 05:06
- Proverbs 05:03

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1706, H3293, H3295, H5317, H6688, G3192

(Go back to: [2 Kings 18:32](#))

horse, warhorse, horseback

Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for doing farm work and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.

(See also: [chariot](#), , [donkey](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:04
- 2 Kings 02:11
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Ezekiel 23:5-7
- Zechariah 06:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H5483, H5484, H6571, H7409, G2462

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:11](#); [5:9](#); [6:14](#); [6:15](#); [6:17](#); [7:6](#); [7:7](#); [7:10](#); [7:13](#); [7:14](#); [9:16](#); [9:18](#); [9:19](#); [9:28](#); [9:33](#); [10:2](#); [10:16](#); [11:16](#); [13:16](#); [14:20](#); [18:23](#); [23:11](#); [23:30](#))

horseman

Definition:

In Bible times, the term “horsemen” referred to men who rode horses into battle.

- Warriors who rode in horse-pulled chariots may also have been called “horsemen,” though this term usually refers to men who were actually riding on horses.
- The Israelites believed that using horses in battle placed too much emphasis on their own strength rather than on Yahweh, so they did not have many horsemen.
- This term could also be translated as “horse riders” or “men on horses.”

(See also: [chariot](#), [horse](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:05
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Genesis 50:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6571, H7395, G2460

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:12](#); [13:14](#))

house

Definition:

The term "house" refers to a small building, shelter, or tent, usually the place where a family sleeps. The term is often used figuratively in the Bible to mean various concepts such as "household" or "descendants," etc.

- Sometimes the term "house" means "household," referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Sometimes the term "house" means "family" or "descendants," referring to all the people related to or descended from a particular person. For example, the phrase "house of David" refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms "house of God" and "house of Yahweh" refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to a central place where Yahweh was worshipped.
- The phrase "house of Israel" can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, "house" could be translated as "household" or "people" or "family" or "descendants" or "temple" or "dwelling place."
- The phrase "house of David" could be translated as "clan of David" or "family of David" or "descendants of David." Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate "house of Israel" could include "people of Israel" or "Israel's descendants" or "Israelites."
- The phrase "house of Yahweh" could be translated as "Yahweh's temple" or "place where Yahweh is worshipped" or "place where Yahweh meets with his people" or "where Yahweh dwells." The phrase "house of God" could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [David](#), [descendant](#), house of God, household, kingdom of Israel, tabernacle, [temple](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:42
- Acts 07:49
- Genesis 39:04
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 08:39
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 15:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1005, G3609, G3613, G3614, G3624

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:32](#); [5:9](#); [5:18](#); [6:30](#); [7:9](#); [7:11](#); [8:1](#); [8:2](#); [8:3](#); [8:5](#); [8:18](#); [8:27](#); [9:6](#); [9:7](#); [9:8](#); [9:9](#); [9:27](#); [10:3](#); [10:5](#); [10:10](#); [10:11](#); [10:21](#); [10:23](#); [10:25](#); [10:26](#); [10:27](#); [10:30](#); [11:3](#); [11:4](#); [11:5](#); [11:6](#); [11:7](#); [11:11](#); [11:13](#); [11:15](#); [11:16](#); [11:18](#); [11:19](#); [11:20](#); [12:4](#); [12:5](#); [12:6](#); [12:7](#); [12:8](#); [12:9](#); [12:10](#); [12:11](#); [12:12](#); [12:13](#); [12:14](#); [12:16](#); [12:18](#); [12:20](#); [13:6](#); [14:14](#); [15:5](#); [15:25](#); [15:35](#); [16:8](#); [16:14](#); [16:18](#); [17:4](#); [17:21](#); [18:15](#); [18:18](#); [18:37](#); [19:1](#); [19:2](#); [19:14](#); [19:30](#); [19:37](#); [20:1](#); [20:5](#); [20:8](#); [20:13](#); [21:5](#); [21:13](#); [21:18](#); [22:3](#); [22:4](#); [22:5](#); [22:6](#); [22:9](#); [23:2](#); [23:6](#); [23:7](#); [23:11](#); [23:12](#); [23:19](#); [23:24](#); [23:27](#); [24:13](#); [25:9](#); [25:13](#); [25:16](#); [25:27](#))

inherit, inheritance, heir

Definition:

The term "inherit" refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after the parent(s) die. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person. An "inheritance" is the thing(s) that is received, and an "heir" is a person who receives an inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term "inherit" could be translated might include "receive" or "possess" or "come into possession of."
- Ways to translate "inheritance" could include "promised gift" or "secure possession."
- The term "heir" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "privileged child who receives the father's possessions."
- The term "heritage" could be translated as "inherited blessings."

(See also: heir, Canaan, Promised Land)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- 1 Peter 01:04
- 2 Samuel 21:03
- Acts 07:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 05:21
- Genesis 15:07
- Hebrews 09:15
- Jeremiah 02:07
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29
- Psalm 079:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**."
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?"
- **35:03** "There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, 'Father, I want my **inheritance** now!' So the father divided his property between the two sons."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G2816, G2817, G2819, G2820

(Go back to: [2 Kings 17:24](#); [21:14](#))

iniquity

Definition:

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: [sin](#), transgress, trespass)

Bible References:

- Daniel 09:13
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 44:16
- Habakkuk 02:12
- Matthew 13:41
- Matthew 23:27-28
- Micah 03:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1942, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5932, H5999, H7562, G92, G93, G458, G3892, G4189

(Go back to: [2 Kings 7:9](#))

innocent

Definition:

The term “innocent” means to not be guilty of a crime or other wrongdoing. It can also refer more generally to people who are not involved in evil things.

- A person accused of doing something wrong is innocent if he has not committed that wrong.
- Sometimes the term “innocent” is used to refer to people who have done nothing wrong to deserve the bad treatment they are receiving, as in an enemy army attacking “innocent people.”
- In the Bible, “blood” can represent “killing,” so “innocent blood” refers to “killing people who did not deserve to die.”

Translation Suggestions:

- In most contexts, the term “innocent” can be translated as “not guilty” or “not responsible” or “not to blame” for something.
- When referring in general to innocent people, this term could be translated as “who have done nothing wrong” or “who are not involved in evil.”
- “To shed innocent blood” can be translated as “to kill people who did not deserve to die.”

(See also: guilt)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 04:04
- 1 Samuel 19:05
- Acts 20:26
- Exodus 23:07
- Jeremiah 22:17
- Job 09:23
- Romans 16:18

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** After two years, Joseph was still in prison, even though he was **innocent**.
- **40:04** One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God? We are guilty, but this man is **innocent**.”
- **40:08** When the soldier guarding Jesus saw everything that happened, he said, “Certainly, this man was **innocent**. He was the Son of God.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2136, H2600, H2643, H5352, H5355, H5356, G121

(Go back to: [2 Kings 21:16](#); [24:4](#))

Israel, Israelite, Jacob

Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac and Rebekah.

- Jacob's name means "he grabs the heel" which is an expression meaning "he deceives." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which means "he struggles with God."
- Jacob was clever and deceptive. He found ways to take the firstborn blessing and inheritance rights from his older brother, Esau.
- Esau was angry and planned to kill him so Jacob left his homeland. But years later Jacob returned with his wives and children to the land of Canaan where Esau was living, and their families lived peacefully near each other.
- Jacob had twelve sons. Their descendants became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- A different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, [deceive](#), Esau, Isaac, [Israel](#), Rebekah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:11
- Acts 07:46
- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- John 04:4-5
- Matthew 08:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **07:01** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **07:07** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **07:08** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **07:10** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **08:01** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3290, G2384

(Go back to: [2 Kings 17:34](#))

Israel, Israelites

Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. The name means "he struggles with God."

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
- Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), kingdom of Israel, Judah, [nation](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:01
- 1 Kings 08:02
- Acts 02:36
- Acts 07:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 02:06
- Matthew 27:09
- Philippians 03:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **09:03** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **09:05** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:01** They said, "This is what the God of **Israel** says, 'Let my people go!'"
- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of *Israel* complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:09** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** *its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave Israel* peace along all its borders.
- **16:16** So God punished *Israel* again for worshipping idols.
- **43:06** "Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G935, G2474, G2475

(Go back to: [Introduction to 2 Kings](#); [2 Kings 1:1](#); [1:3](#); [1:6](#); [1:16](#); [1:18](#); [2:12](#); [3:1](#); [3:3](#); [3:4](#); [3:5](#); [3:6](#); [3:9](#); [3:10](#); [3:11](#); [3:12](#); [3:13](#); [3:24](#); [3:27](#); [5:2](#); [5:4](#); [5:5](#); [5:6](#); [5:7](#); [5:8](#); [5:12](#); [5:15](#); [6:8](#); [6:9](#); [6:10](#); [6:11](#); [6:12](#); [6:21](#); [6:23](#); [6:26](#); [7:6](#); [7:13](#); [8:12](#); [8:16](#); [8:18](#); [8:25](#); [8:26](#); [9:3](#); [9:6](#); [9:8](#); [9:12](#); [9:14](#); [9:21](#); [10:21](#); [10:28](#); [10:29](#); [10:30](#); [10:31](#); [10:32](#); [10:34](#); [10:36](#); [13:1](#); [13:2](#); [13:3](#); [13:4](#); [13:5](#); [13:6](#); [13:8](#); [13:10](#); [13:11](#); [13:12](#); [13:13](#); [13:14](#); [13:16](#); [13:18](#); [13:22](#); [13:25](#); [14:1](#); [14:8](#); [14:9](#); [14:11](#); [14:12](#); [14:13](#); [14:15](#); [14:16](#); [14:17](#); [14:23](#); [14:24](#); [14:25](#); [14:26](#); [14:27](#); [14:28](#); [14:29](#); [15:1](#); [15:8](#); [15:9](#); [15:11](#); [15:12](#); [15:15](#); [15:17](#);

15:18; 15:20; 15:21; 15:23; 15:24; 15:26; 15:27; 15:28; 15:29; 15:31; 15:32; 16:3; 16:5; 16:7; 17:1; 17:2; 17:6; 17:7; 17:8;
17:9; 17:13; 17:18; 17:19; 17:20; 17:21; 17:22; 17:23; 17:24; 17:34; 18:1; 18:4; 18:5; 18:9; 18:10; 18:11; 19:15; 19:20;
19:22; 21:2; 21:3; 21:7; 21:8; 21:9; 21:12; 22:15; 22:18; 23:13; 23:15; 23:19; 23:22; 23:27; 24:13)

Jehoshaphat

Facts:

Jehoshaphat was the name of at least two men in the Old Testament.

- The best known man by this name was King Jehoshaphat who was the fourth king to rule over the kingdom of Judah.
- He restored peace between Judah and Israel and destroyed the altars of false gods.
- Another Jehoshaphat was a “recorder” for David and Solomon. His job included writing documents for the king to sign and recording the history of the important events that happened in the kingdom.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [altar](#), [David](#), [false god](#), [Israel](#), [Judah](#), [priest](#), [Solomon](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 03:10-12
- 1 Kings 04:17
- 2 Chronicles 17:01
- 2 Kings 01:17
- 2 Samuel 08:15-18
- Matthew 01:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3092, G2498

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:17](#); [3:7](#); [3:11](#); [3:12](#); [3:14](#); [8:16](#); [9:2](#); [9:14](#); [12:18](#))

Jeremiah

Facts:

Jeremiah was a prophet of God in the kingdom of Judah. The Old Testament book of Jeremiah contains his prophecies.

- Like most of the prophets, Jeremiah often had to warn the people of Israel that God was going to punish them for their sins.
- Jeremiah prophesied that the Babylonians would capture Jerusalem, making some of the people of Judah angry. So they put him in a deep, dry well and left him there to die. But the king of Judah ordered his servants to rescue Jeremiah from the well.
- Jeremiah wrote that he wished his eyes could be a "fountain of tears," to express his deep sadness over the rebellion and sufferings of his people.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Babylon](#), Judah, [prophet](#), [rebel](#), suffer, well)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 35:25
- Jeremiah 01:02
- Jeremiah 11:01
- Matthew 02:18
- Matthew 16:13-16
- Matthew 27:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:17** Once, the prophet **Jeremiah** was put into a dry well and left there to die. He sank down into the mud that was in the bottom of the well, but then the king had mercy on him and ordered his servants to pull **Jeremiah** out of the well before he died.
- **21:05** Through the prophet **Jeremiah**, God promised that he would make a New Covenant, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3414, G2408

(Go back to: [2 Kings 23:31](#); [24:18](#))

Jericho

Facts:

Jericho was a powerful city in the land of Canaan. It was located just west of the Jordan River and just north of the Salt Sea.

- As all Canaanites did, the people of Jericho worshiped false gods.
- Jericho was the first city in the land of Canaan that God told the Israelites to conquer.
- When Joshua led the Israelites against Jericho, God did a great miracle to help them defeat the city.

(See also: Canaan, [Jordan River](#), [Joshua](#), [miracle](#), Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:78
- Joshua 02:1-3
- Joshua 07:2-3
- Luke 18:35
- Mark 10:46-48
- Matthew 20:29-31
- Numbers 22:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:01** Joshua sent two spies to the Canaanite city of **Jericho**.
- **15:03** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of **Jericho**.
- **15:05** Then the walls around **Jericho** fell down! The Israelites destroyed everything in the city as God had commanded.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3405, G2410

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:4](#); [2:5](#); [2:15](#); [2:18](#); [25:5](#))

Jerusalem

Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

- The name "Jerusalem" is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include "Salem" "city of Jebus," and "Zion." Both "Jerusalem" and "Salem," have the root meaning of "peace."
- Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called "Zion" which King David captured and made into his capital city.
- It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
- Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
- People normally referred to going "up" to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: [Babylon](#), Christ, [David](#), Jebusites, Jesus, [Solomon](#), [temple](#), [Zion](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 04:26-27
- John 02:13
- Luke 04:9-11
- Luke 13:05
- Mark 03:7-8
- Mark 03:20-22
- Matthew 03:06
- Matthew 04:23-25
- Matthew 20:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:05** David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
- **18:02** In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.
- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
- **38:02** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere."
- **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3389, H3390, G2414, G2415, G2419

(Go back to: 2 Kings 8:17; 8:26; 9:28; 12:1; 12:17; 12:18; 14:2; 14:13; 14:19; 14:20; 15:2; 15:33; 16:2; 16:5; 18:2; 18:17; 18:22; 18:35; 19:10; 19:21; 19:31; 21:1; 21:4; 21:7; 21:12; 21:13; 21:16; 21:19; 22:1; 22:14; 23:1; 23:2; 23:4; 23:5; 23:6; 23:9; 23:13; 23:20; 23:23; 23:24; 23:27; 23:30; 23:31; 23:33; 23:36; 24:4; 24:8; 24:10; 24:14; 24:15; 24:18; 24:20; 25:1; 25:8; 25:9; 25:10)

Jew, Jewish

Facts:

Jews are people who are descendants of Abraham's grandson Jacob. The word "Jew" comes from the word "Judah."

- People began to call the Israelites "Jews" after they returned to Judah from their exile in Babylon.
- Jesus the Messiah was Jewish. However, the Jewish religious leaders rejected Jesus and demanded that he be killed.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [Jacob](#), [Israel](#), [Babylon](#), Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:05
- Acts 10:28
- Acts 14:5-7
- Colossians 03:11
- John 02:14
- Matthew 28:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:11** The Israelites were now called **Jews** and most of them had lived their whole lives in Babylon.
- **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of **Jews** returned to the city of Jerusalem in Judah.
- **37:10** Many of the **Jews** believed in Jesus because of this miracle.
- **37:11** But the religious leaders of the **Jews** were jealous, so they gathered together to plan how they could kill Jesus and Lazarus.
- **40:02** Pilate commanded that they write, "King of the **Jews**" on a sign and put it on the cross above Jesus' head.
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began preaching to the **Jews** in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3054, H3061, H3062, H3064, H3066, G2450, G2451, G2452, G2453, G2454

(Go back to: [2 Kings 16:6](#); [25:25](#))

Jordan River, Jordan

Facts:

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

- Today, the Jordan River separates Israel on its west from Jordan on its east.
- The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
- When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. It was too deep to cross normally, but God miraculously stopped the river from flowing so they could walk across the river bed.
- Often in the Bible the Jordan River is referred to as “the Jordan.”

(See also: Canaan, Salt Sea, Sea of Galilee)

Bible References:

- Genesis 32:9-10
- John 01:26-28
- John 03:25-26
- Luke 03:3
- Matthew 03:06
- Matthew 03:13-15
- Matthew 04:14-16
- Matthew 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:02** The Israelites had to cross the **Jordan River** to enter into the Promised Land.
- **15:03** After the people crossed the **Jordan River**, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.
- **19:14** Elisha told him (Naaman) to dip himself seven times in the **Jordan River**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3383, G2446

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:6](#); [2:7](#); [2:13](#); [5:10](#); [5:14](#); [6:2](#); [6:4](#); [7:15](#); [10:33](#))

Joshua

Facts:

There were several Israelite men named Joshua in the Bible. The most well-known is Joshua son of Nun who was Moses' helper and who later became an important leader of God's people.

- Joshua was one of the twelve spies whom Moses sent to explore the Promised Land.
- Along with Caleb, Joshua urged the Israelite people to obey God's command to enter the Promised Land and defeat the Canaanites.
- Many years later, after Moses died, God appointed Joshua to lead the people of Israel into the Promised Land.
- In the first and most famous battle against the Canaanites, Joshua led the Israelites to defeat the city of Jericho.
- The Old Testament book of Joshua tells how Joshua led the Israelites in taking control of the Promised Land and how he assigned each tribe of Israel a part of the land to live on.
- Joshua son of Jozadak is mentioned in the books of Haggai and Zechariah; he was a high priest who helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- There are several other men named Joshua mentioned in the genealogies and elsewhere in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Canaan, Haggai, [Jericho](#), [Moses](#), Promised Land, Zechariah (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 07:25-27
- Deuteronomy 03:21
- Exodus 17:10
- Joshua 01:03
- Numbers 27:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:04** When the Israelites reached the edge of Canaan, Moses chose twelve men, one from each tribe of Israel. He gave the men instructions to go and spy on the land to see what it was like.
- **14:06** Immediately Caleb and **Joshua**, the other two spies, said, "It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **14:08** Except for **Joshua** and Caleb, everyone who is twenty years old or older will die there and never enter the Promised Land."
- **14:14** Moses was now very old, so God chose **Joshua** to help him lead the people.
- **14:15** **Joshua** was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **15:03** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told **Joshua** how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3091, G2424

(Go back to: [2 Kings 23:8](#))

joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing

Definition:

joy

The term "joy" refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term "joyful" describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

rejoice

The term "rejoice" means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as "be very happy" or "be very glad" or "be full of joy."
- When Mary said "my soul rejoices in God my Savior," she meant "God my Savior has made me very happy" or "I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "joy" could also be translated as "gladness" or "delight" or "great happiness."
- The phrase, "be joyful" could be translated as "rejoice" or "be very glad" or it could be translated "be very happy in God's goodness."
- A person who is joyful could be described as "very happy" or "delighted" or "deeply glad."
- A phrase such as "make a joyful shout" could be translated as "shout in a way that shows you are very happy."
- A "joyful city" or "joyful house" could be translated as "city where joyful people live" or "house full of joyful people" or "city whose people are very happy." (See: [metonymy](#))

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 08:10
- Psalm 048:02
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 02:9-10
- Luke 15:07
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 03:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 05:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 05:23
- Philippians 04:10-13
- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 05:16
- Philemon 01:4-7

- James 01:02
- 3 John 01:1-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **34:04** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:07** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G20, G21, G2165, G2167, G2744, G4640, G4796, G4913, G5463, G5479

(Go back to: [2 Kings 11:14](#); [11:20](#))

Judah

Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah." When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Judah" refers to the land given to the tribe of Judah, which includes the mountainous area to the south of the city of Jerusalem.

- It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
- King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Jacob](#), [Jew](#), Judah, [Judea](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 01:09
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:02
- Luke 03:33
- Ruth 01:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3063

(Go back to: [2 Kings 14:10](#); [14:11](#); [14:22](#); [14:28](#); [15:37](#); [18:22](#); [21:12](#); [23:17](#); [23:26](#); [24:2](#); [24:3](#))

Judea

Facts:

The term "Judea" refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broad sense.

- Sometimes "Judea" is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province "Judah."
- Other times "Judea" has a broad sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
- If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broad sense of Judea could be translated as "Judea Country" and the narrow sense could be translated as "Judea Province," or "Judah Province" since this is the part of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Galilee, Edom, [Judah](#), Judah, [Samaria](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14
- Acts 02:09
- Acts 09:32
- Acts 12:19
- John 03:22-24
- Luke 01:05
- Luke 04:44
- Luke 05:17
- Mark 10:1-4
- Matthew 02:01
- Matthew 02:05
- Matthew 02:22-23
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 19:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2453

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:17](#); [3:1](#); [3:7](#); [3:9](#); [3:14](#); [8:16](#); [8:19](#); [8:20](#); [8:22](#); [8:23](#); [8:25](#); [8:29](#); [9:16](#); [9:21](#); [9:27](#); [9:29](#); [10:13](#); [12:18](#); [12:19](#); [13:1](#); [13:10](#); [13:12](#); [14:1](#); [14:9](#); [14:11](#); [14:12](#); [14:13](#); [14:15](#); [14:17](#); [14:18](#); [14:21](#); [14:23](#); [15:1](#); [15:6](#); [15:8](#); [15:13](#); [15:17](#); [15:23](#); [15:27](#); [15:32](#); [15:36](#); [16:1](#); [16:19](#); [17:1](#); [17:18](#); [17:19](#); [18:1](#); [18:5](#); [18:13](#); [18:14](#); [18:16](#); [19:10](#); [19:30](#); [20:20](#); [21:11](#); [21:16](#); [21:17](#); [21:25](#); [22:13](#); [22:16](#); [22:18](#); [23:1](#); [23:2](#); [23:5](#); [23:8](#); [23:11](#); [23:12](#); [23:22](#); [23:24](#); [23:27](#); [23:28](#); [24:5](#); [24:12](#); [25:21](#); [25:22](#); [25:27](#))

judge, judgment

Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right.

- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: decree, judge, judgment day, [just](#), law, [law](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:17
- 1 Kings 03:09
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 03:14
- James 02:04
- Luke 06:37
- Micah 03:9-11
- Psalm 054:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?”
- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G144, G350, G968, G1106, G1252, G1341, G1345, G1348, G1349, G2917, G2919, G2920, G2922, G2923, G4232

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:7](#); [17:26](#); [17:27](#); [Notes](#); [23:22](#); [25:6](#))

just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification

Definition:

"Just" and "justice" refer to treating people fairly according to God's laws. Human laws that reflect God's standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be "just" is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God's eyes.
- To act "justly" means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God's laws.
- To receive "justice" means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term "just" has the broader meaning of "righteous" or "following God's laws."

The terms "unjust" and "unjustly" refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An "injustice" is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being "partial" or "prejudiced" because he is not treating people equally.

The terms "justify" and "justification" refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- "Justification" refers to what God does when he forgives a person's sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "just" could include "morally right" or "fair."
- The term "justice" could be translated as "fair treatment" or "deserved consequences."
- To "act justly" could be translated as "treat fairly" or "behave in a just way."
- In some contexts, "just" could be translated as "righteous" or "upright."
- Depending on the context, "unjust" could also be translated as "unfair" or "partial" or "unrighteous."
- The phrase "the unjust" could be translated as "the unjust ones" or "unjust people" or "people who treat others unfairly" or "unrighteous people" or "people who disobey God."
- The term "unjustly" could be translated as, "in an unfair manner" or "wrongly" or "unfairly."
- Ways to translate "injustice" could include, "wrong treatment" or "unfair treatment" or "acting unfairly." (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- Other ways to translate "justify" could include "declare (someone) to be righteous" or "cause (someone) to be righteous."
- The term "justification" could be translated as "being declared righteous" or "becoming righteous" or "causing people to be righteous."
- The phrase "resulting in justification" could be translated as "so that God justified many people" or "which resulted in God causing people to be righteous."
- The phrase "for our justification" could be translated as "in order that we could be made righteous by God."

(See also: forgive, guilt, [judge](#), [righteous](#), [righteous](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 44:16

- 1 Chronicles 18:14
- Isaiah 04:3-4
- Jeremiah 22:03
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Micah 03:8
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 11:19
- Matthew 23:23-24
- Luke 18:03
- Luke 18:08
- Luke 18:13-14
- Luke 21:20-22
- Luke 23:41
- Acts 13:38-39
- Acts 28:04
- Romans 04:1-3
- Galatians 03:6-9
- Galatians 03:11
- Galatians 05:3-4
- Titus 03:6-7
- Hebrews 06:10
- James 02:24
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:09** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H2555, H3477, H4941, H5765, H5766, H5767, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, H8636, G91, G93, G94, G1342, G1344, G1345, G1346, G1347, G1738

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10:15](#))

king, kingdom, kingship

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
- The Bible often refers to God as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: “king of the Jews;” “king of Israel;” and “king of kings.”
- Depending on the context, the term “king” might also be translated as “supreme chief” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” might be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: authority, Herod Antipas, [kingdom](#), kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 06:15-16
- 2 Kings 05:18
- 2 Samuel 05:03
- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 01:05
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 05:35
- Matthew 14:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **16:01** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **17:05** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **21:06** God's prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4427, H4428, H4430, G935, G936

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:3; 1:6; 1:9; 1:11; 1:15; 1:17; 1:18; 3:1; 3:4; 3:5; 3:6; 3:7; 3:9; 3:10; 3:11; 3:12; 3:13; 3:14; 3:21; 3:23; 3:26; 4:13; 5:1; 5:5; 5:6; 5:7; 5:8; 6:9; 6:10; 6:11; 6:12; 6:21; 6:24; 6:26; 6:28; 6:30; 7:2; 7:6; 7:9; 7:11; 7:12; 7:14; 7:15; 7:17; 7:18; 8:3; 8:4; 8:5; 8:6; 8:7; 8:8; 8:9; 8:13; 8:16; 8:18; 8:20; 8:23; 8:25; 8:26; 8:28; 8:29; 9:3; 9:6; 9:12; 9:14; 9:15; 9:16; 9:18; 9:19; 9:21; 9:27; 9:34; 10:4; 10:6; 10:7; 10:8; 10:13; 10:34; 11:2; 11:4; 11:5; 11:7; 11:8; 11:10; 11:11; 11:12; 11:14; 11:16; 11:17; 11:19; 11:20; 12:6; 12:7; 12:10; 12:17; 12:18; 12:19; 13:1; 13:3; 13:4; 13:7; 13:8; 13:10; 13:12; 13:13; 13:14; 13:16; 13:18; 13:22; 13:24; 14:1; 14:5; 14:8; 14:9; 14:11; 14:13; 14:14; 14:15; 14:16; 14:17; 14:18; 14:22; 14:23; 14:28; 14:29; 15:1; 15:5; 15:6; 15:8; 15:11; 15:13; 15:15; 15:17; 15:19; 15:20; 15:21; 15:23; 15:25; 15:26;](#)

15:27; 15:29; 15:31; 15:32; 15:36; 15:37; 16:1; 16:3; 16:5; 16:6; 16:7; 16:8; 16:9; 16:10; 16:11; 16:12; 16:15; 16:16;
 16:17; 16:18; 16:19; 17:1; 17:3; 17:4; 17:5; 17:6; 17:7; 17:24; 17:26; 17:27; 18:1; 18:5; 18:7; 18:9; 18:10; 18:11; 18:13;
 18:14; 18:15; 18:16; 18:17; 18:18; 18:19; 18:21; 18:23; 18:28; 18:29; 18:30; 18:31; 18:33; 18:36; 19:1; 19:4; 19:5; 19:6;
 19:8; 19:9; 19:10; 19:11; 19:13; 19:17; 19:20; 19:32; 19:36; 20:6; 20:12; 20:14; 20:18; 20:20; 21:3; 21:11; 21:17; 21:23;
 21:24; 21:25; 22:3; 22:9; 22:10; 22:11; 22:12; 22:16; 22:18; 22:20; 23:1; 23:2; 23:3; 23:4; 23:5; 23:11; 23:12; 23:13;
 23:19; 23:21; 23:22; 23:23; 23:25; 23:28; 23:29; 24:1; 24:5; 24:7; 24:10; 24:11; 24:12; 24:13; 24:15; 24:16; 24:17; 24:20;
 25:1; 25:2; 25:4; 25:5; 25:6; 25:8; 25:9; 25:11; 25:19; 25:20; 25:21; 25:22; 25:23; 25:24; 25:27; 25:28; 25:30)

kingdom

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase “kingdom of light” could be translated as “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: authority, [king](#), kingdom of God, kingdom of Israel, [Judah](#), Judah, [priest](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:12
- 2 Timothy 04:17-18
- Colossians 01:13-14
- John 18:36
- Mark 03:24
- Matthew 04:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 01:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon’s death.
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:08** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G932

(Go back to: [2 Kings 19:15](#); [19:19](#))

know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Definition:

The term "know" and "knowledge" means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression "to make known" means to tell information.

- The term "knowledge" refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To "know about" God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To "know" God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God's will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To "know the Law" means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes "knowledge" is used as a synonym for "wisdom," which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The "knowledge of God" is sometimes used as a synonym for the "fear of Yahweh."

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "know" could include "understand" or "be familiar with" or "be aware of" or "be acquainted with" or "be in relationship with."
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as "distinguish." When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition "between."
- Some languages have two different words for "know," one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term "make known" could be translated as "cause people to know" or "reveal" or "tell about" or "explain."
- To "know about" something could be translated as "be aware of" or "be familiar with."
- The expression "know how to" means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as "be able to" or "have the skill to."
- The term "knowledge" could also be translated as "what is known" or "wisdom" or "understanding," depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), reveal, understand, [wise](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 02:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 02:15
- 2 Peter 01:3-4
- Deuteronomy 04:39-40
- Genesis 19:05
- Luke 01:77

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H3045, H3046, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G50, G56, G1097, G1107, G1108, G1492, G1921, G1922, G1987, G2467, G2589, G4267, G4894

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:3](#); [2:5](#); [2:23](#); [4:1](#); [4:9](#); [4:39](#); [5:2](#); [5:7](#); [5:8](#); [5:11](#); [5:15](#); [7:12](#); [8:12](#); [9:11](#); [9:15](#); [10:10](#); [10:11](#); [10:22](#); [10:25](#); [11:7](#); [11:9](#); [11:15](#); [12:12](#); [17:26](#); [18:7](#); [19:9](#); [19:19](#); [19:27](#); [19:31](#); [20:4](#); [20:18](#); [21:15](#))

law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law

Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms "law" and "God's law" are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the "law" can refer to:
 - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
 - all the laws given to Moses
 - the first five books of the Old Testament
 - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as "scriptures" in the New Testament).
 - all of God's instructions and will
- The phrase "the law and the prophets" is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or "Old Testament")

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, "laws," since they refer to many instructions.
- The "law of Moses" could be translated as "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Depending on the context, "the law of Moses" could also be translated as "the law that God told to Moses" or "God's laws that Moses wrote down" or "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Ways to translate "the law" or "law of God" or "God's laws" could include "laws from God" or "God's commands" or "laws that God gave" or "everything that God commands" or "all of God's instructions."
- The phrase "law of Yahweh" could also be translated as "Yahweh's laws" or "laws that Yahweh said to obey" or "laws from Yahweh" or "things Yahweh commanded."

(See also: instruct, [Moses](#), Ten Commandments, lawful, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 15:06
- Daniel 09:13
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 07:25-26
- Galatians 02:15
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 05:18
- Nehemiah 10:29
- Romans 03:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:07** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.\
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.\
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.\
- **16:01** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.\
- **21:05** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.\
- **27:01** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"\

- **28:01** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws.**"\

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G2316, G3551, G3565

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10:31](#); [14:6](#); [17:13](#); [17:34](#); [21:8](#); [Notes](#); [22:8](#); [22:11](#); [23:24](#); [23:25](#))

life, live, living, alive

Definition:

The term "life" refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

1. Physical life

- A "life" can also refer to an individual person as in "a life was saved".
- Sometimes the word "life" refers to the experience of living as in, "his life was enjoyable."
- It can also refer to a person's lifespan, as in the expression, "the end of his life."
- The term "living" may refer to being physically alive, as in "my mother is still living." It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, "they were living in the city."
- In the Bible, the concept of "life" is often contrasted with the concept of "death."

2. Eternal life

- A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "life" can be translated as "existence" or "person" or "soul" or "being" or "experience."
- The term "live" could be translated by "dwell" or "reside" or "exist."
- The expression "end of his life" could be translated as "when he stopped living."
- The expression "spared their lives" could be translated as "allowed them to live" or "did not kill them."
- The expression "they risked their lives" could be translated as "they put themselves in danger" or "they did something that could have killed them."
- When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term "life" could be translated in the following ways: "eternal life" or "God making us alive in our spirits" or "new life by God's Spirit" or "being made alive in our inner self."
- Depending on the context, the expression "give life" could also be translated as "cause to live" or "give eternal life" or "cause to live eternally."

(See also: [death](#), everlasting)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 01:03
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 02:07
- Genesis 07:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:02
- John 01:04
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 07:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were *_living_* in the world.
- **08:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:09** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:05** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G198, G222, G227, G806, G590

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:2](#); [1:13](#); [1:14](#); [2:2](#); [2:4](#); [2:6](#); [3:14](#); [4:7](#); [4:16](#); [4:17](#); [4:27](#); [4:30](#); [5:16](#); [5:20](#); [7:4](#); [7:7](#); [7:12](#); [8:1](#); [8:5](#); [8:10](#); [8:14](#); [9:15](#); [10:14](#); [10:19](#); [10:24](#); [11:12](#); [12:4](#); [13:21](#); [14:17](#); [18:32](#); [19:4](#); [19:16](#); [20:1](#); [20:7](#); [23:3](#); [23:25](#))

lord, Lord, master, sir

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: [God](#), Jesus, ruler, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 39:02
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Psalms 086:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:04
- Lamentations 02:02
- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 09:09

- Daniel 09:17-19
- Malachi 03:01
- Matthew 07:21-23
- Luke 01:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 06:23
- Ephesians 06:9
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Colossians 03:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 02:01
- 1 Peter 01:03
- Jude 01:05
- Revelation 15:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:05** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:07** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:03** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:05** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:03** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H113, H136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G203, G634, G962, G1203, G2962

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:3](#); [2:5](#); [2:16](#); [2:19](#); [4:16](#); [4:28](#); [5:1](#); [5:3](#); [5:18](#); [5:20](#); [5:22](#); [5:25](#); [6:5](#); [6:12](#); [6:15](#); [6:22](#); [6:23](#); [6:26](#); [6:32](#); [8:5](#); [8:12](#); [8:14](#); [9:7](#); [9:11](#); [9:31](#); [10:2](#); [10:3](#); [10:6](#); [10:9](#); [18:23](#); [18:24](#); [18:27](#); [19:4](#); [19:6](#); [19:23](#))

messenger

Facts:

The term “messenger” refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate “angel” as “messenger.”
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah’s coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus’ apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: angel, apostle, John (the Baptist))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 1 Samuel 06:21
- 2 Kings 01:1-2
- Luke 07:27
- Matthew 11:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H5894, H6735, H6737, H7323, H7971, G32, G652

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:2](#); [1:3](#); [1:15](#); [1:16](#); [5:10](#); [14:8](#); [16:7](#); [17:4](#); [19:9](#); [19:23](#); [19:35](#))

might, mighty, mighty works

Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: Almighty, [miracle](#), power, [strength](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:22
- Genesis 06:4
- Mark 09:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H46, H47, H117, H202, H386, H410, H430, H533, H650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G1411, G1415, G1498, G2478, G2479, G2900, G2904, G3167, G3173

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:1](#); [15:20](#); [24:14](#); [24:16](#))

miracle, wonder, sign

Definition:

A “miracle” is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called “wonders” because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term “wonder” can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God’s power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called “signs” because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God’s acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God’s acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah’s time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God’s miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God’s power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God’s power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of “miracles” or “wonders” could include “impossible things that God does” or “powerful works of God” or “amazing acts of God.”
- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: power, [prophet](#), apostle, [sign](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 02:8-10
- Acts 04:17
- Acts 04:22
- Daniel 04:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:01
- Exodus 03:19-22
- John 02:11
- Matthew 13:58

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:08** Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **19:14** God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- **37:10** Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- **43:06** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

- **49:02** Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H226, H852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H6725, H7560, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8539, H8540,, G880, G1213, G1229, G1411, G1569, G1718, G1770, G1839, G2285, G2296, G2297, G3167, G3902, G4591, G4592, G5059

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

Mizpah

Facts:

Mizpah is the name of several towns mentioned in the Old Testament. It means, “look-out point” or “watchtower.”

- When David was being pursued by Saul, he left his parents in Mizpah, under the protection of the king of Moab.
- One city called Mizpah was located on the border between the kingdoms of Judah and Israel. It was a major military center.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [David](#), Judah, kingdom of Israel, [Moab](#), Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:20-22
- 1 Samuel 07:5-6
- 1 Samuel 07:10-11
- Jeremiah 40:5-6
- Judges 10:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4708, H4709

(Go back to: [2 Kings 25:23](#))

Moab, Moabite

Facts:

The term "Moab" refers to a people group that lived to the east of the Salt Sea. The book of Genesis describes this people group as the descendants of a man named "Moab," who was the son of Lot's elder daughter.

- In the book of Ruth, Elimelek and his family went to live in Moab because of the famine around Bethlehem.
- Ruth is called a "Moabite woman" because she was born in the country of Moab and was from that people group.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bethlehem, [Judea](#), Lot, Ruth, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- Genesis 19:37
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Ruth 01:1-2
- Ruth 01:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4124, H4125

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:1](#); [3:4](#); [3:5](#); [3:7](#); [3:10](#); [3:13](#); [3:18](#); [3:21](#); [3:22](#); [3:23](#); [3:24](#); [3:26](#); [13:20](#); [23:13](#); [24:2](#))

Moses

Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Miriam, Promised Land, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:21
- Acts 07:30
- Exodus 02:10
- Exodus 09:01
- Matthew 17:04
- Romans 05:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:12** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **12:05 Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you."
- **12:07** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters.
- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **13:07** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

\

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4872, H4873, G3475

(Go back to: [2 Kings 14:6](#); [18:4](#); [18:6](#); [18:12](#); [21:8](#); [23:25](#))

name

Definition:

The term "name" refers to the word by which a specific person or thing is called. In the Bible, however, the term "name" is used in several different ways to refer to several different concepts.

- In some contexts, "name" could refer to a person's reputation, as in "let us make a name for ourselves."
- The term "name" could also refer to the memory of something. For example, "cut off the names of the idols" means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking "in the name of God" meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The "name" of someone could refer to the entire person, as in "there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved." (See: [metonymy](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like "his good name" could be translated as "his good reputation."
- Doing something "in the name of" could be translated as "with the authority of" or "with the permission of" or "as the representative of" that person.
- The expression "make a name for ourselves" could be translated "cause many people to know about us" or "make people think we are very important."
- The expression "call his name" could be translated as "name him" or "give him the name."
- The expression "those who love your name" could be translated as "those who love you."
- The expression "cut off the names of idols" could be translated as "get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered" or "cause people to stop worshiping false gods" or "completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them."

(See also: [call](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:12
- 2 Timothy 02:19
- Acts 04:07
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 09:27
- Genesis 12:02
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2564, G3686, G3687, G5122

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:24](#); [5:11](#); [14:7](#); [14:27](#); [17:34](#); [21:4](#); [21:7](#); [23:27](#); [23:34](#); [24:17](#))

nation

Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A “nation” usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” was also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Babylon](#), Canaan, Gentile, Greek, [people group](#), [Philistines](#), Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:06
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 02:05
- Acts 13:19
- Acts 17:26
- Acts 26:04
- Daniel 03:04
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29
- Genesis 35:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 07:05
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43
- Romans 04:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H523, H524, H776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G246, G1074, G1085, G1484

(Go back to: [2 Kings 6:18](#); [16:3](#); [17:8](#); [17:15](#); [17:26](#); [17:29](#); [17:33](#); [17:41](#); [18:33](#); [19:12](#); [19:17](#); [21:2](#); [21:9](#))

Nebuchadnezzar

Facts:

Nebuchadnezzar was a king of the Babylonian Empire whose powerful army conquered many people groups and nations.

- Under Nebuchadnezzar's leadership, the Babylonian army attacked and conquered the kingdom of Judah, and took most of the people of Judah to Babylon as captives. The captives were forced to live there for a period of 70 years known as the "Babylonian Exile.
- One of the exiles, Daniel, interpreted some of King Nebuchadnezzar's dreams.
- Three other captured Israelites, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, were thrown into a fiery furnace when they refused to bow down to a gigantic gold statue that Nebuchadnezzar had made.
- King Nebuchadnezzar was very arrogant and worshiped false gods. When he conquered Judah, he stole many gold and silver objects from the temple in Jerusalem.
- Because Nebuchadnezzar was proud and refused to turn away from worshiping false gods, Yahweh caused him to be destitute for seven years, living like an animal. After the seven years, God restored Nebuchadnezzar when he humbled himself and praised the one true God, Yahweh.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: arrogant, Azariah, [Babylon](#), Hananiah, Mishael)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:15
- 2 Kings 25:1-3
- Daniel 01:02
- Daniel 04:04
- Ezekiel 26:08

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:06** About 100 years after the Assyrians destroyed the kingdom of Israel, God sent **Nebuchadnezzar**, king of the Babylonians, to attack the kingdom of Judah.
- **20:06** The king of Judah agreed to be **Nebuchadnezzar's** servant and pay him a lot of money every year.
- **20:08** To punish the king of Judah for rebelling, **Nebuchadnezzar's** soldiers killed the king's sons in front of him and then made him blind.
- **20:09** **Nebuchadnezzar** and his army took almost all of the people of the kingdom of Judah to Babylon, leaving only the poorest people behind to plant the fields.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5019, H5020

(Go back to: [2 Kings 24:1](#); [24:10](#); [24:11](#); [25:1](#); [25:8](#); [25:22](#))

oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Definition:

The term "oath" in the Bible refers to a formal promise, usually made in a legal or religious context, in which the person making the oath accepts some kind of accountability or punishment if he does not fulfill his promise. In the Bible, the term "swear" means to make an oath.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In modern times, one meaning of the word "swear" is to use foul or vulgar language. This is never its meaning in the Bible.
- The term "swear by" means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham's relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "an oath" could also be translated as "a pledge" or "a solemn promise."
- To "swear" could be translated as to "formally promise" or to "pledge" or to "commit to do something."
- Other ways to translate "swear by my name" could include "make a promise using my name to confirm it."
- To "swear by heaven and earth" could be translated as to, "promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it."
- Make sure the translation of "swear" or "oath" does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: Abimelech, [covenant](#), vow)

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:23
- Genesis 24:03
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:31
- Luke 01:73
- Mark 06:26
- Matthew 05:36
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:72

Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G332, G3660, G3727, G3728

(Go back to: [2 Kings 11:4](#); [25:24](#))

oil

Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: [olive](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 01:21
- Exodus 29:02
- Leviticus 05:11
- Leviticus 08:1-3
- Mark 06:12-13
- Matthew 25:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G1637, G3464

(Go back to: [2 Kings 18:32](#))

olive

Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit starts out green and changes to black as they ripen. Olives were useful for food and for the oil that could be extracted from them.
- Olive oil was used for cooking in lamps and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: lamp, the sea, Mount of Olives)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:28-29
- Deuteronomy 06:10-12
- Exodus 23:10-11
- Genesis 08:11
- James 03:12
- Luke 16:06
- Psalms 052:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2132, H3323, H8081, G65, G1636, G1637, G2565

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:2](#); [5:26](#); [18:32](#); [20:13](#))

ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

Definition:

An ordinance is a public regulation or law that gives rules or instructions for people to follow. This term is related to the term “ordain.”

- Sometimes an ordinance is a custom that has become well established through years of practice.
- In the Bible, an ordinance was something that God commanded the Israelites to do. Sometimes he commanded them to do it forever.
- The term “ordinance” could be translated as “public decree” or “regulation” or “law,” depending on the context.

(See also: [command](#), decree, [law](#), ordain, [statute](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 04:13-14
- Exodus 27:20-21
- Leviticus 08:31-33
- Malachi 03:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2706, H4687, H4931, H4941

(Go back to: [2 Kings 11:14](#); [17:33](#); [17:34](#); [17:37](#); [17:40](#))

oversee, overseer

Definition:

The term “overseer” refers to a person who is in charge of the work and welfare of other people.

- In the Old Testament, an overseer had the job of making sure the workers under him did their work well.
- In the New Testament, this term is used to describe leaders of the early Christian church. Their work was to take care of the spiritual needs of the church, making sure the believers received accurate biblical teaching.
- Paul refers to an overseer as being like a shepherd who takes care of the believers in a local church, who are his “flock.”
- The overseer, like a shepherd, keeps watch over the flock. He guards and protects the believers from false spiritual teaching and other evil influences.
- In the New Testament, the terms “overseers,” “elders,” and “shepherds/pastors” are different ways of referring to the same spiritual leaders.

Translation Suggestions

- Other ways to translate this term could be “supervisor” or “caretaker” or “manager.”
- When referring to a leader of a local group of God’s people, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “spiritual supervisor” or “someone who takes care of the spiritual needs of a group of believers” or “person who oversees the spiritual needs of the Church.”

(See also: church, [elder](#), pastor, shepherd)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 26:31-32
- 1 Timothy 03:02
- Acts 20:28
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Philippians 01:01

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5329, H6485, H6496, H7860, H8104, G1983, G1984, G1985

(Go back to: [2 Kings 25:19](#))

Passover

Facts:

The “Passover” is the name of a religious festival that the Jews celebrate every year, to remember how God rescued their ancestors, the Israelites, from slavery in Egypt.

- The name of this festival comes from the fact that God “passed over” the houses of the Israelites and did not kill their sons when he killed the firstborn sons of the Egyptians.
- The Passover celebration includes a special meal of a perfect lamb that they have killed and roasted, as well as bread made without yeast. These foods remind them of the meal that the Israelites ate the night before they escaped from Egypt.
- God told the Israelites to eat this meal every year in order to remember and celebrate how God “passed over” their houses and how he set them free from slavery in Egypt.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “Passover” could be translated by combining the words “pass” and “over” or another combination of words that has this meaning.
- It is helpful if the name of this festival has a clear connection to the words used to explain what the angel of the Lord did in passing by the houses of the Israelites and sparing their sons.

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:07
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- 2 Kings 23:23
- Deuteronomy 16:02
- Exodus 12:26-28
- Ezra 06:21-22
- John 13:01
- Joshua 05:10-11
- Leviticus 23:4-6
- Numbers 09:03

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:14** God commanded the Israelites to remember his victory over the Egyptians and their deliverance from slavery by celebrating the **Passover** every year.
- **38:01** Every year, the Jews celebrated the **Passover**. This was a celebration of how God had saved their ancestors from slavery in Egypt many centuries earlier.
- **38:04** Jesus celebrated the **Passover** with his disciples.
- **48:09** When God saw the blood, he passed over their houses and did not kill their firstborn sons. This event is called the **Passover**.
- **48:10** Jesus is our **Passover** Lamb. He was perfect and sinless and was killed at the time of the **Passover** celebration.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6453, G3957

(Go back to: [2 Kings 23:23](#))

peace, peaceful, peacemakers

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:1-3
- Acts 07:26
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Colossians 03:15
- Galatians 05:23
- Luke 07:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 04:39
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 10:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:06** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- **16:03** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- **21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G269, G1514, G1515, G1516, G1517, G1518, G2272

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:23](#); [4:26](#); [5:22](#); [9:19](#); [20:19](#))

people, people group,

Definition:

The terms “people” and “people group” refer to some group of people that shares a common language and culture. The term “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, the term “people” can refer to a “people group” or “family” or “relatives” or “army.”
- In plural form, the term “peoples” often refers to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations, the term “nations” is also used in this way.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “the people of” could be translated as “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of,” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [nation](#), [tribe](#), world)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:51-53
- 1 Samuel 08:07
- Deuteronomy 28:09
- Genesis 49:16
- Ruth 01:16

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:02** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there. what follows is
- **21:02** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.
- **42:08** “It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere.”

- **42:10** “So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you.”
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God’s people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:03** He (Jesus) said, “Go and make disciples of all **people groups!**” and, “The fields are ripe for harvest!”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H249, H523, H524, H776, H1121, H1471, H3816, H5712, H5971, H5972, H6153, G1074, G1085, G1218, G1484, G2560, G2992, G3793

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:7](#); [4:41](#); [4:42](#); [4:43](#); [6:30](#); [7:16](#); [7:17](#); [7:20](#); [8:21](#); [9:6](#); [10:9](#); [10:18](#); [11:13](#); [11:14](#); [11:17](#); [11:18](#); [11:19](#); [11:20](#); [12:3](#); [12:8](#); [13:7](#); [14:4](#); [14:21](#); [15:4](#); [15:5](#); [15:10](#); [15:35](#); [16:15](#); [18:26](#); [18:36](#); [20:5](#); [21:24](#); [22:4](#); [22:13](#); [23:2](#); [23:3](#); [23:6](#); [23:21](#); [23:30](#); [23:35](#); [24:14](#); [25:3](#); [25:11](#); [25:19](#); [25:22](#); [25:26](#))

perish

Definition:

The term “perish” means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or disaster. In the New Testament, it often has the spiritual meaning of being lost or separated from the people of God.

Spiritual Meaning of "Perish:"

- People who are “perishing” are those who have refused to trust in Jesus for their salvation.
- Those who “perish” will not live eternally with God in heaven. Instead, they will live eternally in hell under God's punishment.
- Everyone will die physically, but only those who do not trust in Jesus for their salvation will perish eternally.
- When “perish” is used in a spiritual sense, make sure that your translation expresses this differently than dying physically.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include “be lost from God's people,” “die eternally,” “be punished in hell,” or “be destroyed.”
- Try to use a term or expression that does not only mean “die physically” or “cease to exist.”

(See also: [death](#), everlasting)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:23
- 2 Corinthians 02:16-17
- 2 Thessalonians 02:10
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Psalms 049:18-20
- Zechariah 09:5-7
- Zechariah 13:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H7, H8, H1478, H1820, H1826, H5486, H5595, H6544, H8045, G599, G622, G684, G853, G1311, G2704, G4881, G5356

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10:19](#); [13:7](#); [21:3](#))

Philistines

Facts:

The Philistines were a people group who occupied a region known as Philistia along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. Their name means “people of the sea.”

- There were five main Philistine cities: Ashdod, Ashkelon, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
- The city of Ashdod was in the northern part of Philistia, and the city of Gaza was in the southern part.
- The Philistines are probably best known for the many years they were at war against the Israelites.
- The judge Samson was a famous warrior against the Philistines, using supernatural strength from God.
- King David often led battles against the Philistines, including the time as a youth when he defeated the Philistine warrior, Goliath.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ashdod, Ashkelon, [David](#), Ekron, Gath, Gaza, Goliath, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 13:04
- 2 Chronicles 09:25-26
- Genesis 10:11-14
- Psalm 056:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6429, H6430

(Go back to: [2 Kings 8:2](#); [8:3](#); [18:8](#))

pray, prayer

Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: [false god](#), forgive, praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:09
- Acts 08:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 04:04
- John 17:09
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:05** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- **19:08** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- **21:07** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- **43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- **49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G154, G1162, G1189, G1783, G2065, G2171, G2172, G3870, G4335, G4336

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:13](#); [4:33](#); [6:17](#); [6:18](#); [19:4](#); [19:15](#); [20:2](#); [20:3](#); [20:5](#); [22:19](#))

preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

Definition:

To “preach” means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him. To “proclaim” means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- “Preaching” and “teaching” are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- “Preaching” mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. “Teaching” is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term “preach” is usually used with the word “gospel.”
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his “teachings.”
- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See also: good news, Jesus, kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:1-2
- Acts 08:4-5
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:21-22
- Acts 20:25
- Luke 04:42
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 04:17
- Matthew 12:41
- Matthew 24:14
- Acts 09:20-22
- Acts 13:38-39
- Jonah 03:1-3
- Luke 04:18-19
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 10:26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:02** He (John) **preached** to them, saying, “Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!”
- **30:01** Jesus sent his apostles to **preach** and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began **preaching** and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **45:06** But in spite of this, they **preached** about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **45:07** He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began **preaching** to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to **preach** the good news of Jesus in many other places.

- **47:14** Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, **preaching** and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- **50:02** When Jesus was living on earth he said, “My disciples will **preach** the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come.”

Word Data:

- Strong's:
 - preach: H1319, H7121, H7150, G1229, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2783, G2784, G2980, G4283
 - proclaim: H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G518, G591, G1229, G1861, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2784, G2980, G3142, G4135

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:8](#); [2:14](#); [4:8](#); [8:21](#); [14:9](#); [17:17](#); [18:12](#); [21:6](#))

priest, priesthood

Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: Aaron, chief priests, high priest, mediator, [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 01:44
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 08:4
- Matthew 12:04
- Micah 03:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 01:06

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:07** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was

sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.

- **19:07** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- **21:07** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G748, G749, G2405, G2406, G2407, G2409, G2420

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10:19](#); [11:9](#); [11:10](#); [11:15](#); [11:18](#); [12:2](#); [12:4](#); [12:5](#); [12:6](#); [12:7](#); [12:8](#); [12:9](#); [12:10](#); [12:16](#); [16:10](#); [16:11](#); [16:15](#); [16:16](#); [17:27](#); [17:28](#); [17:32](#); [19:2](#); [Notes](#); [22:4](#); [22:8](#); [22:10](#); [22:12](#); [22:14](#); [23:2](#); [23:4](#); [23:8](#); [23:9](#); [23:20](#); [23:24](#); [25:18](#))

prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Definition:

A "prince" is the son of a king. A "princess" is a daughter of a king.

- The term "prince" is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham's wealth and importance, he was referred to as a "prince" by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term "prince" is used in the expressions "prince of Persia" and "prince of Greece," which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a "prince" in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as "the prince of this world."
- Jesus is called the "Prince of Peace" and the "Prince of Life."
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as "Lord and Christ" and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as "Prince and Savior," showing the parallel meaning of "Lord" and "Prince."

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "prince" could include, "king's son" or "ruler" or "leader" or "chieftain" or "captain."
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as, "spirit ruler" or "leading angel."
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as, "evil spirit ruler" or "powerful spirit leader" or "ruling spirit," depending on the context.

(See also: angel, authority, Christ, demon, [lord](#), power, ruler, Satan, Savior, [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 05:29-32
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 49:26
- Luke 01:52

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H117, H324, H2831, H3548, H4502, H5057, H5081, H5139, H5257, H5387, H5633, H5993, H6579, H7261, H7333, H7786, H8269, H8282, H8323, G747, G758, G1413, G3175

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:9](#); [1:10](#); [1:11](#); [1:13](#); [1:14](#); [4:13](#); [5:1](#); [8:21](#); [9:5](#); [10:1](#); [11:4](#); [11:9](#); [11:14](#); [11:15](#); [11:19](#); [23:8](#); [24:12](#); [25:19](#); [25:23](#); [25:26](#))

prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as, “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as, “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as, “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, [false god](#), false prophet, [fulfill](#), [law](#), vision)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- Acts 03:25
- John 01:43-45
- Malachi 04:4-6
- Matthew 01:23
- Matthew 02:18
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalm 051:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:01** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God’s messages.
- **19:06** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.

- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:09** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:05** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:07** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G2495, G4394, G4395, G4396, G4397, G4398, G5578

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2 General Notes](#); [2:3](#); [2:5](#); [2:7](#); [2:15](#); [Notes](#); [3:11](#); [3:13](#); [4:1](#); [4:38](#); [5:3](#); [5:8](#); [5:13](#); [5:22](#); [6:1](#); [6:12](#); [Notes](#); [9:1](#); [9:4](#); [9:7](#); [Notes](#); [10:19](#); [14:25](#); [17:13](#); [17:23](#); [19:2](#); [20:1](#); [20:11](#); [20:14](#); [21:10](#); [22:14](#); [23:18](#); [24:2](#))

prosper, prosperity, prosperous

Definition:

The term “prosper” generally refers to living well and can refer to prospering physically or spiritually. When people or a country are “prosperous,” it means they are wealthy and have all that they need to be successful. They are experiencing “prosperity.”

- The term “prosperous” often refers to success in owning money and property or in producing everything needed for people to live well.
- In the Bible, the term “prosperous” also includes good health and being blessed with children.
- A “prosperous” city or country is one that has many people, good production of food, and businesses that bring in plenty of money.
- The Bible teaches that a person will prosper spiritually when he obeys God’s teachings. He will also experience the blessings of joy and peace. God does not always give people a lot of material wealth, but he will always prosper them spiritually as they follow his ways.
- Depending on the context, the term “prosper” could also be translated as “succeed spiritually” or “be blessed by God” or “experience good things” or “live well.”
- The term “prosperous” could also be translated as “successful” or “wealthy” or “spiritually fruitful.”
- “Prosperity” could also be translated as “well-being” or “wealth” or “success” or “abundant blessings.”

(See also: [bless](#), [fruit](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:22-23
- Deuteronomy 23:06
- Job 36:11
- Leviticus 25:26-28
- Psalms 001:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1129, H1767, H1878, H1879, H2428, H2896, H2898, H3027, H3190, H3444, H3498, H3787, H4195, H5381, H6500, H6509, H6555, H6743, H6744, H7230, H7487, H7919, H7951, H7961, H7963, H7965

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:16](#); [5:1](#); [6:15](#); [7:6](#); [25:1](#); [25:5](#); [25:10](#))

prostrate, worship

Definition:

To “prostrate” oneself means to lie flat on the ground, usually in submission to a person of authority such as a king or some other powerful person. This same term can also mean to “worship,” referring to the actions of honoring, praising, and obeying God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- This term can be used both of people who worship Yahweh as the One True God and others who worship false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), praise, honor)

Bible References:

- Colossians 02:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 03:11-12
- Luke 04:07
- Matthew 02:02
- Matthew 02:08

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- **14:02** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **25:07** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **26:02** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **47:01** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G1391, G1479, G2151, G2318, G2323, G2356, G3000, G3511, G4352, G4353, G4573, G4574, G4576

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:15](#); [4:37](#); [5:18](#); [17:16](#); [17:35](#); [17:36](#); [18:22](#); [19:37](#); [21:3](#); [21:21](#))

proud, pride, prideful

Definition:

The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as, “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” or “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: arrogant, humble, [joy](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 03:6-7
- 2 Corinthians 01:12
- Galatians 06:3-5
- Isaiah 13:19
- Luke 01:51

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:02** They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said.
- **34:10** Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1341, H1343, H1344, H1346, H1347, H1348, H1349, H1361, H1362, H1363, H1364, H1396, H1466, H1467, H1984, H2086, H2087, H3093, H3238, H3513, H4062, H1431, H4791, H5965, H7295, H7312, H7342, H7311, H7830, H8597, G1391, G1392, G2744, G2745, G2746, G3173, G5187, G5229, G5243, G5244, G5308, G5309, G5426

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10:6](#))

punish, punished, punishment, unpunished

Definition:

The term “punish” means to cause someone to suffer a negative consequence for doing something wrong. The term “punishment” refers to the negative consequence that is given as a result of that wrong behavior.

- Often punishment is intended to motivate a person to stop sinning.
- God punished the Israelites when they disobeyed him, especially when they worshiped false gods. Because of their sin, God allowed their enemies to attack and capture them.
- God is righteous and just, so he has to punish sin. Every human being has sinned against God and deserves punishment.
- Jesus was punished for all the evil things that every person has ever done. He received each person's punishment on himself even though he did nothing wrong and did not deserve that punishment.
- The expressions “go unpunished” and “leave unpunished” mean to decide not to punish people for their wrongdoing. God often allows sin to go unpunished as he waits for people to repent.

(See also: [just](#), repent, [righteous](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:18
- 2 Thessalonians 01:09
- Acts 04:21
- Acts 07:59-60
- Genesis 04:15
- Luke 23:16
- Matthew 25:46

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:07** God also gave many other laws and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these laws, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would **punish** them.
- **16:02** Because the Israelites kept disobeying God, he **punished** them by allowing their enemies to defeat them.
- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would judge them as guilty, and he would **punish** them.
- **48:06** Jesus was the perfect high priest because he took the **punishment** for every sin that anyone has ever committed.
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the blood of Jesus takes away that person's sin, and God's **punishment** passes over him.
- **49:09** But God loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be **punished** for his sins, but will live with God forever.
- **49:11** Jesus never sinned, but he chose to be **punished** and die as the perfect sacrifice to take away your sins and the sins of every person in the world.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3027, H3256, H4148, H4941, H5221, H5414, H6031, H6064, H6213, H6485, H7999, H8011, H8199, G1349, G1556, G1557, G2849, G3811, G5097

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:20](#))

pure, purify, purification

Definition:

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase “provided purification for sins” could be translated as “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See also: atonement, [clean](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 01:05
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Hebrews 09:13-15
- James 04:08
- Luke 02:22
- Revelation 14:04

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1249, H1252, H1253, H1305, H1865, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2212, H2398, H2403, H2561, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2892, H2893, H3795, H3800, H4795, H5343, H5462, H6337, H6884, H6942, H8562, G48, G49, G53, G54, G1506, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2514

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:10](#); [5:12](#); [5:13](#); [5:14](#))

rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

Definition:

The term “rebel” means to refuse to submit to someone’s authority. A “rebellious” person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term to “rebel” could also be translated as to “disobey” or to “revolt,” depending on the context.
- “Rebellious” could also be translated as “continually disobedient” or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebellion” means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience” or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebellion” or “a rebellion” can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: authority, [governor](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:18-19
- 1 Samuel 12:14
- 1 Timothy 01:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- Acts 21:38
- Luke 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:14** After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had **rebelled** against God were dead.
- **18:07** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel **rebelled** against Rehoboam.
- **18:09** Jeroboam **rebelled** against God and caused the people to sin.
- **18:13** Most of the people of Judah also **rebelled** against God and worshiped other gods.
- **20:07** But after a few years, the king of Judah **rebelled** against Babylon.
- **45:03** Then he (Stephen) said, “You stubborn and **rebellious** people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4775, H4776, H4777, H4779, H4780, H4784, H4805, H5327, H5627, H5637, H6586, H6588, H7846, G3893, G4955

(Go back to: [2 Kings 14:26](#); [18:7](#); [18:20](#); [24:1](#); [24:20](#))

reign, rule

Definition:

The term to “reign” means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term “reign” is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as “absolute rule” or “rule as king.”

(See also: [kingdom](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:11-13
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Luke 01:30-33
- Luke 19:26-27
- Matthew 02:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3427, H4427, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4475, H4791, H4910, H6113, H7287, H7786, G757, G936, G2231, G4821

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:17; 3:1; 8:15; 8:20; 8:24; 10:35; 11:12; 12:21; 13:9; 13:24; 14:16; 14:21; 14:29; 15:7; 15:10; 15:13; 15:14; 15:22; 15:25; 15:30; 15:38; 16:20; 17:21; 19:37; 20:21; 21:18; 21:24; 21:26; 23:30; 23:34; 24:6; 24:12; 24:17; 25:1](#))

remnant

Definition:

The term “remnant” literally refers to people or things that are “remaining” or “left over” from a larger amount or group.

- Often a “remnant” refers to people who survive a life-threatening situation or who remain faithful to God while undergoing persecution.
- Isaiah referred to a group of Jews as being a remnant who would survive attacks from outsiders and live to return to the Promised Land in Canaan.
- Paul talks about there being a “remnant” of people who were chosen by God to receive his grace.
- The term “remnant” implies that there were other people who did not remain faithful or who did not survive or who were not chosen.

Translation Suggestions:

- A phrase such as “the remnant of this people” could be translated as “the rest of these people” or “the people who remain faithful” or “the people who are left.”
- The “whole remnant of people” could be translated by “all the rest of the people” or “the remaining people.”

Bible References:

- Acts 15:17
- Amos 09:12
- Ezekiel 06:8-10
- Genesis 45:07
- Isaiah 11:11
- Micah 04:6-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3498, H3499, H5629, H6413, H7604, H7605, H7611, H8281, H8300, G2640, G3005, G3062

(Go back to: [2 Kings 19:31](#); [21:14](#))

rest, rested, restless

Definition:

The term “rest” generally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. However, the term can refer to various kinds of rest besides only rest from working. For example, a person might rest from fighting, rest from speaking, or rest from moving, etc.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- A boat that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” or “landed” there.
- When a person or animals rest, they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “rest (oneself)” could also be translated as to “stop working” or to “refresh himself” or to “stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- God said, “they will not enter my rest,” and this statement could be translated as “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: [remnant](#), [Sabbath](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 02:03
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Matthew 11:29
- Revelation 14:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H14, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3498, H3499, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5183, H5564, H6314, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7673, H7677, H7901, H7931, H7954, H8058, H8172, H8252, H8300, G372, G373, G425, G1515, G1879, G1954, G1981, G2270, G2663, G2664, G2681, G2838, G3062, G4520

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:15](#))

restore, restoration

Definition:

The terms “restore” and “restoration” refer to causing something to return to its original place or condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been “healed.”
- A broken relationship that is restored has been “reconciled.” God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people have been restored to their home country, they have been “brought back” or “returned” to that country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “restore” could include “renew” or “repay” or “return” or “heal” or “bring back.”
- Other expressions for this term could be “make new” or “make like new again.”
- When property is “restored,” it has been “repaired” or “replaced” or “given back” to its owner.
- Depending on the context, “restoration” could be translated as “renewal” or “healing” or “reconciliation.”

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 05:10
- Acts 03:21
- Acts 15:15-18
- Isaiah 49:5-6
- Jeremiah 15:19-21
- Lamentations 05:22
- Leviticus 06:5-7
- Luke 19:08
- Matthew 12:13
- Psalm 080:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7725, H7999, H8421, G600, G2675

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:5](#); [1:6](#); [2:25](#); [4:38](#); [8:6](#); [9:18](#); [9:20](#); [14:25](#); [14:28](#); [16:6](#); [17:13](#); [18:14](#); [18:24](#); [19:33](#); [20:5](#); [20:9](#); [20:10](#); [23:25](#); [23:26](#))

return

Definition:

The term “return” means to go back or to give something back.

- To “return to” something means to start doing that activity again. To “return to” a place or person means to go back to that place or person again.
- When the Israelites returned to their worship of idols, they were starting to worship them again.
- When they returned to Yahweh, they repented and were worshiping Yahweh again.
- To return land or things that were taken or received from someone else means to give that property back to the person it belongs to.

(See also: turn)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G344, G360, G390, G1877, G1880, G1994, G5290

(Go back to: 2 Kings 1:5; 1:11; 1:13; 2:13; 2:18; 3:4; 3:27; 4:22; 4:31; 4:35; 5:10; 5:14; 5:15; 7:8; 7:15; 8:3; 8:29; 9:15; 9:36; 13:25; 14:14; 14:22; 15:20; 17:3; 19:7; 19:8; 19:9; 19:28; 19:36; 20:11; 21:3; 22:9; 22:20; 23:20; 24:1)

righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

Definition:

The term “righteousness” refers to God’s absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God “righteous.” Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called “righteous” include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus’ righteousness.

The term “unrighteous” means to be sinful and morally corrupt. “Unrighteousness” refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God’s teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes “the unrighteous” refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms “upright” and “uprightness” refer to acting in a way that follows God’s laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is “upright” is someone who obeys God’s rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as “integrity” and “righteous” have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as “integrity and uprightness.” (See: [parallelism](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term “righteous” could be translated as “perfectly good and just” or “always acting rightly.”
- God’s “righteousness” could also be translated as “perfect faithfulness and goodness.”
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term “righteous” could also be translated as “morally good” or “just” or “living a God-pleasing life.”
- The phrase “the righteous” could also be translated as “righteous people” or “God-fearing people.”
- Depending on the context, “righteousness” could also be translated with a word or phrase that means “goodness” or “being perfect before God” or “acting in a right way by obeying God” or “doing perfectly good”
- The term “unrighteous” could simply be translated as “not righteous.”
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include “wicked” or “immoral” or “people who rebel against God” or “sinful.”
- The phrase “the unrighteous” could be translated as “unrighteous people.”
- The term “unrighteousness” could be translated as “sin” or “evil thoughts and actions” or “wickedness.”
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to “righteous, righteousness.”
- Ways to translate “upright” could include “acting rightly” or “one who acts rightly” or “following God’s laws” or “obedient to God” or “behaving in a way that is right.”
- The term “uprightness” could be translated as “moral purity” or “good moral conduct” or “rightness.”
- The phrase “the upright” could be translated as “people who are upright” or “upright people.”

(See also: [evil](#), [faithful](#), [good](#), [holy](#), integrity, [just](#), law, [law](#), obey, [pure](#), [righteous](#), [sin](#), unlawful)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 01:08
- Psalms 037:30
- Psalms 049:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 02:06
- Matthew 06:01
- Acts 03:13-14
- Romans 01:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- Galatians 03:07
- Colossians 03:25
- 2 Thessalonians 02:10
- 2 Timothy 03:16
- 1 Peter 03:18-20
- 1 John 01:09
- 1 John 05:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **04:08** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:02** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:01** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G93, G94, G458, G1341, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G2118, G3716, G3717

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10:9](#))

robe, robed

Definition:

A robe is an outer garment with long sleeves that can be worn by a man or a woman. It is similar to a coat.

- Robes are open in the front and are tied shut with a sash or belt.
- They can be long or short.
- Purple robes were worn by kings as a sign of royalty, wealth, and prestige.

(See also: royal, tunic)

Bible References:

- Exodus 28:4-5
- Genesis 49:11-12
- Luke 15:22
- Luke 20:46
- Matthew 27:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H145, H155, H899, H1545, H2436, H2684, H3671, H3801, H3830, H3847, H4060, H4254, H4598, H5497, H5622, H6614, H7640, H7757, H7897, H8071, G1746, G2067, G2440, G4749, G4016, G5511

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10:22](#))

Sabbath

Definition:

The term “Sabbath” refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to “keep the Sabbath holy” is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called “Sabbath day” rather than only the Sabbath.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “resting day” or “day for resting” or “day of not working” or “God’s day of rest.”
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in “Sabbath Day” or “Resting Day.”
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: [rest](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
- Acts 13:26-27
- Exodus 31:14
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Lamentations 02:06
- Leviticus 19:03
- Luke 13:14
- Mark 02:27
- Matthew 12:02
- Nehemiah 10:32-33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:05** “Always be sure to keep the **Sabbath day** holy. That is, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to honor me.”
- **26:02** Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood. On the **Sabbath**, he went to the place of worship.
- **41:03** The day after Jesus was buried was a **Sabbath** day, and the Jews were not permitted to go to the tomb on that day.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4868, H7676, H7677, G4315, G4521

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:23](#); [11:5](#); [11:7](#); [11:9](#); [16:18](#))

sackcloth

Definition:

Sackcloth was a coarse, scratchy type of cloth that was made from goat hair or camel hair.

- A person who wore clothing made from it would be uncomfortable. Sackcloth was worn to show mourning, grief, or humble repentance.
- The phrase “sackcloth and ashes” was a common term referring to a traditional expression of grief and repentance.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “coarse cloth from animal hair” or “clothes made of goat hair” or “rough, scratchy clothing.”
- Another way to translate this term could be “rough, scratchy mourning clothes.”
- The phrase “sit in sackcloth and ashes” could be translated as “show mourning and humility by wearing scratchy cloth and sitting in ashes.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [ash](#), [camel](#), [goat](#), [humble](#), [mourn](#), [repent](#), [sign](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 03:31
- Genesis 37:34
- Joel 01:8-10
- Jonah 03:05
- Luke 10:13
- Matthew 11:21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8242, G4526

(Go back to: [2 Kings 19:1](#); [19:2](#))

sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

sacrifice

- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God's perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin animal sacrifices could never do that.

offering

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: [altar](#), [burnt offering](#), [drink offering](#), [false god](#), fellowship offering, freewill offering peace offering, [priest](#), sin offering, [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:06
- Acts 07:42
- Acts 21:25
- Genesis 04:3-5
- James 02:21-24
- Mark 01:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 05:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **05:06** “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me.” Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **05:09** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.

- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:06** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:08** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H801, H817, H819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G266, G334, G1049, G1435, G1494, G2378, G2380, G3646, G4376, G5485

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10:19](#); [10:24](#); [12:3](#); [14:4](#); [15:4](#); [15:35](#); [16:15](#); [17:35](#); [17:36](#))

Samaria, Samaritan

Facts:

Samaria was the name of a city and its surrounding region in the northern part of Israel. The region was located between the Plain of Sharon on its west and the Jordan River on its east.

- In the Old Testament, Samaria was the capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel. Later the region surrounding it was also called Samaria.
- When the Assyrians conquered the northern kingdom of Israel, they captured the city of Samaria and forced most of the northern Israelites to leave the region, moving them far away to different cities in Assyria.
- The Assyrians also brought many foreigners into the region of Samaria to replace the Israelites who had been moved.
- Some of the Israelites who remained in that region married the foreigners who had moved there, and their descendants were called Samaritans.
- The Jews despised the Samaritans because they were only partly Jewish and because their ancestors had worshiped pagan gods.
- In New Testament times, the region of Samaria was bordered by the region of Galilee on its north and the region of Judea on its south.

(See also: [Assyria](#), Galilee, [Judea](#), Sharon, kingdom of Israel)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:1-3
- Acts 08:05
- John 04:4-5
- Luke 09:51-53
- Luke 10:33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:04** Then the Assyrians brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been. The foreigners rebuilt the destroyed cities and married the Israelites who were left there. The descendants of the Israelites who married foreigners were called **Samaritans**.
- **27:08** "The next person to walk down that road was a **Samaritan**. (**Samaritans** were the descendants of Jews who had married people from other nations. **Samaritans** and Jews hated each other.)"
- **27:09** "The **Samaritan** then lifted the man onto his own donkey and took him to a roadside inn where he took care of him."
- **45:07** He (Philip) went to **Samaria** where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8111, H8115, H8118, G4540, G4541, G4542

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:3](#); [2:25](#); [6:19](#); [6:20](#); [6:24](#); [7:1](#); [7:18](#); [10:1](#); [10:12](#); [10:17](#); [14:14](#); [15:14](#); [17:5](#); [17:6](#); [17:24](#); [17:26](#); [18:9](#); [18:10](#); [18:34](#); [21:13](#); [23:19](#))

save, saved, safe, salvation

Definition:

The term “save” refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To “be safe” means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been “saved,” then God, through Jesus’ death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term “salvation” refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, “salvation” usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “save” could include “deliver” or “keep from harm” or “take out of harm’s way” or “keep from dying.”
- In the expression “whoever would save his life,” the term “save” could also be translated as “preserve” or “protect.”
- The term “safe” could be translated as “protected from danger” or “in a place where nothing can harm.”
- The term “salvation” could also be translated using words related to “save” or “rescue,” as in “God’s saving people (from being punished for their sins)” or “God’s rescuing his people (from their enemies).”
- “God is my salvation” could be translated as “God is the one who saves me.”
- “You will draw water from the wells of salvation” could be translated as “You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you.”

(See also: cross, [deliver](#), [punish](#), [sin](#), Savior)

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 080:03
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 06:3-5
- Luke 02:30
- Luke 08:36-37
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 02:21
- Romans 01:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 06:17
- Philippians 01:28
- 1 Timothy 01:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:08** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:02** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:05** Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you."
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:08** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H5338, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G803, G804, G806, G1295, G1508, G4982, G4991, G4992, G5198

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10:24](#); [19:37](#))

scribe

Definition:

Scribes were officials who were responsible for writing or copying important government or religious documents by hand. Another name for a Jewish scribe was “expert in Jewish law.”

- Scribes were responsible for copying and preserving the books of the Old Testament.
- They also copied, preserved, and interpreted religious opinions and commentary on the law of God.
- At times, scribes were important government officials.
- Important biblical scribes include Baruch and Ezra.
- In the New Testament, the term translated “scribes” was also translated as “teachers of the Law.”
- In the New Testament, scribes were usually part of the religious group called the “Pharisees,” and the two groups were frequently mentioned together.

(See also: [law](#), Pharisee)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:05
- Luke 07:29-30
- Luke 20:47
- Mark 01:22
- Mark 02:16
- Matthew 05:19-20
- Matthew 07:28
- Matthew 12:38
- Matthew 13:52

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5608, H5613, H7083, G1122

(Go back to: [2 Kings 12:10](#); [18:18](#); [18:37](#); [19:2](#); [22:3](#); [22:8](#); [22:9](#); [22:10](#); [22:12](#); [25:19](#))

seed, semen

Definition:

A "seed" is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. However, in the Bible the term "seed" is used figuratively to mean several different things.

- The term "seed" is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these cells is called "semen."
- Related to this, "seed" is also used to refer to a person's offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people's hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term "seed" to refer to the Word of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for "seed" that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God's Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word "descendant" or "descendants" instead of "seed." Some languages may have a word that means "children and grandchildren."
- For a man or woman's "seed," consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: [descendant](#), offspring)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:32
- Genesis 01:11
- Jeremiah 02:21
- Matthew 13:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G4615, G4687, G4690, G4701, G4703

(Go back to: [2 Kings 11:1](#); [17:20](#))

seek, search, look for

Definition:

The term "seek" means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is "sought." This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to "attempt" or "make an effort" to do something or to ask for something.

- To "seek" or "look for" an opportunity to do something can mean to "try to find a time" to do it.
- To "seek Yahweh" means to "spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him."
- To "seek protection" means to "try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger."
- To "seek justice" means to "make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly."
- To "seek the truth" means to "make an effort to find out what the truth is."
- To "seek favor" means to "urgently ask for favor" or to "do things to cause someone to help you."

(See also: [just](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:06
- Luke 11:09
- Psalms 027:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7836, H8446, G327, G1567, G1934, G2052, G2212

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:2](#); [1:3](#); [1:6](#); [1:16](#); [2:16](#); [2:17](#); [6:19](#); [22:13](#); [22:18](#))

servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Definition:

The term "serve" generally means to do work, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts. The term refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. In the Bible, any of the following people might be called a "servant:" a slave, a young female worker, a young male worker, someone who obeys God, and others. In biblical times, there was less of a difference between a "servant" and a "slave" than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of a household, and many servants were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his "owner" or "master." Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means "care for" or "serve food to" or "provide food for." When Jesus told the disciples to "serve" the fish to the people, this could be translated as, "distribute" or "hand out" or "give."
- In the Bible, the phrase "I am your servant" was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- The term "serve" can also be translated as "minister to" or "work for" or "take care of" or "obey," depending on the context.
- In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his "servants."
- To "serve God" can be translated as to "worship and obey God" or to "do the work that God has commanded."
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his "servants."
- To "serve tables" means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to "distribute food."
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to "serve" the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they "serve" the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus' sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their "service" to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as "serving" or "obeying" or "devotion to."

(See also: commit, enslave, household, [lord](#), obey, [righteous](#), [covenant](#), law,)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:29-31
- Acts 10:7-8
- Colossians 01:7-8
- Colossians 03:22-25
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 12:47-48
- Mark 09:33-35
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- 2 Timothy 02:3-5
- Acts 06:2-4
- Genesis 25:23
- Luke 04:8

- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 22:26-27
- Mark 08:7-10
- Matthew 04:10-11
- Matthew 06:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **08:04** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **09:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt."
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **29:03** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **35:06** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **47:04** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **50:04** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

Word Data:

- (Servant) Strong's: H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G1249, G1401, G1402, G2324, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3816, G4983, G5257
- (Serve) H327, H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G1247, G1248, G1398, G1402, G1438, G1983, G2064, G2212, G2323, G2999, G3000, G3009, G4337, G4342, G4754, G5087, G5256

(Go back to: 2 Kings 1:13; 2:16; 2:23; 4:1; 4:12; 4:19; 4:22; 4:24; 4:25; 4:29; 4:30; 4:31; 4:32; 4:35; 4:38; 4:43; 5:2; 5:6; 5:13; 5:14; 5:15; 5:17; 5:18; 5:20; 5:22; 5:23; 5:25; 5:26; 6:3; 6:8; 6:11; 6:15; 6:17; 7:12; 8:4; 8:13; 8:19; 9:4; 9:7; 9:11; 9:28; 9:36; 10:5; 10:10; 10:18; 10:19; 10:21; 10:22; 10:23; 12:20; 12:21; 14:5; 14:25; 16:7; 17:3; 17:13; 17:23; 17:33; 17:35; 17:41; 18:7; 18:12; 18:24; 18:26; 19:5; 19:6; 19:34; 20:6; 21:8; 21:10; 21:21; 21:23; 22:9; 22:12; 23:30; 24:1; 24:2; 24:10; 24:11; 24:12; 25:8; 25:14)

shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

Definition:

The term “shame” refers to the painful feeling of being disgraced or humiliated that a person feels when they do something that others consider dishonorable or improper.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something improper or dishonorable.
- The term “humiliate” means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced, usually publicly. The act of shaming someone is called “humiliation.”
- To “reproach” someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person’s character or behavior.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their actions so that they feel ashamed of themselves. The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- The term “disgraceful” can be used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it. When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame. For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- When God humbles someone, it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.

Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or “dishonoring.”
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or to “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”
- The word “reproach” could also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- To “reproach” could also be translated as to “rebuke” or to “accuse” or to “criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: dishonor, accuse, rebuke, [false god](#), humble, Isaiah, [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:15-17
- 2 Kings 02:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 08:38
- Mark 12:4-5
- 1 Timothy 03:07
- Genesis 34:07
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 02:1-2
- Psalms 022:06
- Deuteronomy 21:14
- Ezra 09:05
- Proverbs 25:7-8

- Psalms 006:8-10
- Psalms 123:03
- 1 Timothy 05:7-8
- 1 Timothy 06:13-14
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Job 16:9-10
- Proverbs 18:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H937, H954, H955, H1317, H1322, H1421, H1442, H1984, H2490, H2616, H2617, H2659, H2778, H2781, H2865, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H3971, H5007, H5034, H5039, H6030, H6031, H6172, H6256, H7022, H7034, H7036, H7043, H7511, H7817, H8103, H8213, H8216, H8217, H8589, G149, G152, G153, G410, G422, G423, G808, G818, G819, G821, G1788, G1791, G1870, G2617, G3059, G3679, G3680, G3681, G3856, G5014, G5195, G5196, G5484

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:17](#); [8:11](#); [19:22](#); [19:23](#))

sign, proof, reminder

Definition:

A sign is an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- Signs can help people to remember a promise that God has made:
 - The rainbows God creates in the sky are signs to remind people that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
 - God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign of his covenant with them.
 - In the Old Testament, God tells his people that he will “confirm” his covenant with them. This means he is stating that he will keep the promises he made in that covenant.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
 - An angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
 - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
 - The miracles performed by the prophets and apostles were signs that proved they were speaking God’s message.
 - The miracles that Jesus performed were signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on its context, “sign” could also be translated as “signal” or “symbol” or “mark” or “evidence” or “proof” or “gesture.”
- To “make signs with the hands” could also be translated as “motion with the hands” or “gesture with the hands” or “make gestures.”
- In some languages, there may be one word for a “sign” that proves something and a different word for a “sign” that is a miracle.

(See also: [miracle](#), apostle, Christ, [covenant](#), circumcise)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:18-19
- Exodus 04:8-9
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Genesis 01:14
- Genesis 09:12
- John 02:18
- Luke 02:12
- Mark 08:12
- Psalms 089:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H226, H852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, G364, G880, G1213, G1229, G1718, G1730, G1732, G1770, G3902, G4102, G4591, G4592, G4953, G4973, G5280

(Go back to: [2 Kings 20:8](#))

silver

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: tabernacle, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 02:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 03:06
- Matthew 26:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G693, G694, G695, G696, G1406

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:5](#); [5:22](#); [5:23](#); [5:26](#); [6:25](#); [7:8](#); [12:4](#); [12:7](#); [12:8](#); [12:9](#); [12:10](#); [12:11](#); [12:13](#); [12:15](#); [12:16](#); [14:14](#); [15:19](#); [15:20](#); [16:8](#); [18:14](#); [18:15](#); [20:13](#); [22:4](#); [22:7](#); [22:9](#); [23:33](#); [23:35](#); [25:15](#))

sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means, “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: disobey, [evil](#), [flesh](#), tax collector)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3
- 1 John 01:10
- 1 John 02:02
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 03:19
- Daniel 09:24
- Genesis 04:07
- Hebrews 12:02
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 04:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31
- Romans 06:23

- Romans 08:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:01** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:01** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinners** who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:08** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:3](#); [10:29](#); [10:31](#); [13:2](#); [13:6](#); [13:11](#); [14:24](#); [15:9](#); [15:18](#); [15:24](#); [15:28](#); [17:7](#); [17:21](#); [17:22](#); [18:14](#); [Notes; 21:11](#); [21:16](#); [21:17](#); [Notes; 23:15](#); [Notes; 24:3](#))

slaughter, slaughtered

Definition:

The term “slaughter” refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it. The act of slaughtering is also called “slaughter.”

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter in which 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies because of disobedience to God.
- “Weapons of slaughter” could be translated as “weapons for killing.”
- The expression “the slaughter was very great” could be translated as “a large number were killed” or “the number of deaths was very great” or “a terribly high number of people died.”
- Other ways to translate “slaughter” could include “kill” or “slay” or “killing.”

(See also: angel, [cow](#), disobey, Ezekiel, [servant](#), slay)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Hebrews 07:01
- Isaiah 34:02
- Jeremiah 25:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2027, H2028, H2076, H2491, H2873, H2874, H2878, H4046, H4293, H4347, H4660, H5221, H6993, H7524, H7819, H7821, G2871, G4967, G4969

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10:7](#); [10:14](#))

Solomon

Facts:

Solomon was one of King David's sons. His mother was Bathsheba.

- When Solomon became king, God told him to ask for anything he wanted. So Solomon asked for wisdom to rule the people justly and well. God was pleased with Solomon's request and gave him both wisdom and much wealth.
- Solomon is also well known for having a magnificent temple built in Jerusalem.
- Although Solomon ruled wisely in the first years of his reign, later on he foolishly married many foreign women and started worshiping their gods.
- Because of Solomon's unfaithfulness, after his death God divided the Israelites into two kingdoms, Israel and Judah. These kingdoms often fought against each other.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bathsheba, [David](#), [Israel](#), Judah, kingdom of Israel, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 07:47-50
- Luke 12:27
- Matthew 01:7-8
- Matthew 06:29
- Matthew 12:42

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:14** Later, David and Bathsheba had another son, and they named him **Solomon**.
- **18:01** After many years, David died, and his son **Solomon** began to rule. God spoke to **Solomon** and asked him what he wanted most. When **Solomon** asked for wisdom, God was pleased and made him the wisest man in the world. **Solomon** learned many things and was a very wise judge. God also made him very wealthy.
- **18:02** In Jerusalem, **Solomon** built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
- **18:03** But **Solomon** loved women from other countries....When **Solomon** was old, he also worshiped their gods.
- **18:04** God was angry with **Solomon** and, as a punishment for **Solomon's** unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after **Solomon's** death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8010, G4672

(Go back to: [2 Kings 21:7](#); [23:13](#); [24:13](#); [25:16](#))

son

Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their “son” for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An “adopted son” is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- In the Bible, the phrase “son of” can be used to identify a person's father, mother, or an ancestor from some previous generation. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.

(See also: Azariah, [descendant](#), [ancestor](#), firstborn, Son of God, sons of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:02
- 1 Thessalonians 05:05
- Galatians 04:07
- Hosea 11:01
- Isaiah 09:06
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 08:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **04:09** God said, “I will give you a **son** from your own body.”
- **05:05** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s **son**.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, “Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me.”
- **09:07** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:06** God killed every one of the Egyptians’ firstborn **sons**.
- **18:01** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:04** “Is this the **son** of Joseph?” they said.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G3816, G5043, G5207

(Go back to: 2 Kings 1:17; 2:3; 2:5; 2:7; 2:15; 2:16; 3:1; 3:3; 3:11; 3:27; 4:1; 4:4; 4:5; 4:6; 4:7; 4:14; 4:16; 4:17; 4:28; 4:36; 4:37; 4:38; 5:22; 6:1; 6:28; 6:29; 6:31; 6:32; 8:1; 8:5; 8:9; 8:12; 8:16; 8:17; 8:19; 8:24; 8:25; 8:26; 8:28; 8:29; 9:1; 9:2; 9:9; 9:14; 9:20; 9:26; 9:29; 10:1; 10:2; 10:3; 10:6; 10:7; 10:8; 10:13; 10:15; 10:23; 10:29; 10:30; 10:35; 11:1; 11:2; 11:4; 11:12; 11:21; 12:21; 13:1; 13:2; 13:3; 13:5; 13:9; 13:10; 13:11; 13:24; 13:25; 14:1; 14:2; 14:6; 14:8; 14:9; 14:13; 14:14; 14:16; 14:17; 14:21; 14:23; 14:24; 14:25; 14:27; 14:29; 15:1; 15:2; 15:5; 15:7; 15:8; 15:9; 15:10; 15:12; 15:13; 15:14; 15:17; 15:18; 15:22; 15:23; 15:24; 15:25; 15:27; 15:28; 15:30; 15:32; 15:33; 15:37; 15:38; 16:1; 16:2; 16:3; 16:5; 16:7; 16:20; 17:1; 17:7; 17:8; 17:9; 17:17; 17:21; 17:22; 17:24; 17:31; 17:34; 17:41; 18:1; 18:2; 18:4; 18:9; 18:18; 18:26; 18:37; 19:2; 19:3; 19:12; 19:20; 19:37; 20:1; 20:12; 20:18; 20:21; 21:1; 21:2; 21:6; 21:7; 21:9; 21:18; 21:19; 21:24; 21:26; 22:1; 22:3; 22:12; 22:14; 23:6; 23:10; 23:13; 23:15; 23:30; 23:31; 23:34; 23:36; 24:2; 24:6; 24:8; 24:18; 25:7; 25:22; 25:23; 25:25)

spirit, spiritual

Definition:

The term "spirit" refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. "Spirit" can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term "spirit" can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person's spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term "spiritual" describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, "spiritual food" refers to God's teachings, which give nourishment to a person's spirit, and "spiritual wisdom" refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term "spirit of" can also mean "having the characteristics of," such as in "spirit of wisdom" or "in the spirit of Elijah."
- Examples of "spirit" as an attitude or emotion would include "spirit of fear" and "spirit of jealousy."

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate "spirit" might include "non-physical being" or "inside part" or "inner being."
- In some contexts, the term "spirit" could be translated as "evil spirit" or "evil spirit being."
- Sometimes the term "spirit" is used to express the feelings of a person, as in "my spirit was grieved in my inmost being." This could also be translated as "I felt grieved in my spirit" or "I felt deeply grieved."
- The phrase "spirit of" could be translated as "character of" or "influence of" or "attitude of" or "thinking (that is) characterized by."
- Depending on the context, "spiritual" could be translated as "non-physical" or "from the Holy Spirit" or "God's" or "part of the non-physical world."
- The phrase "spiritual maturity" could be translated as "godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit."
- The term "spiritual gift" could be translated as "special ability that the Holy Spirit gives"

(See also: angel, demon, Holy Spirit, soul)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- 1 John 04:03
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23
- Acts 05:09
- Colossians 01:09
- Ephesians 04:23
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Isaiah 04:04
- Mark 01:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 01:27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:07** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G5326, G5427

(Go back to: [2 Kings 2:9](#); [2:15](#); [2:16](#); [3:17](#); [Notes](#); [19:7](#); [Notes](#))

statute

Definition:

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

- The term “statute” is similar in meaning to “ordinance” and “command” and “law” and “decree.” All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people or rulers give to their people.
- King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh’s statutes.
- The term “statute” could also be translated as “specific command” or “special decree.”

(See also: [command](#), decree, [law](#), [ordinance](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:11-13
- Deuteronomy 06:20-23
- Ezekiel 33:15
- Numbers 19:02

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2706, H2708, H7010, G1345

(Go back to: [2 Kings 17:15](#); [17:37](#))

storehouse

Definition:

A “storehouse” is a large building that is used for keeping food or other things, often for a long time.

- In the Bible a “storehouse” was usually used to store extra grain and other food to be used later when there was a famine.
- This term was also used figuratively to refer to all the good things that God wants to give to his people.
- The storehouses of the temple contained valuable things that had been dedicated to Yahweh, such as gold and silver. Some of these things used to repair and maintain the temple were also kept there.
- Other ways to translate “storehouse” could include “a building for storing grain” or “place for keeping food” or “room for keeping valuable things safe.”

(See also: [consecrate](#), dedicate, [famine](#), [gold](#), [grain](#), [silver](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 16:2-3
- Luke 03:17
- Matthew 03:12
- Psalms 033:07

Word Data:

- Strong's: H214, H618, H624, H4035, H4200, H4543, G596

(Go back to: [2 Kings 24:13](#))

strength, strengthen, strong

Facts:

The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
 - “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
 - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
 - “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
 - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
 - “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
 - “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong”
 - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
 - “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong”
 - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
 - “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
 - “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: [faithful](#), persevere, right hand, [save](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 02:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 021:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H193, H202, H353, H360, H386, H410, H553, H556, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8632, H8633, G461, G950, G1411, G1412, G1743, G1765, G1840, G1991, G2479, G2480, G2901, G2904, G3619, G3756, G4599, G4732, G4733, G4741

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:26](#); [12:5](#); [12:6](#); [12:7](#); [12:8](#); [14:5](#); [17:36](#))

sword, swordsmen

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), tongue, word of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 12:02
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Luke 02:33-35
- Luke 21:24
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55
- Revelation 01:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H19, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G3162, G4501

(Go back to: [2 Kings 3:26](#); [6:22](#); [8:12](#); [10:25](#); [11:15](#); [11:20](#); [19:7](#); [19:37](#))

temple

Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), [Solomon](#), [Babylon](#), [Holy Spirit](#), [tabernacle](#), [courtyard](#), [Zion](#), [house](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 03:02
- Acts 03:08
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:46
- Nehemiah 10:28
- Psalm 079:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:06** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:02** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- **25:04** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- **40:07** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1964, H1965, G1493, G2411, G3485

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:2](#); [4:35](#); [5:24](#); [6:32](#); [Notes](#); [11:4](#); [11:10](#); [Notes](#); [14:10](#); [15:5](#); [16:18](#); [17:29](#); [17:32](#); [18:16](#); [20:13](#); [20:15](#); [20:17](#); [21:4](#); [21:7](#); [21:23](#); [Notes](#); [22:5](#); [22:8](#); [22:9](#); [23:2](#); [23:7](#); [25:13](#))

testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness

Definition:

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To “witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as, “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as, to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as, “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: ark of the covenant, guilt, [judge](#), [prophet](#), [testimony](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 06:03
- Matthew 26:60
- Mark 01:44
- John 01:07

- John 03:33
- Acts 04:32-33
- Acts 07:44
- Acts 13:31
- Romans 01:09
- 1 Thessalonians 02:10-12
- 1 Timothy 05:19-20
- 2 Timothy 01:08
- 2 Peter 01:16-18
- 1 John 05:6-8
- 3 John 01:12
- Revelation 12:11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:02** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- **43:07** "We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G267, G1263, G1957, G2649, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3144, G4303, G4828, G4901, G5575, G5576, G5577, G6020

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:29](#); [17:13](#); [17:15](#); [18:36](#))

thresh

Definition:

The terms “thresh” and “threshing” refer to the first part of the process of separating grain from the rest of the plant.

- Threshing a crop loosens the grain from the stalk. Afterwards the grain is “winnowed” to completely separate the seed from all unwanted materials, leaving only the part the grain that can be eaten.
- In Bible times, a “threshing floor” was a large flat rock or an area of packed-down dirt, giving a hard, level surface to crush the grain stalks and remove the grain.
- A “threshing cart” or “threshing wheel” was sometimes used to crush the grain and help separate it from the straw and chaff.
- A “threshing sledge” or “threshing board” was also used for separating grain. It was made of wooden boards that had sharp metal spikes on the end.

(See also: chaff, [grain](#), winnow)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 03:1-3
- 2 Kings 13:07
- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Daniel 02:35
- Luke 03:17
- Matthew 03:12
- Ruth 03:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H212, H4173, H1637, H1758, H1786, H1869, H2251, G248

(Go back to: [2 Kings 6:27](#))

threshold, doorway

Definition:

The term “threshold” refers to the bottom part of a doorway or the part of a building that is just inside the door.

- Sometimes a threshold is a strip of wood or stone that must be stepped over in order to enter a room or building.
- Both a gate and the opening to a tent can also have a threshold.
- This term should be translated with a term in the project language that refers to the place at the very entrance to a home that a person steps across.
- If there is no term for this, “threshold” could also be translated as “doorway” or “opening” or “entranceway,” depending on the context.

(See also: [gate](#), tent)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:17-19
- Ezekiel 09:03
- Isaiah 06:04
- Proverbs 17:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4670, H5592

(Go back to: [2 Kings 12:9](#); [22:4](#); [23:4](#); [25:18](#))

throne, enthroned

Definition:

A throne is a specially-designed chair where a ruler sits when he decides important matters and listens to requests from his people.

- A throne is also a symbol of the authority and power that a ruler has.
- The word “throne” can also be used to refer to the ruler, his reign, or his power.
- In the Bible, God was often portrayed as a king who sits on his throne. Jesus was described as sitting on a throne at the right hand of God the Father.
- Jesus said that heaven is God’s throne. One way to translate this could be, “where God reigns as king.”

(See also: authority, power, [king](#), [reign](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 01:15-17
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 01:32
- Luke 22:30
- Matthew 05:34
- Matthew 19:28
- Revelation 01:4-6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3427, H3676, H3678, H3764, H7675, G968, G2362

(Go back to: [2 Kings 10:3](#); [10:30](#); [11:19](#); [13:13](#); [15:12](#); [25:28](#))

tremble, stagger

Definition:

The term "tremble" means to quiver or to shake slightly and repeatedly, usually from fear or distress. The term can also be used figuratively, meaning "to be very afraid."

- Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to "tremble." It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.
- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as "be afraid" or "fear God" or "shake," depending on the context.

(See also: [earth](#), [fear](#), [Lord](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 07:15
- 2 Samuel 22:44-46
- Acts 16:29-31
- Jeremiah 05:22
- Luke 08:47

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1674, H2111, H2112, H2151, H2342, H2648, H2729, H2730, H2731, H5128, H5568, H6342, H6426, H6427, H7264, H7268, H7269, H7322, H7460, H7461, H7481, H7493, H7578, H8078, H8653, G1790, G5141, G5156, G5425

(Go back to: [2 Kings 19:27](#); [19:28](#))

tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: clan, [nation](#), [people group](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:19
- 2 Kings 17:16-18
- Genesis 25:16
- Genesis 49:17
- Luke 02:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H523, H4294, H7625, H7626, G1429, G5443

(Go back to: [2 Kings 17:18](#); [21:7](#))

trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, hardship

Definition:

A “trouble” is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To “trouble” someone means to “bother” that person or to cause him distress. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Don’t trouble her” could also be translated as “don’t bother her” or “don’t criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as “when you experience distress” or “when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: [afflict](#), persecute)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:19
- Luke 24:38
- Matthew 24:06
- Matthew 26:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H205, H926, H927, H1204, H1607, H1644, H1804, H2000, H4103, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7489, H8513, G387, G1613, G1776, G2346, G2347, G2350, G2360, G2873, G3636, G3926, G3930, G3986, G4423, G4660, G5015, G5182

(Go back to: [2 Kings 19:3](#))

true, truth

Definition:

The term "truth" refers to facts, events, and statements that correspond with reality. True facts describe the universe as it really exists. True events are events that actually happened. True statements are statements that are not false according to the real world.

- "True" things are real, genuine, actual, rightful, legitimate, and factual.
- "Truth" means understandings, beliefs, facts, or statements that are true.
- To say that a prophecy "came true" or "will come true" mean that it actually happened as predicted or that it will happen that way.
- In the Bible the concept of "truth" includes the concept of acting in a way that is reliable and faithful.
- Jesus revealed God's truth in the words that he spoke.
- The Bible is truth. It teaches what is true about God and about everything he has made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context and what is being described, the term "true" could also be translated by "real" or "factual" or "correct" or "right" or "certain" or "genuine."
- Ways to translate the term "truth" could include "what is true" or "fact" or "certainty" or "principle."
- The expression "come true" could also be translated as "actually happen" or "be fulfilled" or "happen as predicted."
- The expression "tell the truth" or "speak the truth" could also be translated as "say what is true" or "tell what really happened" or "say things that are reliable."
- To "accept the truth" could be translated as "believe what is true about God."
- In an expression such as "worship God in spirit and in truth," the expression "in truth" could also be translated by "faithfully obeying what God has taught us."

(See also: [believe](#), [faithful](#), [fulfill](#), obey, [prophet](#), understand)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 1 John 01:5-7
- 1 John 02:08
- 3 John 01:08
- Acts 26:24-26
- Colossians 01:06
- Genesis 47:29-31
- James 01:18
- James 03:14
- James 05:19
- Jeremiah 04:02
- John 01:09
- John 01:16-18
- John 01:51
- John 03:31-33
- Joshua 07:19-21
- Lamentations 05:19-22
- Matthew 08:10
- Matthew 12:17
- Psalm 026:1-3
- Revelation 01:19-20

- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** The snake responded to the woman, "That is not **true**! You will not die."
- **14:06** Immediately Caleb and Joshua, the other two spies, said, "It is *true* that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the *true* God.
- **31:08** They worshiped Jesus, saying to him, "**Truly**, you are the Son of God."
- **39:10** "I have come to earth to tell the **truth** about God. Everyone who loves the **truth** listens to me." Pilate said, "What is **truth**?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H199, H389, H403, H529, H530, H543, H544, H551, H571, H935, H3321, H3330, H6237, H6656, H6965, H7187, H7189, G225, G226, G227, G228, G230, G1103, G3303, G3483, G3689, G4103, G4137

(Go back to: [2 Kings 19:17](#); [20:19](#))

trumpet, trumpeters

Definition:

The term “trumpet” refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel's public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: angel, [assembly](#), [earth](#), horn, [Israel](#), [wrath](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:7-8
- 2 Kings 09:13
- Exodus 19:12-13
- Hebrews 12:19
- Matthew 06:02
- Matthew 24:31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2689, H2690, H3104, H7782, H8619, H8643, G4536, G4537, G4538

(Go back to: [2 Kings 9:13](#); [11:14](#))

trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

Definition:

To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: [believe](#), confidence, faith, [faithful](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:22-24
- 1 Timothy 04:09
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:13
- Psalm 031:05
- Titus 03:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **14:15** Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **17:02** David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **34:06** Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H539, H982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G1679, G3872, G3982, G4006, G4100, G4276

(Go back to: [2 Kings 16 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

unleavened bread

Definition:

The term “unleavened bread” refers to bread that is made without yeast or other leavening. This kind of bread is flat because it has no leaven to make it rise.

- When God freed the Israelites from slavery in Egypt, he told them to flee Egypt quickly without waiting for their bread to rise. So they ate unleavened bread with their meal. Since then unleavened bread is used in their yearly Passover celebrations to remind them of that time.
- Since leaven sometimes is used as a picture of sin, “unleavened bread” represents the removal of sin from a person’s life in order to live in a way that honors God.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “bread with no yeast” or “flat bread that did not rise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term is consistent with how you translate the term “yeast, leaven.”
- In some contexts, the term “unleavened bread” refers to the “Feast of Unleavened Bread” and can be translated that way.

(See also: [bread](#), [Egypt](#), [feast](#), [Passover](#), [servant](#), [sin](#), yeast)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- Acts 12:03
- Exodus 23:14-15
- Ezra 06:21-22
- Genesis 19:1-3
- Judges 06:21
- Leviticus 08:1-3
- Luke 22:01

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4682, G106

(Go back to: [2 Kings 23:9](#))

vine

Definition:

The term “vine” refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word “vine” in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word “vine” almost always means “grapevine.”
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the “vine” and called his people the “branches.” In this context, the word “vine” could also be translated as “grapevine stem” or “grape plant stem.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: grape, [vineyard](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 40:09
- Genesis 49:11
- John 15:01
- Luke 22:18
- Mark 12:03
- Matthew 21:35-37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5139, H1612, H8321, G288, G290, G1009, G1092

(Go back to: [2 Kings 4:39](#); [18:31](#))

vineyard

Definition:

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Vineyard could be also translated as “grapevine garden” or “grape plantation.”

(See also: grape, [Israel](#), [vine](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 09:20-21
- Luke 13:06
- Luke 20:15
- Matthew 20:02
- Matthew 21:40-41

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1612, H3754, H3755, H8284, G290

(**Go back to:** [2 Kings 5:26](#); [18:32](#); [19:29](#))

virgin, virginity

Definition:

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

- The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
- Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin. (See: [Euphemism](#))

(See also: Christ, Isaiah, Jesus, Mary)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:15-16
- Luke 01:27
- Luke 01:35
- Matthew 01:23
- Matthew 25:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a **virgin**.
- **22:04** She (Mary) was a **virgin** and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph.
- **22:05** Mary replied, "How can this be, since I am a **virgin**?"
- **49:01** An angel told a **virgin** named Mary that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a **virgin**, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1330, H1331, G3932, G3933

(Go back to: [2 Kings 19:21](#))

voice

Definition:

The term "voice" refers to audible sound that a person makes when speaking or communicating. In the Bible, the term can be used figuratively to refer to the concepts of sound, communication, and/or obedience.

Translation Suggestions

- The expression "to hear someone's voice" can mean either "to hear someone speaking" or "to heed what someone says."
- The Bible describes God as "speaking" and having a "voice," even though God doesn't have a physical body in the same way a human being does.
- The term "voice" sometimes implies the presence of a person, as in this statement: "A voice is heard in the desert saying, 'Prepare the way of the Lord.'" This could be translated as "A person is heard calling out in the desert...." (See: [synecdoche](#))
- However, sometimes the word "voice" is used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the heavens have a "voice" that reaches the whole earth. This means that the objects in the sky communicate something to human beings about God the Creator. (See: [metaphor](#))

(See also: [call](#), [proclaim](#), splendor.)

Bible References:

- John 05:36-38
- Luke 01:42
- Luke 09:35
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 12:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G2906, G5456

(Go back to: [2 Kings 18:12](#); [18:28](#))

walk, walked

Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as, “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, honor)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Kings 02:04
- Colossians 02:07
- Galatians 05:25
- Genesis 17:01
- Isaiah 02:05
- Jeremiah 13:10
- Micah 04:02

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1869, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, G1704, G4043, G4198, G4748

(Go back to: [2 Kings 1:2](#); [1:3](#); [1:6](#); [2:7](#); [2:11](#); [2:16](#); [2:18](#); [3:13](#); [4:3](#); [4:7](#); [4:23](#); [5:5](#); [5:10](#); [5:19](#); [5:25](#); [5:26](#); [6:2](#); [6:3](#); [6:13](#); [6:19](#); [7:4](#); [7:9](#); [7:14](#); [8:10](#); [10:16](#); [13:6](#); [13:11](#); [14:8](#); [17:27](#); [20:3](#); [20:9](#); [21:21](#); [21:22](#); [22:13](#); [24:15](#))

watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

Definition:

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:06
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 08:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H821, H2370, H4929, H4931, H5027, H5341, H6486, H6822, H6836, H6974, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G69, G991, G1127, G1492, G2334, G2892, G3525, G3708, G3906, G4337, G4648, G5083, G5438

(Go back to: [2 Kings 6:9](#); [9:14](#); [10:31](#); [12:9](#); [17:19](#); [17:37](#); [21:8](#); [22:4](#); [22:14](#); [23:4](#); [25:18](#))

wise, wisdom

Definition:

The term “wise” describes someone who understands what is the right and moral thing to do and then does that. “Wisdom” is the understanding and practice of what is true and morally right.

- Being wise includes the ability to make good decisions, especially choosing to do what pleases God.
- People become wise by listening to God and humbly obeying his will.
- A wise person will show the fruits of the Holy Spirit in his life, such as joy, kindness, love, and patience.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “wise” could include “obedient to God” or “sensible and obedient” or “God-fearing.”
- “Wisdom” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “wise living” or “sensible and obedient living” or “good judgment.”
- It is best to translate “wise” and “wisdom” in such a way that they are different terms from other key terms like righteous or obedient.

(See also: obey, [fruit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 06:03
- Colossians 03:15-17
- Exodus 31:06
- Genesis 03:06
- Isaiah 19:12
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Matthew 07:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:05** She also wanted to be **wise**, so she picked some of the fruit and ate it.
- **18:01** When Solomon asked for **wisdom**, God was pleased and made him the **wisest** man in the world.
- **23:09** Some time later, **wise** men from countries far to the east saw an unusual star in the sky.
- **45:01** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the Holy Spirit and of **wisdom**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H998, H1350, H2445, H2449, H2450, H2451, H2452, H2454, H2942, H3820, H3823, H6195, H6493, H6912, H7535, H7919, H7922, H8454, G4678, G4679, G4680, G4920, G5428, G5429, G5430

(Go back to: [2 Kings 18:7](#))

wrath, fury

Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. The Bible describes both people and God as experiencing intense anger. When speaking about God's "wrath," make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage (which might be true of a human person).

- In the Bible, "wrath" often refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- God's wrath is just and holy. When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful human rage.

(See also: [judge](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- Luke 03:7
- Luke 21:23
- Matthew 03:07
- Revelation 14:10
- Romans 01:18
- Romans 05:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H639, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2740, H3707, H3708, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7265, H7267, G2372, G3709, G3949, G3950

(Go back to: [2 Kings 5:12](#); [22:13](#); [22:17](#))

Yahweh

Facts:

The term “Yahweh” is God’s personal name in the Old Testament. The specific origin of this name is unknown, but it is probably derived from the Hebrew verb meaning, “to be.”

- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh’s name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show respect for God’s personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULT and UST texts always translate this term as, “Yahweh,” in agreement with the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” never occurs in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even when quoting the Old Testament.
- In the Old Testament, when God spoke about himself, he would often use his name instead of a pronoun.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “living one” or “the one who is” or “he who is alive.”
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.
- It is best if possible to keep the name Yahweh where it literally occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places, to make the text more natural and clear.
- Introduce the quote with something like, “This is what Yahweh says.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [Lord](#), [Moses](#), [reveal](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:20
- 1 Samuel 16:07
- Daniel 09:03
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Genesis 02:04
- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 28:13
- Hosea 11:12
- Isaiah 10:04
- Isaiah 38:08
- Job 12:10
- Joshua 01:09
- Lamentations 01:05
- Leviticus 25:35
- Malachi 03:04
- Micah 02:05
- Micah 06:05
- Numbers 08:11

- Psalm 124:03
- Ruth 01:21
- Zechariah 14:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:14** God said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **13:05** "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3050, H3068, H3069

(Go back to: 2 Kings 1:3; 1:4; 1:6; 1:15; 1:16; 1:17; 2:1; 2:2; 2:3; 2:4; 2:5; 2:6; 2:14; 2:16; 2:21; 2:24; 3:2; 3:10; 3:11; 3:12; 3:13; 3:14; 3:15; 3:16; 3:17; 3:18; 4:1; 4:27; 4:30; 4:33; 4:43; 4:44; 5:1; 5:11; 5:16; 5:17; 5:18; 5:20; 6:17; 6:18; 6:20; 6:27; 6:33; 7:1; 7:2; 7:16; 7:19; 8:1; 8:8; 8:10; 8:13; 8:18; 8:19; 8:27; 9:3; 9:6; 9:7; 9:12; 9:25; 9:26; 9:36; 10:10; 10:16; 10:17; 10:23; 10:30; 10:31; 10:32; 11:3; 11:4; 11:7; 11:10; 11:13; 11:15; 11:17; 11:18; 11:19; 12:2; 12:4; 12:9; 12:10; 12:11; 12:12; 12:13; 12:14; 12:16; 12:18; 13:2; 13:3; 13:4; 13:5; 13:11; 13:17; 13:23; 14:3; 14:6; 14:14; 14:24; 14:25; 14:26; 14:27; 15:3; 15:5; 15:9; 15:12; 15:18; 15:24; 15:28; 15:34; 15:35; 15:37; 16:2; 16:3; 16:8; 16:14; 16:18; 17:2; 17:7; 17:8; 17:9; 17:11; 17:12; 17:13; 17:14; 17:15; 17:16; 17:17; 17:18; 17:19; 17:20; 17:21; 17:23; 17:25; 17:28; 17:32; 17:33; 17:34; 17:35; 17:36; 17:39; 17:41; 18:3; 18:5; 18:6; 18:7; 18:12; 18:15; 18:16; 18:22; 18:25; 18:30; 18:32; 18:35; 19:1; 19:4; 19:6; 19:14; 19:15; 19:16; 19:17; 19:19; 19:20; 19:21; 19:31; 19:32; 19:33; 19:35; 20:1; 20:2; 20:3; 20:4; 20:5; 20:8; 20:9; 20:11; 20:16; 20:17; 20:19; 21:2; 21:4; 21:5; 21:6; 21:7; 21:9; 21:10; 21:12; 21:16; 21:20; 21:22; 22:2; 22:3; 22:4; 22:5; 22:8; 22:9; 22:13; 22:15; 22:16; 22:18; 22:19; 23:2; 23:3; 23:4; 23:6; 23:7; 23:9; 23:11; 23:12; 23:16; 23:21; 23:23; 23:24; 23:25; 23:26; 23:27; 23:32; 23:37; 24:2; 24:3; 24:4; 24:9; 24:13; 24:19; 24:20; 25:9; 25:13; 25:16)

Zion, Mount Zion

Definition:

Originally, the term “Zion” or “Mount Zion” referred to a stronghold or fortress that King David captured from the Jebusites. Both these terms became other ways of referring to Jerusalem.

- Mount Zion and Mount Moriah were two of the hills that the city of Jerusalem was located on. Later, “Zion” and “Mount Zion” became used as general terms to refer to both of these mountains and to the city of Jerusalem. Sometimes they also referred to the temple that was located in Jerusalem. (See: [metonymy](#))
- David named Zion, or Jerusalem, the “City of David.” This is different from David’s hometown, Bethlehem, which was also called the City of David.
- The term “Zion” is used in other figurative ways, to refer to Israel or to God’s spiritual kingdom or to the new, heavenly Jerusalem that God will create.

(See also: [Abraham](#), [David](#), [Jerusalem](#), Bethlehem, Jebusites)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:05
- Amos 01:02
- Jeremiah 51:35
- Psalm 076:1-3
- Romans 11:26

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6726

(Go back to: [2 Kings 19:21](#); [19:31](#))

Contributors

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community

Aaron Fenlason

Abner Bauman

Adam Van Goor

Alan Bird

Alan Borkenhagen

Alfred Van Dellen

Alice Wright

Allen Bair

Allyson Presswood Nance

Amanda Adams

Andrew Belcher

Andrew Johnson

Andrew Rice

Angelo Palo

Anita Moreau

April Linton

Aurora Lee

Barbara Summers

Barbara White

Becky Hancock

Beryl Carpenter

Bethany Fenlason

Betty Forbes

Bianca Elliott

Bill Cleveland

Bill Pruett

Bob Britting

Bram van den Heuvel

Brian Metzger

Bruce Bridges

Bruce Collier

Bruce Smith

Caleb Worgess

Carlyle Kilmore

Carol Pace

Carol Heim

Caroline Crawford

Caroline Fleming

Caroline S Wong

Carol Lee

Carol Moyer

Carolyn Lafferty

Catherine C Newton

Charese Jackson

Charlotte Gibson

Charlotte Hobbs

Cheryl A Chojnacki
Cheryl Stieben
Cheryl Warren
Christian Berry
Christine Harrison
Clairmene Pascal
Connie Bryan
Connie Goss
Craig Balden
Craig Lins
Craig Scott
Cynthia J Puckett
Dale Hahs
Dale Masser
Daniel Lauk
Daniel Summers
Darlene M Hopkins
Darlene Silas
David Boerschlein
David F Withee
David Glover
David J Forbes
David Mullen
David N Hanley
David Sandlin
David Shortess
David Smith
David Whisler
Debbie Nispel
Debbie Piper
Deborah Bartow
Deborah Bush
Deborah Miniard
Dennis Jackson
Dianne Forrest
Donna Borkenhagen
Donna Mullis
Douglas Hayes
Drew Curley
Ed Davis
Edgar Navera
Edward Kosky
Edward Quigley
Elaine VanRegenmorter
Elizabeth Nataly Silvestre Herbas
Ellen Lee
Emeline Thermidor
Emily Lee
Esther Roman
Esther Trew
Esther Zirk
Ethel Lynn Baker
Evangeline Puen
Evelyn Wildgust
Fletcher Coleman

Freda Dibble
Gail Spell
Gary Greer
Gary Shogren
Gay Ellen Stulp
Gene Gossman
George Arlyn Briggs
Gerald L. Naughton
Glen Tallent
Grace Balwit
Grace Bird
Greg Stoffregen
Gretchen Stencil
Hallie Miller
Harry Harriss
Heather Hicks
Helen Morse
Hendrik deVries
Henry Bult
Henry Whitney
Hilary O'Sullivan
Ibrahim Audu
Ines Gipson
Irene J Dodson
Jackie Jones
Jacqueline Bartley
James Giddens
James Pedersen
James Pohlig
James Roe
Janet O'Herron
Janice Connor
Jaqueline Rotruck
Jeanette Friesen
Jeff Graf
Jeff Kennedy
Jeff Martin
Jennifer Cunneen
Jenny Thomas
Jerry Lund
Jessica Lauk
Jim Frederick
Jim Lee
Jimmy Warren
Jim Rotruck
Jim Swartzentruber
Jody Garcia
Joe Chater
Joel Bryan
Joey Howell
John Anderson
John Geddis
John D Rogers
John Hutchins
John Luton

John Pace
John P Tornifolio
Jolene Valeu
Jon Haahr
Joseph Fithian
Joseph Greene
Joseph Wharton
Joshua Berkowitz
Joshua Calhoun
Joshua Rister
Josh Wondra
Joy Anderson
Joyce Jacobs
Joyce Pedersen
JT Crowder
Judi Brodeen
Judith Cline
Judith C Yon
Julia N Bult
Patty Li
Julie Susanto
Kahar Barat
Kannah Sellers
Kara Anderson
Karen Davie
Karen Dreesen
Karen Fabean
Karen Riecks
Karen Smith
Karen Turner
Kathleen Glover
Kathryn Hendrix
Kathy Mentink
Katrina Geurink
Kay Myers
Kelly Strong
Ken Haugh
Kim Puterbaugh
Kristin Butts Page
Kristin Rinne
Kwesi Opoku-debrah
Langston Spell
Larry Sallee
Lawrence Lipe
Lee Sipe
Leonard Smith
Lester Harper
Lia Hadley
Linda Buckman
Linda Dale Barton
Linda Havemeier
Linda Homer
Linda Lee Sebastien
Linn Peterson
Liz Dakota

Lloyd Box
Luis Keelin
Madeline Kilmore
Maggie D Paul
Marc Nelson
Mardi Welo
Margo Hoffman
Marilyn Cook
Marjean Swann
Marjorie Francis
Mark Albertini
Mark Chapman
Mark Thomas
Marselene Norton
Mary Jane Davis
Mary Jean Stout
Mary Landon
Mary Scarborough
Megan Kidwell
Melissa Roe
Merton Dibble
Meseret Abraham-Zemedet
Michael Bush
Michael Connor
Michael Francis
Michael Geurink
Mike Tisdell
Mickey White
Miel Horrilleno
Monique Greer
Morgan Mellette
Morris Anderson
Nancy C. Naughton
Nancy Neu
Nancy VanCott
Neal Snook
Nicholas Scovil
Nick Dettman
Nils Friberg
Noah Crabtree
Pamela B Johnston
Pamela Nungesser
Pamela Roberts
Pam Gullifer
Pat Ankney
Pat Giddens
Patricia Brougher
Patricia Carson
Patricia Cleveland
Patricia Foster
Patricia Middlebrooks
Paul Mellema
Paula Carlson
Paula Oestreich
Paul Holloway

Paul Nungesser
Peggy Anderson
Peggyrose Swartzentruber
Peter Polloni
Phillip Harms
Phyllis Mortensen
Priscilla Enggren
Rachel Agheyisi
Rachel Ropp
Raif Turner
Ray Puen
Reina Y Mora
Rene Bahrenfuss
Renee Triplett
Rhonda Bartels
Richard Beatty
Richard Moreau
Richard Rutter
Richard Stevens
Rick Keaton
Robby Little
Robert W Johnson
Rochelle Hook
Rodney White
Rolaine Franz
Ronald D Hook
Rosario Baria
Roxann Carey
Roxanne Pittard
Ruben Michael Garay
Russell Isham
Russ Perry
Ruth Calo
Ruth E Withee
Ruth Montgomery
Ryan Blizek
Sam Todd
Samuel Njuguna
Sandy Anderson
Sandy Blanes
Sara Giesmann
Sara Van Cott (Barnes)
Sharon Johnson
Sharon Peterson
Sharon Shortess
Shelly Harms
Sherie Nelson
Sherman Sebastien
Sherry Mosher
Stacey Swanson
Steve Gibbs
Steve Mercier
Susan Langohr
Susan Quigley
Susan Snook

Suzanne Richards
Sylvia Thomas
Sze Suze Lau
Tabitha Price
Tammy L Enns
Tammy White
Teresa Everett-Leone
Teresa Linn
Terri Collins
Theresa Baker
Thomas Jopling
Thomas Nickell
Thomas Warren
Tim Coleman
Tim Ingram
Tim Linn
Tim Lovestrand
Tim Mentink
Tom Penry
Tom William Warren
Toni Shuma
Tracie Pogue
Tricia Coffman
Vicki Ivester
Victoria G DeKraker
Victor M Prieto
Vivian Kamph
Vivian Richardson
Ward Pyles
Warren Blaisdell
Wayne Homer
Wendy Coleman
Wendy Colon
Wilbur Zirk
Wil Gipson
William Carson
William Cline
William Dickerson
William Smitherman
William Wilder
Yvonne Tallent

unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
David Trombold, M. Div.
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages

James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Larry Saltee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
David Trombold
Dean Ropp
Gene Mullen
James Vigen
Leonard Smith
Nicholas Alsop
Michael Francis
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
David Trombold, M. Div.
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Larry Saltee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
David Trombold
Dean Ropp
Gene Mullen
James Vigen
Leonard Smith
Nicholas Alsop
Michael Francis
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages

Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Ben Jore, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics
Bev Staley
Carol Brinneman
Jody Garcia
Kara Anderson
Kim Puterbaugh
Lizz Carlton
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors

Andrew Belcher
David Book
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000
Larry Saltee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Lizz Carlton
Jan Zanutto
Matthew Latham
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Richard Joki
Door43 World Missions Community